



Carolus II. D. G. Mag. Brit. Fran. & Liber. Rex. &c.
Re. Thos. Sauter.

THE ENGLISH ATLAS.

Volume I.

CONTAINING A
DESCRIPTION
OF THE

Places next the North-Pole;

AS ALSO OF

Muscovy, Poland, Sweden, Denmark,

And their several Dependances.

WITH

A General Introduction to Geography, and a Large Index, containing the Longitudes and Latitudes of all the particular Places, thereby directing the Reader to find them readily in the several Maps.



O X F O R D,

Printed at the THEATER, for MOSES PITT at the Angel in St. Pauls-
Church-Yard, London. MDCLXXX.



TO THE KING.

THE Reasons why I presume to prefix Your Majesty's Name to this Work, tho perhaps not sufficient to justify my boldness, yet I hope may be so considerable as to obtain my pardon. This seems, in many respects, to be a new Undertaking, and the greatest for Charge and Hazard that hath ever in this nature been adventur'd upon by any of Your Subjects, and therefore stands in need of more than ordinary Patronage and Encouragement; which I cannot rationally hope from any other; For Your Majesty doth not only understand and delight in these Knowledge, but have been also at great Expences to promote, direct, and assist further Discoveries. And except care be taken

taken to preserve what is already found out, all the Advantage that should arise from the Dangers of the Seaman, and the Bounty of the Prince, will determine with the Expedition; and the next Age is to begin again, as if no advance had bin acquir'd. I add also, That if other Princes had bin as industrious as Your Majesty, and Your Subjects (who, to omit smaller particulars, first Discover'd the greatest part of all the Northern Regions of Europe, Asia, and America, and first Compas'd the World), this Atlas would have bin more satisfactory, and the Science better completed. The reproch also of the sloth, negligence, or what worse, of Mankind (that in so many thousand years know not, as yet, the few Leagues of their own habitation) would have bin avoided. However, as there is in this Work care taken to reduce into one body all that is hitherto known of the habitable Earth, and secure it from Oblivion: So I hope it may perpetuate the memory of Your Majesty's Patronage, and testifie the Duty of

Your Majesty's most Obedient and Loyal Subject,

MOSES PITT.

THE PROPOSALS FOR Printing the English Atlas,

THAT whereas *Moses Pitt* (of London, Bookseller) being Encouraged by His Most Sacred Majesty, his Royal Highness the Duke of *York*, his Highness Prince *Rupert*, both the Universities, the Royal Society, and divers others, the Nobility, Gentry, and Learned men of this Nation, to undertake the Printing of an Accurate Description of the World; and resolving to proceed with all convenient diligence, for the more effectual carrying on thereof, makes these following Offers:

I. He the said *Moses Pitt* having the advantage of making use of divers Plates ready Grav'd, but more especially of those of *Jansson's Atlas*, doth design by renewing and regulating divers of them, and by adding many new Plates, together with new Descriptions throughout, to Print a complete Collection of Maps, Tables, or Delineations of the Heavens, Earth, and Seas, with their several parts, divisions, and names, ancient and modern, in such manner, that all the Maps shall have the same situation of North and South; and all things shall be as exactly and particularly describ'd, as can be done by the help of all the Maps and Delineations already extant in Print, and of as many others as can be procured, of several figures and places formerly but imperfectly described, as also of divers late and new discoveries of parts heretofore unknown, or not taken notice of as yet in any Maps.

II. To every Map shall be adjoined an explanation of the most observable matters and histories of the places therein contained; wherein is intended that this Work shall exceed all that have preceded; as also an Alphabetical Index to be added at the end of each Volume, with directions for the speedy finding them in their respective Maps.

III. He will Print the whole Work in as good Paper and Character as any of those already Printed by *Blaeu*, *Jansson*, *Sanfon*, or any other.

IV. Whereas the Atlas of *Blaeu* and *Jansson* are usually comprehended in Eleven Volumes in Folio, in all the Languages hitherto; It is intended that this Atlas in the *English Tongue*, shall be printed in Eleven Volumes likewise, each Volume to be sold to the Subscribers at the rate of Forty shillings in Quires. But if those Gentlemen that are concerned in the management of it, shall think fit to contrive it in fewer Volumes, it shall still be at the rate of Forty shillings a Volume; and each Volume both in number of Maps and Descriptions, shall not consist of less than fifty-five these Maps and fifty-five printed sheets of Tables and Descriptions, one with the other according to the judgment of the Directors.

V. He doth also promise to deliver to the Subscribers the several Volumes as they shall be completed and finished, they paying their Forty shillings at the time of their subscribing, which is to be before the four and twentieth day of *July*, 1698; Forty shillings more at the delivery of the First Volume, Forty shillings at the delivery of the Second Volume, and the same sum to be paid upon delivery of each of the other Volumes successively,

only the two last to be deliver'd at twenty shillings a Volume; for which several sums aforesaid, the said *Moses Pitt* will give his Receipt under his own Hand and Seal, with two Witnesses thereunto, with an engagement to deliver to the Subscribers or their Assigns, at his Shop in *St. Pauls Church-yard*, they making good their Subscriptions, the several Volumes as they shall be printed, according to the plain meaning of these Proposals.

VI. No Volume shall be sold singly to any Gentleman whatever, except the Subscribers (by the Bookseller *Moses Pitt*) under Five and fifty shillings in Quires; neither shall any Volume be deliver'd to any person whatsoever, before all the Subscribers have theirs, provided they send for them within one month after notice given in the *Gazette* of the finishing of every Volume.

VII. The first Volume begins with the North Pole, and the places and Countries next unto it, before which is to be added an Introduction to Geography, such as shall be advised by the persons after-named, together with a Map of the Terrestrial Globe, and Maps of the greater Divisions or Parts of the Earth. This Volume is intended to be completed before the four and twentieth day of the next ensuing *March*. The next Volume designed, is that which contains the *Low Countries* and West-part of *Germany*, where hath lately been, and still is the scene of the greatest actions now on foot, intended to be completed within six months after the said four and twentieth day of *March*. The said time proportionably allow'd for the completing of all the rest; unless it be judged necessary by the Directors, that a longer time be allow'd for some of the Volumes.

VIII. Whosoever shall subscribe for ten complete Books, shall for the same price have eleven complete Books in Quires deliver'd to him.

IX. Because several Gentlemen do complain that they have been deceived by several Proposals in this nature, therefore for the punctual performance of what is here undertaken, the Bookseller *Moses Pitt*, has already given sufficient Security to Sir *Joseph Williamson*, one of his Majesty's Principal Secretaries of State, and President of the *Royal Society*, for performance of his Engagement and Proposals.

X. It is requested, that every Subscriber to this great Undertaking, would be pleased to set down the County and place of his Habitation, together with directions how to send to him, to the end that notice may be given him according as the Work goes forward.

WHEREAS his most Sacred Majesty has been Graciously pleased, for the promoting of this Design, to permit that his Collections of Maps and Descriptions of Countries may be perused, that such of them as have not yet been published, and are thought proper for this work, may be taken into it; and whereas his Royal Highness, and his Highness Prince *Rupert*, have been also pleased to promise the same favour; and the like has been done by the Right Honorable

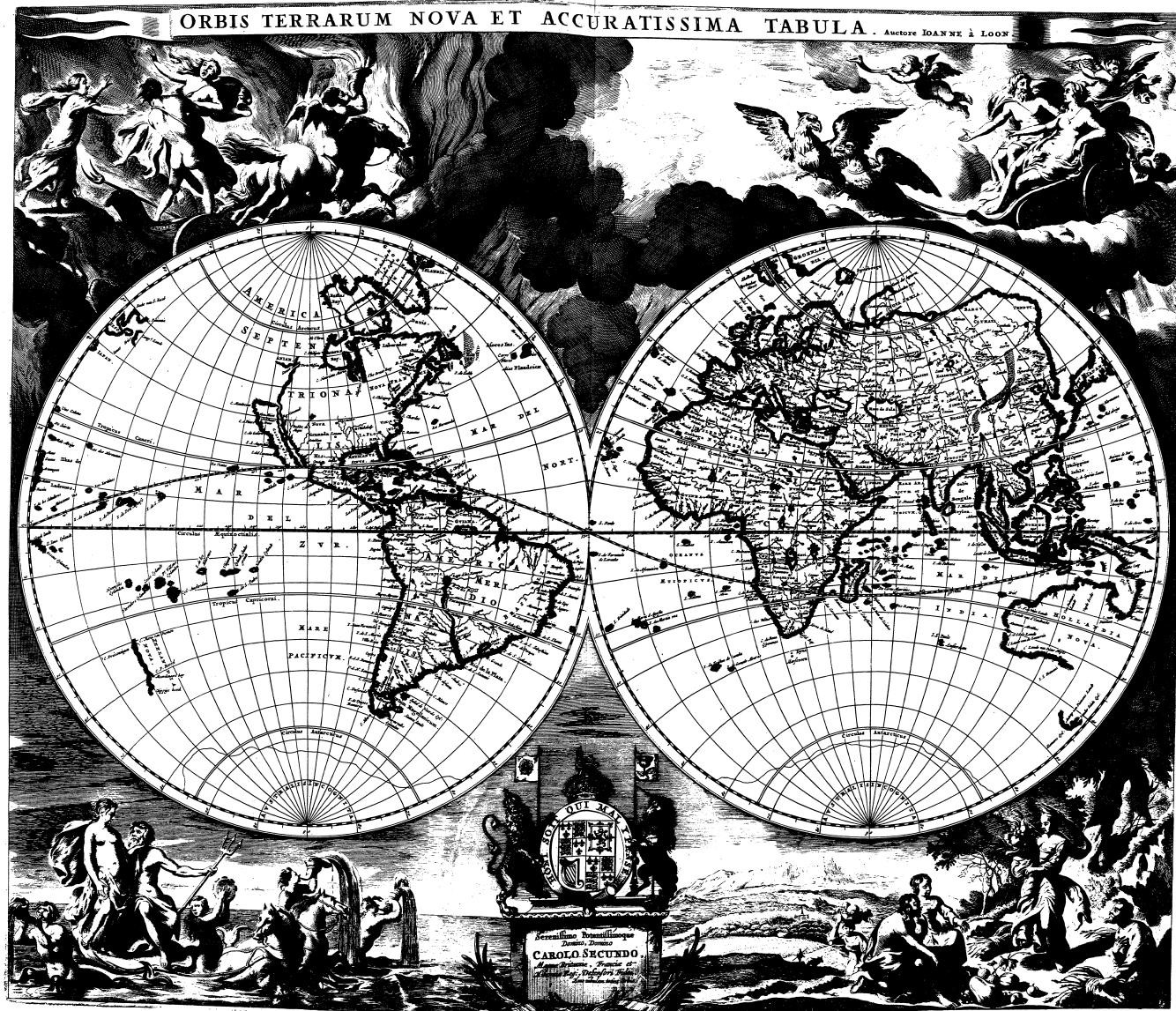
THOMAS Earl of Offley
 AWBREY Earl of Oxford
 JOHN LL. Bp. of Oxon
 St. Thomas Ogle of Lincolnshire
 Will. Oliver Bookbinder in Norwich
 Rich. Owen D. D. Rector of St. Swethin and
 St. Mary Botlaw London.
 Sir Henry Oxenden Bar. of Dean in Kent
Ordin. in Oxford which here sub/crit-
is, are
 All Soul Coll. Tho. James D. D. VVarden
 Beason-Nate Tho. Lane D. D. Principal
 Bailioll John Venn M.
 Christ Church John LL. Bp. of Oxon Dean
 Corpus Christi Dr. Newlin President
 Edmund Hall Stephen Poston Principal
 Exeter Arthur Berry D. D. Rector
 John LLoyd D. D. Principal
 St. John VVall Levinas M.D. President
 Lincoln Tho. Michael D. D. Rector
 Magdalen Henry Clark M. D. President
 Merton St. Thomas Clayton VVarden
 New Coll. Dr. Beffon VVarden
 Oriel Robert Say D. D. Provost
 Queens Tim. Halsey D. D. Provost and Vice-
 Chancellor
 Trinity Ralph Barham M. D. President
 University Obediah VValler-Miller
 Wadham Gil. Ironside D. D. Warden.
 WILLIAM LL. Herbert Earl of Powis
 CHAULES Earl of Plymouth
 JAMES Earl of Perth
 WILLIAM LL. Bp. of Peterborough
 WILLIAM LL. Feger
 St. Tho. Page Provost of Kings Coll. Cambr.
 Julianus Page Esq.
 Allington Farmer Esq.
 VVill. Pallier D.D. Reg. Prof. in Dublin
 Thomas Payton Merchant in London
 Richard Parr D. D. of Camberwell
 George Pary Coll. Con. of Clare Hall Cambr.
 Robert Pary Esq.
 Will. Peachey Esq. of New-Grove Suffex
 Robert Peck Merchant in Amsterdam
 Will. Pelly Esq. of the Temple
 John Pell D. D.
 Mr. Pelling of St. Martins Ladgate Lond.
 Sam. Pery Esq.
 St. Philip Perceval Bar. of Ireland
 Ralph Pety Esq. High Sheriff of Kent
 William Per. Citizen of London
 Alexander Petfield of Hoxton Middlesex Esq.
 Robert Piepall Esq.
 Robert Pier LL.D. of University Coll. Oxon.
 St. Walter Plunkett of Rathfarnham Kc. in the
 County of Dublin in Ireland
 Tho. Pome D. D. Arch-Deacon of Roch.
 Charles Potter Esq.
 St. Keger Povey Bar.
 Will. Powell Esq. of Sulham Barkshire
 Henry Power Esq.
 William Price Esq.
 Hum. Pridaux Student of Ch. Ch. Coll. Oxon
 Richard Prince Esq. of Abcon Shropshire
 Robert Fringill Esq. of Nichol
 Aaron Atkin Merchant of Amsterdam
 John Pulley Minister of the English Church
 at Hamburg
 St. Will. Putney of St. Martins in the Fields
 London.
 St. Robt. Pye of Farndon Barkh.
 CHARLES Duke of Richmond and Lynox
 JOHN Duke of Rutles LL. High Chancellor
 of Scotland.
 JOHN Earl of Rochester
 JOHN LL. Bp. of Rochester
 GEORGE LL. Rofie of Scotland
 St. Will. Raut of Norfolk
 St. Jonathan Raymond Sheriff of Lond.
 Ambrose Rea Minister in Essex
 St. Charles-Croft Read of Bradwell in Suffolk
 Nick. Reper D. D.
 John Rhodes Register to the Bp. of Roch.
 Fern Rich Esq. of Lambeth
 Godfr. Richards, Citizen of Lond.
 John Richards Esq.
 John Richardson Esq.
 Edward Rigby Citizen of London
 St. Thomas Roberts Bar. of Glasbury
 John Robinson Esq. Agent for his Majesty to
 the King of Sweden
 Thomas Robinson Esq.
 St. Richard Roach
 James Rothwell Esq.
 John Rowland Johnson of Amsterdam
 Henry Rumball Esq.
 Benjamin Rudyard Esq. Barkshire
 St. William Radcliff of Leagham in the Coun-
 ty of Carmarthen Baronet
 Michael Ruter Esq. of Barton on the Hill
 Gloucestershire
 CHARLES Duke of Somerset
 CHARLES Duke of Southampton
 JAMES Earl of Salisbury
 ROBERT Earl of Sunderland Principal Se-
 cretary of State
 EDWARD Earl of Sandwich
 ANTHONY Earl of Shaftsbury
 KENNETH Earl of Seaford

ELIZABETH Shannon Vice-Countess of
 Shannon
 SETH LL. Bp. of Salisbury
 OTHO Baron Swerin Envoy Extraordinary
 from the Electoral Highcourt of Branden-
 burg, to his Majesty of Great Britain
 EZER, Spanheim, Envoy Extraordinary from
 the Elector of Brandenburg to the King
 of France.
 PAOLO Sacrot Resident from the Republic
 of Venice at the Court of Great Britain
 ALEXANDER Sanderhope Esq.
 St. ROBERT Southwell Envoy Extraordinary
 from his Majesty of Great Britain to the
 Elect. of Brandenburg
 Sam. Sunthill Esq. of Devonshire
 Samuel Sunden Esq. of Derbyshire
 Dr. Robert Say Provost of Oriel Coll. Oxon
 John Sumners D. D. Dean of Canby
 St. Edward Seymour Bar. of Bury-Bromby in
 Devonshire and High Sheriff of the said
 County
 Dean and Chapter of Salisbury
 Charles Sunkley D. D.
 Charles Saw of Trinity Coll. Cambridge
 John Sade Rector Burg-clere Hampshire
 Edward Smith Citizen of London
 St. Can Scroop of Lond. Baronet
 Dr. Scott LL.D. of Camberwell Can. of Wind.
 St. John Sherard of Lophorp Bar. Lincoln.
 Tho. Sheridan Esq. of the County of Carva-
 Ireland
 Henry St. John Esq.
 Stephen Smart Bookbinder of Amsterdam
 Francis St. John's Esq. of Thorp Not-champ-
 tonshire
 St. Charles Scarborough, Chief Physician to his
 Royal Highness
 St. Francis Scott of Tharleton
 Robert Scott B. D. Sen. Fellow of Trin. Coll.
 Cambridge
 Henry Seymour Esq.
 Charles Saw of Trinity Coll. Cambridge
 Daniel Sheldon Merchant of London
 St. Joseph Sheldon Alderman of London
 Ed. Sherburn Esq. Clerk of his Majesty's Ord-
 nance and Armory within the Kingdom of
 England
 Will. Shipman Merchant of London
 Ed. Shires Esq. of Hadam Hartfordsh.
 Thomas Shaw M. D.
 Will. Shortgrave Fellow of Wadham Coll.
 Oxon
 William Still Archdeacon of Colchester
 George Sturwell Esq.
 John Nelson Arch-Deacon of Bedford
 George Smith M. D. of Thilthorpe Mid-
 dlesex
 Barthol. Soame Citizen of London.
 St. Francis Sotheby Esq. of Gray's Inn Len.
 Fredrick Spauheim D. D. Professor of Divi-
 nity at Leyden
 John Spoke Esq. of Somersetshire
 VVilliam Spencer Esq.
 Henry Stafford Esq.
 VVill. Stanley Fellow of Corpus Christi Coll.
 Cambridge
 James Stevens Esq. of Sorewell
 Edward Stillingfleet D. D. Dean of St. Pauls
 London
 HORATIO LL. Townshend Baron of Lye
 Regist. or Kings Linn
 St. Gil. Talbot Bar. of the Jewel-House
 St. Robert Talbot
 John Taylor M. D. of his Majesty's Commis-
 sioners of the Wine Licences of Office
 Nathaniel Trench Esq. London
 Thomas Temlin D. D.
 Tho. Topping of Wheatfield Esq. in Oxfordsh.
 St. John Thompson Bar. of Bucks
 John Thornton Esq. of Brock-Hall Nor-
 thamptonshire
 George Thorp D. D.
 John Tullison Controllor of my Ld. of Cam-
 berbury Household
 Hugh Todd, Fel. of University Coll. Ox.
 Sam. Toulson Esq.
 John Toulson Esq.
 St. Jonathan Trelawny Bar. of Trelawny
 Cornwall
 VVill. Trevell Esq. of Cornwall
 Charles Trumbull L. L. D.
 VVill. Trumbull L. L. D. of Docton Com-
 mons London
 Ralph Trumbull of VVithney Oxfordshire
 Francis Turner D. D.
 Thomas Turner B.D. Fellow of Corp. Christi
 Coll. Oxon.
 VVill. Turner B. D.
 Dr. VVill. Turner of Aberdeen.
 Cornelius Vermeyden Esq. of Derbyshire
 Edmund Viannet M.D. Fellow of Kings Coll.
 Cambridge
 St. Tho. Vernon Bar. of Hopton Shropsh.
 Henry VVainbrook Jun. Merchant in Amsterd.
 Isaac VVotins D. D. Canon of VVindsor
 Stephen Upson Fellow of Eaton. Coll.
 Robert Uvedale of Bedford Middlesex
 HENRY LL. Mars. of VVorcester
 CHARLES Ferdinand Earl of VValthrein, Es-

vey Extraordinary from the Emperor to his
 Majesty of Great Britain
 GEORGE LL. Bp. of VVindsor
 EDWARD LL. VVard of Dudley Castle Suff-
 suffire
 SIDNEY Worley alias Montague Esq.
 VVill. VVake Souter of Ch. Ch. Oxon.
 Edward VVale of London
 Obed VValker Mr. of University Coll. Oxon
 St. Will. Waller
 John VVallis D. D. Geometry Professor Oxon
 Hen. VVallop Esq. of Farley-Coll Hamsh.
 St. VVilliam VValter of Sarcelles Oxfordsh.
 James VVard Esq.
 St. Patience VVard Alderman of Lond.
 John VVarnar Arch Deacon of Rochel.
 Thomas VVatkins Esq.
 Thomas VVatson Mr. of the Charter-House
 School London
 VVill. VVatson D. D. Dean of Batell
 Robert Waith Esq. of Camberwell Surrey.
 Edmund Waring Esq. of Oldbury Shropshire
 St. Philip Warwick
 John Johnfonius a Wasberg Bookbinder of Am-
 sterdam and Son in Law to Johnfonius that
 fir forth the former Atlas
 St. Christopher Wandenford Bar. of Kirkling-
 ton Yorkshire
 William Walth of Abberly Park Esq. Wor-
 cestershire
 Thomas Warton D.D. Fellow of St. Johns Coll.
 Cambridge
 Thomas Weaver of Morvil Shropshire
 John VVettermann Esq. of Oxford
 Dean and Chapter of Wells
 John VVethtale Esq.
 Paul VVettermann Esq. of Lillingington Buck-
 inghamshire
 Herbert VVethting Esq.
 St. George VVharson Bar. of Kirkby Kendall
 VVethtorland Treasurer to the Office of his
 Majesty's Ordnance
 Philip VVharson Esq.
 St. John VVhatton of Leticershire
 Coll. Roger Whitley
 Thomas VVhitely Esq.
 Ralph VVithraham Esq.
 St. Joseph VVilliamson, President of the Royal
 Society
 Thomas VVillis Esq. Student of Ch. Ch. Oxon
 Edward Wilson Esq. of Dulham Tower, Woc-
 morland
 St. Hump. VVinch, Bar. of Haines in Bed-
 fordshire
 William Winde Esq.
 Paul Wicks of London Esq.
 St. Will. Withmore Bar. of Apple Shropsh.
 St. Paul Whitcomb Kc. and Bar. of Hendon
 Middlesex
 St. Francis Withens of VVidm.
 Sir John VVintewronge Kc. Bar. of Stantonbury
 in Buckinghamshire
 Francis VVolfe Esq. of Sarsfield, in Suff-
 fordshire
 John VVolyche Esq. of Dordmaston
 John VVothelholme Esq. of Eafeld in Muf-
 Rich. VVroe B. D. of VVigges, Lancash.
 St. Christopher VVren Surveyor General to
 his Majesty
 St. Henry VVright Bar. of Dogstham Essex
 Lavin. Womack LL.D. Arch-Deacon of Suffolk
 St. Cyril VVychye of Hockwold and Wilton
 Shropshire
 John Wynne Esq.
 Owen Wynne Esq.
 Benjamin Woodroff D. D. Canon of Ch. Ch.
 Oxon
 St. Peter VVychye
 Lady VVymondesfeld, of Putney
 Tho. VVytham Esq. Gentle of the Bed-
 chamber
 John VVynell Minister by Rochester
 RICHARD LL. Arch. Bp. of York
 ROBERT Earl of Yarmouth
 Robert Yart Esq.
 John Yartley M.D. Col. Med. Lond. S. Hon.
 Tho. Yate D. D. Principal of Braxton-Nate
 Coll. Oxon
 James Young Esq.
 Robert Young Canon of VVindsor



ORBIS TERRARUM NOVA ET ACCURATISSIMA TABULA. Auctore IOANNE LON





T H E
I N T R O D U C T I O N .

*The In-
tention of
the whole
Work.*



COSMOGRAPHY is a general description of the whole World, consisting of Heaven and Earth: of both which an account is intended to be given in this Atlas; that of the Heavens is reserved to a peculiar Volume. It being (as we conceive) of greater necessity, that we begin with that of the Earth. And first of this great Globe in general; the description whereof belongs to Geography; as that of particular Regions and Countries is called *Chorography*, which is contained in their peculiar Maps. Nor shall we omit, such *Topographical* descriptions, or the knowledge of lesser places, as Cities, Rivers, Mountains, &c. where advantage may be to the Reader. Now this Globe, which we call of the Earth, consisteth of Land and Water, or Seas; the description of these is properly nam'd *Hydrography*, which sets forth the superficies of the Seas, and mouths of greater Rivers, the Havens, Rocks, Shallows, Creeks, and such other considerations as concern Navigation; to this also an entire Volume in this Edition of an Atlas, is designed. And because that of ancient times, the divisions and boundaries of Kingdoms and Countries were very much divers from those at present; to avoid confusion, which must needs happen by treating in the same place of things so different, it is thought necessary to reserve the ancient Geography to a particular Tome, to be put forth, with the rest, in its due time. Thus you have an account of what is intended in the Edition of this Great Work.

But it is first necessary to explain such terms and lay such general grounds as are of use thro all the Volumes; which is the subject of this Preface, or Introduction.

*Of the
Globe of
the Earth.*

First then it is to be noted, that the Earth and Water make but one body, the figure whereof is round, and therefore is best and most naturally represented by those we call Globes; tho Maps also, or plain Figures, if carefully drawn, are sufficiently exact. This proposition, tho it might be supposed rationally enough, as now granted by all learned men; yet may it be evidently proved, both from Celestial and Terrestrial appearances; whereof an account and reason may easily be given by this figure, and not by any other. The Sun and the Stars rise sooner to them who live Eastwardly, then they do to us; which could not be if the whole face of the Earth were plain. 2. To those who live

more or less Northward, the Pole is more or less elevated; for those inhabitants of *Iceland, Lapland, &c.* who live about a thousand miles more Northward then we do, see the Pole-star fifteen degrees higher then we can. And those, who travel hence towards those Countries, do find that this variation is made gradually, altering about a degree and a half at the end of every hundred miles; which could not be, except the body on which they moved were Spherical. 3. The Shadow which the Earth casteth upon the Moon, when she is partially eclipsed, is seen to be circular; and therefore the body which causes it must be so too. To these we may add, that many Propositions in Astronomy, Geography, and Navigation are founded on this supposition, and when they are applied to use they prove true, and succeed according to expectation; which certainly they would not always do, if the very foundation upon which they are built, were un-found. The same also is proved by plain sense and experiment, as well as by reason and consequence; for we perceive, that Ships which looke from their Harbours in calm weather, disappear gradually, first their Hulks, then their Sails, and after a few miles their highest Masts; the natural convexity of the water interposing betwixt them and our sight. Several also of our Countrymen and Neighbours have sailed round about this Globe, lookeing hence Westwardly, and returning again from towards the East. From which, and other Navigations, we may conclude, not only that naturally no part of the Ocean is higher then another; but also that we may fall from any part to any part of the superficies of the Ocean; and that every Continent hath Sea about it, and is indeed but a greater Island.

The controversy about the situation of this Globe, whether it stand still in the midst, and as it were center, of the world, as the ancients generally opined; or whether it move upon its own axis, and about the Sun as the center; besides that it is not so much to our purpose in this as in the Volume of the Heavens, the Maps and Descriptions being the same in both ways, and that the learned are not come to any issue in it, nor have we any thing to add to the common and vulgar probable arguments only, we shall omit.

The parts of this Globe are naturally separated one from another by Seas, ledges of Mountains, Rivers, Deserts, and the like. Which are very opportune for the distinction of Nations, Kingdoms, and Governments.

In the beginning of the Creation, the Waters being lighter then the Earth, accordingly overspread and compass'd it to some considerable height;

(A)

*Of the fi-
guration of
the Earth.*

*Of the
Waters in
this Globe.*



*The place
of the
Earth.*

*The parts
of the
Ocean.*

*Of Springs
and Foun-
tains.*

beats; but thro' foam not to be thier generated, but to cro'f only the paffage. And in others, fuch as that famous Cave, fometimes ferving for the quartering of an Army, call'd *Cavola de Caffioza*, near *Vienno*, there are in the middle of the *Vienno*, but not from coagulational droppings; but from water draining thro' the Earth, & hence not. There are alfo little Pools of water, which are not from the Earth, but have it in them; but very many fuch muft go to the making up one fmall Spring.

2. Others attribute it to the great abyffe mentioned in the Holy Scriptures; and doubtlefs he that made the world, beft knows the frame and conftitution of it; if that be his meaning, as that very learned man Mr. *Lydgate* thinks he hath proved. There feems indeed to be water in alfo or moft places within the Earth; but not in every place at an equal depth. Which water runs along in that bed, or in veins of gravel, which feometimes higher and fometimes lower. Below this I never heard that any one hath digged; nor do I think it hardly poffible to dig down to the whence this water proceeds, but rather from the Sea or the Ocean, which is the more probable, when only the Well-diggers do obferve, that in this gravel alfo there is a current or ftream of the water. Why this gravel lies unequally high, and how the water afcends in it, is a difficult queftion; which fome folve, by faying that 'tis contained in the gravel, as the blood in the veins of an humane body, and moves with the like vital motion; others imagine, that becaufe the gravel is an opener maf of bodies, not clofely contiguous together, the water runs in them; and is forced into higher places, by fome other caufes, as by the motion of the Sea, violently impelling it in thofe narrow and crooked paffages; but thefe being only conjectures, we muft not enlarge too much upon them.

3. Moft men think, that all Springs pteed from the Sea-water, & elevated by percolation thro' the greater or leffer conveniency of paffages of the Earth. The difficulty that oppreffeth this, is that it is not eafie to imagine, how the Sea-water fhould rife to the tops of mountains; yet even there are often found Sea-plants naturally growing, which perfwade many men of the truth of that opinion, tho' they cannot juftifie the manner. And there are alfo divers Lakes upon the higheft hills amongst the *Alps* (as particularly upon *Spilgen*) which notwithstanding the top of the water be frozen in winter, yet do Trout and other fish live very well in them; which perfwade the inhabitants that there is communication betwixt thofe Lakes and other low parts of the Earth.

4. Others are of opinion, that the water that ftill comes down from the Rain or Snow, which ftill comes from the clouds, and confifts either of drops of Rain or of fmaller Dew-drops, whereof many together make Rain. And thefe Clouds hanging commonly upon the hills, furnifh them chiefly with moiſture, which being referved in Cifterns, or fometimes in moſſes, break or fpring forth where they find the eafieft paffage. Sometimes the fummit of the hill is either a Lake or a Bog, and keeps the water, as in a Pond lined with Clay, till it come to fuch a height as it overflows. And this is the reafon both of the continuance of Springs, and why there are fo few in Plains, becaufe down to the tops of the hills, there goes down by the fteams of the Earth, & fo that it cannot fpring up again; nor are there more rains for caufe, as to fupply them from their Caverns.

Whether any, or all of these opinions are false, I shall not determine; but it seems to me, that such a quantity

[illegible]

the beginning established such a never-failing harmony.

Whether this Globe of Earth grow or not, is not much material to our purpose; for neither the growth or diminishing of it can be so great as to alter the usual measures or distances. Yet it may be rationally said, that in low, soft, and boggy places it doth grow; not only by the winds and rain, carrying down somewhat (thence) into those parts, but also by the grafs, willows, and fog, which by the rain being flatted and beaten down in winter, do the next Spring send forth new shoots from the old roots, which in time will be a great raising of ground. And this feeding of the floods, why in such earths we often-times find trees, which being cut down in those places where they formerly grew, and not carried away in good time, are at length grown over and covered with those weeds and herbs. In the bottom of a turf-pit (for this matter is not earth, but turf) they found not long ago, a small parcel of Coins upon an heap (perhaps they had been tied up in fenne matter that was putrified) of *Edward IV.* as I judge by the face; and this was about eighteen foot deep. Which gives us some conjecture, how long at most that turf was a growing. I.e. eighteen foot in two hundred years, which way we may find out the year of *Edward IV.* the Forces of *Dean*, after the Miners had wrought over a great cinder-heap, found divers Coins of Brads, fresh as when first minted of *Tetricus*, and some other of those Tyrants about the year 260, which gives some hint by whom, and at what time those Iron-mines were wrought. Neither doth the dust, or smaller parts of Earth walked or blown from higher places, considerably diminish them, or fill up the Valleys, for then would they also thickn and in time fill up also the Sea, which seems to have been the opinion of *Polybius*, who conceived, that because he feared the Black Sea, Scythians and Indians might grow so big, that it would be full till thence, become firm land. But the Lord of *Babque*, in his Ambassy to the Grand Seigneur, about eighteen hundred years after *Polybius*, found it exactly in the same condition as *Polybius* had described it.

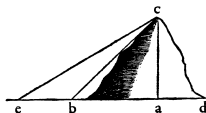
The superficies of the Earth is not equally nor perfectly round; yet are not the extuberances so great or considerable, as to hinder the whole Globe to be accounted round; the greatest height of the highest mountain making an insensible difference in the computation of the Diameter of the whole Earth. Now there is a riling or swelling of the Earth, which commonly begins by the Sea-shore, and encreaseth the further it reacheth in the Continents, besides that of the particular mountains, which form the waters in order to make room for the Sea and waters.

Yet were not all mountains made at, or near, the birth of the world. Some have been even in our memory cait up by Earthquakes, as *Monte Nuovo* in the Kingdom of Naples, near *Pozzuolo*. Others by the winds, heaping up the Sands together, which they say happens frequently in the great and sandy Defarts. But these are very few, and I suppose as easily blown afunder as brought together. However these deserve here no particular consideration.

The rising of the Earth in large Continents, is doubtless great, but not so either here, or will ever be at the trouble and charge to measure it; yet some estimation may be made by the length and width of Rivers. It is commonly said, that a Ship is not able to sail against that stream whose declivity is one pace in an hundred; yet how few declivities there must be, and (as they say) feldom is it

 (Δ_2)

less than one in five hundred. Suppose then the Nile, which runs in the greatest Continent (*Africa*) which we know in the world; it diffringes into the *Mediterranean Sea*, in 31 deg. of Northerly Latitude, and ariseth out of the Lake *Zaire*, which is in 10 deg. (or as some say 14) of Southerly Latitude, in all 41 deg. which comes to about 2460 miles *English*, if running straight, but because of its bendings, it may be well estimated 3000 miles, which (allowing two foot to a mile) comes to fix thousand feet, if it move with as slow a motion as can be, but considering that it is a swift River (the mud not settling till it come to the Sea), and hath in its divers great Cataracts, the Lake of *Zaire* must needs be much higher than the mouth of *Nilus*. But the height of mountains is more certainly and easily known, and divers of them have been measured; as one of the highest hills bewixt *Torkshire* and *Lancashire* (*Pendle-hill*) if I be not mis-informed, was not found to exceed half a mile in perpendicular height; *Olympus* somewhat above a mile; and some others, as *El Pico* in the Isle of *Teneriffe* yet higher. But the certainty we know not. The manner of measuring and calculating is thus, which is much easier in such a mountain as *Teneriffe* or *Pendle-hill*, being one peak or top standing in a plain, than in those *Jags* or ledges of mountains which run thro' and divide most of the great Continents of the world; whereof the highest may be still higher than the other.



Let *b c d* represent a mountain, whose height *a c* is thus found. Take two stations in a straight line from it; the first at *b*, not far from the foot, the other at *c*, a considerable distance from it; from each of these stations take the angles at the top *b c a*, *c a d*; then out of 90 subtract *b c a*, the remainder is the angle *c b a*, which also being subtracted from 90, the remainder is the angle *c b c*. Therefore in the triangle *b c c*, we have one side *c b* (viz. the distance of the two stations, which must be exactly measured) and all the angles, for *c b c* is the complement of the other two, to 180; then say,

As the sine of the angle *c b c* is to the side *c b*
So is the sine of the angle *c b a* to *b c*.
Having then in the rectangular triangle *b c a* one side *b c*, and all the angles, for *a b c* is the complement of *b c a* to 90, say then,

As the Radius is to the sine of *b c a*,
So is *b c* to *c a* the height.

By the Quadrant.

Divide 1000 by the number of parts cut at each station; then say, As the difference of the Quotients, is to the distance betwixt the stations: So is 100 to the height.

Divisions
of the
Earth.

This great Globe is not only divided into Land and Water; but many other ways in respect to them. As some are Continents, which are great parts of Land without any Sea. Islands are small parts encompassed by water. Peninsula or Chersonesus, is a part of Land which would be called

an Island, were it not for an Isthmus, or neck of land, which joins it to the Continent. A Mountain or Rock jutting out into the Sea, is called a Promontory, Cape, or Headland.

Again, the Ancients divided all they knew of the Earth into three parts, *Europe, Asia, and Africa*, of each of these in their several places; but another Hemisphere having been lately discovered, there is commonly added to these *America*, as the fourth part. Others also name two more, the Lands under the North and South Poles; which indeed were not comprehended in the former division: yet because we know not whether there be Land, or only Sea (as under the North Pole seems to be) it is not expedient to account them distinct parts till better discovered. Our Mariners that went with design to pass under or near the North Pole, in their search of a passage to *China*, and arrived as far as 82 deg. of Latitude, found nothing but some few Islands; the rest as they could see being, in the midst of Summer, nothing but Ice. Some do imagine, that the three parts of the habitable world received their division from the three Sons of *Noah*; and *Cham* indeed obtained *Africa*, but *Japhet* dwelt in the Tents or habitations of *Shem*; tho' in process of time his posterity seems to have peopled the greatest part of *Europe*. The reason of the names we despair of knowing, they having been forgotten even in *Heraclitus's* time, there is no hopes now of retrieving them. See the discourse concerning the Map of *Europe*.

Lastly, the parts of the Land before-mentioned, are very opportune for the separating and distinguishing Countries, Nations, and Governments. The knowledge and consideration whereof is the chiefest and most useful design of this whole Work, and all others of the like nature. For it little conduceth, to know places, unless we be also informed, of what is contained, what actions performed, and what concerns our selves may have, in them. In those therefore we shall consider the names, situation, bounds of each Country, as also what Cities, Havens, Towns, Forts; likewise what Mountains, Valleys, Caves, Fountains, and other such remarkable and to us and our Country unusual things, as nature it self hath formed. To which shall be added, the condition and quality of the soil, and its productions, in order to the discovering what in every place abounds, and what therein may be communicated to other Countries, or what may probably be carried to them in order to trade. In every Nation also account shall be given of their original Language, Manners, Religion, Employments, &c. that if any art or science useful to society be there eminent, it may be transferred into our own Country. Much more considerable are their Governments, Civil and Military, their Magistracies, Laws, Assemblies, Courts, Rewards and Punishments, and such like. Neither must we omit the manner of educating their youth in arts liberal and mechanic, caught in their Schools, Universities, Monasteries, Shops also, and the life. Their manner of providing for their poor of all sorts, either in Hospitals or Workhouses. Lastly, it will be expected, that we give an account of the History or actions and successes of each Nation, of their Princes, remarkable actions, &c. And these heads take in the sum of what is endeavoured as the principal intention in this Work.

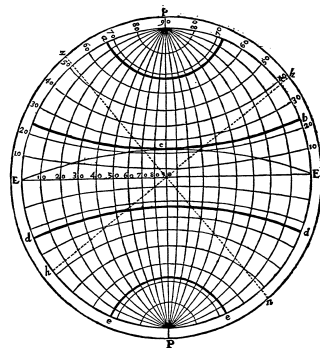
The particular
observations
in the descriptions.

the Artificial Division of the Earth, and what depends hereupon.

THE Supreme Celestial Sphere (tho it has really no lines at all described upon it, yet the benefit of our conceptions and expressions, is supposed to be divided into several parts, imaginary Circles, which Artists have given names and names unto. The Planes of these circles, being continued down to the inferior Earth, are conceived to divide them into the like parts. The chiefest of these are eight; four great ones, which divide the Heavens and Earth into two equal parts; and many lesser which divide them unequally. The great ones are the Horizon, Meridian, Equator, and Zodiac: The two former of which are variable, differing according to places; the two other are fixt, and the same in all places. The first ones are, the two Tropics, one of Cancer, the other of Capricorn; with the two Polar Circles, one the Arctic or Northern, the other the Antarctic or Southern. These, and all Circles, divided into 360 parts, or Degrees; each of

which Degrees is again subdivided into 60 Minutes; these again into 60 Seconds, &c.

The Horizon (so call'd because it terminates our sight) is that great Circle in the Heavens which divides the superior and visible, from the inferior and invisible Hemisphere, as in the Scheme hh. The two points, every way 90 Degrees distant from it, are its Poles; Z. N. The superior of which, being exactly over our heads, is our Zenith, or Vertical point; the inferior, which is diametrically opposite to it, our Nadir. So that our Horizon varieth (tho not sensibly) every step that we move. The Circles drawn from one of its Poles to the other, and cutting it at right angles, are Azimuths: Those lesser ones, parallel to it, are Almucantars. It is usually distinguish'd into Rational, which exactly divides the Heavens into two equal parts, because its center is the same with that of the Earth; and Sensible, which divides them unequally, because its center is at our eye. But the Earth having no sensible magnitude in respect of the superior Orbs, the distinction, in respect of them, is useless and impertinent.



The Meridian is a great Circle, passing thro' the Poles of the World, and of the Horizon PZ, PN, it is so called, because when the sun is under it in the day time, it is noon; in night time, it is midnight. Any two East West points have different Meridians; tho' Globes and Maps they are generally described to 10 degrees only, P 10 P, P 20 P, &c.

This Line, intersecting the Horizon at right angles, is the foundation of its partition into parts, call'd the Points of the Compass; from whence the Winds receive their denomination. For this Line extended between the two interfections, and the Meridian Line, points North and South; and intersecting it at right angles, points East and West, which four are the Cardinal Winds. The distance betwixt each of these being equally divided, gives four more; each of these 8 being divided, gives 16; these again, 10 divided, which are distant from one another 11 deg. min. and thus named,

North.	South.
North and by East	South and by West
North North East	South South West
North East & by North	South West & by South
North East	South West
North East and by East	South West and by West
North North East	West South West
East and by North	West and by South
East	West
East and by South	West and by North
East South East	West North West
South East and by East	North West & by West
South East	North West
South East & by South	North West & by North
South South East	North North West
South and by East	North and by West

Some have subdivided each of these into two parts, and reckon'd 64; but that division is generally rejected, as being too nice for use. (B) Line

Line extended betwix each of these, and its opposite, is that which Mariners call a Rumb, described by the Ship, following the direction of the Needle; so that if it fall towards any of the Cardinal points, it describes an arc of a circle; if towards any other, a spiral line.

Equator. The Equator is a great Circle, drawn at an equal distance from both Poles of the World E.E. It is so called, because when the Sun enters into it (as it doth about the tenth of March, and thirteenth of September) it makes the days and nights equal, in all places of the world.

Zodiac. The Zodiac is a great Circle, which cutteth the Equator obliquely, into two equal parts E.E.; its greatest declination, or distance from it, is about 23 deg. 30 min. 'Tis so call'd from the 12 Signs that are in it, *Aries, Taurus, &c.* each of which contains 30 deg. because that is the twelfth part of 360. The beginning of *Aries* and *Libra* are the Equinoctial points, and the Meridian drawn thro them is the Equinoctial Colure, P.E.P.; as that thro the beginnings of *Cancer* and *Capricorn*, is the Solstitial, P.C.P.

Tropics. The Tropic of Cancer is a lesser Circle, described by that point of the Zodiac which is most distant from the Equator &c.b. In this is the Sun moveth, when it has obtain'd its utmost Northern declination, which is about June 11.

The Tropic of Capricorn, is that answerable to it, on the other side of the Equator; where, in the Sun moveth, when it has attain'd to its utmost Southern declination, &c.d, which is about Dec. 12.

Polar Circles. The Arctic and Antarctic Circles, are those little ones so far distant from the Poles of the World, as the Tropics are from the Equator, *a* and *c*; because they are described by the Poles of the Zodiac, which are distant from those of the World 23 deg. 30 min. Besides these four, we may imagine innumerable other little Circles, parallel to the Equator; such as in Globes and Maps are drawn every 10 deg. for the more ready observation of the Latitude of places, as in the Scheme 10 to 10, 20, &c.

Zones. These 4 lesser Circles divide the Earth into 5 parts, which are call'd Zones. But this partition was of more note amongst the Ancients than now it is; tho it could never be of any considerable use, for to describe the situation of a Country only by saying that it was in such or such a Zone, is too wide a direction to find it out. The two Frigid ones, comprehended within the Polar Circles, they thought uninhabitable, by reason of their extreme cold and darkness; as also they did the Torrid one, betwix the Tropics, by reason of its excessive heat: So that the two Temperate ones, only left to be inhabited. But these mistakes have long since, by the improvement of Navigation and Merchandizing, been discovered; for even in the midst of the Torrid Zone, under the Equator, are now well known to live *Ethiopia, Sumatra*, and many Islands, as populous and fruitful as any in the Temperate ones. Nor are they so much hotter than we, as they are nearer the Sun, because the length of their nights (being always about twelve hours), the frequency of their rain, and the briskness and constancy of their wind, doth extraordinarily temperate the heat, which else would extremely infect them. And tho nothing of the Southern Frigid Zone be yet discover'd, yet much which lieth within the Northern is, as *Greenland, Lapland*, and divers other places, which are spoken of in the beginning of this Volume. Which shew, that tho the other be unknown to us, yet it may, notwithstanding its cold, be inhabited as well as this. The inhabitants of these Frigid Zones are call'd *Perisiti*, because when the Sun by its annual motion is risen to them, it moves round about them without setting; and so casts their shadow towards every part of the Horizon. Those of the Temperate ones, are *Heterositi*, because their Noon shadows are always cast only one way, ours Northward, the others Southward. Those of the Torrid one, are *Amphisiti*, because their Meridional Shadows are sometimes North, sometimes South.

Nor is the division of the Earth into Climes, by lesser Circles parallel to the Equator, of much more use than the former; for by saying, that a Country lieth forthewhere within 8 deg. 25 min. of the Equator, where the longest day is above twelve hours, and less than twelve and an half (which is the first Clime), its situation is but little better described, than if we should say it was in the Torrid Zone. The like may be said of the rest of the 24 Climes, which are nothing else but a subdivision of the Zones into such unequal spaces, that the longest day in that part of it, which is next to the Equator, is shorter by half an hour than it is in the other part which is towards the Pole. So that look how many hours the longest day in any Country doth exceed twelve, the double of that is the number of the Clime where it lieth; as, because in *England* the longest day is about sixteen hours and an half, therefore it is in the ninth Clime, or eighteenth Parallel, for one of the other makes two of these. And thus we may reckon in the Southern, as well as our Northern Hemisphere, till we come to the beginning of the Frigid Zones, where the Climes end; for here the longest days being twenty-four hours, i.e. the entire revolution of the Sun, they encrease so fast that they must be distinguished by the difference of weeks and months, as a degree and an half within the Polar Circles, the longest day is a month; three degrees and an half two months; six deg. 30 min. three months; 11 deg. 30 min. four months; 17 deg. 20 min. five months; 30 deg. six months. Those who inhabit the opposite points of the same Clime, have summer and winter together, but not day and night, and are called *Perisiti*. Those who inhabit the same points of Climes equally distant from the Equator, have day and night, but not summer and winter together, and are called *Anteci*. The *Perisiti* and *Anteci* therefore agree in neither, but are *Antipodes* to each other, living under points diametrically opposite.

But the most exact, and now most usual description, of the situation of places, is by their Longitude and Latitude. The Latitude of any point, is its nearest distance from the Equator, as E 10, E 20, &c. towards P. It is measured by the Arc of the Meridian intercepted betwix them. This directs to the very Circle, under some part of which the place lies, and so gives a better account of its situation Zones and Climes do; therefore some formerly describ'd the situations of Countries by this only. But to render the direction compleat, 'tis necessary that the Longitude also be added unto it. This is the distance of the Meridian of the place from the first Meridian, to be numbred in the Equator, from 1 to 360, as in the Scheme E 10, 20, &c. towards E. But where to fix this first, or great Meridian, Geographers could never yet well agree; from whence many confusions have been occasioned, and are still continued in this science, and will not be thoroughly rectified, till they concur in the determination of this point, which tho it may be fixt indifferently in any noted place, yet they have all thus far agreed, as to place it in some of the most Western parts of the Earth; because the Sun, and

and the rest of the Planets, move by their proper motion, fromward the West towards the East. *Ptolemy*, and other ancient Geographers, fixt it in *Hera*, or *Junonia*, which is one of the *Fortunate* or *Canary* Islands, and (as 'tis probable) that which now is call'd *Teneriff*. Hence the *Arabians* translated it about ten degrees Eastwardly. Some of our later Geographers transfer'd it to the *Azores*, or *Insule Flandricæ*; thinking that a Meridian drawn over these, did pass thorough the Poles towards which the Loadstone pointeth, as well as thorough those of the World; because here they differ in assigning thorough which of these it is thought to be described. Some place it in *St. Michael*, which is about 9 deg. more West than *Teneriff*; because here they say the Compass varyeth least. Others say, that the variation is less in *Corvo*, which lies about 6 deg. West of this, i.e. 15 of *Teneriff*, and therefore fixt it here. But some of the latest, finding the great inconvenience that there is in having different Longitudes applied to the same place; and also experimenting a far greater variation in the *Azores* then was pretended, have reduced it again to *Teneriffe*, and suppose it describ'd over the top of *El Pico*, or the *Peaks*, which being the most noted and accuminat mountain in the Western parts of the World, is better fitted for such a purpose, than any shore, or whole Island, can be; because it is not likely to be at all removed, as shores sometimes (by the encroachments of the Sea) for a good space are; and the top of it, being but of a very small compass, and as it were a point, hence Longitudes may be computed even to a minute, which from the forenamed Terms can scarce be done to a degree. From hence all the Longitudes in the Maps of this Atlas are reckon'd. And we wish, that in all the new ones, which shall be drawn henceforward, it may be so; or at least, that it may particularly be express'd in them, from what Meridian it is that they compute; that so the account of Longitudes may become more intelligible and useful then, for want of such direction, it commonly is in most of our Maps.

Having the Longitude and Latitude of any place given, to find it in the Map, reckon the Longitude among the Meridians, which commonly are described from the upper to the lower side thereof; and the Latitude among the Parallels, which are always drawn the contrary way, and where you see, or guess, that these two Lines intersect each other, is the place sought for.

The Latitude may be found out either in the day by the Sun, or in the night by the Stars. The elevation of the Equator above the Horizon, is the complement of the Latitude to 90 degrees, as may be collected from what has been said before. If therefore the height of the Sun be taken at noon, about the tenth day of March, or twelfth of September, and subducted from 90, the remainder is the Latitude. The same may be found at any other time of the year, if the distance of the Parallel, wherein the Sun moveth, from the Equator be first known; for this being added to, or subtracted from the Meridional altitude, according as the Sun that day is below, or above the Equinoctial, makes the case all one with the former. In the night the elevation of the Pole may easily be taken by the Pole-Star; and this is always equal to the Latitude of the place: for because under the Equator, where the Latitudes begin, both the Poles of the World are in the Horizon, therefore so far as we remove from thence towards either Pole, so much it must be elevated, that the distance between the Zenith and the Horizon may be 90 degrees. Or else,

the Meridional altitude of any other Star, whose declination is known, may be observed, and the Latitude hence collected, after the same manner as from that of the Sun's.

But no such certain and easy method for the finding out the Longitudes hath yet been invented, tho very many Mathematicians, have long employed their wits in the search after it; being encouraged hereunto, not only by the apprehension of that great advantage and perfection which this Science, and Navigation, would receive from such a discovery; but also by several other great rewards which have been proposed to it. The principal means whereby it has been hitherto attempted, and whereby it seems most likely to be effected, is the observation of some one Celestial Appearance, at divers places. Such as are Eclipses, the entrances of the Moon into the Eclipse, its Latitude or distance from the Eclipse, its approximation to, or distance from, some fixt Star. The conjunction and opposition of *Jupiters* *Satellites*, &c. for if the moment of time when any of these do happen, were exactly observed in any two distant places, the Longitude of the one from the other will be found out, by resolving the difference of time, that the appearance happens in one place sooner than the other, into degrees; allowing fifteen degrees for an hour, and fifteen minutes of a degree for a minute of an hour.

From the observation of the beginnings, middles, and ends of Eclipses (of the Moon especially) the Longitudes of places have hitherto for the most part been determined; as because the same Eclipse, which at *London* was observed at twelve a Clock, began not at *Brandenburg* till one, hence 'twas collected, that this later City had fifteen degrees Longitude more than the other. This is one of the best methods that has yet been found out; and if all Artists, who are able, would be constant, and diligent in their observation of it, in such Countries where they are; and then free in publishing these their observations, we should after a while hereby know the exact situation, at least, of all great Cities, and other such noted parts of the Earth, which lovers of Science usually visit. But this indeed gives but very little direction to Mariners, when they are in any unknown part of the Sea, for whose uses principally an easy method of finding out Longitudes is so earnestly sought after. For 'tis difficult to observe the beginning or end of an Eclipse exactly at Sea, by reason of the fluctuation of the Ship; and tho it were not, yet they happen so seldom in the whole year, that they cannot be of any considerable use to them, who must sometimes examine whereabouts they are, several times in a day.

Other appearances therefore, which happen more frequently, must be proposed to their observation; the usual ones are: 1. The Moons entrance into the Eclipse (for the Line of her proper motion intersects it, as the Equator doth, only its greatest distance from it is but about five degrees.) If the hour when this happens in any unknown place, be compared with the hour set down in the Ephemerides, which are calculated for any known Meridian, the difference of time (being resolved, as before) gives their difference of Longitude. But besides the difficulty that there is of observing this appearance exactly, it happens but once in a fortnight, and so is not frequent enough to serve the present turn. Therefore to this is added, 2. The Moons place in the Zodiac, especially when she is in the Meridian; the time of night when this happens in any unknown place, being by any of the fixt Stars found out;

THE INTRODUCTION.

out, and then compared with the time when the fame point is in the Meridian for which the present Ephemerides are calculated, the difference betwixt them doth likewise discover their distance in Longitude. But because the Moon for some days before and after the change cannot be seen at all, and for several more cannot be seen in the Meridian; therefore this method hath almost the same inconveniences attending it as the former; which some think are fully redressed in this other, which is, 3. The Conjunctions, Eclipses, or any such appearance of *Jupiters* four *Satellites*. The time when they will happen in any known place, being first computed, and then compared with the time when they are observed in an unknown one, will also as before discover its Longitude. These Planets are so far distant from the Earth, that they have no considerable Parallax, and so their appearances are more easy to be observed than those of the Moon commonly are. And they move so swiftly about the body of *Jupiter*, that in a very little time a sensible alteration of their places is made; and so the moment of their conjunctions, and other appearances, may be the more accurately observed, and Longitudes hence more exactly determined. But because these *Satellites* are every year, for many weeks together, so near the Sun, that by reason of its rays they cannot be seen; and at other times cannot be discerned without the assistance of a very good perspective, and a very clear air; therefore neither can this be a constant direction. 4. The appearance of the Moon to any of the fix Stars, is by some thought an appearance of the most universal use in this concern, because it may be observed at all times, but about the new Moon. And indeed did not the double Parallax, and the refraction of the Moon, render the calculation of its true place somewhat nice, and subject to mistakes; this method would be better liked, and more serviceable than any of the precedent.

Since therefore each of these Celestial appearances has some difficulty or other attending it, which hinders it from being observed constantly, or without greater skill and care than Mariners usually admit; the fittest method, I think, is not to chuse one of them from the rest, and always to make use of that alone; but to observe any two or more of them in the same place, and with as much exactness as the present circumstances can well afford. For when some cannot, others may be seen; and errors committed in the observations and calculations of one, may be found out, and corrected when compared with another. By such different observations frequently made, and compared with one another, which not only Pilots can in some measure do, they will not only promote their own art and safety; but very significantly contribute to the perfection of Geography. In order to which, it would be highly advantageous, if any true lover of Arts would take care, that these following particulars may be put into practice: 1. That the Longitude of some great merchandizing City (suppose *London*) be exactly computed, by diligent and skilful Astronomers, from the observations of the same Eclipse there, and at the Peak of *Teneriff*, or by what other methods they shall judge most accurate. 2. That Ephemerides be carefully calculated for the Meridian of that City, shewing the moment of time when all the forementioned Celestial appearances happen there. 3. That the Merchants, and other Mariners, be prevailed with (especially when they go any unusual voyage) to take with them these Ephemerides, and to note continually when they are in foreign parts, what difference they observe betwixt any of the appearances there, and

in their Tables. And at their return, that they communicate them to such promoters of Learning who shall be ready to receive and improve them.

The reason why the appearances of no other of the Planets, besides the Moon and *Jupiters* *Satellites*, can be serviceable to discover Longitudes, is because the proper motions of all the rest are so slow, that the quickest of them seems to continue in the very same point above half an hour, and so how exact soever the observation be, it may occasion the mistake of seven or eight degrees; whereas every Longitude should, if it were possible, be computed within a few minutes.

Many other methods have been invented to solve this difficulty, whereof some are too erroneous to be mentioned, others too nice to be practised. Some Artists have undertaken to make Clocks to go so exactly, that being set to the just time of day at any known place, they shall go true to a minute for many days, and so being carried to an unknown one, will shew the hour at the place where it was set, which being compared with the hour, taken by the Sun or Stars, at the present place, will (as before) give the difference of their Longitudes. But such Clocks as these have never yet been made, that we have heard of; tho' of late, the Art is arrived to so great a perfection, that it seems scarce capable of any farther improvement. Others also have observed, that the spots in some of the Planets, and consequently their bodies themselves move regularly round their own axis, as *Jupiter* doth in less than ten hours; hence they collect, that if the time and manner of these spots appearance were calculated for any known Meridian, and then observed at another, their difference in Longitude may hereby be found out, as well as by any of the foregoing methods. But, besides many other difficulties which attend this observation, it cannot be made without the assistance of better Telescopes than are ordinarily to be had.

To reduce the degrees of Longitude and Latitude, and of all other Circles described on the Earth to *English* miles, or any other known measures, 'tis necessary that we first know how many of them answer to one degree; which being agreed upon, it will be easy to compute, not only the distance in miles, betwixt two particular places, whose Longitude and Latitude is given, but also all the dimensions of the whole Earth. Our *English* miles are derived originally from the length of Barley-corns, 3 of which are an inch, 12 inches a foot, sixteen feet and an half a perch, 40 perch a furlong, 8 furlongs (that is 1760 yards) a mile by statute. And the opinion most commonly received is, that about 60 of these are answerable to a degree in any great Circle on the Earth, and one of them to a minute. If so, then 60 multiplied by 360, or 21600 miles is the greatest Circuit. Its Diameter is 6872. The superficies is 148435200 square miles. The solid content is 169921796242 cubic miles. When two places differ only in Latitude, the degrees of the Meridian intercepted betwixt them, multiplied by 60, gives their distance in miles. If they differ in Longitude only, and are both under the Equator, their difference in degrees is likewise to be multiplied by 60. But when they are distant from the Equator, the Parallel under which they are is less, and so fewer miles equal a degree in it. The number of them in a degree of Latitude betwixt the Equator and the Latitude: So is 60 to a fourth; which is the number of miles, answering to a degree of Longitude.

As the Radius is to the sine complement of the Latitude: So is 60 to a fourth; which is the number of miles, answering to a degree of Longitude.

THE INTRODUCTION.

tude, under that Parallel. By this rule the following table is calculated to each degree of Latitude, shewing the number of miles, and furlong parts answering to a degree in their several Parallels.

<i>English.</i>			<i>English.</i>		
Lat.	Mill.	Min.	Lat.	Mill.	Min.
Equator	60	00	46	41	40
1	59	56	47	41	0
2	59	55	48	40	8
3	59	53	49	39	20
4	59	50	50	38	32
5	59	46	51	37	44
6	59	40	52	37	00
7	59	37	53	36	8
8	59	24	54	35	26
9	59	10	55	34	24
10	59	4	56	33	32
11	58	52	57	32	40
12	58	40	58	31	48
13	58	28	59	31	00
14	58	12	60	30	00
15	58	00	61	29	4
16	57	20	62	28	8
17	57	20	63	27	12
18	57	4	64	26	16
19	56	44	65	25	20
20	56	24	66	24	24
21	56	00	67	23	28
22	55	36	68	22	32
23	55	12	69	21	36
24	54	48	70	20	40
25	54	24	71	19	32
26	54	00	72	18	32
27	53	28	73	17	32
28	53	00	74	16	32
29	52	28	75	15	32
30	51	56	76	14	32
31	51	24	77	13	32
32	50	52	78	12	32
33	50	20	79	11	28
34	49	44	80	10	24
35	49	8	81	9	20
36	48	32	82	8	20
37	47	56	83	7	20
38	47	16	84	6	12
39	46	36	85	5	12
40	46	00	86	4	12
41	45	16	87	3	12
42	44	36	88	2	4
43	43	52	89	1	4
44	43	8	90	0	0
45	42	24			

When places differ both in Longitude and Latitude, the distance betwixt them is also found out by two operations in Trigonometry, where by an oblique angled spherical Triangle is resolv'd, having two sides, and the angle intercepted, given, to find out the other side; for in the present case, the complements of the Latitudes are the two sides; the angle made by them at the Pole is the difference of the Longitudes; and the nearest distance betwixt the two places, measured by the arc of a great Circle, is the other side. But this case hath so many varieties and intricacies, that it will be too tedious to set down the whole operation, especially because it is in effect the same problem with that in Navigation. Having the difference of Longitude and Latitude betwixt two places, to find out the degrees of the Rumb leading to them; which may be more properly demonstrated in another Volume, to be set forth concerning such matters.

An easy method, of so to extend your Compasses from one place to the other, and then to apply them to the Equator, and mark how many degrees they set off there, which being multiplied by 60, gives their distance in miles. (C)

But indeed the most accurate observers find, that about 66 miles and a quarter, answer to a degree in the Equator; so that 60 is used only for the roundness of the number, and readiness of computation, every mile according to this rate answering to a minute; which would be a very strange and happy chance, if it were exactly so. This may be discovered by several ways, but the most practicable and certain is, by taking the height of the Pole at two places, distant Northward one from the other about an hundred miles, or as much more as may be; and then taking the true distance and situation of one place from the other by a large surveying Instrument and Scale (made by an accurate workman), not going always along the High-ways, but from by-stations, observing Churches, and such remarkable places.

The miles, and other measures are so much different in one Nation, from what they are in another, yea in one part of the same Nation from what they are in another, that they cannot without a great deal of difficulty and uncertainty, be reduced to one common standard; hence it is, that often in the same Map, we have a triple scale of miles, the longest, shortest, and mean ones. The *Italian* mile is commonly reckon'd equal to the *English*. Two of these make a *French* League; somewhat more than three of them a *Spanish* League; four of them a *German* mile; five, and somewhat more, a *Swedish* or *Danish* mile. What hath been farther attempted for the reduction of other foreign measures to our *English* foot, may be seen in the following table.

<i>English</i> Foot		<i>English</i> Foot	
	00 12 00		
Rymland, or Lynden, which was the old Roman Foot	01 00 04		
Leyden Ell	01 00 08		
Paris Foot	01 00 08		
Lyon Ell	01 00 08		
Bologna Ell	01 00 08		
Amsterdam Foot	01 00 08		
Brill Foot	01 00 08		
Dort Foot	01 00 08		
Antwerp Foot	01 00 08		
Ell	01 00 08		
Lorain Foot	01 00 08		
Mechlin Foot	01 00 08		
Middelburg Foot	01 00 08		
Strasbourg Foot	01 00 08		
Brussels Foot	01 00 08		
Cologne Foot	01 00 08		
Frankfurt and Meissen Foot	01 00 08		
Ell	01 00 08		
Hamburg Ell	01 00 08		
Leipzig Ell	01 00 08		
Lobitz Ell	01 00 08		
Nuremberg Foot	01 00 08		
Ell	01 00 08		
Bavaria Foot	01 00 08		
Vienna Foot	01 00 08		
Squash or Cattle Palm	01 00 08		
Squash Vase, or Rod	01 00 08		
Foot	01 00 08		
Lisbon Vase	01 00 08		
Gibraltar Vase	01 00 08		
Tolosa Foot	01 00 08		
Vase	01 00 08		
Roman Larger Foot	01 00 08		
Roman Lesser Foot	01 00 08		
Roman Palm, ten making a Cassa	01 00 08		
Boeotia Foot	01 00 08		
Ell	01 00 08		
Perch	01 00 08		
Florence Ell, or Brace	01 00 08		
Naples Palm	01 00 08		
Brace	01 00 08		
Canal	01 00 08		
Genoa Palm	01 00 08		
Mantuan Foot	01 00 08		
Milan Calamus	01 00 08		
Parma Cubit	01 00 08		
Venice Foot	01 00 08		
Danzick Foot	01 00 08		
Ell	01 00 08		
Copenhagen Foot	01 00 08		
Prague, in Bohemia, Foot	01 00 08		
Riga Foot	01 00 08		
China Cubit	01 00 08		
Turin Foot	01 00 08		
Caro Cubit	01 00 08		
Perian Anath	01 00 08		
Constantinople greater Pica	01 00 08		
Greek Foot	01 00 08		

Page 7. col. 2. l. 29. in the Transactions of the Royal Society, ann. 1674, n. 101, it is mentioned, that the Grand *Tzear* King to discover *Nova Zembla*, and found it a Peninsula join'd to *Tartary*, as in the Map; which if true, we cannot well imagine, how *Barents* should winter upon it; nor how divers other relations agree to it, as concerning *Wangatz*, and the like; tho the *French* Surgeon seems to make it also continued to the main land. In sum, it is most probable, that very little of those parts is discovered; they who sail thither not tracing from Port to Port, but because of the ill weather, harbouring where they first approach, and departing as soon as they can. In the year 1676, the industrious and ingenious Seaman *Capt. Wood*, was again sent out by his Majesty King *Charles II.* to make a more perfect discovery of that North-East passage; persuaded unto it by divers relations of our own and *Dutch* Mariners; who reported many things concerning it, which *Capt. Wood* upon his own experience conceives to be false; as that they were either under or near the Pole; that it was there all thaw'd water, and the weather as warm as at *Amsterdam*, &c. He hath further, that himself could pass no farther than 76 deg. where he found the Sea, as far as he could discern, entirely frozen without intermixture. That it is most likely, that *Nova Zembla* and *Greenland* are the same Continent, at least that there is no passage between them; for that he found scarce any current, and that little which was, ran E. S. E. along the ice; and seemed only to be a small tide, rising not above eight foot. That whilst he was in that degree there was nothing but Fogs, Frost, Snow, and all imaginable ill weather; tho at the same time the heat seemed to be as great as at any time in *England*. That the land, where not cover'd with Snow, was so boggy that they could not walk upon it; being grown over with a deep moss, under which they dug in less than two foot to a firm body of ice; so that it was impossible to make any Cave for their winter-lodging, had they been forced to it. There were great flocks of fowls of very good waters, and some veins of black Marble. The point he landed at, he call'd *Speedill* point in 76 deg. 30 min. the Sea-water was extraordinary salt, and so clear that he could see the shells at 80 fathoms deep.

The like opinion also *Capt. James* hath deliver'd concerning the North-West passage, which

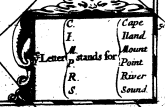
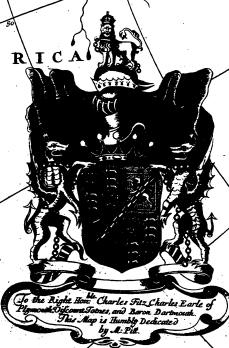
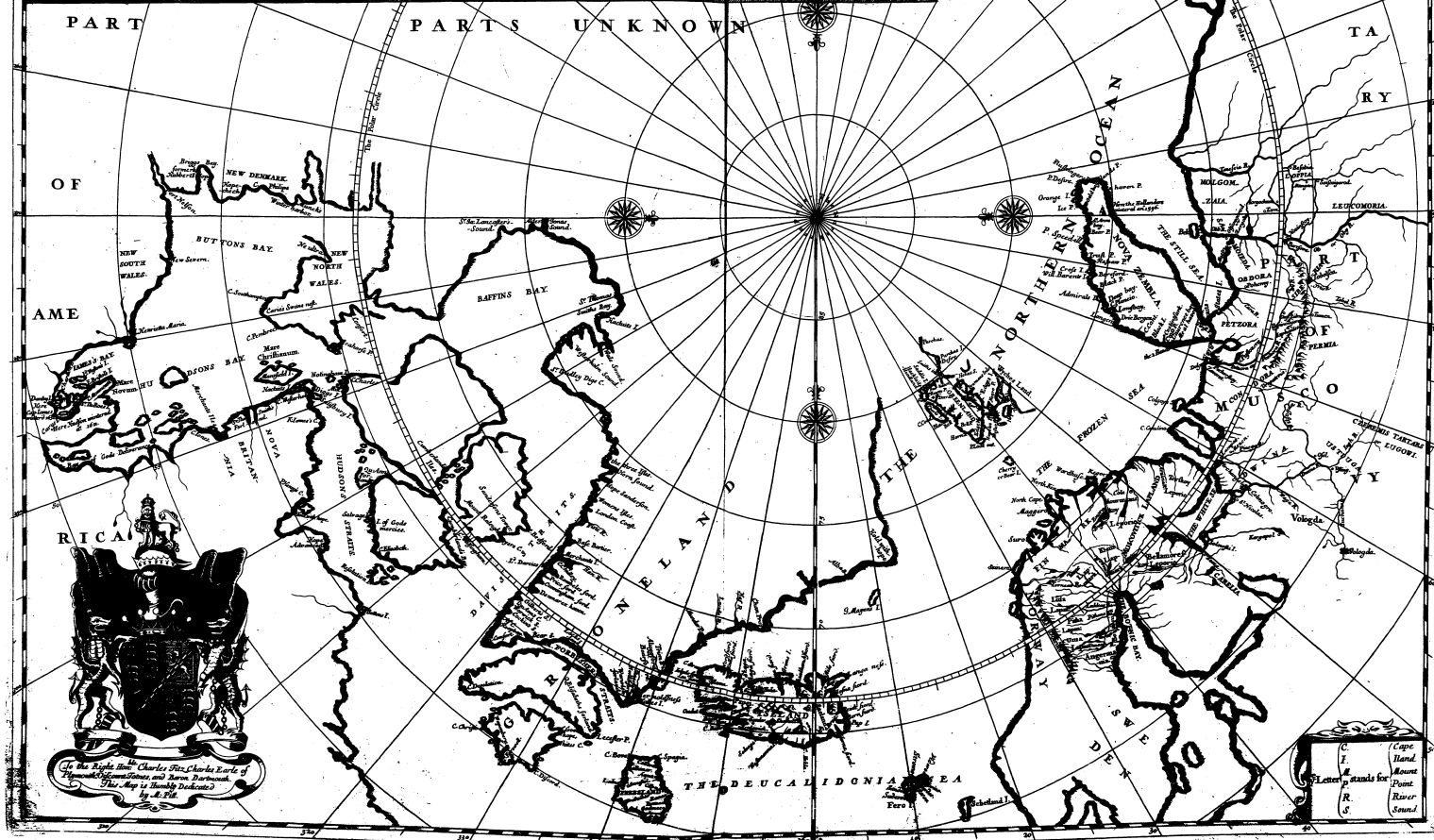
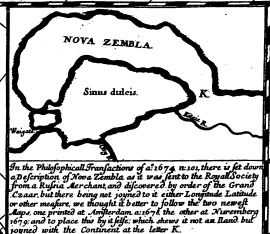
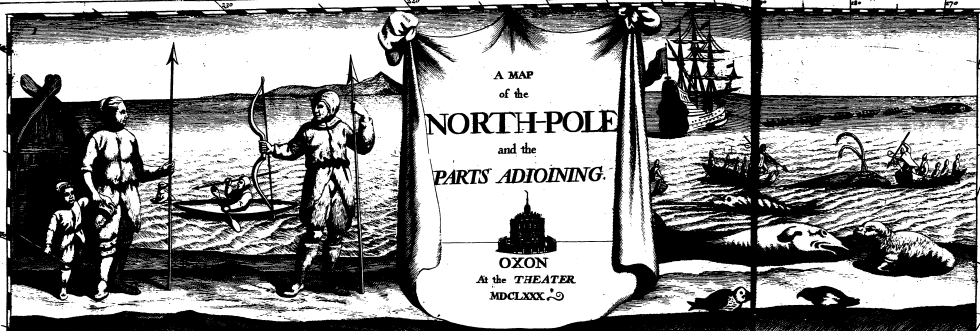
is, That there is no passing that way to *China*, *Japan*, &c. because there is a constant tide, ebb and flood setting into *Hudsons Straits*, the flood still coming from the Eastward; which, as it proceeds (correspondent to the distance) it alters its time of full Sea; which also entering into Bays, and broken ground, becomes distracted, and reversed with half tides. 2. Because he found there no small fish, as Cods, &c. and few great ones; nor any bones of Whales, Morfles, or the like found upon the shore; nor any drift wood. 3. Because in 65 deg. 30 min. the ice lay all in rands, which he believes to be produc'd as in the shoal'd Bays. For had there been any Ocean beyond it, it would have been broken to pieces; as they found it coming thro the Strait into the Sea Eastward. 4. Because the ice seeks its way out to the Eastward, driving out at *Hudsons Straits*. But if there be any passage, it is very narrow, and the voyage very long; nor can any large Vessels fit to merchandise, be able to endure the ice and other incommodities, as the long nights, cold, snows, frosts, &c.

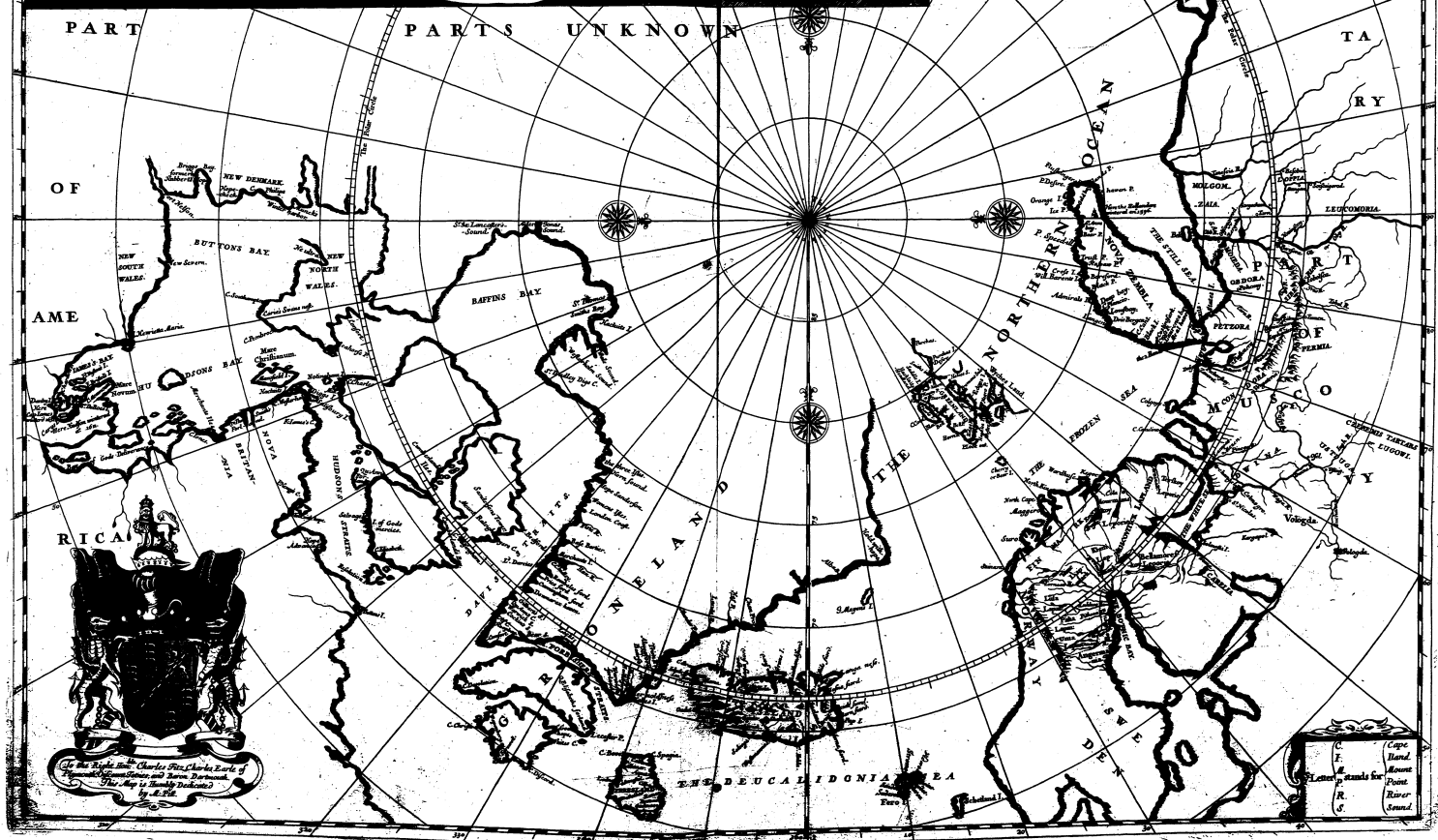
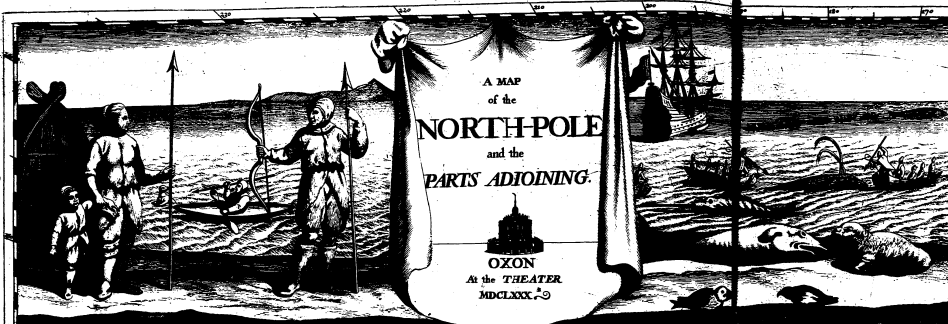
P. 24. col. 2. l. 36. till *Vasle* *Isanowicz* about the year 1599. P. 36. col. 2. l. 63. as 5599 + 1679. *ibid.* l. 66 7188-5509. P. 36. col. 1. l. 41. *Hungary*. About the year 1188 *Bela* was King of *Hungary*, perhaps the original of the Imperial Family of the *Russes*, the time corresponding very well. P. 39. col. 2. l. 1. *del.* whose name seems to have been *Zac. Litspenov*. l. 67. He died in the forty-ninth year of his age, and two and thirtieth of his reign, in the year 1677, and left his son *Feodor Alexovich*, a young Prince of about nineteen years of age, who reigns this present year, 1680.

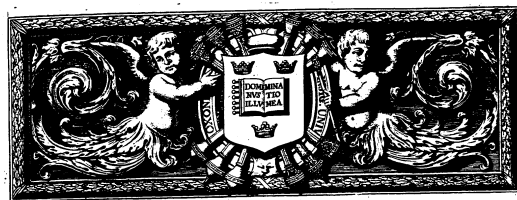
In the Description of Sweden.

The times of the Kings supply thus, the 6th began his reign *A.M.* 2014, the 25th (the times of the rest being uncertain) began *A.M.* 2637, the 26th *A.M.* 2712, the 27th *A.M.* 2831, the 31th (the intermediate being also uncertain) *A.M.* 3031, the 32th *A.M.* 3060, the 33th *A.M.* 3125, the 34th *A.M.* 3174, the 35th 3252, the 36th *A.M.* 3551, the 46th *A.D.* 3916, the 47th (*Ericus III.*) *A.M.* 3929, in whose time according to *Loccenius*, whose computation we have here follow'd, conceives our Saviour to have been born.









GREENLAND.

the Situation of Greenland.



GREENLAND, call'd by the Dutch *Spitsbergen*, because of its sharp-pointed Rocks and Mountains, lies from 76 Degrees of Northern Latitude to 82; but how much farther, as also whether Island or Continent, is not yet discover'd; for as much as no man hitherto is known to have pass'd beyond that. Our Mariners generally conceive it an Island; the Dutch only say, that they believe the Land to reach more North, because the Ice they found was not broken and floating as in the Sea, but firm and stable, as continued to the shoar. The South part of it looks towards the Promontories of *Finland* and *Lapland*, *North-Cape*, *North-Kin*, &c. The next Land on the West, is the large Country of *Greenland*, and *Nova Zembla* on the East; but these at so vast a distance, that they cannot be reckon'd as its confines or neighbours.

the Discovery of Greenland.

The Dutch attribute the first discovery of it to three of their own Pilots, and have given most of the names to the Creeks and Promontories according to their own fancy. Which diligence had our men used from time to time, as also been careful to make Charts, as our industrious Neighbours oblige their Shipmasters to do; divers discoveries had been asserted to this Nation, which are now almost disputed from us. The Dutch gave names (saith Purchas upon this very occasion) to places long before discovered by the English, as if themselves had been the finders. I shall instance only in these discoveries, which strangers (as you may see in *Hackluis*) attribute to us: But the Dutch, tho following our steps, endeavour to assert them to three of their own Pilots, ann. 1596, who searching for a passage to the *East-Indies*, light upon *Greenland*; these were *Jacob Heemskerck*, *William Barents*, and *John Cornelis Ryp*; what these men effected, will be best known by their own Journal, recorded by *Purchas*. June 7, 1696, they were in 74 Degrees, the water as green as grass, [by the way, it were worth enquiry, whether this be not the cause of the blue Ice, which is by every one noted as peculiar to these Coasts]. June 9, they were upon *Cherry* or *Bear-Island*, in 74 Degrees and 13 Minutes, the variation of the needle was 13 Degrees. June 13, they departed thence North and by East 16 Dutch miles. June 14, 15, they continued their course 20 miles. June 16, 17, 18, they continued 30 miles. June 19, they saw land, at 80 Degrees and 11 Minutes, and sailed Southward upon the Western Coast till 79 deg. 30 m. where they found a good road, but could not

land because of Ice. June 20, they kill'd a mighty Bear, whose skin was 13 foot long; they found also a very good Haven, and good anchorage; on the East were two Islands, on the West a great Creek or a River, where they found many Geese (sitting upon their Eggs) of a perfect red colour, such as come once a year into some parts of *Holland*, (as it should seem) from this place. This land they supposed to be *Greenland*, the Compass varied 16 deg. June 22, they weigh'd Anchor, but were forced back with Ice. 25, They weigh'd Anchor again, and sail'd Southward, coasting till they enter'd into a River, whence they got not to Sea again till the 27th. 28, They kept on their course Southward, where there were so many Fowls that they flew against their Sails and Masts. 30, They were in 75 deg. July 1, they saw *Cherry* or *Bear-Island*. This is all that I can find concerning their voyage. To this I shall oppose two voyages, the first of Sir *Hugh Willoughby* 1552, the other of *Steven Burrows* 1556. The Dutch do not allow Sir *Hugh Willoughby* to have pass'd *Seynam*, which is in 70 deg. and that also in 1571. Yet Maps in their Maps they call a small Island by the name of *Willoughby's Land*; of which our men know nothing, except it be the same with *Hope Island*, a part of *Greenland*, as it is most likely; for the land he discover'd was a large Country, by the West-side whereof he sail'd some days together with a good wind, and therefore could not be a small Island; as they describe this, which *H. Hudson* could not find when he sought for it, (see a discourse of this in *Purchas's Pilgrim*, l. 3. c. 1. & 15. We have nothing of this voyage, but those imperfect or short notes which were found lying upon his table after his death; wherein it is contain'd; that they parted from *Seynam* Aug. 2. Aug. 14, they were 160 leagues North and Easterly from *Seynam*; they continued sailing till Sept. 14, when they landed on a country high, rocky, and uninhabited, from whence the cold and Ice forced them to return more South; which they did, till they reach'd *Arzina* a River in *Lapland*, where the next Spring they were all found frozen to death in their Ship. A few years after this, about 1556, we read of *Steven Burrows*, who searching a passage by the North-East unto the *Indies*, arriv'd in 112 deg. 25 min. of Longitude, and 76 of Latitude, and so sail'd to 80 deg. 11 min. and thence to *Nova Zembla*. Now this cannot be any known place but *Greenland*; which is also confirm'd, because the Land was desolate, the Ice of a blew colour, and great store of Fowls. All signs of *Greenland*. But from this time began a great and familiar trade from *England* to all those Northern Regions; and many trials made to discover the North-East passage; so that no question but that they landed many times upon *Greenland*, but took no notice of it, as neither did the Dutch till

till many years after, when a gainful fishing was there found out. Before which, none either gave it a name, took possession of it, or pretended to the discovery. This trade was managed for divers years by the *Baltic* company of *English* Merchants, as will appear by the story of it, which is this. In 1553, the King and Queen (*Philip* and *Mary*) gave a commission to certain Merchants to trade into *Russia*, and made them a corporation; who presently not only began a very brisk and profitable negotiation into those Northern Countries; but employed divers Ships for finding out a passage that way into the *Indies*. Particularly *Arthur Pet*, and *Charles Jackman* about the year 1580, rambled over all those Seas, and it is very probable they also were upon *Greenland*; but there is nothing particularly known concerning them. No nation but the *English* frequented those Northern Seas till 1578, that a *Dutch* Ship came to *Co-la*, and a year or two after, another to *St. Nicholas* by the solicitation of an *English* man that set himself against the company. Afterwards they crept in more and more, and in 1594 they employed *Barents* and others, to find out a passage to the *Indies*, and in 1596 the three *Dutch* Pilots aforementioned upon the same design; who first light upon *Bear-Island* and thence to *Greenland*. *Barents* separating from his company, sailed to the North-east of *Nova-Zembla*, where he lost his Ship, and himself died. In 1603 *Steven Benet* was employed, who went no farther than *Cherry-Island*, whence he brought some Lead Ore. In 1608 *Henry Hudson*, was sent forth to discover the *North-pole*, who went to 82 deg. (as did also *Thomas Maudslake* of *Hull*, 1612), but few divers Islands beyond that, and gave names to divers places upon *Greenland* formerly discovered; as *Wale-bay*, *Black-Island*, *Headland*, &c.

The company having been informed of the great number of Sea-horses, Morfies, and Whales, that frequented *Cherry-Island* and *Greenland*, first applied themselves with one or two Ships to the killing of Morfies; which in a short time made Morfies grow scarce. In the year therefore 1610, they set out the Ship *Amity*, *Jonas* Pool commander, for Whale-fishing; who fell upon the land formerly discovered though not regarded, and called it *Greenland*: whether because of the green Moss, wherewith it was covered, or mistaking it for *Greenland*, a Northern Country formerly discovered, or for some other reason I know not. He called it also King *James New-land*, but that name is grown obsolete. He also gave names to many of the most eminent places upon the west side of the Country; as to *Horn-Sound*, because there they found an Unicorn-horn; *Ice-Point*, *Bell-Point*, *Louise-Island*, *Black-Point*, *Cape-cold*, *Ice-Sound*, *Knatty-Point*, *East-Sound*, *Deer-Sound*. And in *Cross-Road*, 79 deg. 15 min. variation 18 deg. 16 min. northw. he seized upon the Country to the use of his Masters, by setting up a red Cross, and fastening a writing to it. There also he made some quantity of Oyl, and brought an Unicorn-horn (as they called it) from thence. And this was the first time that any benefit was made by the fishing of that place. In 1611 the company hired six *Baques*, expert Fishermen, and sent them with two Ships to fish for Whales in *Greenland*, where the first Oyl some of his company looking about the Harbours for Whales discovered in *Sir Thomas Smiths Bay* a great number of Morfies. The Master of one of the Ships taking with him some of his men, went thither and killed of them 500, and kept 1000 alive on Shore, which afterwards they let go. In 1612 two Ships more were sent,

when they killed seventeen Whales and some Morfies and made 180 tuns of oyl. This year the *Hollanders* came thither with one Ship, conducted by *Andrew Sallows* an *Englishman*. Another *English* Pilot brought thither also a *Spanish* Ship; but notwithstanding they made a good voyage. In 1613 the company sent thither seven Ships, who had a Patent to prohibit all strangers, except the *Muscovias* company, from frequenting those coasts. Yet they met with fifteen Dutch, *French*, *Flemish*, and some interlopers of our own Nation. To some the General gave liberty to fish; with others he made composition to have half (or part) of what they caught; others he drove away from the Country, after he had taken out the *English* that were in their Ships, though themselves also by that means were not so well laden as they might have been: this year they discovered *Hope-Island*, and other Islands to the West.

In 1614 they set out thirteen great Ships (besides two Pinnares) well armed; and the *Dutch* eighteen; whereof four men of war, who being stronger, stayed and fished there, as did our men also; but both parties made a poor voyage. The land they first discovered to 80 deg. by *Thos. Sherwin*, and *Will. Baffin*; and by others, divers Islands toward the East. They also took possession of several parts of the Country for the King, setting up a Cross and did the like in the same places for the Prince of *Orange*. In 1615, they set out two great Ships, and two Pinnares, which by reason of fourteen Sail sent by the *Hollanders*, came home not fully laden. This year the King of *Denmark* sent three Ships, men of war, with an *English* Pilot *James Vaders*, to demand Custom of the Ships for fishing upon his Island as he pretended; the which was denied, and the Island affirmed to belong to the King of *England*. In 1616 the company sent eight Sail of great Ships and two Pinnares, which being all appointed to several harbours returned with full lading, besides an overplus they left on Shore. This year they discovered *Edges-Island*, where they killed 1000 Morfies, and other Islands North-eastward; The *Hollanders* sent four Ships, who made a bad voyage.

In 1617 the *English* sent out fourteen Ships, and two pinnares; they departed from *Gravensend* April 24, and arrived at *Greenland*, May 28 where they met with eleven Sail of *Dutch* fishing in *Horn-faund*, whom they forced away and took from them what they had caught, as also the Kings Subjects, which were found in their Ships; this year they made 1900 tuns of Oyl. They sent also a small Ship north-eastward, which discovered *Whebe-Island* in 79 deg. and some other places; where they killed store of Morfies. This year the *Hall-mans* sent a Ship or two to *Greenland*, and pretended that it was their discovery; which was by oath in the Admiralty proved to be false. The *Dutch* also did the same. In 1518 an *Hall-man* meeting with some *Zelanders* animated them to go to *Greenland*, and in *Horn-faund* to make a voyage perforce; but the *English* chased them from thence, took some of their goods, besides some ordinance and ammunition, which was afterwards restored. A new company also of some *English*, *Scots*, and *Zelanders* procured a grant for letting forth Ships to those parts, which caused the former adventurers to join to them the *East-India* company; who set out that year thirteen Ships and two Pinnares, but were disappointed; and some of them fought with, robbed and worsted by a fleet of twenty-three Sail of *Zelanders*, who came thither on purpose: so that proved a very unfortunate voyage.

purpose: so that proved a very unfortunate voyage.

In 1619 nine Ships were sent, which by reason of the *Hollanders* being there before them, and driving away the Whales from the fishing places, made also a losing voyage. Besides another misfortune, for as one of their best Ships lay at anchor under a mountain, a great piece of a rock of Ice, broke off, and fell upon the Ship, killed divers, and wounded more, and so broke the Ship, that she was very difficultly fitted up to serve home; and when they came home, the *Dutch*, who had fully laden, so much undersold them, that they were very much discouraged, and gave over their trading thither; But Mr. *Ralph Freeman* with a few more of the companions still continued, and in 1620 set out seven Sail; which by reason of so many *Hollanders* and *Danes*, returned half laden. And in 1621 eight Ships went out, which, notwithstanding all the harm the *Dutch* did them, brought a reasonable good adventure of 1100 tuns of Oyl.

In 1622, nine Ships were sent, one whereof was wracked upon the Ice, the other brought home 1300 tuns of Oyl.

We find nothing worth relating till 1630, when the Company set out a Ship, commanded by *William Godley*, who landed in *Bell-faund*, and quickly made up his lading, sending for the Ship to come to take it in: the wind proved to be contrary, so the Master set on shore eight of his men to kill them some Deer; who took with them two Dogs, a Gun, two Lances, and a Tinder-box. The first day they killed fourteen Deer, but being weary, and the night coming on, they laid them down to sleep in the convenientest place they could find. The next day proved very foggy, and so much Ice was got betwixt the shoar and the Ship, that the Ship was forced to stand so far off into the Sea, that they lost the sight of her. So they resolved to hunt till they came to *Green-harbour*, where they would stay for their ship. In this passage they killed eight Deer more, with which they laded their Shallops, and came to *Green-harbour*; where when they arrived they found that the Ships were gone thence: they resolved therefore to hasten to *Bell-faund* to their Captain, and for the more speed they cast their Venison over-board into the Sea: so they failed all that night and the next day, but having no compass, they wandered to and again for long till the Ships were departed thence also. These eight persons seeing themselves in almost a desperate condition, resolved however not to be wanting to their own preservation, and therefore they presently went about to get provision for the long Winter. The first day they killed seven Deer and four Bears, the next six Deer; but the night coming upon them, and leaving their provision in their Shallops, there arose a very high wind, which sunk their Shallops, and in the morning they found a considerable part of their stores swimming by the shore, which with great labour and some danger they recovered, as also their Shallops; which by main force they haled upon the Shore. The next thing was to provide their habitation, for which purpose they made use of the tent wherein the Cooper used to work, which was made of Timber and boards covered with *Flemish* tile, which being unable to resist the cold, they built another tent or house within it twenty foot long and sixteen broad, and stowed the distance with earth, bones of fish, friture of Whales, as *Fowls*, *Plums*, *Beats*, *Mountains*, &c. Which he did, as may be supposed, in great part to satisfy the curiosity of several Gentlemen of the *Royal Society*, who intreated his diligence in answering such queries as they sent him. We shall omit such things

with the skins of Bears, Deer, and Foxes they had caught, besides pieces of old Sails they found there. Having accommodated these things, they went out again to search for more provision; and upon the Ice they found two Morfies sleeping, they killed them both, and roasted them in their tent, and eat them at leisure. Reviewing their provision, they found it insufficient to serve half the winter, and therefore they first limited themselves to one meal a day, and afterwards cut off one meal in a week more; and so many meals they fed upon the friture of the Whales, these they preserved for roasting and flowing it in their empty casks which they found there. Before they were well provided, they began to want light; for from October the fourteenth, till February the third, they had not the sight of the Sun; but in clear weather they wanted not the light of the Moon, which was a great advantage and consolation upon them. For looking out on a bright moon-shining day, they espied a great she-Bear with her Cubs coming towards the Tent; they fought with and killed her, but the Cubs escaped; they haled her into their Tent, and fed upon her twenty days: her flesh was tolerably pleasant and wholesome, but the Liver made their skins to peel off: which was also observed by the *Dutch* that wintered in *Nova-Zembla*. Many Bears afterwards came to visit them, at least forty, but they could kill no more than seven, one of which was at least six foot high. As the Sun and day began to appear, the *Fowls*, and Foxes began to come abroad, for which they set traps and springs. Of Fowls they took a vast number; and at several times they got about fifty Foxes, which they roasted, and found to be pleasant and wholesome food. The *Dutch* relation of their men that wintered in *Nova-Zembla* faith, that though they did not resist Bears flesh, yet Foxes they liked well, for by their flesh they were more relieved in their Scurvies. May the first, it being somewhat warm, they went abroad to seek provision, where they light of great quantities of Willows-eggs, which was a great refreshment to them: that day also came two *English* Ships into the Sound, which fell forth to seek them, and took them in, and brought them safe and found into *England*.

The effects of the cold upon them (the likeal-*The non-* to being testified by those of *William Barents* company that wintered in *Nova-Zembla*) are wonderful; cold, as that it raised blisters on their flesh, as if they had been burnt with fire; if they touched Iron as stuck to their fingers; whilst they fate by a great fire, their stockings burnt, yet their feet not sensible of heat, and their backs were frozen. Yet our men either had not such reason or will to complain as the *Dutch* in *Nova-Zembla*, whose Shoes froze as hard as horn to their feet, whose Sack was quite frozen; as likewise a Barrel of Water became perfect Ice in one night; that their Carpenter taking a nail out of his mouth, the skin and flesh followed glued to it with Ice. That they heated Stones at the fire to apply to their feet and other parts of their bodies in their Cabines, to hinder them from freezing; with many like miseries which I omit.

The last who hath brought us any news from *Frederick* this country, is *Frederick Martens* an *Hamburger*, Martens who set out from the *Elb*, April the fifth, 1671. *Voyage.* He hath printed a very large and accurate description both of the land and all things therein; as *Fowls*, *Plants*, *Beats*, *Mountains*, &c. Which he did, as may be supposed, in great part to satisfy the curiosity of several Gentlemen of the *Royal Society*, who intreated his diligence in answering such queries as they sent him. We shall omit such things

Thele Fins are that we call the Whale-bone
 and groweth in the upper jaw, on either side of
 his mouth, about three hundred of a fide, but the
 fhort ones are not regarded. The Ancients thought
 that he lived upon the froth of the Sea, which he
 traied, and as it were, churned by violent beat-
 ing upon the water with thele Fins, and at length
 warts fucked it up; and that becaufe many
 times they found his stomach quite empty. O-
 thers fay that he feeds upon fuch plants and weeds
 as he finds in the Sea, for they have found great
 quantity of fuch in his stomach; but it is more like-
 ly that his chieft meat are a certain fort of fmal
 Crabs, fome call them Sea-Beetles, and Sea-Spiders
 (whereof the Bays of that Sea are fo covered that
 they seem black with them) of which fometimes
 his Fins hang full, which afterwards he fucks in.
 Thele he purges continually, for they have
 found great Crabs themfelves, and also fome-
 times great quantities (in fome a Builde) of
 thole little Stones called *Oculi-Cancrorum*, in his
 stomach. That they devour not great Fishes it is
 manifef, becaufe their throat is fo very ftrait, nor
 able above a foot wide. The Female hath the
 natural part even or eight foot wide, (the young
 one being bigger than an Hoghead was firft
 brought forth) and the Male is equal to a little
 lar even or eight foot long; the builde forth he
 Fetus alive, and nourifhment in Milk, which is
 white and fweet, but taufing fomerwhat fity; he
 Teas, two in number, are as it were fceath'd in
 breatts, that they appear not till the young one
 comes to fuck. Thele fkins the ancients ufed
 infted of Ropes, as alfo for covering their Houfes
 and defence againft the cold; under the skin
 they call the *Blubber*, or *Adipe*, out of which
 they make
 B.

being cut into thin slices, and put into hot Copper the Oyl is melted the flesh is thrown away, the ribs are employed to make the houses of the Laps, Fins, Samojeds and the like, the other bones they burn. The Tail serves for a chopping block, whereupon to cut their blubber. For the manner of catching and ordering the Whale, it is this.

Whale-fishing.

When they have discovered him, which is by his spouting water, which they can discern at a great distance (though where they see plenty of those small Crabs, they have good hopes of finding the Whales) seldom fewer than two Shallops will man'd make towards him; and row to him to fear, that the Harpener hath opportunity to lance out his Harping-Iron, which he doth with all his force; but strikes not at adventure, (for some parts of him, his head particularly, are not vulnerable), but either upon a soft piece of flesh, which he hath near his spout, or under a Fin. The Boat as soon as wounded hails down to the bottom of the Sea, they still giving him more Rope, whoe of one end is fastened to the Harping-Iron, then they diligently watch his rising again, when with their lances they wound him in the belly and such places as are softest, and deep as they can; taking heed always that he strike not them or their boat with his tail. When they see him spout up blood, they know he draws towards his death, and that shortly after he turns up his white belly; which as soon as they spy, they hale him close to the Ship, and with great Knives slice his sides, raising the blubber from the flesh; which they do by fixing in it strong Iron Hooks made fast to a Ship rope, which by a pulley they lift up till they cut and loosen the blubber; many of these great flakes they put upon a rope, and so drag them to the Shore, where they are heaved up by a Crane, and laid upon the Tail of the Fish, cleft into small pieces, afterwards sliced thin like Trenchers, or put into the Cauldrons or Coppers, which becoming brown with the fire are called *Fritures*, are taken out and cast away as having yielded their Oyl. The Liquor then is laded out into a Boat half full of water, both to cool and cleanse it (by suffering all the filth to sink to the bottom) and thence by long Troughs, that it may be more cooled, conveyed into the Hogheads or other like vessels.

The Whale-bone.

The head which is at least one third of the whole Fish, is cut off, and tug'd as near the Shore as they can bring it, then hoisted up by a crane, and the Fins (*Bronchie, Pinnae*, or whatever you please to call them, their substance is like horn, but we call them Whale-bone), are cut out, dressed, and bound up by fifties; and the rest of the head, which yields Oyl, cut as the rest of the body. The tongue particularly, which being very great of the figure of a Wool-lack, is also fastened at both ends, and lifted up only in the middle (with which he spouteth up the water) and about eight tons weight, yielded from six to eleven Hogheads. One *Hudson* a *Diep-marin* in 1624 got twenty six Hogheads (*Caddes*) out of one tongue, and a hundred and twenty out of the body of one Whale.

The Whales enemies.

The Whale hath many enemies; 1. A kind of lowie or insect that eats through his skin to devour the fat; he hath on each side four feet, an head like an Acorn with four horns. 2. The *Saw-fish*, which hath a long Snout, on either side set with teeth like a Saw; he seldom gives over the Whale till he hath killed him; he eats up his tongue and nothing else. 3. The *Hoy*, from two to three fathoms long, round and small; a sharp snout and three rows of teeth in his mouth, with which he will bite great pieces out of the Whale, and sometimes eat up all the fat, the Fishermen have found Whales half devoured by them; they

are taken with a bait fastened to an Hook, with an Iron Chain, for a Rope they will presently sheer asunder.

The Whales, when the Sea begins to freeze, go Southward, dispersing themselves; some into the coast of *America*, some few this way, and many keep in the deep and wide Ocean, where the *Baffins*, who say that the Whales follow the lights, used to fish for them, before *Greenland* was discovered. And I have heard that the *Dutch* caught a Whale near *Japan*, that had sticking in her an Harping Iron lost at *Greenland*.

WILLOUGHBIES-ISLAND.

The *Dutch* had no way to take from *Sir Hugh Willoughby* the honour of first adventuring upon these Northern Coasts (which he did by the commission, and at the charges of King *Edward the sixth*, but at the advice and direction of the great Sea-man *Sebastian Cabot* Grand Pilot of *England*) but by bestowing on him an imaginary Title of an Island, which they call *Willoughbies-Island*, and which they place near *Nova-Zembla*. Besides what we have spoken to this matter in the description of *Greenland*; it may further be noted, that neither Captain *Edge*, who travelled those Seas so many times; nor *Mr. Seller*, nor any other *English* man that we know of, name any such Islands in their Maps, nor do any of the Journals of our Mariners, nor *H. Hudson*, who expressly went to look for it, mention any such place; and the latest *Dutch Map of Nova Zembla* (which is the nearest Country to that imaginary Island) set out 1678, makes not any mention of it; nor does *Sir H. Willoughby* seem to have say'd that way, which is East and by North from *Saimaan*; but (as his course towards North-east: nor doth the description he made of the Country agree to a small Island. All which being considered, *Mr. Purchas* with good reason several times affirmeth that *Willoughbies-Island* is no other than a conceit of the Cart-makers; and for such we shall let it pass till better informed.

NOVA-ZEMBLA.

Nova-Zembla is separated from the *Samoieds* Country by the Straits of *Waygates*, (or as the new Map calleth them, *Straet van Nassau*), it was first discovered by the *English* in 1556; and since visited by several both *English* and *Dutch*, who have attempted to find out a passage that way into the *Tartarian-Sea*, and so farther to *Catay*, *China*, *Japan*, &c. Yet notwithstanding all their endeavours, very little progress hath been made in that discovery; except you will say, that they discovered by *Edw. experience*, that though perhaps the Sea might be continued through those Straits, yet by reason of the very great hindrance, as well as danger, of the Ice, it is unpassable; or if in some warm Summers perhaps it might be failed, yet is the danger and trouble so great, that it is not worth the hazard and charges of the adventure. Especially since the miscarriage of that worthy Pilot *William Barents*, who out of confidence of the feasibility of the enterprise, adventured so far that his Ship was first hem'd in, and afterwards frozen and broken in the Ice: so that they were forced to winter upon the land, where the good man lost his life; of whose sufferings by cold I have before spoken. Only give me leave here to take notice of their particular observations of the setting and rising of the Sun, comparing them with others made

The length of their night.

made in *Greenland* by the *English*.

Our men that winter'd in *Greenland* 1630, lost the light of the Sun entirely, *Oct. 14*, and saw him not again till *Feb. 3*. Those that lay'd there in 1633, say, that *Oct. 5*, was the last day they saw the Sun, though they had a twilight, by which they could read, till the 17; on the 22 the Stars were plain to be seen all the 24 hours, and so continued all Winter. *Jan. 15*, they perceived for six or seven hours about noon, so much light as they could make shift to read by it. *Feb. 12*, they saw the light of the Sun upon the tops of the Mountains, and the next day his whole body. Those in *Greenland* in 1634, (who all perished there) left in writing, that the Sun disappear'd *Oct. 10*, and was seen again, *Feb. 14*. Those that winter'd in *Nova-Zembla* in 1596, in 76 deg. on Nov. 2. (new stile, faith *Purchas*, i. e. *Oct. 23*.) saw the Sun not fully above the earth, it rose South-South-East, and set South-South-West; after *Nov. 4*, (*Oct. 25*.) they saw the Sun no more; but the Moon continued as long as the was in highest degrees to be seen day and night. *Jan. 24*, they saw the edge of the Sun above the horizon; and 27, he totally appear'd and he then was in 5 deg. 25 min. of *Aquarius*. They farther observed, that by an *Ephemerides*, which they carried with them, at *Venice* would be a conjunction of the Moon and *Jupiter* that very day at one a Clock in the morning, which they in *Nova-Zembla* saw at 6, in *Tau-ra*. So that the difference of Longitude of these two places, is 5 hours, which answers to 75 deg. *Venice* therefore being accounted in the Longitude of 37 deg. 25 min. *Nova-Zembla* must be 112 deg. 23 min. And from thence it is no more than 60 deg. to *Cape Tabin*, the uttermost point of *Tartary*.

What to say to these observations, so contrary to all Astronomers, I know not: had *Barents* made them, they would have staggered us more; but since the Observer hath so grossly mistaken in the Latitude of the place, which he always places in 76 deg. inasmuch that *Hudson* faith, that that place is by them laid 100 far North much out of its place, to what end he knows not, we have the less reason to assent to him in the rest; besides to place *Nova-Zembla* in 76, is to make it in the same Latitude as *Horn-Sound* in *Greenland*, which no man ever affirmed. Nor can any one imagine that the refraction of the Sun-beams can cause such a difference; for *Mr. Baffins* observation, which he made in *Greenland*, from the Air whereof that in *Nova-Zembla* cannot much differ, will not admit any thing like that difference; which take in his own words: *Beholding it about a north-north-east Sun, was at the lowest, one fifth of his body was above the Horizon, and four fifths below; his declination for that instant was 10 deg. 35 min. north, being at noon in 2 deg. 7 min. of Virgo, his daily motion was 38 min. whole half being 19, to be added to the former, (because it was at twelve hours before noon) his place at that instant was 2 deg. 26 min. of Virgo, whose declination is (as before) 10 deg. 35 min. The Latitude of the place was 78 deg. 47 min. whose complement was 11 deg. 13 min. the declination being subtracted from the complement of the elevation of the Pole leaveth 38 min. four fifths of which is 12 min. being subtracted from 38, leaveth 26 min. for the refraction, which is more or less according to the thickness or thinness of the air.*

Situation But to return to *Nova-Zembla*: There is lately *Nova* a new Chart of *Nova-Zembla* put out in *Holland*, which separates it from *Samoiedia* by the Straights of *Mejan*, or *Freem Waygates*, but makes the North of it (wherein *Barents* in 1595 wintered) in the same parallel with part of *Greenland*; and that

Nova-Zembla is inhabited with people like to in clothing, stature, and manner of life to the *Samoieds*; that they are Idolaters, as many of the others, *Barbarous &c.* Another Map joyned with the former also continues *Greenland* to *Greenland* on the South-west corner, which also is contrary to all other Relations; but the Map of *Nova-Zembla* is manifestly calculated out of the observations of them that wintered there with *W. Barents*; and therefore I shall neither disparage nor approve it: further trial may determine it.

A late Traveller a *French-man*, Chyrurgeon in a *Danish* Ship, faith, That *Nova-Zembla* is a Continent joyned on the South to *Samoiedia* by a ledge of Mountains called by him the *Pater-Noster-Mountains*, and on the North to *Greenland*, which is contrary both to this new Chart, and to the observations of all Mariners both *English* and *Dutch*. He faith also that he, with others, went ashore upon *Nova-Zembla*, and brought a way some of the inhabitants into *Denmark*; that they were more barbarous than any other nation he had ever seen. A *Greenland-Man* (in the Chron. of *Ulfeld*) faith, that the *Pignies* inhabited *Nova-Zembla*; this Traveller indeed faith, they were but short, trust'd persons, but not so little as to deserve the name of *Pignies*, nor indeed much lesser than his Countrymen the *Greenlanders* are described.

The *Dutch*, who wintered there, mention no other beasts than Bears, Foxes, and such other as live upon prey; for that, say they, there is neither Leaves nor Grass, for other Beasts to feed upon; but *Mr. Hudson* faith, that all the land they had seen of *Nova-Zembla* seemed pleasant; much high-land, and without Snow; in some places also green, and Deer feeding upon it, nor were all the high hills covered with Snow. But *Mr. Hudson* was there in Summer; and it is probable that, as soon as winter begins, the Deer be taken themselves to *Samoiedia*, or some other place, that Merchants, that have lived in *Russia*, say, *Fennic*.

Our Merchants, that have lived in *Russia*, say, that upon *Nova-Zembla* is a great lake wherein a wonderful number of Swans and Geese do breed, which moult their feathers about St. *Peters* day; and at that time the *Russies* go thither to gather their feathers, and to kill the Fowls, which they dry, and bring into their own Country for winter provision.

Both *English* and *Dutch* in their frequenting this coast have given names to several places. And it is a remarkable inconvenience that the *Dutch* very rarely make use of a name given by another nation; but had rather give new ones themselves; that the world may take them to be the great discoverers, and diligent observers.

In 73 d. was a land discovered by *H. Hudson*, and called *Hold-with-hope*, unknown, as he conceived, to any Christian till that time, and (as our late Navigators say) to any since.

CHEERT- and other ISLANDS.

Our men conceive *Greenland* to be broken Northern land, or a great number of Islands at least, very near to one another. On the West-side, they discovered as far as 82 deg. the most Northernly point they called *Point Purchas*, there they found very many Islands, which they thought not worthy to give names to, being careful only to take notice of those six or eight Harbours which were commodious for their sailing. On the East-side, they went no farther than 78 deg. because the *Dutch* disturbed their trading on that side. There are also many Islands, some of which are named, *Hope* as *Hope-Island*, discovered in 1613; which may *Island*.

N O R T H E R N I S L A N D S.

be that the Dutch call *Willoughby-land*, or *John Mayens-Iland*, though indeed it corresponds well to neither; but rather to the latter. It belongeth to *Greenland*, and is but a small Island, and lies North-east and South-west, whereas the Countrey *Sir H. Willoughby* landed upon was a large Countrey, (in as much as he layed many days by the side of it) and lies North and South, which must be *Greenland*. *Edges-Iland* was discovered 1616, by Capt. T. Edge, who had made that voyage ten times. *Wyches-Iland* (so call'd from a Gentleman of that name) was found out 1617, but there being nothing remarkable come to our knowledge concerning the, we pass them over. Only it is worth noting, that both the Whale and Morfis-fishing was known and practised 800 years ago, as appears by the Relation which *Other the Norwegian* made to his Lord Alfred King of *England*, where he also faith, that the *Morfis* were hunted for their teeth, which were mightily esteemed.

Edges-Iland.
Wyches-Iland.

Cherry-Iland.

Cherry-Iland, when first discovered I know not, but it received not its name, nor was known to be of any profit till 1602, when a Ship set out at the charges of *Sir Francis Cherry* touched upon it, and found there some Lead, and a Morfis tooth; but stayed not to fish, because the year was too far spent. However they called it (in honour of *Sir Francis Cherry*, for whose use they took possession of it) *Cherry-Iland*.

Morfis-fishing.

In 1604, a Ship fell fail (Mr. *Welden* the Merchant, and *Steven Benner* the Master) from *London*, April 15, and arrived at *Cola in Lapland* May 1; they stayed in *Lapland* till July 1, and July 8 they came in sight of *Cherry*; and they came to an Anchor on the South-fourth-east side, but, because of the stream, could not land: so that they failed round about the Shore, and at length anchored two miles from the Shore. Going on land one of them with his Gun killed as many Fowl as almost laden their Boat. July 9, they found on Shore nothing but store of Foxes; that part of the Island was in 74 deg. 45 min. July 10 they weighed Anchor and stood into another Bay, and came to anchor in eight fathoms, where they saw an incredible number of Morfis swimming in the Sea. Coming to Shore, they espied a vast company of them lying on the ground, they shot at them with three Guns they carried with them, but with all their weapons they could kill but fifteen of above 1000 that lay there like Hogs huddling together on heaps, but they found as many teeth as filled an Hoghead. Before the 12th, they killed near 100 more, making use only of their teeth.

In 1605, the same persons went again, arriving there July 2, they went on Shore, and July 6, flew abundance of Morfis, and not only with Shot, as they did the year before, but with Lances destructively used directing them to certain places of their bodies; they began also to boil their Blubber, and made 11 Tuns of Oyl, (5 of their belies will yield one Hoghead,) and abundance of Teeth. Here also they found a Lead-mine under *Moun-siffery*, and brought away about 30 Tun of the Ore.

In 1606, the same Ship with the same persons went sent again, and landed July 3, in 74 deg. 55 min. where they stayed till the Ice was all cleared; for the Morfis will not come to Shore till the Ice be all vanished, where at one time in six hours, they flew betwixt 7 and 800 Morfis, and 2 great Bears; they made 22 Tuns of Oyl, and 3 Hogheads of Teeth.

In 1608, June 21, was so hot that the melted Pitch run down the sides of their Ship: in 7 hours time they flew above 900 Morfis, making 31 Tuns of Oyl and above 2 Hogheads of Teeth, besides 40 more. They took alive into their Ship,

2 young Morfis a Male and Female, the Female died, the Male lived 10 weeks in *England*; where they taught it many things.

In 1610, at another voyage with two Ships they killed many Bears, and saw divers young ones, no bigger than young Lambs, very game-some and lusty; they brought two of them into *England*. Much Fowl also they flew, and many Seals; and June 16, let up an Ensign in token of possession of the Island for the *Majesties* Company: in *Gull-Iland* they found three Lead-mines, and a Coal-mine on the North side of the Island. Three Ships more also came to fish at *Cherry-Iland*. Three killed 500 Morfis at one time, at other times near 300 more, one man killing forty with his lance at one days hunting.

The Morfis, Walrus, Horse-whale, Rofmarus, or Sea-horse, (for so he is by the Ancients often called, though of late they have discovered another Fifth not unlike him, with straight teeth, which they call the Sea-horse) hath a Skin like a Sea-calf, (with short and sad yellow fur) a mouth like a Lion: if any, hardly discernable, ears, yet they hear well, and are frightened with noise; (which also is said of the Whale, that he is driven away with the sound of a Trumpet,) large breast, short thighs, four feet, and upon each foot 5 Toes with short sharp Nails, with which they climb the Ice; and as large as a great Ox, having a great femicircular Tusk growing on each side of their upper jaw, which are very much valued, especially by the Northern people, partly for their uses in medicines, as to make cramp-rings, (which they make also of the bristles upon his cheeks) to resist poison, and other malignant diseases, wherein they are at least equal to that called the Unicorn-horn; but more for their beauty, which is equal to, if not surpassing, Ivory. The heaviness of it, makes it much sought after for handles of Swords. Their skins being dressed are thicker than two Ox-hides, yet light and excellent to make Targets against Darts and Arrows of the Savages. They feed upon Fish and Herbs, and sleep, if there be Ice, upon that; where if (surprised, the female calls her young ones (of which she hath commonly two at a time) into the Sea, and herself after them, (swimming away with them in her arms; and if provoked, after the hatch secured them, returning many times to set upon the Boat, into which if she can fasten her teeth, she will easily sink it. But if they be farther from the Water they all rise up together and with their weight and force falling upon the Ice endeavour to break it: as they did when surprised by *Jonas Pool* in 1610, where himself and divers of his men escaped drowning very narrowly; one of them being in the Sea, the Morfis set upon him with their teeth, but with very great labour and hazard of his company he escaped death, though force wounded. Frequently also they sleep on the Shore, and if they have convenience, upon an high and steep place, they always go in great companies, and set one to keep watch, which if surprised a sleep, 'tis an easy matter to kill all the rest, but if he give warning by grunting, they clap their hinder feet under their two tusks, and so roll into the Sea. But if they be caught on plain ground, yet are they hardly slain, being both strong and fierce, and all hasting one way to the water. The Dutch at first were very much troubled to kill them, their Shot the beast valued not much, their Hatchets and Half-pikes would not pierce them, nor did they think they could be killed, except struck with great force in the midst of the forehead. The first time they set upon them, of 200 they could not kill one, but went for their Ordinance to shoot them. Our men after a little experience found the way to dispatch them with

Morfis.

N O R T H E R N I S L A N D S.

with Javelins, as is before rehearsed.

Some imagine this to be *John-Mayens-Iland*, but it seems rather that it is not; for the northernmost point of that is in 71 d. 23 m. whereas this is 74 d. 55 m. except the Dutch be not so accurate in their observations and calculations as were to be with, which I much suspect. *Novo-Zembla*. Besides *Cherry-Iland* is round, not frequented with Whales but Morfis. Our men also have travelled it on foot from North to South, which on *Mayens-Iland*, cannot be done; and though they tell many particulars of the place, yet they never mention the great *Beeren-beg*. *Hope-Iland* indeed is a long Island, lies much what as they say of *Mayens*, and hath been visited by the Whale-fishers, but it is more North than they place their Island. The itch of describing discoveries to themselves hath brought (as I fear) confusion both in this and many other matters of this nature.

JOHN MATENS-ISLAND.

John Mayens-Iland, so called from the name of the first Discoverer, (as the Dutch pretend) seems by the *English* to be called *Hope-Iland*, or if not, I know not whether the *English* have been upon it. It seems not to be of any great consequence, all that is spoken of it, being that it extends in length from South-west to North-east. The farther it floors out in length, the more contracted and narrower it grows in breadth; so that in the middle the distance is very small between both Shores. Before the Whale-fishing was removed to *Greenland*, in the Summer time this Island was much frequented by the Sea-men whom trade invited thither; and the Island was well known to most of the Northern adventurers of *Europe*; but since the Whales have deserted those Shores, and have removed their Sea-quarters farther to the North, the Sea-men and Fisher-men have been forced to follow their Prey to *Greenland*. For it seems the Whales, either weary of the place, or sensible of their own danger, do often change their Harbours. In the Spring time the western side of the Island is not so much enclosed with Ice, as that which lies in the North; where it runs out into the Sea, with a sharp point behind the *Mountain of Bears*; for on this side, all the year long, the Ice never removes from the Shore, above ten miles; and in the Spring time so besieges it, that there is no passage through it. For which reason the Mariners, who are bound for this Island, use all the care they can to avoid the Eastern, and to make directly to the Western Shore, there to lie while the fishing season continues; if by miscarriage they come upon the East-side, they are then forced to teach a compass about the North part of the Island, whereby they are not only exposed to the terrible winds that blow off from *Bears-Mountain*, but also to the dangers of the Floating Ice: for here the Sea flows from South to North, and ebbs from North to South. At the Northern end of the Island appears the *Bears-Mountain* of a prodigious height, and so perpendicular steep, that it is impossible to climb to the top of it. This Mountain from the Bears there frequently seen, called *Beerenberg* or the *Bears-Mountain*, at the bottom takes up the whole space between the Eastern and the Western Shore; on the North-side it leaves a little room for level ground to the Ocean; and being of prodigious height, may be decried 30 miles off at Sea.

The Sea-coast lies thus, 1. *Noords-boeck* or the *North-east Angle*, is the extreme point shooting out to

the North; 2. *Oosthoek* is the most Eastern point *Tibergh* mark'd 1. 2. 3. are three Mountains of Ice, or rather vast heaps of congealed Snow, which dissolved by the heat of the Sun, falls from the top of *Bears-Mountain*, but upon the Sun's setting freezes again. 3. *Zaydogh-boeck*, is the South-east Angle. From this point the Shore extends itself from East to West to a little Island, and then winds again to the West and South; in some places not passable by reason of its steepness, in others smooth enough. 4. *Cleyn Sand-bay* or *Little Sand-bay*, *Eyerland*, or *Eggland*, being certain Rocks full of Birds; here about a Musket shot from the Shore, the Sea is 60 fathom deep, and a little farther, the sounding line will not reach to the bottom. 5. *Groote Hoot-bay* or great wood-bay, by reason of the great pieces of rotten timber, that are there found. In this, which is the narrowest part of the Island, are certain Mountains not very steep, from the top whereof any person calling them that stand upon either Shore may be heard by both. 6. *Cleyn Hoot-bay*, or *Little Wood-bay*. 7. *Englyb Bay* and several others, to which the Dutch have given such names as they thought fit.

G R O N E L A N D.

Called also *Greenland*, *Grœnland*, and more The name anciently *Engroeland*, lies (as the Island and *finders* say) like an Half-moon about the North of *tinn*. their Countrey, at the distance of four days failing. But it seems not to lie so much East, but rather on the North of *America*. From *Cape Farewell* in 60 deg. 30 min. on the South, it is unknown to how many degrees in the North. The East and West are encompass'd by two great Oceans, but at what degrees of Longitude is not yet discovered. Only Mr. *Fotherby* found it near the Coast of *Greenland*, in 71 deg. and the South of *Greenland* to be above two hundred leagues.

It is said to have been discovered first by an Ancient Norwegian Gentleman, whose name was *Eric Rorick*, or *Red Head*, who having committed amurres in *Iceland*, to save his life, resolved to adventure to another Countrey, whereof he had heard some obscure flying reports. He succeeded so well, that he arrived in a safe Harbour called *Sandfjells*, lying between two Mountainous Promontories; the one upon an Island over against *Greenland*, which he called *Haidfjergin*, or White Shirt, because of the Snow upon it: the other on the Continent, called *Hærf Eric*. He winter'd in the Island; but when the season suffer'd, pass'd into the Continent: which because of its greenness and flourishing he called *Grœnland*. Thence he sent his Son to *Olaus Trugger* King of *Norway* to get his pardon, which was easily granted, when he was inform'd by him of this new discovery. Whereupon divers Gentlemen adventured to plant there; who multiplying not long after divided the whole Countrey into the Eastern and Western; and built two Cities, *Gardar* and *Albe*. In *Albe* was a Bishops See, and a Cathedral Church dedicated to *St. Anthony*. The Seal also of the Vice-Roy, sent thither from time to time by the *Norwegians*. They wrote also of a great Monastery called of *St. Thomas*, wherein was a Spring, whose water was so hot, that it dressed all their meat; and being conveyed into the Cells, and other Rooms, in pipes, heated all the Monastery as if it had been to many Stoves. They lay also, that this Monastery is built all of Pumice-stones, and that this hot water falling upon them, mixeth with the outer parts, and produces a sort of clammy matter, which serves instead of Lime.

But what the Norwegians conquered, or possessed in this Country, was an inconsiderable corner of that large Continent. Thenceforward mention a Nation whom they call *Skelligers*, to have inhabited in the middle of the Land, but what they were we know not. But whether their paucity exposed them to the mercilessness of the Natives: or whether it was an Epidemical disease, which they called the *black Plague*, which swept away, not only most of that Nation in *Groneland*, but also the Merchants and Mariners in *Norway* that maintained that traffic: or whether it were some other reason, which is now forgotten; so it is, that since 1349, little intelligence hath descended to us concerning *Groneland*, till seeking the North-west passage to *China*, occasioned more knowledge of it. In 1389, they said, that the King of *Denmark* sent a Fleet thither, with intention to re-establish his dominion in those parts; but that being call away, discouraged him from any further enterprise; till now of late *Christian IV.* renewed somewhat again that navigation, of which by and by. In 1406, the Bishop of *Drontheim* sent a Priest (called *Andreas*) to succeed *Henry* Bishop of *Garda*, if dead; if alive, to return and bring notice of the state of the Church there. But *Andreas* never came back; nor hath there been since any further care taken to supply Bishops, or maintain Christianity there. There is a relation in *Purchas's Pilgrim*, part 3, of one *Four Bay* a *Gronelander*, translated 1560 out of the *Norwegian* Language; which gives a sufficiently particular account of all the places in that Country inhabited by Christians; but nothing besides.

A. Zani. Afterwards another part of it is said to be discovered by *Antonio Zani*; the relation of whose adventures is at large in *Hackluis* third Volume. I shall not infer them, because not useful to our present purpose. And the there be grounds sufficient to make us doubt of some of these relations, yet not to reject them. *Gudbrandus Thorlacius*, an Ilandish Bishop, and discreet person faith, that the Ilandish Chronicles affirm, that they used formerly to trade to *Engroeland*, and that in the days of Popery that Country had Bishops. Now our men in all the places where they have landed, find none but Savages, and those also Idolaters, speaking a language different from all that ever they heard; though the Natives in their customs most resemble the *Laplenders*, of whom more in due place.

The occasion of our voyages to those Coasts, was to find out a way to *China*, &c. by the North-west; which had been fruitlessly sought toward the North-east.

The first whom we read to have searched the North-west for a passage, was *Martin Frobiher*, who in 1576, with two Barks coming to the height of 62 deg. found a great Lead, called by him *Frobiher Straits*, wherinto having failed 60 leagues, with main land on either side, returned. He found there a certain Oar, which he conceived to be of Gold; and the next year he made a second voyage to fetch a quantity of it, but it proving to be nothing but black Lead, answer'd no expectation; yet they found a Silver Mine, which lay so deep and fast in the Rocks, that they could not dig it. They melted Gold also, but in very small quantities, out of several fountains they found there upon *Smiths* Isle. They found also a dead fish, of about twelve foot long, not unlike in shape to a Porpoise, having an horn fix foot long (such as is commonly called *Unicom-horn*) growing out of his snout, which is still kept at *Windsor*. In 1578, he went out again upon a discovery; wherein passing as far as he thought

N O R T H E R N I S L A N D S .

good, he took possession of the Land in the name of Queen *Elizabeth*, calling it *Meta incognita*.

In 1583, Sir *Humphrey Gilbert* upon the fame Sir *Hans* design went to the great River of *St. Lawrence* in *Gilberts Canada*, took possession of the Country, and settled a fishing trade there. This voyage I suppose was made upon suggestion of a Greek Mariner, who assured some of our Nation, that himself had passed a great Strait, North of *Virginia*, from the West or South Ocean, and offer'd to be Pilot for the discovery, but dyed before he came into *England*.

In 1585, Mr. *John Davis* was employed with Mr. *De* two Barks to the same search. The first Land he viz. came to, he named the *Land of Desolation*, and is one part of *Groneland*; then he arrived in 64 deg. 15 min. in *Gilberts* Sound, where they found a great quantity of that Oar which *Frobiher* brought into *England*, and also *Lapis Specularis*. Thence they went to 66 deg. 40 min. to *Mount Raleigh*, *Tanels* Sound, &c. where they saw some few low shrubs, but nothing else worth noting.

In 1586, he made a second voyage to the same place, where he found amongst the Natives Copper Oar, as also black and red Copper. Thence they searched many places Westward, and returned with good hopes of discovering the desired passage.

In 1587, he made a third voyage, to 72 deg. 12 min. the compass varying to 82 deg. Westward, the Land they called *London-Cost*; and there they found an open Sea, and forty leagues between Land and Land, thinking this to be the most likely place to find the passage; and it was from him called *Fretum Davis*.

Thus from time to time proceeded the discovery of those Countries; but now not upon hopes of a passage to the Indies, but for the profit of trading; till Mr. *Hudson* in 1610, after he was satisfied that there was no passage North-easterly, was sent to make a trial here also. He proceeded an hundred leagues further than any before had done; and gave names to certain places, as *Desire-provokes*, *Isles of Gods mercies*, *Prince Henry's-Cape*, *King James's Cape*, *Queen Anne's-Cape*, and the like; but the Ice hindered him from going further, and the sedition of his men from returning home.

In 1612, *James Hall* returning into *England*, and *James* with him *William Bessin*, who discovered *Cockins Hall* Sound, in the height of 65 deg. 20 min. which differed in Longitude from *London* 60 deg. 30 min. Westward. They saw also the footing of a great Beatt, they supposed an Elk, or the like. *James Hall* was killed in the Boat by a Native, pretending to trade with them. They tried the Mine at *Cummings* River, which the *Danes* had digged before, and found it to be nothing worth. There were Rocks of very pure stone, finer and whiter than *Alabaster*; and *Angelica* growing plentifully in many places, which the Savages use to eat.

In 1615, Mr. *Bessin* was sent again; he found Mr. *De* *Fair-Pais* to differ in Longitude from *London* 61 74 deg. and 5 min. Westward. But the chief thing they discover'd was, that there was no passage in the North of *Davis Straits*; it being no other than a great Bay; but that profit might be made by fishing for Whales, Morfies, and Unicorns, of which there are good store.

In 1616, Mr. *Bessin* went again. In Sir *Tho. Smiths* Sound, 78 deg. Lat. their Compass varied 56 deg. Westward, the greatest variation that is any where known. Despairing to discover their desired North-west passage, they returned home, and since that we hear of no more voyages made from *England* upon that design.

The King of *Denmark* also, partly to advance by the the *Danes*

N O R T H E R N I S L A N D S .

the trading of his own, and partly to renew his ancient pretence to that country, if any thing should be discovered worth the claiming, whilst the *English* were busy in these discoveries, sent out two Ships and a Pinnace 1605, the Admiral was Capt. *John Cunningham* a Scot, *Goske Lindenaw* a noble *Dane*, was Vice-Admiral, the chief Pilots were *James Hall* and *John Knight*, *English* men. *Goske* arrived on some part of the country, where he traffick'd some small matters with the natives, took two of them, and returned into *Denmark*. The other two Ships arrived at *Cape Farewell*. Thence went to *Frobishers Straits*, gave *Danish* names to divers places, traded with the natives, of whom they brought away three, and found certain stones, in a place call'd *Cummings* Ford, out of an hundred pound of which, were extracted twenty-five ounces of fine silver.

In 1606, He sent again four Ships and a Pinnace, *Goske Lindenaw* Admiral, and *James Hall* Pilot-General; they brought away five of the natives.

In 1607, *James Hall* was sent again, but the Scamen mutining as soon as he came to the coast, brought the Ship back again into *Denmark*, without any thing done.

The King of *Denmark* sent out two Ships more, under *Christian Richardson* an *Holsteiner*, with *Norwegian* and *Icelandish* Mariners, who returned before they saw shore. More of their expeditions we know not, till 1619, when he sent out *John Munck* with two Ships. They arrived safe at *Cape Farewell*, 60 deg. 30 min. where their tackle was so frozen, and full of icicles, that they could not handle them; the next day was so hot, that they could not endure their clothes, but wrought in their shirts. The fourth part of *Hudsons Bay* he call'd *New Norway*; that part towards *Groneland*, *Mare Christianum*. He arriv'd in 62 deg. 1 min. where he winter'd, and call'd it *Muncks Winter-harbour*, and the country *New Denmark*, (it seems to be near *Diggs Island*). In that long winter he there endured, little of note happen'd, but that in April it rained, and then came thither vast quantities of fowls, of divers sorts, to breed in those quiet, undisturbed places. Of all his company, which was forty-six in one Ship, and sixteen in the Pinnace, scarce so many were left alive, as were able to bring the Pinnace thorow very horrid dangers to their own country.

In 1636, The *Gronelandish* Society at *Copenhagen*, sent two Ships; which arrived at *Fretum Davis*, near to which the Pilot found a black sand, which he conceived to contain considerable quantity of Gold; wherewith he freighted his Ship, neglecting further discovery. Returning to *Denmark*, and his Sand, after examination being found to contain no Gold at all, he was so severely blamed by the President of the Society, and so ashamed to be mistaken, that he dyed with grief. And since that nothing more known of any adventures that way from *Denmark*.

If any one desire to know what became of the eight *Gronelanders*, brought at several times into *Denmark*; the account is this: The King commanded great care should be taken of them, appointed certain persons to attend them, to give them liberty enough, so as they prevented their escape. No necessary or convenience was wanting; their food such as they could eat, milk, butter, cheese, flesh, and fish, but raw. They could eat no bread, nor boild meat, but nothing so much abhor'd by them as wine, or brandy. Their pleasantest beverage was train-oil. But whatever was done to, or for them, could never take away that melancholy and

chagrin, which they continually lived in for the want of their beloved country. They could never be brought to learn much of the *Danish* language, or to apprehend any thing of Christian Religion. Three of them were sent back towards their own country 1606, the most towards and hopeful, who might serve for interpreters and brokers to the *Danes*; but two of them, *Oxo* and *Oney*, died in the Ship, and the third (because the *Danes* durst not land, or trade, by reason of the great numbers of natives that appear'd in arms on the coast, ready to revenge them that had been before carried away) was brought back into *Denmark*, to his former treatment. An Ambassador arriving there from *Spain*, the King was pleased to send him those Savages, and their dexterity in rowing, which was by all the spectators admired. The Ambassador sending them money, one of them had the courage to buy him clothes after the *Danish* fashion, got a feather in his cap, boots and spurs, and all things *ala cavalere*; he came also to the King, and desired to serve him; but this return was quickly decay'd, and the poor man returned to his sadness and complaints. Some of them endeavour'd to get to Sea in their little boats, but being retrieved, dyed of melancholy. Two lived divers years at *Koldingen* in *Jutland*, where they were employed in diving for Pearl-Mufcles; in which, their skill and dexterity was such, that every one that saw them, believed they had practis'd the same employment in their own country. Such success they had, that the Governor promised himself great profit thereby; and that in a short time he should sell pearls by the quart, if they continued. But his covetousness destroyed his gain; for not content with what they filled in summer, he also compelled them under the ice in winter time; where one of them fell into such a disease from the cold so contracted, that he dyed. After whose death the other never enjoyed himself; but finding an opportunity, he got his little Boat, and before he was overtaken, got to the main Sea. But being brought back, they represented to him, the impossibility of his ever getting home to *Groneland*; but he heighited their advice, and told them, that he intended to go northward so far, and when he was there the stars would direct him into his own country.

The country is mostly all high-land and *The Soil*, mountains, cover'd with snow all the year, but &c. the southern parts more than the northern. They have very little or no wood growing there, except some few bushes, and not many plants or herbs; consequently, not many beasts there nourished; but their chief subsistence is upon fishing. There are divers mountains, which promise rich mines of metal: and some have been found to contain it actually, others only to make a shew. The inhabitants know neither sowing nor planting; tho the soil seem'd to be fertile and pleasant, especially between the mountains. The northern parts, by reason of the terrible ice and cold are wholly undiscovered; the southern consist of many Islands, different in shapes and bignesses; which seems to be the reason, that in these Seas are many and various strong currents, and (as *Four Bay* faith) very many dangerous whirlpools towards the west and north; none of which however have been found by our Mariners. The country seems much subject to earthquakes, else very healthful; only it was observed, that those who went thither infected with any Venereal disease, grew worse immediately, and could not be cured. Which they attributed to the purity of the air, perhaps they might have done it more rationally to the cold.

Beasts.

Toor Bory speaks much also of their great numbers of Cows and Sheep; but our men found no beasts there, but Bears, Foxes (very many of which are black), Rain-Deer, and Dogs, whereof are two sorts, a bigger, which they use to draw their sleds; and a lesser, which they feed for their tables. Our men observed this peculiarity both in their Foxes and Dogs, that their pizzles were of bone. Tho' it is very likely, that there are the same sorts which are in *Lapland* and *Samioides*; but our men have not searched any more than the shores, both because of their short stay, and the treachery of the inhabitants.

Fishes.

Of Fishes there is great both plenty and variety, Whales, Seals, Dog-fish; but in these are caught the greatest quantity of *Sea-Unicorns*, whose horns are so much esteemed, and kept as rarities in the Cabinets of Princes. The natives here are so well stored with it, that they have sufficient both for truck, and their own use. They make of them (besides other utensils) swords, and heads for their darts and arrows; which they work and grind with stones, till they make them as sharp-piercing as ours. This horn grows in the snout of the fish, and is his weapon, wherewith he fears not to fight the Whale; and to assault, and sometimes endanger a Ship. The fish it self is as large as an Ox, very strong, swift, and hard to be caught, except left on the shore by the tide, or entangled by the weeds.

Fowls.

Fowls are here in great abundance and variety. Our men have seen those they call *Besigeese*, or such as once a year come to breed in the *Befs*, a famous rock or Island near *Edinburgh*. The natives also have a very great art and dexterity in making and setting snares and springes to catch them; which they do chiefly for their skins and feathers. Two or three of our men, with their guns, killed in one day fifteen hundred, and found them worse tasted, but better clothed than those of the same kind in these countries; they could not eat them till stayed, their skins being very thick, tough, and more covered with feathers; which also were not easily plucked off; which is the reason that the natives dress their skins as they do those of beasts, and Seals, and make garments of them; using them to all purposes like other furs; with the feathers outward in summer, inward in winter: which is also observed in all other cold countries, as well as *Groneland*.

Of the North-light.

All persons, that have been there, give a wonderful and strange account of a certain *North-light*, as they call it, not easily conceived by them who have not seen it. It appears usually about the time of the new Moon, and tho' only in the north, yet doth it enlighten the whole country; sometimes also *Norway*, *Iceland*, and even these regions of ours, as *Galsendus* (*vita Presb.* & *exercit.* In *Dostoren Flad*) saith, himself observed, and at large describes. Nor should I much doubt to affirm, that it is that which is sometimes seen in *England*, and especially in the northern parts, call'd *Streaming*. It is said to be like a great pillar (or beam) of fire, yet darting out rays and streams every way, moving also from place to place, and leaving behind it a mist or cloud; continuing also till the Sun-beams hide it.

Division of the Country.

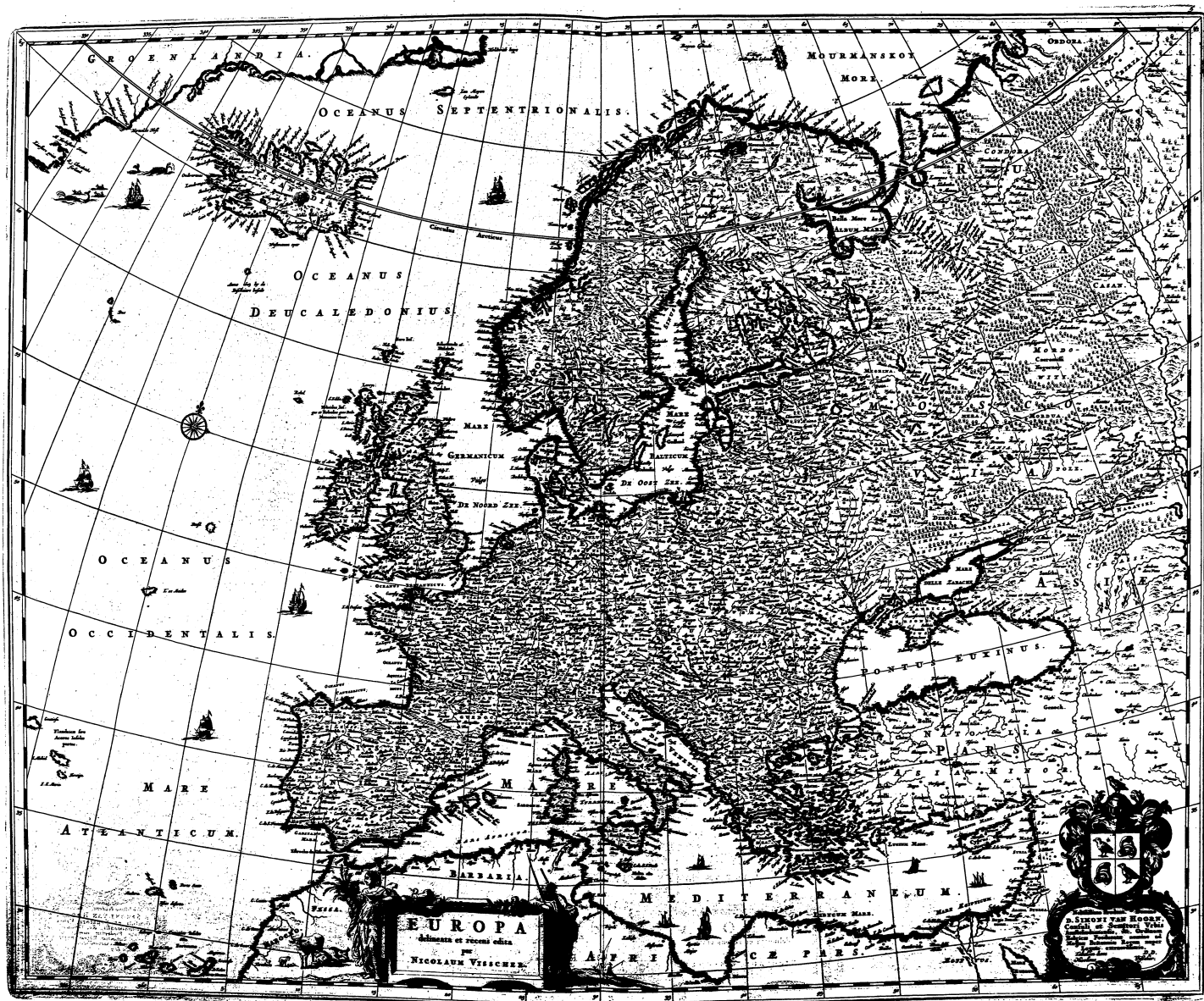
The country seems to be inhabited by divers nations, differing in habit, manners, and language. Those whom *James Hall* found and brought with him, differed much from those with whom *Gotske Lindenau* had to do. That part which the *Norwegians* are said to have anciently possessed, was an inconsiderable part of that whole country, and they found several nations there besides

themselves; govern'd by several Kings; tho' they write not, that they had wars one with another, but only against them. Our late discoverers in 66 deg. 50 min. found a country which the natives (as they could understand them) called *Sesamung*; who also said, that they had a great King, carried upon mens shoulders, and they called him *Cachico*. But more particulars than these, I find not.

Inhabitants.

The inhabitants are generally of a low stature, black hair, flat nos'd, broad fac'd, lips turned up, and of a ripe Olive colour, some of them also quite black. Their women (for their greater ornament doublets) stain their faces in blew, and sometimes in black streaks, which colour they let into the skin, by pricking it with a sharp bone, that it will never be taken nor worn out. In all things they resemble the *Samioids* and *Laplanders*. They are very active and strong, yet could some of our *English* run swifter, and leap farther than any of them; but they were hard enough for any of ours at wrastling. They are also very courageous, and sometimes desperate, for rather than be taken by our men, they would throw themselves down the rocks and mountains. Extremely thievish, treacherous, and revengeful they proved; nor could any kindness or fair dealing win them; but, as true Barbarians, never omitted any opportunity of fulfilling their desires; they would steal when they saw the Mariners look upon them. After they had been well used and treated at their tables, they would shoot at, sling stones, wound, and kill our men, if they could. Yet are they apprehensive enough, and quickly conceive yours, and express their own meaning. If they had not seen what was asked them, they winked, or cover'd their eyes; if they understood not, stop'd their ears, and the like. They delight exceedingly in musick, to which they would keep time both with their voice, hands, and feet: wonderful also affectionate one to another, and to their country. In one voyage there went a *Danish* Mariner, with black hair, flat nos'd, and other, tho' not very exact, resemblances of a *Gronelander*; as soon as they saw him, they came about him, kissed him, hung upon him, and shewed to him all possible demonstrations of kindness and affection. And those who were in *Denmark*, never enjoy'd themselves, nor had any content, but continually pined away, and languish'd with discontent for their condition, and love of their country. Their religion, such as it is, seems to be unto the Sun; for when our people invited them to conversation, bartering, &c. they held up their hands towards the Sun, and cried *Toten*, nor would they come near us, till our men had done the like. But *John Munck*, and divers others, having gone farther into the country, found images, such as we make of Devils, with horns, beaks, claws, cloven feet, &c. very ill made; Altars also, and quantities of bones of beasts, as of Deer, Foxes, Dogs, and the like, near unto them. They seem also, as all Idolaters, given to enchantments and forceries. Our men have seen them lying flat upon the earth, and muttering their prayers, or charms, into the ground, worshipping the Devil, whose proper habitation they conceive to be under them. In some diseases they tie a stick to a great stone, to which they pay their devotions; and if they can lift it up easily and lightly, they think their prayers are heard, and recovery granted. In winter they retire from the Sea-side, unto the warmer valleys, where they have their houses and towns; which are commonly caves at the foot of an hill,

round



round like an oven, close to one another; and passages in the inner parts from one to another; their doors, which are low and round, open to the fourth; and they dig trenches also to draw away the water that falls, or drains, from the hill. The entrance, and some part of their house stands without the cave, which they frame very handsomely and commodiously of the ribs of Whales join'd artificially at the top, and cover'd with Seals-skins. They raise also one part of their floor higher than another, which they strow with moss to sleep upon. But in their fishing time they have tents, which they remove from place to place in their larger Boats. They set up four poles, and cover them with skins; which serves very well in summer: when fishing is done, they return with them to their houses. Their manner of bartering, is to make two heaps, one of such things as they desire, the other of what they would part with; and they cease not to take away from the one or other, till the trade is balanced. The chiefest things of ours which they valued, were knives, needles, little pieces of iron, looking-glasses, &c. for these they would sell their bows and arrows, their boats, and strip themselves of their clothes, but never, like some other Barbarians, sell their wives and children.

Their
Clothing.

Their clothing is either of birds skins, with the feathers and down upon them, or Seals, Dog-fish, or the like. Seals they use most in their fishing, because that fish there abounds, and are easily deceived, by seeing one clad in their own Livery: besides, that these kind of furs are not so apt to be wet, tho' dip'd in water. They wear the hair sides outward in summer, inward in winter, and in great colds carry two or more suits one upon another. They dress their skins very well, making them dry, soft, and durable, and sew them also very strong with sinews of beasts, and needles made of fish-bones.

Their
Boats.

But in nothing do they shew so much art, as in their Boats or Canoes. They are made of that we call Whalebone, about an inch thick and broad, and these not set like ribs, but all along from prow to poop, fast sowed to one another with strong sinews, and cover'd over with Seals-skin. They are from ten to twenty foot long, and about two foot broad, made like a Weavers shuttle, sharp at both ends, so that he can row either way; and in making this pointedness they are of all things most curious, for therein consists the strength of their Vessel. In the middle of it are the ribs, both to keep the sides asunder, and to make the hole in the covering, wherein the rower sits. They have a deck made of the same materials, which is closely fasten'd to the sides, in the midst whereof is a round hole, as big as the middle of a man; so that when he goes to Sea, he sets himself in that hole, stretching out his feet forward into the hollow of the Boat; he stops up the hole so close with his frock, or loose upper garment, that no water can enter, tho' it were in the bottom of the Sea. His frock is strait tyed at the hand-wrists, and to his neck, and his capouch sowed also close to it; so that if the Boat be overturned or overwhelmed in the Sea, he rises up again without any wet either upon his skin or in his Boat. They have but one oar, which is about six foot long, with a paddle six inches broad at either end, this serves him both to bal-

lance his Boat, and move it; which he doth with that incredible celerity, that one of our Boats with ten oars is not able to keep company with them; the *Danish* relation saith, that they rowed so swift, that they even dazzled the eyes of the spectators; and tho' they crossed frequently, yet never interfered or hit one another.

Their
Fishing.

Their fishing ordinarily is darting; their darts are long, strongly barbed, and at the other end have bladders fastned to them, that when they have struck the fish, he may spend himself with struggling to get under water, which yet he cannot do, and so is easily taken.

Besides these, they have greater Boats for the removing their tents and other utensils, as also to carry their fish they have caught to their houses; these are thirty and forty foot long, and have sometimes ten, and sometimes more seats for rowers. Cardinal *Bembus* (in his *Venetian History*) saith, that in his time one of these, with seven persons in it, was by storm cast upon the coast of *Britany*. I know not whether it be worth mentioning, that they have Kettles and Pans made of stone (some say of Load-stone) that endures the fire wonderfully, but not having tools fit to hollow them sufficiently, they make up the edges of Whalebone.

FRESLAND, or FRIESELAND,

Leth in 60 deg. more westerly than any part of Europe; distant from *Iceland* leagues. It is reported in bigness not to be much lesser than *England*; a ragged and high land, the mountains cover'd with snow, and the coast so full of drift ice, that it is almost inaccessible.

Its Disco-
very.

It was first discovered to us by *Nicolaus* and *Antonio Zani*, two *Venetian* Gentlemen that were here shipwreck'd. They describe the inhabitants to be good Christians, very civil, and to be govern'd by a great Lord, whose name was *Zichmay*, whose mighty conquests, and strange accidents, may be read in *Hackluit*. It is not our business to write or repeat romances. Those men whom our Seamen (touching there accidentally) saw, were like in all things to the *Gronelanders*, both in features of body, and manner of living, as much as they could judge; so like, that many of them thought it continued to *Groneland*; in which opinion also they were confirm'd by the multitudes of the Islands of ice, which coming from the north, argued land to be that way: for many of our Mariners hold, that salt water doth not freeze, but that all the ice they find in the Sea comes from the Bays and mouths of fresh water Rivers; for thence it self is sweet, and fresh being dissolved, and serves to all purposes as well as spring or river water. Besides, the salt Sea (they say) is always in motion, and so cannot freeze. But the *Dutch*, who wintered in *Nova Zembla*, took notice that the salt water freez'd, and that two inches thick in one night.

There seems to be good fishing every where upon the coast. In their soundings they brought up a sort of pale Coral, and little stones clear as Chrytal. They call'd it *West England*, and one of the highest mountains they called *Charing-Croft*.

EUROPE

The peopling of the world after the Flood.



THE Holy Scripture (a Monument ancient, and of greater authority than any among the Heathens) declares the whole earth after the Flood to have been overpread by the sons of Noah. *Cham's* posterity seems to have peopled

Africa, and some parts of the adjoining Continent; yet not so universally, but that divers Colonies were there planted, both of the sons of *Sem* and *Japhet*. The posterities of *Sem* and *Japhet* were to intermingle, that even anciently, much less in these later times, they could not be any exact distinguishing of their limits. Tho the common opinion is, that *Japhet's* sons inhabited the greatest part of *Europe*. We must therefore omit this division, for want of evidence, and content our selves with that of the Ancients, dividing the then known world into *Europe*, *Asia*, and *Africa*; the modern discoveries have added

The ancient division of the world.

America. Now when this division of the Earth into *Europe*, *Asia*, and *Africa*, was first instituted, as also the reasons of it, and of the impositions of the names, is to us utterly unknown. That it is very ancient, appears by *Herodotus*, the first credible Historian that we have of the Heathens; and from what he says in his fourth Book, it may be easily collected, that even in his time, tho the names were universally received, yet the reasons of them were not known. It should seem however, that the division was made by the *Greeks*, or by some neighbours to those Seas; because to them, and as far as their knowledge reach'd, it seems very proper and useful. The bounds of *Europe* are conveniently stated, as to them, but in other respects the division seems not so rational; for *Asia* is much bigger than both the other; not is *Europe* an equal balance for *Africa*: but *Europe* being least known to them, and seeming a vast territory, perhaps they might think that the whole Earth was not large enough to contain more than three such proportions. Besides the Regions within both the Polar Circles seem not to be comprehended under any of these parts; and tho the limits betwixt *Europe* and *Asia* seem to be well determined as far as *Pelus Meotis*, yet are they beyond that (which is the greater part) not so distinctly constituted by any natural limits, nor any other certainty. However tho perhaps the division of the Astronomers into Zones, Climates, &c. may seem more accurate, yet is this, to us especially (who consider not the spaces of ground only, but the differences of Nations also and habitations) much more commodious, and therefore we shall follow it in these discourses, beginning first with *Europe*.

Europe.

Europe, tho acknowledged the least of the four parts of the world, yet in many respects is by learned men preferred before the rest. *Strabo*, and after him many other Geographers, have recommended it for the mildness of the air, the fertility of the soil, the multitude of navigable rivers, and the abundance of cattle, and all other things necessary or convenient for humane life; but more especially for the valour, ingenuity, and beauty of the inhabitants. To which may

be added, the magnificence of their Governments, the freedom of their Subjects, the equality of their Laws, the arts and industry of the people, and above all the sanctity of their Religion: which is accompanied with a greater proportion and variety of learning and knowledge than all the world besides could ever pretend to. Yet I do not perceive one part to have much advantage over another, except from the industry and skill of the inhabitants, which in one place is greater in one kind, in others more signal in another, and is able to convert a natural inconvenience to a greater pleasure and profit. All the advantages we know *Europe* to have above other parts of the world, are from its embracing Christianity so generally as it doth. For if we reflect upon the ancient Inhabitants before they were Christians, they were as barbarous, wild, faithless, brutish, as any the most inhumane Nations of *America*. Tho it cannot be denied, but that the civility of the *Romans*, possessors of the greatest part of *Europe*, was a great disposition to their receiving of Christianity; and that the extrem barbarousness of some, as well as the voluptuousness of other Nations, renders them less prepared to embrace it.

It is in vain for us to search into the origin of the Name, either from ancient fables, or modern conjectures, our first Historian, as we already touched, ingeniously confesseth, he could neither discover who was the first imposer of the name, nor for what reason it was given. Notwithstanding, if it may be lawful to adventure a conjecture grounded upon an observation of that excellent and ancient Historian *Thucydides*, in his first Book, it may probably have had its name from a Province called *Europa*, near the *Bosphorus Thracicus*; to which place was the shortest and most usual passage out of *Asia*, and where new Colonies arriving thrust forward the ancient Inhabitants: who from *Europa* peopling the rest of the Regions westward, might perhaps carry with them the name of the Country they quitted to make room for new plantations. However we must not conceal, that the learned are of divers judgments in this matter: For all those who hold *Europe* to be peopled by the posterity of *Japhet*, do as we now mention'd, maintain that the first planters came by Sea out of *Asia*; but those who rather imagine them the offspring of *Shem*, conceive that they came by land betwixt the *Caspian Sea*, and *Pelus Meotis*, thence thro *Tartary*, and ancient *Scythia*, into the Northern parts as far as *Scandia*, where their inundation being stopp'd by the vast Ocean, they overflow'd into the Southern parts, as *Britany*, *France*, *Germany*, *Thrace*, &c. And this opinion seems to be confirm'd by the tradition of the Northern Nations in their *Edda*, as the other pretension seems to be grounded upon Scripture: but as this makes not much use of any arguments but what are drawn from the familiarity of names, so that tradition of *Edda* seems to suppose those places inhabited before *Thor* or *Wodens* migration, which indeed seem to be but of later times, even after the *Trojan* war. Tho we suppose two *Wodens*, Princes of Colonies, the latter being about our *Saxons*. Methinks it is not improbable, that *Scandia*, *Sarmatia*, and thence as far as *Thrace*, were peopled from the North, the *Getæ* being originally

Its Name.

First Inhabitants.

Division.

Bounds.

Situation and extent.

Empires, &c.

Original languages.

nally *Goths*, and the *Daci Danes*, the *Sarmatae Scythians*; nor is there any memorial of Nations ancienter than these in those places. Besides, their languages better their original. But the same reasons seem not to hold concerning *Greece*, *Italy*, and all the South-part of *Europe*; nor is it likely, that they who lived in a continual prospect of *Europe*, even so near that they could swim over without the help of bladders, should so long forbear to seize upon a plentiful and rich Country, till they were prevented by those who successively peopled the Countries of the North, and round about the *Euxine Sea*. Wherefore it appears more probable, that the Southern *Europe* was first planted from the Maritime Coasts of *Asia*; which seem also to be inhabited by the posterity of *Japhet*.

It is bounded on the north by the *Frozen Sea*, on the west by the vast *Western Ocean*, on the south from *Africa* by the *Mediterranean*, and on the east from *Asia* by the *Archipelago*, and so on by the *Black Sea*, and *Pelus Meotis*, or the *Sea of Zabache*, and thence by the River *Tanais* to the most eastern winding thereof at the City *Tuja*, and thence by an imaginary line to the River *Oby*, and by that to the *Frozen Sea*.

Europe, as describ'd on the Globe, lies toward the Arctic Pole, mostly in the northern temperate Zone, under the fourth and the ninth Climates, between the seventh and seventeenth Parallels, which fall about ten degrees on this side the *Tropic of Cancer*, and three within the *Polar Circle*. It is extended in length from *Cape St. Vincent*, to the mouth of the River *Oby*, 71 deg. on the Equator, which reckoning 60 miles to a degree, come to 4260 *English* miles. The breadth of *Europe* from *Cape Matagan* in the *Morea*, to the most northern Country at the *Polar Circle*, contains about 44 deg. on the Meridian, which make about 2640 *English* miles.

Europe contains in it several Kingdoms, the greatest of which is the Empire of *Moscow* or *Russia* on the north-east, comprehending several Nations more to the north-east, scarce known to us; and on the east *Caton*, and other Countries by the River *Volga*; and part of *Lapland* on the north-west. Next to *Moscow* on the west lies the Kingdom of *Sweden*, containing great part of *Finland* on the east, and all to the mountains of *Norway* on the west. Again, to the east of *Europe*, by the *Caspian Sea*, lies the Country of the *Circassians*, and the Kingdom of the *Lesser Tartary*, and some other lesser Provinces. Thence south-west lies the Kingdom of *Poland*, extending it self thro the midst of *Europe* from the *Baltic* to the *Euxine Sea*, comprehending on the north *Prussia*, *Lithuania*, *Lifland*, on the east *Volinia*, *Podolia*, and southward *Moldavia*, *Wallachia*. Northwest of *Poland*, lies *Germany*, under several Princes, the Emperor being the chief. North of *Germany* lies the Kingdom of *Denmark*; to the west *Flanders*, or the *Low Countries*, under divers Governments; and north-west of them, the Kingdom of *Great Britain*, comprehending several Islands. South-west of *Germany* lies the Kingdom of *France*; more south, the Kingdom of *Spain*; full south *Italy*, under several Princes. South-east of *Germany* lies the greatest part of *European Turkey*, as *Hungary*, *Transylvania*, and more south *Croatia*, *Dalmatia*, and all *Greece*.

There are in *Europe*, three Empires, that of *Moscow*, the *Roman Empire*, and the Empire of the *Turks*. Ten Kingdoms, *Sweden*, *Denmark*, *Poland*, *Hungary*, *Bohemia*, *England*, *France*, *Spain*, *Portugal*, and the *Lesser Tartary*. Nine Commonwealths, and about forty Principalities; of which when we come to particular Countries.

The principal Languages spoken in the nor-

EUROPE.

them and western parts of *Europe*, may be reckoned these three, the ancient *Gothic*, the *Anglo-Saxon*, and the *Francic*, which also seem to be near akin, or to have great affinity one with another, and the latter to be made up of the two former.

From the *Gothic*, which differs little from the old *Greek*, are derived the ancient *Cimbria*, and the modern languages now spoken in *Sweden*, *Denmark*, *Norway*, *Iceland*.

The *Anglo-Saxon* may seem to have given birth to the *Belgic*, or *Low Dutch*, especially the ancient *Frisic*, and in great part the *English* and *Scotch*.

The *Francic* is compounded of the other two, and seems to be the same with the *Alamannic* or *Theotic*, whence the upper *German* language takes its original.

The ancient *British*, which seems also to be the *Celtish* or *Gaulish*, the dialects whereof are still spoken in some parts of *Great Britain*, and in *Britannia* in *France*. The *Cantabrig* also, or the language of the *Biscainers* in the northern mountains in *Spain*, is not much different. And likewise the *Irish*, if not it self a dialect of the old *Cimbria*, as it seems to be, must be accounted an original language.

The *Turkish* language is generally spoken in *European Turkey*, and also *Arabic* is well understood by their learned men, as being the language of the *Alkoran*; and is spoken in some of the Mountains of *Granada*.

The Inhabitants of the *Lesser Tartary*, that live between *Tanais* and the *Neiper*, speak the *Tartarian* language; as also the *Cossacs*, with some small difference.

The *Fins* and *Laplanders* seem to have divers languages, both from one another, and from all the rest.

The *Paisan-Liflanders* likewise have a different language to themselves.

The *Sclavonic* language, whether originally one or many, is still continued in divers Regions of *Europe*, as in the dominions of the Emperor of *Russia*, divers countries subject to the King of *Poland*, in some parts of *Hungary* (but the *Hungarian* tongue properly so call'd, is by the learned accounted an original language), *Bohemia*, and *Sclavonia*, but with greater difference than dialects of the same language use to be.

The ancient *Greek* seems to have been the mother of the old *Hetruscan*, *Oscan*, *Menapien*, and such others as were spoken anciently in *Italy*, as may appear by those few remainders still extant of them; and therefore also of the *Latin*, in the opinion of many learned, as the *Latin* is of the present *Italian*, *French*, *Spanish*, *Grifon*, and some other languages. The *Greek* it self, tho with great alteration, is still continued in the Continent and Islands of *Greece*, and some places near thereunto.

The glory of *Europe* is its Religion, which in

most parts of it is but one, tho diversly professed. *Greece*, with its Islands in the *Egean Sea*, and others as far as *Corfu*, as also some parts of *Croatia*, *Dalmatia*, together with *Moskova*, *Wallachia*, *Moldavia*, *Podolia*, *Polinia*, and some other parts of the dominions of *Poland*, with other neighbouring Countries, follow the *Greek Church*.

The *Latin Church* contains, 1. Those of the *Reform'd* Religion, and 2. Those of the *Roman*. 1. The *Reform'd Religion* is embraced in *Great Britain* and *Ireland*, and the lesser Islands belonging to the Crown of *England*. And with some diversity in *Sweden*, *Denmark*, *Holland*, and the rest of the *United Provinces*, and several parts of *Germany*, *Transylvania*, and some parts of the Kingdom of *Poland*.

D 2

2. The

2. The Roman Religion prevails in Italy, Spain, Portugal, France, Poland, and the greatest part of the German Empire, and other Countries. Mahometanism is professed in European Turkey, by the Great Turk and his Mussulmen.

Mountains.

The great ledge of Mountains that has its beginning at the great Western Ocean, first divides France and Spain by the name of the *Pirenean Hills*, and is thence continued thro the fourth parts of France, till it cover Italy, and is there call'd the Alps; a branch of which running thro the whole length of Italy, has the name of the *Apennine Mountains*; another branch is continued under divers names, as the *Rhetian-Hills*, thro the country, now called, of the *Grisons*. *Alpes, Graie, Norica, Julia, &c.* all which have now divers names according to the several countries thro which they pass. From Italy they continue thro *Stiria, Carinthia, Hungary, Transylvania, Moldavia* to the *Black Sea*; and branch out into divers other countries; of all which we shall treat more exactly in the particular descriptions.

The Mountains of the north are not much discover'd; one ledge of them is continued from the Baltic to the northern Ocean, dividing Norway from the neighbouring Nations. Those in the utmost north, anciently call'd *Riphei* and *Hyperborei*, have at this day lost those names, consequently they are unknown, except they be those which are by the inhabitants call'd *Welikicannopois*, i.e. *Cingulum mundi*, or the great *Rocky Girdle*; of which, as also of other Mountains not here mentioned, in their proper and particular Places.

Seas.

The Seas that coast Europe, are the *Northern and Western Ocean*, the *Mediterranean Sea*, and the *Euxin or Black Sea*, which also contain in them

several lesser Seas, Bays, Streights, &c. and have different names from the different shoars they wash, as *Mare Britannicum* or *Brittish Sea*, *Mare Germanicum* or *German Sea*, &c. and are therefore to be look'd upon by us as belonging to those Countries whence they derive their names.

We defer to speak of the Rivers that are comprehended in one Country, till we come to treat of that Country. The most noted which run thro divers Countries, are these: First, the *Danubius*, or *Danow*, which arising in the Alps, runs thro *Germany, Hungary, by Transylvania and Walachia*, into the *Euxine Sea*.

Next, the *Rhine*, which arising also in the Alps, not far from the head of the *Danow*, runs along by *Germany* and the *Low Countries* into the *Brittish Ocean*.

The next is *Boristhenes* or *Nieper*, which has its rise in the Confines of *Muscovy*, and runs thro *Lithuania, Volinia, &c.* into the *Euxine Sea*.

And lastly, *Dow* or *Tanis*, arising likewise in *Muscovy*, and running thro the lesser *Tartary*, and other adjoining Countries, falls into *Palus Meotis*.

We omit to speak of the *Volga*, till we come to *Asia*, to which it more properly belongs.

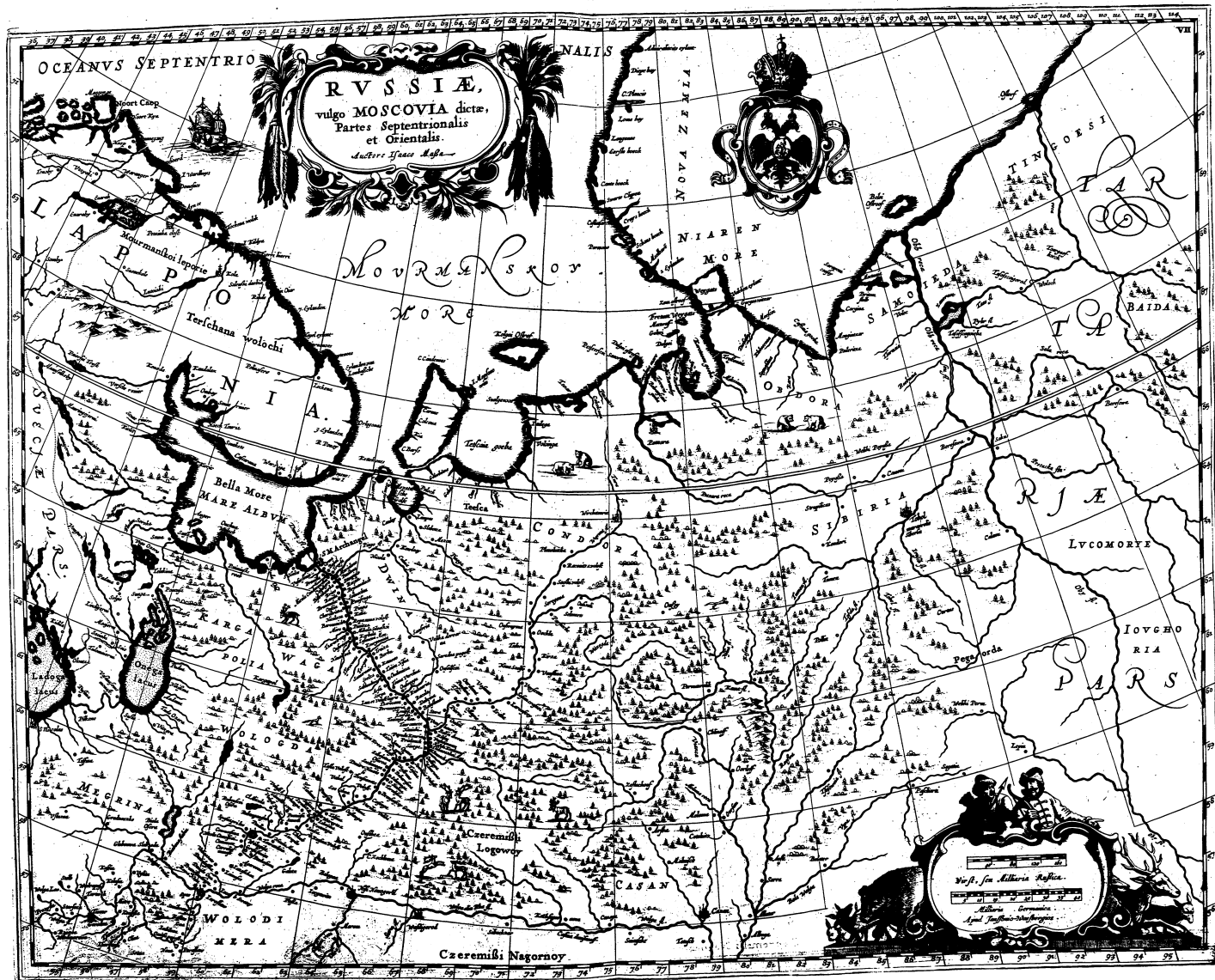
The dispositions of the Inhabitants cannot be easily reduc'd to one general character, varying according to the Religions, the Governments, the customary employments, and the divers temperature of the air and soil in which they live.

The Arts peculiar to, and most practis'd in *Europe*, and there invented, may be reckon'd *Printing, Painting, Statuary*, divers particulars in the Art of War and Navigation, and most especially in the learned and scholastic Sciences, in which the *Europeans* have advanced to a much greater perfection than either the *Asiatics* or the *Africans*.



MUSCOVY.





M U S C O V Y , O R R U S S I A .



*M*osch or Mosoc, the son of Japhet, is generally supposed to have peopled this Country; the chief reason I conceive to be the similitude of the name. We find also in *Strabo*, frequent mention of the *Moschi*, tho it be uncertain from him where their Country was. *Mela* placeth them near the *Caspian* Sea; *Pliny* near *Iberia*, which is now called *Georgia*; *Lucan*, and since him *Sidonius*, near the *Sarmatae*; and it seems, that *Sarmatia* was a name better known than *Russia*. So that the *Moschi* seem to be some of those many Nations at this time under, and that toward the south of the *Moscovitch* Empire. But the *Annals* of the Country acknowledg no other name they had anciently than *Russes*, tho some modern Latin-writers call them *Roxalano's*, quasi *Russo-Alanos*, but more *Ruthenes*, and their Nation *Russia*; which signifies dispersion or scattering, because they (tho very great and populous) yet lived dispersed, without certain government, in continual quarrels and dissensions one with another, till *Genareta Daniel*, or *Ivan* his son, surnamed *Caleta* or *Scrip* (because he always carried such an one at his girdle, with money to relieve such as were in necessity) gather'd and bound them together in one government and body. And for their better union, built amongst, and almost in the middle of them, the City *Mosco*, upon a River of that name; making it thenceforward the Metropolis of the Empire: from whence they begun to be call'd *Muscovites*, and by little and little have advanced themselves into a very great and famous Nation.

It is true, that the name of *Russes* was anciently further extended than now it ordinarily is, for the *Russes* were said to inhabit from the *Weissel* or *Volga*, and from the Black Sea to the Northern Ocean. And even yet the *Polonians* call a part of the Kingdom of *Poland* *Red Russia*; part also of the dominions belonging to *Lithuania*, *Black Russia*; as they say, because that people ordinarily wear white garments, but more universally white caps upon their heads. Of these alone in this place we are to treat.

The dominion of the Grand *Tzear* lies between 46 and 66 deg. of Latitude, that is, from *Astracan* to *Fretum Waygatz*, (tho part of his Empire lies some more South, and some more North) which allowing 60 miles to a degree, comes to 1260 *English* miles. And in Longitude from *Boresithenes* about 55 deg. to the *Volga* 80 deg. after the same rate about 1500 of the same miles, according to our best and newest Maps. The borders toward the North are the Frozen Sea, and some part of *Lapland*; on the South are the *Crim* and *Prescop-Tartars*; on the East we may account the *Volga* and the *Ob* to be his borders; and on the west, the dominions of the King of *Poland*, *Sueden*, and some part of *Lapland*. Tho these are

not exactly set down, yet they may serve for a general direction; more preciseness must be expected in the description of the several parts. But from this general notion, every one perceives that there must necessarily be a vast difference, as between the length of days (some being not sixteen hours, others six months long) so to heat and cold, betwixt the several parts of this country; and consequently as great variety of seasons, soils, fruits, and productions of the Earth; likewise also of habits, customs, diet, and even of the very dispositions and manners, as well as the figures of the inhabitants, upon which heat and cold have no small influence. So that we shall omit these general descriptions, and reserve what we find concerning the particulars to their proper places. And of the Government and Empire in general, it will be best treated of when we come to the Seat, or Metropolitane City of the Empire. Mean while we shall proceed to speak of the several Provinces, as they lye in order, beginning at the North-East part. But we must bespeak the Readers first, not to expect any exact description of the bounds and limits of each Province, for besides that no Author hath so narrowly look'd into those things; it should seem, that the Emperor observes not always the same Commissions, but enlarges or diminishes his Governments as himself pleaseth. But for the same reason neither have we an exact enumeration of the Provinces, some reckoning more, some fewer. Those who number them according to the titles of the Grand *Tzear*, cannot find their count; for those places mentioned in his title, are some of them small places and inconsiderable, some again contain more Provinces than one, and some such Governments as are not at this time under the Grand *Tzear*; but as they subdu'd any dominion, they united all the titles to their former. But of this only by the by. In this we shall follow the tract of ground, proceeding from North-East to North-West, and make use of the best information we can find.

And before we enter upon *Russia*, we shall take notice of a certain people, that take up a great share of these northern parts, not as inhabitants, nor as strangers, but as a wandering people, living upon hunting and prey, wherever they can find it. In this tract of ground we find the names, but nothing else, of divers Nations, as *Voglics*, *Hugrits*, *Volabits*, *Calami*, and the like; all whom the *Russes* (who till of late had not any distinct knowledge of them) called by the name of *Samoieds*, or *Self-eaters*; and since that, they have also called a great tract of land both of the West and East side of the River *Ob*, *Samoiedia*; I think erroneously, the *Samoieds* (as I said) not being a nation. But however it be,

We shall begin with these *Samoieds*, tho not Of the *Samoieds*. named amongst the Emperors Subjects, (except they be included in the title of Great Commander of *Siberia*, or *Obdoria*, neither of which is likely), partly because the *Muscovites* retain their ancient form in their title, partly because these people are only in part, and by their own free submission,

MUSCOVY.

mission under the *Tear*. Part continue still in their ancient ferocity, barbarism, and heathenishness. Not is their Country reduc'd into Towns and Governments, as *Russia* is.

They seem to be a Nation altogether distinct from the *Muscovites*, both in the make of their bodies, manner of living, language, &c. and to be rather akin to the *Tatars*, as are also the rest of those most Northern Nations, *Laplenders*, *Groelenders*, &c. because of their low stature, full-chestedness, broad and flat faces, long black hair, little hollow eyes, short legs, and knees bowing outward.

Their habitations.

They inhabit the confines of *Europe* and *Asia*, and take up a considerable portion of the northern tract of both those parts. They live on both sides of the River *Ob* (*Obba*, *Oby*); the *Russians* call them *Sam-ieda*, i. e. self-eaters, which is not improbable, both because at present they eat all manner of raw flesh, even the very carion that lies in the ditch. And those who live upon *Waygates*, even till these times will not suffer the *Russes* to land upon their Country, but if they catch one will kill any of them, and eat it. Of those also, who live beyond the *Ob*, the *Russians* report, that they, in hard times, do not make any difficulty to devour one another; that if a Merchant come amongst them to trade, they will, to make him an high entertainment, not stick to kill a child for his sake; and that if any one dye amongst them, they make the best of him, and eat him. But themselves give another reason even of the name *Sam-ieda*, as if it signified of themselves; that they were *ab-origines*, and born in that place. However, as I said, this is not a name of a Nation, but an accidental difference from most other people, yet such an one as hath quite obliterated the true name. How far they extend beyond the *Ob*, is not yet discovered. On this side the River they reach as far as *Petsera*; or at least the inhabitants of the Country betwixt those two Rivers, seem to be of the same original with the *Saimoeds*. *Waygate* and *Nova Zembla* in appearance are inhabited by the same Nation; as are *Siberia*, *Borandia*, *Jugoria*, and so was the greatest part of Northern *Russia*, till civiliz'd.

Their discovery.

The Reader must not expect any exact relation of their affairs and actions. They have not any thing of learning or records, nor so much as oral tradition of what hath been done amongst them in the very last ages. Nor do strangers mention any thing of them, save that they frequent, with their Furs and other commodities, the free Fairs and publick Markets held in several Towns of *Russia*, till their submission to the *Muscovite*. And the first that gave any notice of them to this part of the world, were our own Countrymen, who endeavouring the discovery of a passage that way to *Cathay* and *China*, happen'd upon their Country; who notwithstanding could not give any exact relation of them, because of their ignorance of the language, and the extreme shyness and jealousy they have of all strangers and their conversation. The first that we find to have light upon them, was *Stephen Burroughs* an *English* man, 1556, in his voyage to discover the North-East passage. Before him also I find not any of our Geographers to have mentioned *Waygats* (which he faith are Islands lying North-East of *Pechora*) and *Nova Zembla*; his relation (as also that of *Rich. Johnson*, who went the same voyage, are extant in *Hackluit*. Afterwards 1596, *Will. Barents* gave some small account of them; since that, divers others. What we can find concerning them, we shall set down.

Their language and manner of life.

They have not all one language, but how many, or how differing, and in what places which

language, we know not. Their manner of living seems to be much according to nature. They have no Cities, but some of them have houses, whither they sometimes (when not convenient to travel) retire; which are (as the *Groelenders*) in the foot of an hill, with passages to one another; the part that is not dug out of the ground, is of wood, meeting together at the top, and cover'd with bark and turf; with a hole in the top, which serves them for a chimney to vent their smoke, and door to creep out when the snow stops up their entrance. But the greatest part of them travel from place to place, where they can find best pasturage for their Rain-Deer, and best game or prey for themselves, and they would reckon it a curse to be confin'd to one place. Those next the Sea side abide upon the Sea commonly a month together, when it is seasonable fishing. When they wander, they carry wives, children, and all their wealth along with them; pretending no property in any place. They travel upon sleds, drawn by their Rain-Deer, with so great speed, that they are able to post two hundred *Italian* miles in one day. They bait and rest where is best provision for their beasts; and they travel commonly in company, ten sleds fasten'd one to another, and to every of them one Rain-Deer at least, in which they carry their stuff and wealth, and call it *Argib*; but when thus laden, they make shorter days journeys, and travel not above thirty miles in twelve hours. At night they pitch their Tents, which are the largest Skins and Furs set and extended upon short poles or stakes (of which the Country is very plentifully stored), so covering the whole frame, except a hole at the top, which lets out the smoke, and they heap snow upon the outside; the fire they make in the middle, and round about it spread their Bears-skins and Furs, whereupon they sleep. It is the wives office to set up the Cabbins, and guide the *Argib*, or Convoy of sleds; whilst the men bring in firing, and such provision as can be got for their Supper. From this their continual changing places, it comes, that these *Saimoeds* are the only guides for Merchants in winter time to all the great Towns near those Countries; who rarely mistake their way, tho' the weather be never so misty. They are very nimble, and excellent archers; so that at *Moscow*, to shew their skill, they set a small round piece of Tin, from which retiring as far as they could discern it, they never failed to hit with their arrow. Their garments are all of Fur; that near their bodies (called then *Mallek*, or a skin) of young Favens, Hares, or Swans-skins, very soft and well-dressed; the outward (called *Parke*) of stronger and thicker Fur. And they take care to have them very fit, and not too loose or big for their body, which I suppose they do for warmth; for which cause they are very careful of their caps and coverings for their heads. The women also have the same garments as the men, and therefore are not easily distinguished from them; save that they suffer on either side a lock of hair to hang down below their ears, and make blew lines in their faces, by drawing a third pip'd in blew paint, lightly under the skin. The fashion of their habits is not the same in all places. They have no Bread, Rice, or any thing like it; their food is flesh of beasts, of all sorts, (which they eat raw, if they have not the convenience of drying it in the Sun, or wind, or scorching it with the fire), fish also, and fish-oil, and honey.

Of body they are very strong, active, swift, and healthful; hardy, and able to endure very great labour, thirst, and cold. And the women not less than the men; for at their child-bearing the

the husband only is the midwife, and the good-woman, as soon as deliver'd, watheth her child in snow, and the next morning is able to conduct her *Argib*. They seem also to be stout and bold spirited, tho' wars seldom happen amongst them; but their weapons, besides bows and arrows, are long spears and short swords. They are of a very quiet and not-quarrelsome disposition amongst themselves, but suspicious and jealous of all strangers, but this is because of their want of conversation. They seem not to have any government amongst them (those I mean who are not subjects to the *Muscovite*) every one follows his own fancy and employment; but when they want any directions, or are in difficulties, they apply themselves to the most ancient person in that company or board, and he also is their Priest, and his directions they follow. Their frequent consultations are concerning the future, which way they shall remove, and to what place, what success in their hunting, whether take such a journey, and so like. Controversies amongst them are not very frequent, but are determined by a certain oath, as this may be seen: They make an image of a man in snow, and lay before it a Wolves snout; he that is to swear, takes a sword, and rehearsing the names of his wives, children, and friends, desires that if he be not in the right, they may all be cut in pieces, even as himself doth cut that snow-image with that sword, which immediately he doth. Then he wishes that the Wolf may destroy his Rain-Deer, and that hereafterward he may never kill any beast, if he speak not the truth; then he cuts the Wolves snout to pieces, and there is no more to be said to that controversy.

The *Saimoeds* buy their Wives for Deer, and may have as many as they can purchase; the better sort have four or five. He is the richest man that hath most Deer and Daughters; killing them to such as will give most for them. Their marriages are not celebrated with any great ceremonies. The Bridegroom makes a feast to his friends, which (according to his ability) continues perhaps seven days. The feasting being ended, the Bride adorned with many iron rings, brazen bells, fish-bones, &c. is deliver'd up to her husband, and all others depart the Tent till the next morning. If they like not their wives after half a year or a year, they return them back to their friends, and receive their Deer. When a rich man dies amongst them, that he may not be unattended in the next world, they strangle one of his slaves (whom they bury with him) and three of his Deer, with which they feast themselves. If a young child dies, under seven years old, they hang it by the neck on some tree, saying, that it must fly to heaven.

It hath been reported by divers Authors, that these *Saimoeds* and the Northern *Russes* exhibited great worship to an Idol they called *Slate-baba*, or the golden-old-wife, which was a great image of stone, representing a woman with a child in her arms. But our men say that is a fable; that there is indeed in one of the Islands in the mouth of the River *Ob*, a great Rock, which with the help of fancy, may seem to be somewhat like such a woman; and that the Fishermen do many times in storms shelter themselves under that Rock, and practise their sacrifices and forceries there, but not to the Rock. They seem to acknowledge a God, but to apprehend and represent him by such things by which they receive most benefit. They have been frequently observed every morning, as soon as they go forth, to fall on their knees, and hold up their hands toward the Sun. They have also many images,

made as like men as their rudeness could work them, to which it is supposed that they use sacrificing, for they have found them set upright, besmear'd with blood, and many bones and ashes before them, and sometimes a chopping-block, whereupon it is supposed the beast to be offered was killed and divided. But tho' our men never saw them sacrifice, yet *Richard Johnson* (in *Hackluit* p. 283.) gives us a strange relation of their divinations and forceries, whereof he was an eyewitness; and it was to be informed which way, and to what place they were next to remove. He faith in short, that the ancientest of the family or kindred is always the Priest, that he had on his head a garland, and a piece of a coat of mail, whereto were fastened fish-bones, and many other trinkets; that he first beat upon an instrument like half a drum, with a little mawl, afterwards he begins to whoop and holla, as our hunters do, and the people answer'd him, but he widd great violence that he became senseless, and so fell down, and lay for some space. Coming to himself he rose up and commanded three Ollens (or the largest Deer) to be killed; then he took a sword of iron a yard long, and thrust it several times into his belly, but without any wound; afterwards he heated it in the fire, and thrust it in at his navel and out at his fundament, when (faith *Johnson*) I laid my finger upon it, but no wound follow'd. The Priest being wearied, reposed whilst they heated a kettle of water, which being hot, they sang again, and brought in like the frame of a Sedan, into which the Priest, having put off his matters and his shirt, fat down, and put about his neck and under his left arm a small cord with a slip-knot, and gave one end to one lusty young man, and the other end to another; then they set the feeding water before him, and cover'd both the frame wherein he sat and the kettle, that no man could see those dreadful myseries. The people began to sing furiously, and the young men drew the cord close, whereupon hearing some what to fall into the water, I asked (faith *Johnson*) what it was, they told me, it was his head and left shoulder which the cord had cut off, but they would not suffer me to go fee that it was so. After more vehement fingering, he came from behind the curtain face and wall. I demanded what their God had said, and whether they were to go; but was answer'd, that it was not for them to know what their God said, but that they were to obey what their Priest commanded. This was before their submission to the *Muscovite*, for since that time the Emperor hath caus'd Christianity to be preached amongst them; and tho' he forbear none of them to embrace it, yet many of them are baptized, and the worship of the Devil decreaseth and groweth out of reputation amongst them. God of his mercy grant, that these ends of the earth also may be reduced under the laws and government of his Son, our dear Lord. Amen.

Their submission to the Grand *Tzar* I shall relate somewhat more copiously, to shew all the world, that the *Russes* are neither so barbarous, nor tyrannical as too many Authors (who measuring all men by themselves, account whatever is different from those notions wherein themselves have been educated, as barbarous and unreasonable) represent them. In the time of *Ivan Basilovich* there lived upon the River *Wichida*, or *Wifogda*, an husbandman of a poor and vile descent, called *Oneke*, or *Onyke*, who by his industry in tilling the ground, came to very great riches, which he valiantly increased afterwards by trading. Amongst many children he had three sons, *Jacove*, *Gregory*, and *Simon*, who traded in common. These men, with their father, dealt chiefly

Their submission to the Grand *Tzar*.

Chiefly with the *Samoeds*, that came yearly to the Fairs of *Oset* and *Ujing*. *Onek* was not content with the gain he reaped by his trade, but had also a great curiosity to know what countrymen, and whence they came, that brought such rich Furs to these markets; conceiving that great wealth was there to be obtained. He began therefore to insinuate into the conversation of these *Samoed* traders, by his inviting and cajoling them, he obtained that twelve of his servants might go with them into their country; to whom he gave strict and particular orders how to behave themselves, and what to observe; which they did very carefully and faithfully. At their return with the *Samoeds*, he courted them much more friendly, and commanded also his own servants not to speak of what they had seen or discover'd. The next year he sent more of his servants, and some of the most trusty of his kindred, with such low priz'd Merchandize as he conceived most proper for that place. These went to the River *Ob*, where making acquaintance with the *Samoeds*, they found Furs there to be of small price; that the people lived barbarously and incommodiouly, in companies, without cities, without houses, or bread; govern'd only by some of the ancient among them, without laws, without property; yet peaceably amongst themselves, and without envy to their neighbours, of whom they knew little. The *Ongkes* driving this trade awhile became very rich, built many Churches, and some Towns; and grew so rich, that they were esteem'd worth in money, besides lands, cattle, &c. three hundred thousand Rubbles, or Marks. They set yearly at work ten thousand persons, besides five thousand slaves they had of their own; and paid to the Emperor yearly three and twenty thousand Rubbles for Custom, besides their maintaining several Garrisons on the confines of *Siberia*. But whether they were afraid, that their riches might breed them enemies and accusers at the Court, where they were sure to be worrit; or whether they thought this trade thus managed was too great for Subjects, and prejudicial to their Prince, they resolv'd to declare it to the Emperor, and to make the advantage publick, and to the behoof of the Prince. Some of them therefore go to *Moscow*, and by rich presents insinuate into the favour of *Boris Godanov*, the Emperors Brother-in-law (and himself afterwards also Emperor), who at that time govern'd under a weak Prince the whole Empire. After some time they discover'd to him the situation of the countries of *Samoedia* and *Siberia*, what they had seen, and observ'd therein, and what great wealth and advantage might thereby arrive to his *Tzar*'s Majesty. This notice was received of *Boris* with all the affection imaginable, as also by the Emperor himself *Theodor Ivanovich*. And first of all, they confirm'd to the *Onek*'s great privileges and honours as a subject was capable of; then they sent certain Gentlemen and Soldiers in company of, and to be at the direction and discretion of the *Onek*'s; they order'd them to be richly clothed, and to carry the garb of Ambassadors; and gave them presents of small value to be bestow'd among the natives, according to discretion; enjoining them to observe all rivers, woods, passages, very diligently, and especially such places as might be most convenient for building Castles and Towns; as also to use the people with all gentleness and kindness, and if it were possible, to bring some of the people along with them. These messengers, with those whom the *Onek*'s joined to them, behaved themselves so discreetly, and were so liberal of their trifles, that in a short time they

MUSCOVY.

had obtained the affections of the natives; whom, by frequently insinuating the great power and majesty of the Grand *Tzar*, making him almost a God upon earth, and the happy living of his subjects, they before their return perswaded them to submit themselves to his government, and to pay him as tribute for every head that was able to shoot, a pair of Sables every year; a thing not valued by the *Samoeds*, but arising to a prodigious advantage to the *Moscovite*. And because the *Samoeds* desired to see these great wonders with their own eyes, which these messengers had declared to them concerning *Moscow* and the Emperor; they offer'd to take divers of them unto *Moscow*, and to leave divers of their own people, who might live and learn the language against the time the others returned. When these poor Barbarians arriv'd at *Moscow*, and saw all the gallantry of the Court, the majesty and pomp of the Prince, the greatness of his Armies, the conveniency also of their houses and household-stuff, the regularity of their obedience; in sum, when they had tasted the *Russes* meats, and found them much better than their own, and perceived the civil life of the *Moscovites* to be in all respects preferred to their own barbarism, they intreated that they might be accepted into the number of his subjects; and have persons sent to instruct and govern them according to those excellent rules which themselves there saw. Which things were accordingly granted, and Governors sent, and Castles and Towns order'd to be built, and the people to be instructed, as they still continue to do.

Besides others, these Towns are of most note, *Sud-Camboy* upon the river *Wijera*, built for the refreshing and convenience of travellers, who from hence proceed on their journey into *Samoedia*, and those places by land. The inhabitants are *Russes* and *Tartars*; there is also great store of cattle, especially horses, upon which they travel over the great mountains *Cosmojny-Cirginjny*, and *Paduinjny-Camen*; places desert, and only frequented by *Tartars* and *Samoeds* in their hunting. *Vergateria*, the first Town in *Siberia*, begun to be built about 1590, where is resident a Governor and a Garrison for the *Moscovite*, who every spring by the several rivers distribute their proportions of corn and provisions to the further Garrisons, who live where the ground is not tilled. *Japhanis*, upon the river *Toera*, begun since *Vergateria*. *Tinna*, twelve days journey distant from *Japhanis*, where are in winter-time great markets for Furs, between *Moscovites*, *Samoeds*, and *Tartars*. *Tobolska*, the chief City of *Siberia*, whither are brought all the tributes of the Countries beyond, which thence are convey'd to *Moscow*. Here is also the seat of justice for all *Samoedia* and *Siberia*, and all the Governors are bound to obey this; it is situated between the rivers *Tris* and *Tobol*. *Pekomy*, upon the river *Tajsa*, in a very fruitful soil; most of the inhabitants are *Siberians*. *Ofkogorod*, which was afterwards razed down by command of the Governor of *Tobolska*, because too near the Sea, and instead of it they built *Zergolka*, upon an Island in the *Ob*, and above that *Naxinjay*, at first a Castle, now grown into a great City; from whence by the command of the Grand *Tzar* *Boris Godanov*, they have discover'd, and built divers Towns beyond the *Ob*, which more properly belong to the discourse of *Asia*. They also built *Tara*, *Jorgochum*, *Besobia*, and *Manganjiskogorod*, with many others, of which besides the names we know nothing; and in truth, all these northern parts are as yet undiscover'd, and nothing comes to our hands but imperfect relations





ons of particular persons, to whom we cannot tell what credit ought to be given; yet they say, that the *Muscovites* (the Emperor and his Council) are most exactly and particularly informed, and keep perfect registers from time to time, of all these both discoveries and buildings. One thing I shall add for their commendation, that wherever they come, they build Churches and Chappels, and take great care to set up the exercise of their Religion; to which they by divers artifices, as well as by example, (but not by force) endeavour to draw in and instruct the *Samoieds*, *Siberians*, and other heathens under their dominion. It is also to be noted, that it is no wonder that the Straits of *Wagatz* and *Nova Zembla* are so stopped up with ice, that no passage at any time, or very rarely, for great Ships, and only in some years for smaller Barks, can be hoped for thro those places; for so many huge Rivers discharging themselves into those Straits, in the spring when the ice begins to thaw, carry along with them vast mountains of ice, which is all gather'd into those narrow places, till the wind drives it into the open Seas. In 1612, Capt. *I. J. Samer* was sent to this discovery, who could not perform his design, but in the end of July measured ice there sixty fathoms thick; this ice melting first at the sides of the Rivers, and driven down with mighty violence by the great quantities of melted snow forcing it from above, carries down trees, and sometimes even whole woods fastened in it; which is the reason that they find so much floating wood in those Straits, and upon all the northern coast of *Muscovy*, and the Islands adjoining; I dare not say so far as the north of *Ireland*, where is often taken up Pines and Firs, which grow not in any place near them, and have given cause for some men to suspect, that there are some other Islands near the *Hebrides*, as yet undiscover'd.

The several Provinces of Russia.

THE first Province of *Russia* toward the North-East is *Obdora*, situate betwixt *Ob* and *Pechora* or *Petgora* Rivers. A large country, but thinly inhabited, which may be the reason that it is in our Maps call'd *Samoiedia*, more frequently than *Obdora*, as if it were only the country of the *Samoieds*. Concerning the great River *Ob*, or *Oby*, we have but little of certainty; for I cannot find that any of our Merchants have been there. An *English* Factor, before ann. 1600, employ'd one *Englishman*, with others his servants, to discover the way unto, and the trade of it by land; but they were imprison'd, by order of the *Russ* Governors, who seem unwilling that any one should understand that profit, but themselves. Some conceive, that these people are mention'd in *Scripture*, and other ancient Authors, by the name of *Scythæ Abii* (from the River *Abi*, or *Oby*) but it is uncertain. The River it self is said to arise from a Lake call'd *Catavsky*; as if the *Catavsky* (whom most men conceive to be the *Chinese*) lived upon, or near it. It is said also, that it receives many great Rivers, whereof we know little besides the names; that it is navigable two hundred leagues from the Sea; that it discharges into the Sea beyond the Straits of *Wagatz*; that the mouth is eighty *Vershs* or *Italian* miles broad, yet many shallows and flats in it; and that it is plentifully stored with Fish. The *Samoieds* seem to say, that an *English* Ship did many years ago arrive there, but being there wracked, the men were all killed by the *Samoieds*.

Betwixt *Oby* and *Petgora*, is a very large Country, like a Promontory, running very far into

MUSCOVY.

the North or Frozen Ocean; in which, as I said, are the Provinces of *Obdora* and *Cendora*, how separated we know not; nor any thing else of them, more than that they receiv'd the faith of Christ in 1618, and they were not in the titles of the Grand *Tzar* before *Joan Velikovich*. From *Medemsky Zavorot* in the mouth of *Pechora*, to *Ob* are fifteen days sailing with a good wind. Six days to *Breit-Tungse* in the Straits of *Wagatz*; leaving the Rock *Savalla* *Londia* on the Starboard-side. *Wagatz* was at first mention'd by *Steph. Burroughs*, but not known whether to be a distinct Island, or part of *Nova Zembla*, and in some of our late Maps it is quite omitted, and instead of it is put *Fretum Naffaucianum*, according to the fancy of our neighbours. The inhabitants they say are *Samoieds*, very barbarous, men-eaters, &c. Over against these Straits, a new Map (printed at *Nuremberg* this year 1679) in the Continent where we conceive *Obdora* and *Cendora*, hath plac'd (by what authority, and whether with the good liking of the Grand *Tzar*, let them consider who are concern'd) *New Walckeren*, *New Holland*, and *New West-Friesland*, besides divers other names of the *Low Countries*. I suppose it proceeds only from an itch they have of attributing all discoveries to, and giving names by themselves. The Bay of *Petgora* is call'd *Tongorsky-bar*; and there fall in divers great Rivers, as *Cara-reca* (or the black River), *Moetnaia-reca* (the muddy River), *Zolena-reca* (the green River), betwixt it and *Ob*.

Petgora also is named both in the Grand *Tzars* title, and by Authors also, as a Province, which they say is bounded by the River of that name, and the great mountains call'd *Zienni-poiats*, or *Cingulum mundi*. In 1611, a Ship was sent to settle a Factory at *Petgora*; they found the Bay very shallow, nine or ten foot water; afterwards they came into the *Sabot-mors*, or dry Sea, because of the shallowness of the water. The inhabitants say, that *Petgora* flows into the Sea with seventy-two mouths, others say six only; the Channel that trendeth South-West is the deepest and best. The Town is call'd *Pustogora*, because on a Lake which the *Russes* call'd *Osera*, and it lies in 68 deg. 30 min. of Latitude. In the Town are three Churches, and the people poor, speak a language of their own, and are Christians ever since 1518; they live chiefly upon the Geese, and other fowl which they catch in the Spring and Summer, whose feathers they sell to Merchants, and the flesh they powder and dry for Winter. The River is plentifully stored with fish, especially *Salmons*, (whereof in one year they took above fifteen thousand) which they salt, sell and convey to *Mezen* by land. They live commonly upon fresh fish boil'd and dry'd. Hither use to come every year two thousand *Samoieds* with their commodities. The *Pechora* runs thro great *Pernia*, and the head of it is five weeks journey above *Pustogora*. Divers great Rivers fall into it, as *Shap-kina*, *Nangorutka*, *Habeaga*, and *Ouse*, of which besides the names we know nothing. East of the *Pechora* lies the Promontory of *Borandey*, scarce mention'd in any Author, the chief Town whereof is *Petgora*; the inhabitants are originally *Samoieds*, but somewhat civiliz'd by the *Muscovites*. Three days journey above *Pustogora*, lies upon the same River *Oust-zilma*, a Town of about three-score houses, in 66 deg. and 30 min. where they have Ry and Barley growing very good, and where is a very good trade for Furs.

Siberia, call'd by the *Russes* *Sibir*, is much of the same nature, tho more South than *Obdora* and *Petgora*; from which it is divided by those high and terrible mountains call'd *Zienni-poiats*, which by reason of the cold winds to which they are expos'd, and continual snow, are very barren,

ren, and hardly passable in many places. Here and there are trees (some say Cedars, and about them the blackest Sables), and the best white Falcons. *Herberstein* reports, that there were some persons, that after seventeen days travel to go over them, return'd back, as thinking them unpassable. They were heretofore all *Samoeds*, (and in *Bar. Herberstein's* time had neither Castle nor City) situated upon the River *Cama*; out out of it ariseth the *Jeyck*, a large River, that passing thro the plains of *Tartary* enters into the *Caspian* Sea. The Country was then also full of Woods and Lakes, and almost desart till they submitted to the *Muscovites*, together with the other *Samoeds*. The Country is so call'd from *Sibir*, or *Sibir*, the first built City amongst them; tho *Tobolska* be the chiefest; which is a City of great trade, to which the *Teseeks*, *Boughbars*, and *Tartars* bring very rich commodities from *Persia*, of all sorts. *Papinogood* also is a good trading Town, so call'd from the Nation of the *Papini*, amongst whom it is built, who were a sort of *Samoeds*, and had a peculiar language. But *Siberia* is now for nothing more famous, then that it is the place of banishment for such either offenders as deserve that punishment, or as have by any way falln under the *Tzars* displeasure; for these also he sends thither, with their wives and children, and sometimes gives them there some small government. To poor people it is now not terrible to be sent into *Siberia*, as formerly it was, because they find tolerable livelihood there, but to the rich and noble it is look'd upon, as sending to the Gallies in *France* and other places; only they are obliged to bring in a certain number of Sables, upon pain of severe bodily chastisement; nor is it an easie matter for any of them to escape. One thing more is to be observed, that many learned men (and amongst them *Olearius*) confounds this *Siberia* with another Province, near that name, under the Grand *Tzars* dominion, in the South, bordering upon the dominions of *Poland*; which is almost as great an error as that of those who think *Samoedia* and *Samoigia* to be the same. This Country is said to have yeilded in 1589, a tribute of four hundred sixty-six timber of Sables (every timber containing forty skins), five timber of Martens, an hundred and eighty cases of black Fox (every case containing also forty skins) besides other commodities. To *Tobolska* (which is almost in the midit of *Siberia*) are brought all the tributes, and thence sent by convoy to *Mosko*; but the chief Governor of all these northern Countries resides at *Yergateria*.

Pernia, situate upon the River *Vyskhora* or *Vistrona*, which is ten miles from *Wolick Pernia* (or great *Pernia*) the chief City of this Province, and falls into the River *Cama*. *Pernski* upon the East borders upon *Tumen*, which is under the *Tartars*; where is a great trade from *Boghar* and *Persia*. From *Tumen* to *Tobolska* they travel in fourteen days; from *Tobolska* to *Berefova* (another great trading Town upon the *Ob*) in nine days; from *Berefova* into the River *Onse*, and down that into the *Petgora*, and so to *Pustozera*, in three weeks. The *Pernians* pretend to be an ancient Nation, I suppose, because they have a peculiar language and characters. Yet till they submitted to the *Muscovites*, they lived no otherwise than the *Samoeds*; neither as yet have they much use or knowledge of bread, nor do they plant or sow, but live upon hunting, and have their Sleds drawn with Deer, or great Dogs, which they bring up for that purpose; and when the snow is hard frozen, they have their *Nartes* (which the *Laps* and *Fins* call *Sakfit*, other Nations *Artach*) or

Muscov.

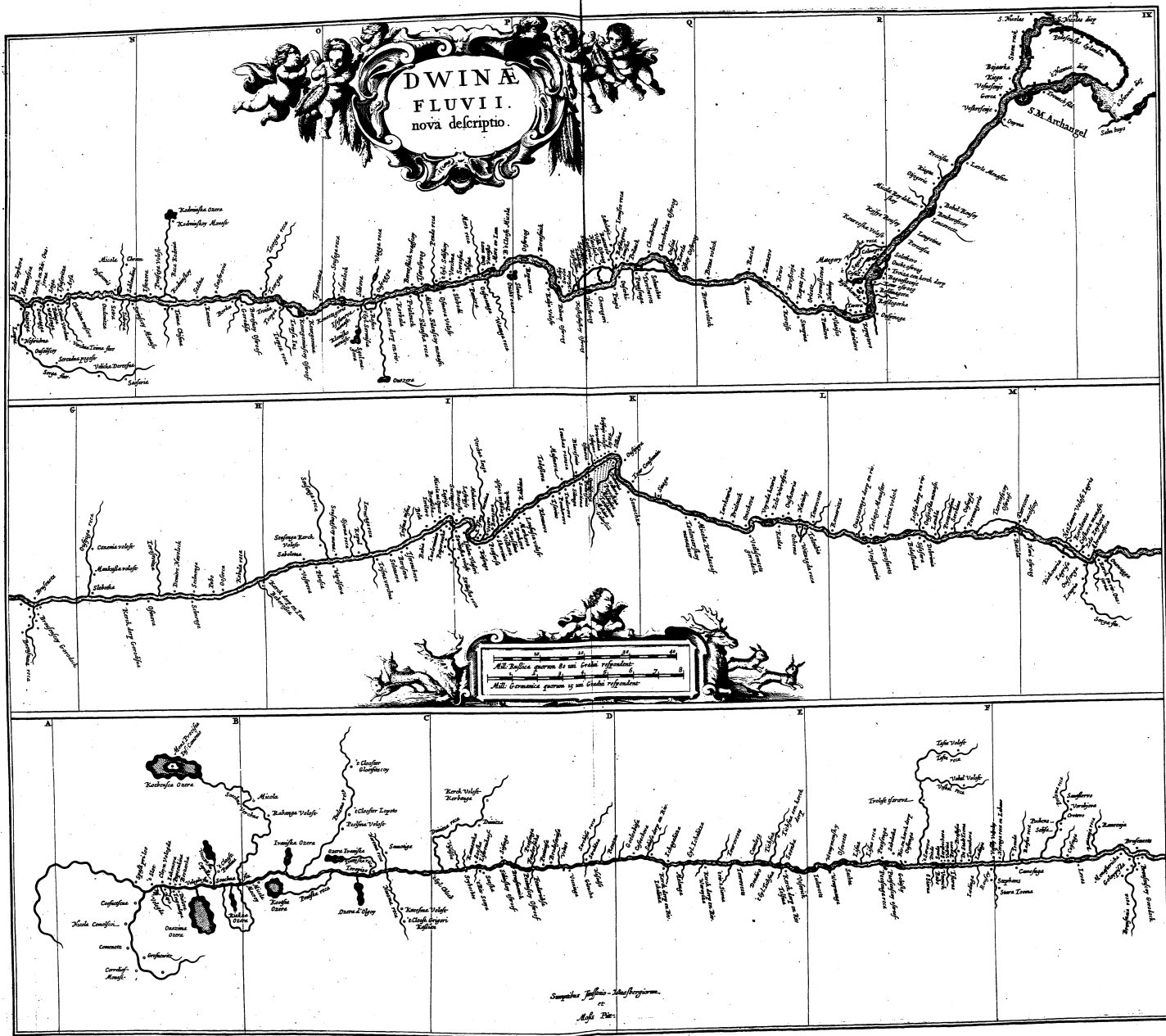
long *Skeits*, made of thin wood, or bark, where with they glide over the snow with incredible swiftness; but these are used in all northern Countries, where they are accustom'd to much snow. They were very zealous Idolaters; inasmuch that the first Bishop, who was sent to convert them, they slay'd alive; yet did not this discourage his successor *Stephen*, who happily settled Christianity, and civility in a great part, amongst them; he also invented characters for their peculiar language, and is reckon'd amongst the Saints in the *Refs*-Calendar. Yet amongst them (as amongst the *Siberians*, *Samoeds*, and most of these northern Countries) are fiercely still many Idolaters, who frequent not their Cities, but live in Woods, and amongst the Marthes. They seem to be a rich people; for when *Ivan Vasilovich* fought for an aveny or pretence to fleece them, he sent to them for so much Cedar to build him a Palace; they returning answer, that they had no such thing in their Country, nor did they know what it was; he punish'd their obstinacy at twelve thousand and sixty Rubbles, or Marks. Whence we may gather, that they were united to the dominion of the *Muscovite* before that time, and some say under *Vasilie* his father. This demand of the Emperors, might either take its reason from the report of Cedars upon the mountains of *Siberia*, or that report from this message.

Jugaria, *Jugria*, *Hugria*, *Jubar*, *Jubria*, *Jubaria*, *Jugra*, where it is situated I know not; for some place it on the East, others on the West-side of *Ob*. *H. Smith*, who lived in *Petgora* 1580, saith, that it lies over against *Waygatz*. If it be true, which the Baron of *Herberstein* saith, that this was the Country whence *Astila* with his *Huns* over-run so much of *Europe*, and afterwards settled in *Pannonia*, which from the name of their own Country *Jugaria*, they called *Hungaria*, they should seem to be West of *Ob*; for *Dubravius* (who writes the story) saith, that they were a very barbarous and deformed Nation, living amongst great Lakes and Forreits; which agrees well enough to the *Jugorsky*; and that some of them hunting a Stag, the beast took thro the Marthes, and by that means shewed them a way into a better Country then their own, which knowing no other, till then contented them very well. But the hunters returning, and declaring the pleasures and riches they had discover'd, persuaded them to leave that uncomfortable place, and by their valor seek better habitations; which they presently put in execution. The difficulties in this opinion are, that the present *Jubria* is not stored with horses; that the inhabitants are a very poor, miserable, and but few people, much undispos'd for such high and generous thoughts of conquering their neighbours. Yet is not the argument which the diligent and learned Baron useth, to be despised, which is, that both the remainder of the ancient *Hungarians* (who live between the *Danow* and *Tibiscus*) and these *Jugarians* use the same language, which is not known to be any where else spoken. But reserving this dispute to a proper place, we have nothing more to say of them, but that they live much what after the manner of the *Samoeds*, the same diet, clothing, tribute, &c.

West of *Petgora*, along the North Sea, lies the Province of *Dvina*, continued unto a River of that name; which is so call'd (*Dvina* signifying *Twain* or *two*) because it is the confluence of two Rivers, *Jugh* and *Sachona*, or *Suchana*; (*Jug* ariseth in the Country of the *Cheremise-Tartars*, *Suchana* from a Lake near *Vologda*); after the conjuncture, it runs an hundred leagues before its falls into the North or White Sea. This heretofore belonged to the Duke of *Novogood*, but is

now





now a Province of it self. The Country is very barren, and therefore hath very few Cities or great Towns, and even the Villages stand very thin, tho it contain an hundred leagues in length. The chieftest and only Town heretofore was *Dvina*, situate in the midst of the Province, where the River begins to take its name. But since the trade of the *English* and *Dutch*, &c. is transported this way, which formerly was to *Narva*, it is very much augmented and enriched. The greatest place of commerce is *Archangel* (by the *Russes* called *Archania*) at the mouth of the *Dvina*, on the left hand of the entrance. It is but a small Town, but very populous, because of the trade. And here it will be most proper to take notice, that the first trading that was to this place, or in a manner to *Muscovy* (by which that Country is so mightily enriched, and by which also we come to have some more distinct and particular knowledge of the Country) was 1553, when by the advice of *Sebastian Cabot* (grand Pilot of *England*) divers Ships were furnish'd for discoveries toward the North. It was the fortune of *Rich. Chancellor* to fall into the Bay of *St. Nicolas*, where he was very well receiv'd, and sent for thence to the Emperor *Ivan Vasilowich*, who entertain'd him with all imaginable kindness, and began to establish a considerable trade, under such privileges as were agreed upon 1555; which were from time to time renew'd and augmented, or sometimes ebb'd and flow'd, according to the interest of the Grand *Tzar*. Some of our neighbours indeed, that first interlop'd into our trade, have from time to time made their advantages; and tho they came in at first under our wings, yet have they since endeavour'd to pluck our feathers; but it had been in vain, had not the late rebellion in our Country, and especially the martyrdom of our late blessed Sovereign, made us to be abhorred of God and man. I mean not only of all Christian Princes, but even of all those who pretend to humanity. Tho I know not whether any resented it so vividly as this Emperor, who immediately revoked all his privileges and freedoms granted to our Merchants, and till this day (I know not by whose fault, but certainly some gain more by it than others) they cannot be retrieved. But to return to *Dvina*; this Province is very barren, and the Villages are but few and scatter'd. The inhabitants live upon dry'd fish and Venison, the cold not allowing any corn or grain; but their chieftest commodity is Salt, which they make here in great plenty. Besides, the trade at *Archangel* hath also made divers of their haven Towns to be considerable, and set up fishing and carriage; as *Lampas*, a great Mart for the *Samoeds*, and all the North. *Colmogro*, *Pinega*, *Mezen*, all which ly neer to, or upon the Gulf of *Mezen*, and trade with many Barks (great Ships they have none) to *Petzigra*, *Ob*, *Nova Zembla*, and those Eastern parts. But the impossibilities are continually so much augmented upon the foreign commodities that arrive at *Archangel*, that our Merchants fear to be forced to withdraw their trade, and then the greatest part of these inferior Towns, and the whole Province, will also diminish, and return to be what they formerly were. *St. Nicolas* is in 64 deg. *Colmogro* in 64 deg. 25 min. from *Mezen* to *Candinos* fifty Leagues, thence to *Colgoie* fifty leagues, thence to *Pechorsky-Zavorot*, or the Bay of *Pechora*, forty leagues, thence to *Pustozersa* fifty leagues. There are divers Islands upon this Coast, but not of any consequence. *Colgoieve* is the largest, in 69 deg. 20 min. thirty leagues from the Bay of *Petzigra*; it is high clay-ground, in it breed many Geese, besides other Fowls, Hawks also; and

MUSCOVY.

hither the *Russes* repair in the Summer-time.

To this of *Dvina*, we will subjoin *Usting* (*Ofitsm Jugh El*) that gives name to a Province, tho but a poor one. The natives formerly had a language proper to themselves, as well as divers other Provinces before mention'd; but the care of the Emperor is such, that he abolishes them by degrees, and introduceth the *Muscovitish*, which the people willingly do, finding it much better for their commerce. Here (and in *Dvina*) Sables are not of so great reputation, but they have the best black Foxes. Here are also very great and famous Fairs and Marts.

West of *Dvina* is *Corella* (*Carelia*, *Carelen*), *Corella*. and betwixt them both the Island *Solowski*, famous for the Abby of *St. Nicolas*, whereto they permit not any woman to enter. It is in 63 deg. 50 min. The banks of the Sea hereabouts are white and shining with Alabaſter. In this Province is much Salt boiled. The people live much what like the *Laplenders*, tho not altogether so barbarous, for they have some Towns, as *Corelnburg*, *Nordenburg* upon the mouth of a Lake, which by the River *Warjuga* emptieth it self into the Bay of *St. Nicolas*. *Hexholm*, in the hands of the *Suedes*; and the greatest part of all this Province pays tribute both to the *Russes* and *Suedes*. At the Treaty 1616 of *Stolbom*, the Grand *Tzar* quitted the title of this Country to the King of *Sweden*.

Volska, or *Vatska*, thirty leagues North of *Novogorod*, upon its left hand is the strong Castle of *Isanogorod*, surrender'd to the *Suedes* by the same Treaty, as well as the Towns *Jamagrod*, *Augdon*, and the Castles *Coporia*, *Norcburg*, and *Hexholm*. They say, that all the beasts that are brought into this Province turn white. The inhabitants have a language proper to themselves.

Woskopiutin is by some Authors placed between *Woskopiutin*. *Hexholm* and *Norcburg*, a large and fruitful Province both for Corn and Cattle, but so pester'd with Lakes and Marſhes, that it is very little frequented, and the name scarce known.

Bieleieziora, situated upon a Lake of the same Bieleie-name and signification, i.e. the White Lake, which *ziora*. Lake is thirteen Leagues long, and as many broad, and furnishes only one River, call'd *Sofna*, which falls into the *Volga*. In this Lake is a Castle both for natural and artificial strength accounted impregnable; whither in times of danger the Princes have sent their treasure, and themselves also retired. The whole Province is full of Woods and Lakes, that (except when they are hard frozen) it is not easily passable. Near this Lake is another small Lake that produceth Sulphur (I rather suppose Naphtha or Petroleum), swimming like froth or oyl upon the water. This is said to be first possessed by *Sinaus Varegus*, whose brother *Travor* settled in *Pekoria*, and *Rantz* in *Novogardia*. These three are by the *Russes* look'd upon as the Founders of their Nation.

Volgda is the only City in all the Grand *Tzars* *Volgda*. dominions that is fortified with a Stone-wall, and for its strength the Emperor is wont, in times of danger, to secure here part of his treasure. It is, as the rest of those Welterly and Northerly Provinces, much encumbered with Woods and Marſhes, many of which are (except in Winter) utterly unpassable. It is situated upon the River *Waga*, which falls into the *Dvina*; and it (together with all the Provinces mention'd since *Dvina*) belonged to the Dutchy of *Novogorod*.

Novogorod, call'd *Weliki*, or the Great, to distinguish it from others of that name. The Dutch call it *Nieuwgarren*; in 58 deg. 23 min. situated upon the River *Volga* (not *Volga*) or *Volchou*, famous for its Breemes, a little below the Lake

Ulin.

F 2

Ilmin. Whilst it was governed by its own Prince, it was in so great power, fame, and wealth, by reason of the vast commerce of several Nations there established, that it was proverbially spoken, *Who can do any thing against God and Great Novogord?* The reason of this trading, was the convenience of the River, which being navigable from the very Spring, and the Country abounding in Wheat, Flax, Hemp, Honey, Wax, and Leather (which is better dressed here than in any other place), invited hither so many Merchants from all the Northern Countries, and thence upon the *Baltick* Sea, that it was the greatest City of all the North for trade and wealth. The first diminution of it, was from *Vlad Duke of Lithuania*, who 1477 obliged the City to compound for their peace at a great rate. But *Ivan Vasilii Gordin* 1477, forced them to receive a Governor from him; but that not satisfying him, he went thither in person, pretending I know not what devotion, and (by the help of the Bishop) being admitted into the City with his Army, he pillag'd it, carrying away three hundred Carts laden with Jewels, Gold, and Silver; besides many more filled with rich stuffs and sumptuous moveables; all which he sent to *Moscow*, and transported many of the inhabitants into other places, and sent *Muscovites* to inhabit in their stead. By their greatest calamity was from *Ivan Vasilovich* in 1569, who upon a suspicion of their endeavouring to revolt, came hither with his army, slew, drowned, and trampled to death a vast number of people; presently after this follow'd a great plague, which brought to great a famine, that they eat one another; the *Tzar* on this occasion, pretending to punish their inhumanity, cut to pieces the greatest part of the remaining inhabitants. His barbarous cruelties here acted are not fitting to be repeated. It was in 1611 taken by the *Svedes* by storm, but at the great Treaty between the two Crowns of *Russia* and *Sweden*, it was agreed to be redelivered to the *Russes*, and in their hands it hath continued ever since. On the other side the water is a strong Castle built of stone, join'd to the City by a large Bridge, wherein lies the Weyward or Governor, and the Metropolitan; by which two, all the affairs Ecclesiastical, Civil, and Military, in all that Province are governed. The Town is encompass'd with a Rampart of timber and earth, and hath a Castle in the midst, reasonably well fortified. There are about an hundred Monasteries (whereof that of *St. Antony* is the chiefest), Churches, and Chappels; which have their Steeples and Towers cover'd with Copper gilded; the Cathedral Church is that of *St. Sophia*.

In the territory belonging to this City, are *Brannitz*, *Sedrona*, and *Star-Ruffa*.

The *Ruffes* say, that near to *Novogord* was the famous battel of Whips (mention'd by *Julius*, l. 2. and many other Authors) wherewith the Masters returning victorious, after some years wars, conquer'd their Slaves, who in the long time of their abstinence, had feized upon their estates and wives; which is the reason why the *Novogord* money had formerly on one side an Horse-man flaking his whip.

Bielski. *Bielski* is a Province between *Novogord* and *Smolensk*, having its principal City and Castle called *Biela*, *Bielsa*, or *Bielow*, situated on the *Muscovy*.

River Ofca. This had heretofore a Prince of its own, subject to the descendants of *Togollan* Duke of *Lithuania*, till *Basilius* Prince of *Bielski* fell off to the Grand *Tzar*, and agreed to pay him tribute; it now augments the number of his Titles.

As doth also that of *Rischor*, which hath also a Castle and City of that name; it had also formerly a Prince of its own, but now is a member of the *Ruff*-Empire. The Country is full of Forests and Lakes; particularly, here is that great Forest of *Wolchonsky*; wherein arise the *Volga*, the *Dnieper*, the *Dvina*, and the *Lomat*, all great Rivers. Near to this are *Woloizk*, famous for its white Hares, and the Princes frequent hunting there. *Wielikyeluki*, a large City, with a good Castle. And *Toropetz*, a large Town also, and a Castle; all which came to the Crown of *Russia*, by surrender of their proper Lords.

Twer is near to the foreland, North-West from *Moscow*. The capital Town is *Twere*, situate on the River *Tweritz*, which falls into the *Volga* near this Town. This is a large Town, and hath in it about sixty Churches, the chiefest that of our Saviour. Upon the same River is placed *Terscho*, *Tersack*, or *Torsuck*, a large Town also. The Province is rich both in Corn and Merchandise; very populous also, being ready to furnish their Prince with forty thousand good Horfe, and twice as many foot. Here is also a Mint and a Bishops See.

Near to these is *Plescow*, which the *Ruffes* call *Plesow*; the chief City hath a strong Castle, situate upon a Rock, whence springs the River *Plesow*, which after fix leagues discharges it self into the Lake of *Peipis*, which *Herberstein* calls *Czewsko* or *Czudzin*. It was govern'd by its own Princes till *Ivan Vasilomir* 1509 united it to his Crown. The Citizens till then were famous for their valour, civility, and honest dealing in their trade; but the Grand Duke transported them, and put *Muscovites* in their stead. It is one of the strongest wall'd Cities in all *Russia*; 'tis of so great extent, that when besieged by *Stephen King of Poland*, there were to be in it seventy thousand foot, and seven thousand horse (besides the inhabitants) in garison. Were it not for one ledge of Rocks, the Navigation from hence to the *Baltic* Sea would be very convenient and easie. There were in this Province divers places of strength, which gave the Grand *Tzar Vasilie* great trouble to reduce them to his command.

South and by West of this Province of *Novogord* (that we dispatch all these Territories that ly together) lies the great City of *Smolensk*, belonging anciently to *Lithuania*, recover'd to that Province by *Vitold* their Duke, in 1413. *Basilius* the Grand *Tzar* made several attempts to recover it, but in vain, till his beloved General *Michael Glinski*, a valiant *Polish* General, that ran over to the *Ruffes*, recover'd it more easily with his money, than he could with his arms. The *Poles* have endeavour'd several times to recover this City, and in one battel ran unto it, slew eighty thousand *Ruffes*, but could not reduce the City till *Stigismund* King of *Poland* took it in 1611; and in 1633, *Michael Fedorowicz* besieged it in vain, yet his son *Alexie Michaelowicz* had it surrendred to him by composition in 1654, and the *Ruffes* still keep it. The River *Nieper*, commonly thought to be *Borjphenes* (tho *Berefine* comes nearer that name) runs thro it. The City is very well fortified, both with good walls, well pallisado'd, and as they say, above ten yards high, and also with a very strong Castle upon the bank of the River.

To this jurisdiction belong *Drobozh*, *Wyfina*, and *Mozaiski*, where the Emperor commonly once a year divers himself and the Ambassadors in hunting. This *Mozaiski* hath many times a Governor

Governor of its own, and a Territory belonging to it. The Town was taken from *Alexander King of Poland* by the Grand *Tzar Ivan*, predecessor of *Vasilie*, and the Grand Duke often repairs thither in devotion to *St. Nicolas*, the great Saint of the *Ruffes*, who is said to be buried in the Chappel of the Castle.

There remains one Province or Dukedom, which anciently belonged to *Lithuania*, the South-West border of *Muscovy*, called *Sewera*, *Severia*, *Siberia*. Which hath given occasion to some to confound it with that Province which the *Ruffes* call *Sibir*, upon the River *Ob*. This is a large and fruitful Principality, reaching from the *Dnieper* to the Castle of *Mfenek*, which is now demolish'd. This Country had at first Dukes of its own, afterwards it acknowledg'd the superiority of the Dukes of *Lithuania*, together with which (*Togollan* becoming Christian) it submitted to the Kings of *Poland*; afterwards they fell from *Casimir* unto the Grand *Tzar*; at length, in the Reign of *Vasilie*, father of *Ivan Vasilomir*, the Duke was accus'd of treason, and lost his Principality, which was united to the Crown of *Muscovy*.

The chief City, and sometimes residence of the Dukes is called *Novogrod Stiersky*, a City and Castle, well fortified after the manner of *Russia*; from whence to the City *Moscow* is an hundred and fifty leagues; the way lies thro *Bransko*, *Serenski*, *Worotin* (a small Principality, the City *Worotin* is upon the River *Occa*), and *Colaga*, a Town also upon the *Occa*, and dependant upon the Abbey of *Trititz*. Other great Towns in this Province are *Storodk*, *Polsk*, *Czerenigor*, *Kilski*, *Krom*, *Arol*, and *Offopod*. They that from hence travel towards *Tartary*, pass the Rivers *Sua*, *Samara*, *Ariel*, *Kainchmad*, and *Moskwa*. They pass the Rivers on branches of trees fasten'd together, instead of Boats. This Country, by reason of its neighbourhood to the *Tartars* (upon whom it borders toward the East) is much of it Desert and Forrest, for want of culture; but those few inhabitants there are, are very warlike, being kept in continual exercise by the *Tartars*.

Thus much for the Western parts of this Empire, let us proceed to those that ly in the in-land Countr. South of *Vologda*, North of *Jeroflaw*, lies the Town and Castle of *Cafrom*, upon a River of the same name, which loses it self in the *Volga*. And East of *Cafrom* is the little Town of *Galitz*, near the Lake *Galitz*; here the Grand *Tzar* hath a manufacture of Salt.

Jaroflaw, fix leagues North of *Moscow*, a Province rich in Corn, Cattel, and Honey. The City lies upon the *Volga*, containing about forty thousand inhabitants, strongly fortified, and of a great trade, as having a very easie passage to *Archangel*. They make here much Linnen Cloth. This used formerly to be the Title and subsistence of the younger Sons of the Emperors family, till *Ivan Vasilomir* took it from them to himself, 1565. Yet he permitted some of them to keep the Title, being till of late called *Knief Jaroflawski*.

Of the same condition and propriety is *Rostow*, the City is twelve leagues South of *Jeroflaw*, upon a Lake of the same name. *Ivan Vasilomir* put to death the last Heir to this Province, of the family of the Grand *Tzar*. In this Province is *Uglitz*, a Town famous for its bread.

Cholopigrod was a great Mart for all the Northern Nations (yet more bartering than buying and selling), because of the River *Mologa*, by which it communicateth with *Veliki Novogrod*. It is now ruin'd. The name signifies, the Cattle of Slaves, for they say, that when their Masters had subdued their Slaves with their Whips, the Slaves retired hither.

MUSCOVY.

Sufdal is between *Rostow* and *Wolodimir*. The City is famous for a stately Monastery of Nuns, whither *Ivan Vasilomir* confined his Wife; and it was formerly the Metropolis of *Russia*. This Province also belonged to the younger Sons of the Emperor; and since ruin'd by the *Tartars* ann. it hath never recover'd it self. *Cafrom* and *Galitz* belonged formerly to this Government.

Pereaslav belonged formerly to *Rostow*, famous now for its salt Lake and fruitful Soil. At the end of harvest the Grand *Tzar* commonly reires thither to hunt. In the Town are reckon'd near thirty thousand inhabitants.

East of this is the City and Principality of *Wolodimir*, which was anciently the Metropolis of all the *Ruffes*, till *Ivan* or *Danilow* built *Moscow*, and translated the seat of the Empire thither, more out of danger of the invasion of the *Tartars*. The soil is fruitful, that it renders frequently thirty for one. The City is the second in the Empire for greatness, and was built by *Wolodimir*, one of the chief Founders of the Empire, in 928. Some say, that he married *Helena* the daughter of *Niceph. Phocas*; but the Chronology will hardly permit it.

East of *Wolodimir* is the City and Province of *Nijf-Novogrod* (in Dutch *Nijen Nieuwgraven*) or little *Novogrod*; some call it *Novogrod* the lower, or in the low Countries; a Country very fruitful and pleasant. This Province also is the utmost limits of Christianity; for tho the Grand *Tzar* have some dominions East of it, even as far as the River and Castle *Saras*, yet are most of the inhabitants there *Czemijels* and *Mordwitz Tartars*, and follow *Mahomet*. The City is in 56 deg. 28 min. it is situated at the confluence of the Rivers *Occa* and *Volga*; which being join'd, make a River of four hundred Geometrical feet broad. It is inhabited by *Ruffes* and *Germans*, who had here the exercise of the Reformed Religion. There is also a famous Church, built above six hundred years ago, in imitation of that of *St. Sophia* in *Constantinople*. All provisions are exceedingly cheap. Here is a very strong Castle cut out of the main Rock, with very great charge and trouble by the Grand *Tzar Vasilie Ivanowich*.

Near to this is *Vasiligrod*, at 55 deg. 51 min. where the *Sura* falls into the *Volga*, between *Novogrod* and *Cazan*. *Berzodna*, *Radniza*, *Rubakta*, *Tschischina*, *Targinitz*, *Jurkin*, *Mafa*, *Kremanki*, *Parmino*, besides others, are large Villages in this Province. *Spelskabelka*, *Stoba*, *Wetkopolat*, *Tfomonsky*, and *Dioploy*, are considerable Islands in the Rivers.

The Principality of *Casimov* is also near to this. The inhabitants speak the *Tartar* language. All their women go with their heads uncover'd, and dy the nails of their fingers black.

Wiatka, or *Viabka*, a Province, City, and River of the same name, lies North of *Nijf-Novogrod*; it is a barren, marshy Country. *Vasilie* took it from the *Tartars*, and annexed it to his Crown and Titles; yet the *Tartars* till lurk and steal what they can about and amongst the *Ruffes*. In this Province are the Towns of *Chilimova*, *Orlo*, *Cotenicz*, and *Sloboda*.

Amongst those Countries lie the *Czemijels* and *Mordwa-Tartars*. Their Customs are not much different, save that the *Mordwitz* have some few more houses. Those on the right hand of the other *Laguni*, or inhabitants of the plain and grassy Countries. There are amongst them some *Mahometans*, but the greatest part are Heathen; who believe that there is one eternal God, and evil Angels also, which they endeavour to pacify, let they should do them harm; and this is a

G

great

great part of their Religion. Not far from *Cafan* is a River called *Nemda*, to which they go in pilgrimage, where (as also in a Brook hard by the grimage, called *Scholskew*) they think the Devil *Nemda*, called *Scholskew* they think the Devil dwells. This Brook hath not above four foot waters, but never frozen, whence they conceive such fancies, that they dare not approach at too near a distance, and then also with presents, lest they see the *Raffes* have not the least apprehensions of any such danger. When they sacrifice, they kill an Horfe, Cow, or Sheep, and hang the skin upon a pole between two trees; they roast, or boil the flesh, part of which they take in one hand, and Mead (or some other beverage) in the other, and throw it into the fire before the skin, praying the skin to take care of presenting their prayers and requests to God; which are only for conveniences of this life. They worship also the Sun and Moon, and what they dream of in the night; but have neither Temple, Priest, nor Service. Their language is peculiar to themselves, tho' (being under the Grand *Tzar*) many of them now speak the *Rufe*. If a rich man dy, they kill his best Horfe to serve him in the next world; but his nearest friends eat him. Polygamy is frequent amongst them; but if a wife be without children three years, they dismiss her and take another, and often the sister of a former wife. Their women are wrapp'd rather than habited in white Cloth, which leaves nothing of them seen but their faces; those who are betrothed, have on their heads a Coif with a point half an ell long, wherewith hangs a bell. The men have their heads All of them, men and women, are very swift, and excellent Archers. The *Mordwitz* have a kind of a Governor or Captain of their own; but they are all subject to the Grand *Tzar*, whom they are obliged to assist in all his wars; but pay him no tribute, except what presents they voluntarily send him.

Refan.

Refan is situated betwixt *Occa* and *Don*, or *Tanais*, which riseth in this Country; near to it is the City of *Columna*, *Columna*, or *Colon*; but the chiefest City of *Refan* is also called *Refan*, upon the *Occa*, near the Isle of *Strub*, which heretofore was a Government of it self. This Province is the most fruitful in all *Russia*, if not in the world; if they romance not too much, who say, that one grain produceth many stalks, each stalk many ears; that it grows so thick and strong, that an Horfe can very difficultly pass thro it, or a Quail fly out of it; they till every year, but never manure their land. The fruits also here are very good; the people also very courageous, civil, and liberal towards strangers. The Province is able to feed fifteen thousand Cavaliers to the wars, and forty thousand foot. In this Province are great Towns, *Cafra* or *Caffra*, formerly head of a Province of its own name. *Tulla*, on the edge of the great Desert, it hath a strong stone Castle, built by the Grand *Tzar Bassius*, who took it by force from the Prince that had the right and dominion of it. *Odovon*, where *Tulla* and *Uppa* flow into the *Occa*. Near to this was *Miczencze*, a strong Fort, but now ruined. Thereabouts live a few poor people in their Huts, who refuge themselves in the great Marthes (which take up all that Country) upon the invasion of the *Tartars*. *Collaga*, famous for its wooden Ware. *Czipac*, near to which are Iron-Mines, the only sort of Mines in all *Moscow*. And *Worstin*, a small Province, all upon the *Occa*; as also the Towns of *Cazigord* and *Murina*. This River breeds the best fish, and watereth the richest meadows in all *Russia*. We have not yet spoken of *Leucomoria*, *Lop-pia*, and some other Countries upon the *Ob* and *Muscovy*.

Muscovy.

the North Sea, because part of what is said of them is certainly fabulous, and all the rest uncertain; we shall however respite them till we come to *Asia*: Nor of *Cafan* and *Afracan*; but we shall defer them also till we come to speak of *Volga*, and the *Tartars*; their Countries and affairs being mingled together.

There remains therefore only *Moscow*, the Metropolis of this great Empire, which we purposely reserved to this place, that what we have to say concerning the Empire it self, and the whole Nation, might be more easily apprehended. The Province and City of *Moscow* are almost in the center of all the Grand *Tzars* dominions, but nearer the West and South; for which reasons, as also because the soil is none of the fruitfullest, it was very prudently chose for the Seat of the Empire. For toward the West and South is the greatest danger of invasion, and the fiercest enemies; and the barrenness of the soil makes the air very good and healthful, that it is accounted a wonderful thing to hear of a plague, or any epidemical disease in that Province; tho they are sometimes afflicted with a violent burning Feaver, which they call *Ogryp*, wherof few recover, yet I do not hear that it is malignant. Nor is the sterility any inconvenience in any part of *Moscow*, because the Country is generally very fruitful, and carriage from place to place very easy and cheap, in Summer time, because of the great number of navigable Rivers; and in Winter by reason of the convenience of their Sleds, whether drawn by Deer (whose nourishment costs nothing, a little moss, which sufficeth not to be very scarce in bogs and woods, sufficing them), or Horses, which are very hardy, and used to travel forty or fifty of our miles without baiting; so that a Country-man will for four Crowns conduct you eleven or twelve hundred miles. Besides, the inland trade amongst themselves is very great; for having very many fasting days, they must be supplied with fish from the Sea. The North sends them Furs and Skins for their clothing; the South sends Corn, Cloth, Linnen and Woollen, and almost all manufactures. Besides, the frequent passings and repassings of so many Governors, both renders travelling very commodious, and frequently cheap also, and makes a great circulation of trade and commodities in the whole Nation.

The City of *Moscow* is in 55 deg. 36 min. Latitude, and about 66 deg. Longitude. Of the valne of it, before its great delatation by fire 1571, strange things are related; as that it was more than double as large as it was afterwards; that there was in it many hundred thousand inhabitants; and that there were slain, burnt, drowned, and trodden to death, above eighty thousand persons. *Poffevin*, who was there Ambassador 1578, faith, that in his time it was not above five Indian miles in compass, and not more than thirty thousand inhabitants. But I am afraid that Author doth much depress the power and number of inhabitants everywhere in *Russia*. In 1611, forty-one thousand and five hundred houses were again reduced to ashes by the *Poles*, and two hundred thousand persons slain. *Olearius* faith, that in his time its circumference was about three leagues. Our relations in 1662, allow it four leagues (sixteen miles) in compass, and the figure round; and is said to contain above forty thousand houses. It consisteth of four parts, or quarters. The first is *Catsigord*, or mid-City, divided from the rest by a brick-wall; the River *Moskwa* runs on the South-side, as the *Neglinna* doth on the North of it. In this part is the Castle fortified with three strong walls, and a good ditch;

ditch;

ditch; wherein are two Palaces of the Grand Duke, one of stone, another of timber. In this Castle are two Steeples, in one of which is a bell weighing 32600 pound. The Exchequer and Magazine of powder are also in the Castle. Two fair Monasteries, five Churches and Chappels, all of stone, and in St. Michaels Church the Sepulchers of the Grand *Tzars*. At the Castle-gate is the Church called *Jerusalem*, which *Ivan Vassilowitz* thought so magnificent that he put out the Architects eyes, that he might never make the like. And before the Castle, is the great Market place; where every trade hath a station by it self.

The second quarter is *Tzar-gord*, encompassing the other, like a femicircle; walled about with stone, wherein is the Arsenal, and the workmen in metall, as Bell-founders, Calfers of Cannon, &c.

The third is *Skeradom* on the North-West side of the other; the River *Jagda* passes thro it, and here is the market for houses, timber, &c.

The fourth is *Sretelers Slavoda*, being the quarters of the *Sretelz*, or Guard of the Grand Duke, fortified with wooden Ramparts, and built for strangers and mercenary Soldiers.

There are in this City above two thousand Churches and Chappels, built (saith *Poffevin*) more for ornament to the City, than use; but this Author (as I observed before) seems to be partial against the *Moscovites*.

The Houses in *Moscow*, and generally in all *Moscovia*, are after the same fashion; made of Fir-timber squared, and dove-tail'd one into another (not with mortise and tenon) at the ends, two, or at the most three stories high; their windows short and narrow; the chinks between the timber call'd as I may say, or stop'd up with moss; stairs on the outside; instead of chimnies, stoves, the covering, or tiling, of bark, and upon that sometimes turfs of earth. Nor is their household-stuff much richer; no beds, chairs, waincoat, hangings, or the like unnecessary implements. The walls cover'd with mats, benches to sleep and sit upon; a pot or two, as many wooden dishes; a spoon to hang at the girdle. If a fire happen in the City, as it doth very frequently, they go not about to quench it with water, but only to stop the course of the flame by pulling down the neighbouring-houses; to which purpose, the Soldiers that keep their night-guards, carry each of them an hatchet, to cut down an house presently. Nor are the people very much concern'd for their final and cheap furniture. But the Merchants, and persons of quality, have for their magazines Vaults of stone, with little windows, and those also have shutters, as well as their doors, of white iron.

There dwell in the City a great number of *Greeks*, *Perfians*, but especially *Tartars*; yet the *Greeks* are most welcom, as most sympathizing with the *Raffes* in their Religion. The *Lutherans* also and Reform'd, are well received, and have liberty publicly to exercise their Religion, which they of the *Roman* Communion cannot. No *Jews* are admitted amongst them.

Moscow being near the center of the whole Empire, it is very convenient to take our measures by it of the rest of the Country, allowing proportionably for the nearness to, or remoteness from it. As first, for the temper of the air. The cold is here sometimes so excessive, that water will freeze as it is falling, that the earth will chop, as with us in the violent drought of Summer, even with above twenty fathoms long, and a foot broad; and people are found dead in their Sleds. The cold also endures a long time; the frost ordinary.

Muscovy.

ly begins with *November*, but breaks not up till April, i.e. till the Sun hath been some considerable time above their Horizon; whence it comes to pass, that all their plants, and whatsoever is under-ground in winter, is ready to thrust it self into the air as soon as it hath liberty; their Rye (for this reason) they sow in the beginning of winter, that as soon as the snow and ice is melted, it may spring, and have time to ripen; but all their other corn, which requires not so much maturation, they sow not till May. And it is by strangers much taken notice of, that even almost as soon as the snow is gone, the fields are all green; and plants spring much faster then in another place, where their natural force and vigor hath not been so much restrained and kept back by the cold and the snow; so that what they sow in May and June they reap in July and August; and indeed the hotness of their summer allows them not much time for tillage. It is also observed, that their Rye is in its kind their best grain. And for their fruits, tho they have of most sorts, as Apples, Pears, Plums, Cherries, &c. yet they are not so good, nor do not ripen so kindly, nor can be so long preserved, as in those places where they grow and ripen slower. But those things which are of hasty and speedy growth, are very good; as all sorts of Berries, Herbs, Gourds, and Melons, which are here both exceedingly great (some weighing forty pound) and very well tasted; but they breed them in hot beds, as we do here, and never remove them. All Authors almost speak of a certain Melon, or Gourd, called *Boranetz*, or a Lamb that grows upon a stalk, and when it hath eaten all the grass within its reach, it dies. It is possible, that there may be a fruit, which with the help of imagination may somewhat resemble a Lamb, and it may also be downy and woolly; also it may be either of so hot a temper, or so great a depredator of moisture, that it may cause the neighbouring plants to wither and dy; but that there is any animal growing upon a root, and eating, &c. they that have seen it, must believe it, but other persons may have their liberty. It is not long ago since they began to cultivate garden-herbs, but they prosper very well, as *Alparragus* for the purpose, grows as thick as a mans thumb. And edible roots must needs become both large and pleasant. From this multitude of melted snow it comes to pass, that the ground is very soft and mellow; which doth it be an inconvenience in their high ways, (inasmuch that even the streets of *Moscow* would be unpassable, were it not that they pave them with round Fir-trees, laid close to one another), yet in their tilling their ground it is very useful; for neither do they use any manuring, even in the barrenest places, nor is their ground difficult to be labour'd (no small convenience to a lazy people), that even stirring it with a stick is in some places sufficient for their Corn. Nor is their Corn (being so short a time betwixt the sowing and harvest) subject to so many accidents (droughts, rains, blights, &c.) as ours is; whence it is noted, that it is exceedingly rare to hear of a dearth in *Moscow* (except by the wickedness of them that buy up the Corn to sell it dearer), tho they sow little more than for their own spending. But sowing for plenty, they have much to spare; as the *Dutch* know very well, who bring thence great quantities to supply their own necessities.

It is also observed in their weather, that the Summers are violently hot, both because their days are so long, and the soil (for the most part) sandy, which easily receives, and retains longly the heat of the Sun so long upon it. This heat coming

G 2

coming upon proportionable moisture, produces prodigious quantities of Gnats, and other Insects; which, tho' not so dangerous as Toads and Vipers, yet are much more troublesome, and a much greater annoyance. Indeed an extraordinary heat is requisite to force up such a quantity of materials as must serve to make so much snow, that it covers the ground some yards thick. But it is hard to believe what some Authors say, that it sometimes sets on fire their Corn-fields and their woods. But this heat is augmented or conveyed (as was said before) by the nature of the soil; for in *Livonia*, in the same degrees of Latitude, yea divided only from *Russia* by the River *Narva*, their Corn seldom comes to be so ripe and hard that they can thresh or grind it; but they are forced to help themselves with flaves, built in their Barns for drying their Corn; which tho' it be easier to thresh, yet it neither yields so much flower, nor is so good to sow, as that which ripens by the heat of the Sun, as it always does in *Moscow*.

The Country is generally overgrown with Woods (and their Forests consist most of Fir and Birch, which loveth a light sandy soil) and Lakes; both I believe from the same cause, want of tillage. For the Natives husband not much more than they are sure will serve themselves; for should they have greater plenty, they could not find markets for it; and they are not careful of encreasing their stock of men. *Albertus Camperius* tells very great stories (whom in some things we have followed) of the great abundance of people in *Russia*; *Poljevine* again as much disparages them. But our own Authors affirm, that it is not so well peopled as it might be; partly because of their wars, which devour always great quantities of them; and partly because they are lazy, and take more care themselves to live in ease and plenty, than to multiply their Nation, or employ more hands than of needs they must.

Their Forests must needs be very well stored with Beasts and Fowls. Their Beasts are Elks, which the *Germans* call *Elans* and *Olans*, and the *Russes* *Lozzi*, which seem to be the *Bison* of the Ancients; Boars, Bears of a prodigious magnitude, strength, and cruelty, both white and black. Wolves also too many; for in an hard winter, both the Bears (who sleep not when hunger pinches them) and Wolves are very pernicious to their cattle, and their persons also, when they meet them unarmed. There are also Horses plenty; small, but strong, courageous, and very serviceable. Cows, Goats, and Sheep; Fallow Deer also, and Roe-Bucks in great plenty. Besides these, are many others who are hunted only for their Furs, as the Wolverine or Wood-Dog, Beaver, Once, Lynx, Marten, black, dun, red, and white Foxes, the Gurnet, the Laster or Mink, Hares, which in winter change their colour into white, as the Squirrel doth into gray, whereof comes the Fur they call *Calaber*. There is one sort of Squirrel, that hath upon the point of its shoulder a tuft of hair, much like unto feathers, with a broad tail, with which they aid themselves so much in their leaping, that they seem to fly. The Furs of these are the great riches of this Country, and the greatest traffick, since they sell to strangers (besides what is paid to the Grand *Tzar* for tribute) for a million of Rubbles *per ann.* the chief are black Foxes, Sables, Beavers, white Bears, Ermins or Gurnetts, and Squirrels; Wolverine also, and white Fox are much esteemed, as also that of a Water-Rat, which smelleth like Must.

There is so great abundance of Fowls and

MUSCOVY.

Birds, that they will not take the pains to catch the smaller sorts, as Thrushes, Fieldfares, and the like. Birds of prey here are very excellent of the sort. Goshawks are accounted the best; and divers of them white, which are (for their rarity) of great price, and pretens for Princes.

Of their Fish we shall speak when we come to their Lakes.

The other products of the earth are Mines, and of these we have but a very slender account. It is reported, that not long ago there hath been discovered near *Tula*, upon the frontiers of *Tartary*, a Silver Mine; which is wrought by *German* work-men, sent thither by the Duke of *Saxony* at the entreaty of the Grand *Tzar*. A league and a half from this Mine, (in a delightful Valley between two high Mountains) is an Iron-work upon a small, but convenient River. This was, and I believe still is govern'd by a Commisary from the King of *Denmark*, who is obliged to furnish into the Grand Dukes Arsenal yearly, a considerable quantity of bars of Iron, of Canons, and fifty thousand pounds (or twenty thousand quintals) of ball, by a contract made with the Emperor. *Peter Marcellis*, the first that set up this Work, grew to be very considerable at the Court, and obtained the privilege to trade alone in Iron, Corn, and Fish-oil; as also to make Gold and Silver-wire; which is a very great profit, considering the great use of Embroideries in *Moscow*. There are in several other places, especially toward the North-West parts, Iron-mines also, but not so good as this last mentioned. However, in all of them the Iron is observed to be brittle; yet is it very serviceable for many uses, to which they understand very well how to apply it.

The commodities of the Country, which draw Merchants thither, are 1. Their Furs. 2. Wax, whereof they have shipped in one year heretofore fifty thousand pood, every pood being forty pound; but now not above ten thousand pood. 3. Honey, whereof they spend great quantities in their own country, in their drinks, yet is much also transported. 4. Tallow, heretofore much more, now about thirty thousand pood yearly sent out of the Country; the reason of the plenty of it is, because the great men generally burn Wax-lights, the ordinary people others of Fir or Birch, dip'd in Fish-oil. 5. Hides of Loth (*Lozzi*) and Buck, of which are bought by foreign Merchants about thirty thousand *per ann.* besides Goats and other skins. 6. Train-oil of *Sals*. 7. *Caviare*, the greatest part of it is made at *Astracan*, of the Roes of *Sturgeon* and *Belluga*. This is a large fish, twelve or fifteen foot long, with-out scales, else not unlike a *Sturgeon*. Of these fishes they take great quantities for the roes, which they salt and press, and put up into casks. That which is made of the *Sturgeon*, is black, small grain'd, and waxy; that of the *Belluga*, is darkish gray, and the grain as large as a Pepper-corn. In one fish they find sometimes an hundred and fifty or two hundred weight of spawn. This fish is said to ly in the bottom of the River, and to swallow many large pebbles of an incredible weight, to ballast him against the violence of the River, encreased by the melted snow; and when the waters are asswaged, he disgorgeth himself. This spawn they cleanse from its strings, salt it, drain away the oily part, by laying it on shelling boards, then put it into casks, and press it till it become hard. Linglafs (*ishbyssalle*) is made of the founts of this fish. This trade is referred to the Emperor himself. 8. Hemp and Flax; which is a great trade with the *French*, who carry thither Brandy, and bring back Hemp and Flax, which they

they work up in *Normandy*. 9. Salt likewise is a great profit to them. 10. So is Tar also. Many other commodities of lesser value and quantity, are hence carried away, as Morlets-teeth into *Turky* and *Perfia*. Slude, it is a soft rock in *Corellia*, which they cut out into lumps, and afterwards tear it into small pieces; we call it *Moscow*-glass, it is the *Lapis specularis*, and is used for Lanthorns, Windows, &c. Salt-peter, Pot-alhes, Corn, linglafs, and Iron are likewise hence transported. They have also divers manufactures, as Utensils of wood, Clothes, Saddles, and Harness for Horses, Arms, and the like; which they vend to several neighbouring countries, which want such conveniences. To which the ignorance and unskillfulness of the *Tartars*, and lazy slothfulness of the Gentleman-like *Polesanders*, give them no small opportunity.

Of the Government and Manners of the Russes.

Thus much of the Soil, their Forests, and their Commodities; concerning their Lakes we shall discourse when we come to their Rivers. It follows we should next treat of their Government, and the manners of the people, which depend upon it.

The chief axiom in their politics is, That above all things they should agree one with another, and join together against all the world. For the Empire being very large, and expoted on three sides to very dangerous enemies, *Tartars*, *Turks*, *Polesians*, and *Swedes*; their country also not being well peopled, the fortified places at great distances, they have no security but a strict union amongst themselves. Which causeth them all to concenter in absolute Monarchy, as the greatest conjunction of interests, or rather but one interest in the whole. The Prince therefore, for his part, complies with them as much as he can, marries rarely with any stranger, suffers not strangers to advance to any considerable honours, fills all the places of trust, profit, and honour, with his *Russes*; the greatest preferment a foreigner can expect, is to be Colonel of a Regiment, or to command a Fort or Army, and this but seldom, and for one expedition only. He labours to breed in his people an admiration of themselves, and that their own customs, laws, and manners are better and more rational than in any other country whatsoever; wherefore he hinders his people from travelling abroad (tho' for merchandise), from conversing with strangers, even Ambassadors, and from entreating any foreigner, except for trade. Neither will he suffer them to build any large Ships to transport merchandise in quantities to other countries: But they want not small vessels for fishing, or carrying goods from one of their own ports to another. Nor is he willing that any foreigner, who hath lived long in *Russia*, should leave them, and return to his own Nation. Nor that his *Russes* should be interpreters to other Nations. It is very rare if any of them understand *Greek*, tho' they have most affection unto, and receive their Religion from, that Church. There was at *Slavoda* a school set up for the Latin tongue (which now few or none understand), but it was quickly pull'd down again: A Printing-press also for their own books, but if not forbidden, is used only for their Offices, and such books as the Grand *Tzar* commands. Nor are there many (tho' there want not men of parts) that desire any further knowledge than to read and write in their own tongue, to understand their Service, and such homelies of the fathers (especially *St. Chrysostom*) as are translated into the *Russ* language. Now tho' this seems

MUSCOVY.

to be good policy, yet is it indeed but forcing of nature, for the converting with civiler and more knowing people cannot but work in them a despising of their own manners and ignorance, and a great desire of reforming that inconvenience; which how far it may be heightened, I know not. Besides, wanting learning they are very easily led by a good tongue and fair pretences. And therefore we have seen, that notwithstanding their education in the veneration, I had almost said adoration, to their Prince; yet are they subject to follow any pretences, if they think to amend their condition by it; and the oppositions of the *Manusacks*, or common people, and of their great men by the *Tzar* and his favourites, doth much incline them to affect alterations. How greedily did they embrace the (*Wor*) impostor *Demetrius*, tho' their Grand *Tzar Boris Godonov* was a worthy, and not cruel Prince? how easily did they deliver up to his enemies *Vasili Zaiski*, a prudent and valiant (but only as they conceived unfortunate) Emperor? what a number of impudent cheats found followers? nay I know not whether ever any pretender, except cropt in the bud, that was not able to raise an army against the government. In the time of the reign of the Princes of this present family, who have behaved themselves with great prudence, courage, and moderation, being far from the tyranny of others; yet did one *Timoshka Anichina* feign himself heir of the *Zaiskies*, and had he not been diligently pursued in his very beginning, might have raised very great troubles; as did *Stepan Radziz*, who only pretended reformation; and that insurrection against corrupt Judges in 1636, which was difficultly quiered, even by the Grand *Tzar* himself with his cap in his hand, and tears running down his cheeks. Both the stories of *Timoshka*, and of this sedition are at large set down by *Olearius*.

The Grand *Tzar* labours to nourish in the people an opinion of his own wisdom, good government, and care of all his dominions; so that they in common discourse attribute all their prosperity, all their happiness and prosperity to God and the Grand Duke. And it is very remarkable, that they had this very opinion of *Ivan Vasilovich*, then whom a greater grant was never represented in any story; yet hear what a writer of our own faith (*Purch. l. 4. c. 9.*) If I found not an universal conspiracy against him, I should speak in his defence. I honour his good parts, his wit, his learning (perhaps more than any *Russ* in his time), his exemplary severity upon unjust Magistrates, his martial skill, industry, &c. *Tea*, his memory is still favour to the *Russes*, who hold him in little less reputation than a Saint. And to the same purpose also *Herberstein*, Whether he was incited to those murders and cruelties by his own natural disposition, or the malice and treachery of his subjects, (as himself said) I dare not determine; especially since he had not any truer affect, or sign of fierceness in his countenance. And tho' these policies help very well, yet are they not sufficient to conserve the power of the Prince, nor peace of the Nation. He knows that he cannot trust to the affections or the judgment of the common people (who the more learned they are, are the more intractable and dangerous); but useth other more effectual and certain means of well governing: As that he bestows all places of honour and gain, even of the very *Dicks* or Clerks, immediately by himself. Whereby he is able to reward all that serve him; and all is acknowledged to be his bounty. Which is so much the more acceptable, because it carries the testimony of his good opinion of the person; and this breeds a great dependance upon him, and emulation amongst the Nobility; who incessantly by their

H

their observance strive to out-merit one another for his favour. But left all these should fail, he hath force to coerce them, who will not be obedient either for duties sake or reward. And besides the garrisons which are dispersed in the Castles up and down the country, wherein are great numbers of soldiers, he hath the guards of his person, which ordinarily amount to 16000 force, besides horse; many of which also are foreigners, who have no dependance upon any person but himself. That he may engage more of his Nobility and Gentry, he never continues a Governor longer than three years; nor is there any hereditary; nor doth he frequently chuse the same person again into the same employment, but advances him according to his merit. He disposeth of all the lands in his Empire, whereof some belong to respective governments and employments; the rest he seldom takes from the children of the last possessor, especially of the common people, except for crime. *The Commons pass over their lands by descent of inheritance to which of their sons they please, which commonly they do after our Gavel-kind; and dispose of their goods by gift or testament, without any controul, faith Dr. Fletcher.* Yet they pay an acknowledgment after the nature of an Heriot, or Relief.

Their Laws.

They have few laws, but many customs in their government, according to which they judge, yet no case special, extraordinary, or of consequence, is determined without the knowledge and approbation of the Grand *Tzar*. There being a Chief Justice, who is also a chief Councillor, that receives all appeals and informations from all places, and acquaints his Majesty with them. But in 1647, the Grand *Tzar* by a memorable example called together the wisest men in his dominion, and caused to be set down and published a Code, containing the laws and ordinances whereby the Judges were to regulate their judgments. Which are printed in fol. under the title of *Solovna Ulovenia*, or Universal Right. The Grand *Tzar* also makes peace and war, sends all Ambassadors, whom he commonly chuseth out of the richest of the Nobility, who may bear the expences at his own charge; the Emperor taking to himself what he pleaseth of the presents made to his Ambassador, and rewarding him according to his merit, with a government, or other beneficial employment. The more solemn laws are thus made: The Emperor calleth to him such of the *Biairs*, or Nobility, as he thinks most fit for wisdom and authority, and orders also the Patriarch to send for such of the Clergy as he thinks most prudent, to be present at a day appointed, (which commonly is a Friday, being their strict fasting-day), where the Clergy sitting in an honourable place by themselves, one of these secretaries propoeth the points to be deliberated upon, asking first of all the advice of the Clergy; his Majesty requires their godly opinions and advice, and if they approve of what is propoed, the proposals pass to a full conclusion, and are made into an Act; else they are relinquished. After all the consents given, the *Diaks* or Secretaries draw them up into the form of a Proclamation, and send them to the great Cities, with charge to the Governors to see them observed. This care is taken for the Laws of greater consequence: there are besides them very many, which tho made upon particular occasions, yet for want of better, they are in force as precedents. The great prime Minister *Afanasie Nalobockin* was endeavouring a reformation and methodizing of these, which without some such diligence must of necessity grow to be too numerous, and not very consistent one with another.

The Nobility.

Next to the Prince, are the Nobility, which are of divers degrees. Formerly there were young

ger branches of the Royal Family, who had the government and revenues of several Cities and Provinces in the middle of the Kingdom, as is before mentioned; but these were extinguished by *Ivan Vasilovich*, and the succeeding Princes have not had occasion to renew those powers and titles.

There were also *Vdelney Knazey*, exempt or privileged Dukes; who enjoyed a very great jurisdiction, and absolute authority in their own precincts. When the house of *Beala* grew too powerful for the rest, they submitted upon certain terms, the chief whereof was to assist in the wars with such a number of men. But *Ivan Vasilovich* by degrees fo clipped and retrained their authority, that at length he reduced them into the same condition with the rest of his subjects. And to effect this, he first for one against another, but afterwards divided the whole Nobility into two factions; the one was of confiding men, such as he conceived to be firm to his interest; the other were malignants, or ill affected. If any one of these were oppressed, spoiled, or kill'd by one of the other party, there was no remedy nor justice to be expected. All men knew also, who was of which party, and a register was kept of them. By which barbarous and tyrannical means, in seven years (for so long that continued) he took out of the way all such as himself suspected, encouraged his own party, and enriched his treasures exceedingly by the confiscations. If any remained, he took away their estates, and gave them in exchange others of lesser value in some remote Province; or by some other means wasted and consumed them. And whom *Ivan* left, *his Federovich* made a shift to dispart, that himself, a stranger to the Throne, might the more securely enjoy it.

Now therefore the chiefest degree of Nobility is that of the *Biairs* or *Baiares*. These are such as the Emperor, besides their Nobility, honours with being of his Council. These are the great body of Nobles, out of whom he raiseth his servants, governors, soldiers, &c. Many of them are rich, both in lands (which they receive from, and continue by, the favour of the Emperor), salaries for their services, especially the Court-offices and governments, and their own acquisition. Many also have annual pensions from the Emperor, especially if they have either merited well, or by abilities give hopes that they will be able to do him service.

They also who have born any great office in war, as a General, Governor, &c. do leave something of title to their posterity; so as they take place of all under the *Biairs*. They also, as well as the *Biairs*, may add wick to the name of their ancestors, *Federovich*, *Ivanovich*, &c. i.e. the son of *Theodore*, of *John*, &c. which is accounted a great honour amongst them, and they may have reparations upon those who do not give it them. Yet themselves do not use that privilege when they write to their Lord; but on the contrary, diminish their own true name, calling themselves, e.g. *Timoska* for *Timothy*, *Ivoshka* for *Ivan*, and the like diminutives for humilities sake. They also carry a little Kettle-drum at the pommel of their saddles, upon which they beat with the end of their whip, to make way for them in crowds in the streets; and in wars, to give notice of marching, staying, or the like. The first that receives the command beating, all the rest answer him.

Next to these are the *Knazey*, which our people call *Dukes*. This title anciently was of great honour, inasmuch that the Grand *Tzar* call'd himself *Veliki Knez*, or Great Duke. But the *Knazey* communicating their titles to all their posterity, have

have so multiplied, that now there are *Knazey*, who are glad to serve persons of mean quality for a small salary. Tho at the same time they will not fail to boast of their nobility, and trouble any one that shall affront them.

The *Sin-boiairs*, or *Sina-boiaresky*, are the sons of such as enjoy lands and revenues for serving the Emperor in his wars; and are the same with those that with us hold in Knights-service, and the lands holden in this tenure are commonly divided amongst the sons; except the sons are so numerous that there is not a competency for each of them; in which case they petition the Emperor for maintenance, and he commonly gives them inferior offices in the Court, or makes them spies and informers, allowing them a small annual pension; till a war come, which entertains them all.

The Grand *Tzar* hath also his Council. He gives indeed the honorary title of Councillors to very many who never come to consult; but those who are actually employed, and called to advise, are called *Dumny Baiares*; and their number is as the Prince pleases. This Council consisteth of all the great Officers of State, and such others as himself pleaseth to call to his honour. Yet neither are all these continually present; but he (as most other Princes) for more secrecy in some, and more easie dispatch in other businesses, hath a few select persons (a Cabinet Council) with whom he adviseth first, and prepart matters for the great Council, who for the most part meet together rather to consent, and to give weight and reputation to the resolves, then to argue, or give their opinion, and determine affairs. The Patriarch is not named amongst them, as being supposed to be continually employed in the duties of Religion; but in matters of consequence, his advice is commonly asked and followed. This Council receiveth appeals; and all other great matters are remitted to them.

Besides this, there are many other Chambers, Courts, or Councils, (as they are called in some Kingdoms); but the principal are six, which have every one their several businesses. The first is for Ambassadors, and foreign affairs. The second for businesses of war. The third for the demesne and revenue of the Prince. The fourth for trade and merchandize. The fifth for determination of civil causes amongst themselves. The sixth for criminal matters. Every Council hath its President, Councillors, Secretaries, &c. who write all things at large in rolls, after the ancient manner, sometimes thirty or forty cills long; whereof they have vast quantities orderly laid up in their respective offices. To these also are referred all the affairs of the whole Nation; every Province being assign'd to one of these; to send their appeals, make their relations, receive orders, and the like. Every Council knowing the Provinces that belong to it, and the Province knowing its own Council and office where to make their applications. In their judgments they give sentence according to witnesses, if there be any; if none, they give liberty for trial by combat, wherein it is lawful for the Appellant or the Appellee to substitute another in his stead. Sometimes they put them to the question or torment, wherein they are very ingeniously cruel; sometimes also to their oath; tho no man be compelled to swear; but if any voluntarily offers it, it is commonly accepted, and solemnly performed in the Church, by kissing a cross. But he that swears in this manner twice or thrice, becomes infamous, he is prohibited entrance into the Church, nor will persons of condition willingly converse with him. For there be

Muscovy.

ing amongst them no more abhor'd crime then false-swearing, they startle at every solemn oath; tho in their conversation they are not scrupulous of swearing. They refer also some doubtful matters to lots, of which see a story in *Haklutt*, p. 309.

Their usual punishments are severe. A robber *Their* is broke upon the wheel. A sacrilegious person *Punish-* impaled. A traitor, and a servant that murders *ments.* his master, beheaded. An Adulterer compounded with the abused husband; and besides, is whipped from the Court to the house of the Adulterers; and the (if her husband pleases) is repudiated, and put into a Monastery; and himself after six weeks, hath liberty to marry another. But none suffer more severity, than those that are in debt; who are kept prisoners till a day appointed, when they engage to pay; if they keep not their day, and be able to pay, they are every day brought into the Court, and there beaten for an hour together upon their flanks and the calves of their legs, and back to prison at night, and so till the debt be paid. But if they be unable to pay it, they are made slaves to the creditor.

The chief Officers of State and the Court for Officers of State. secular businesses under the Emperor are much what the same as in all other Monarchies. The Chancellor, who is also the chief Secretary, and to him belongs, and he presides in the office of Ambassadors; his charge also is to present petitions to the *Tzar*, and to return his answer, which he doth in the Princes own words. The Treasurer, that looks to, and takes account of all the revenue. The Constable, who looks after the soldiery. The Master of the Horse, who besides the Prince's horses, minds also the Guards, their discipline and quartering. The *Orechick*, or Chief Justice, whom they call the *Great Councillor*, always present with the Princes person: under whom is the *Nedelskitch*, who commands all the Sergeants, Prisons, &c. And divers of these are sometimes bestowed upon the face of person. *Ilias Danielowitch Miloslavsky* was Generalissimo, an employment very befitting him, for he was a man of great courage, and strength both of body and mind; he had such a vast memory, that he knew all the Commission-officers of an Army of eighty thousand, what their abilities, and where their quarters. He was also Treasurer, and had divers offices besides. *Afanasie Nalobockin* succeeded him in his Princes favour, and was Chancellor, Treasurer, Lord of *Russia* minor, and had several other employments; a man not corrupted by bribes, very sober and abtemperant, indetachable in business, and who seriously set about a reformation of the evil customs of his country.

But such a vast dominion as *Russia* cannot be governed without very many Magistrates; and such indeed there are. There is a Court, or Council for the government of *Moskov*, who have many officers under them. In all the great frontier Cities are *Weywods*, or Governors of great quality and experience; and in every City two, if not three, besides the officers of Justice City. In lesser Cities are also Governors, but of lesser quality; whom the Grand *Tzar* appoints by delivering them a staff, which at their return they restore him again, and this is the ensign of their power. Besides these, there are divers other Magistrates, as the *Gubnoy-larsky*, which is like an Alderman or Mayor of a Town. *Sarsky-larsky*, like a Baili of an Hundred. And divers others, who can judge in small cases, and from whom there is appeals; a great catalogue of them is in *Olearius*, an. 1626. But *Afanasie Nalobockin* had a design, that to save the subjects trouble, and the Princes charge, the Governors should in many

Inferior Magistrates.

H a

cales,

cafes, and even in some capital matters, have power of judging without appeal, and executing also their judgments. One thing seems very faulty in their government, that having so many Magistrates salaried by the Prince, their stipends must necessarily be very small and inconsiderable, yet are they by these to make their fortunes, and many of them to receive rewards of former services and caprices. Consequently they must oppress the people, and so much the more, as will not only falsify themselves, but also buy their peace and impunity at their return from their employment.

Thus much for their government, let us see what means there is to maintain it, the Emperors revenues I mean, which are very great, and arise thus:

1. There is the office of the *Steward*, which receives all the Emperors revenue of his inheritance, or Crown-lands; which contain thirty-six Towns with their territories; whereof some pay their rents in money, others in corn, or other provision. This provision for the Emperors household is more than is spent, and the surplus is sold by the Steward, and the money brought into the Treasury, which according to the bounty and hospitality of the Emperor is more or less. In *Ivan Vasilovich's* time, it was accounted 60000 Rubbles per ann. but in his sons time 230000. And this commonly is employed in paying the wages of his household-servants.

2. The office that receiveth the *Tagla* and *Podat*, (*Tagla* is an imposition upon every measure of grain that groweth in the Kingdom; the *Podat* is a tax of money upon every Town and Precinct), bringeth in *communibus annis* about 400000 Rubbles.

3. The Court of the great income (*bulshu prelat*) receiveth all the customs upon commodities in all the principal Towns, and this is farmed out to the respective places; and is therefore (as trading rises and falls) sometimes more, sometimes less; *communibus annis* it may be reckoned 200000 Rubbles. The customs of the Town of *Archangel*, have (as some say) amounted to 600000 Rubbles per ann. This office also gives account of all the Bath-houses, and Cabacks, or drinking-houses; the greatness of which revenue may be conjectured by those of *Novogorod*, where are three houses that pay each 4000 Rubbles per ann. As also of the mulcts of sentences that pass in any Court, which is ten per cent. paid by him that is convicted by Law. He hath also an impoft for every name contained in the Writs that pass out of the Courts. This amounteth commonly to 3000 Rubbles. He hath also the half of Feudal goods (a fourth going to the Judge and Officers, the other fourth to the informer). There being moreover divers rents of lands allowed for the maintaining so many horse; others for so many foot; others for the mercenary or foreign soldiers. There is somewhat spared out of these rents, and in times of peace above the one half, which is also brought into this office. What it amounts unto, is uncertain. But in the year 1590, these three offices were reckoned to bring in yearly 1400000 Rubbles.

4. But besides these, he hath other very great revenues by merchandizing, as 1. By *Caviare* and *Isinglass*, which all belongs to him; he either hiring men to fish for him, or lending them money to set up fishing, and the account being made of what they have caught, he allows them for their pains, and takes all the rest. He hirerth out also the greatest part of the fishery of the Lakes and Rivers. 2. By Furs; for *Siberia*, and those northern countries, do all pay their tribute in Furs.

MUSCOVY.

which he selleth by his Merchants, or else faweth money, by paying with it Ambassadors, soldiers, and the like. His merchandizing is very remarkable, for (1) he hath the liberty of pre-emption of whatever merchandize comes into his country; which he buys also at low prices, so that many times he engrosseth a whole commodity, and raises its price as he pleareth; (2) The price of what he buys is paid in commodities of his own; for he never, or very rarely suffers any gold or silver to be carried out of his dominions. (3) He hath also the prevention; none must sell his commodities, *v. g.* Furs, till the *Tzar* hath sold all that he intends; whereby he sets what price upon commodities he pleaseth. (4) He frequently monopolizeth one, or more of the commodities of his own country. And all Sables (the best trade of the Nation) are his own as tribute, or at a small set-rate. All this is managed either by the Governors of his Towns, many of whom are no other than his Factors, or stewards for his interest; or by *Goles* or Merchants of his own, who have salaries to look after these matters. Besides, the presents brought him by foreign Ambassadors, and what his own bring him (for he takes what pleaseth him of what is given them), are very considerable.

But neither are his expenses small. His family consists of at least a thousand persons, nourished and salaried by him, besides his Guards at *Moscow*, 16000 musketeers and about 5000 horse. His garri- sons upon the frontiers (the greatest towards *Tartaria*) a hundred thousand men. Compounding for peace with the *Tartar* is very chargeable. His own table consists ordinarily of fifty dishes of meat, which are all brought up; he chuseth what he liketh, and sends the rest to whom he pleaseth. The salaries of his officers and magistrates, too to each of them but a small matter, yet being many, ariseth to a very vast sum. The receiving of Ambassadors is chargeable; for he defrayeth all their expence from their entrance into his Country till their going out. His posts, messengers, horses, carriages have a large account; so have his works, buildings, making arms, canons, and the like.

Concerning their dispositions, manners, and customs, we have very many (and most of them very impertinent) discourses. They are generally men of strong, vigorous, healthful bodies. 'Tis but of late that they have entertained Physicians; but in Fevers (and other diseases) garlick and strong-water were their only remedies; tho' they had some few that pretended to understand the virtues of plants, yet they were not much believed. This healthfulness may perhaps be attributed to their frequent fastings, and generally slender diet; tho' themselves rather conceive it to be from their much use of sweating in stoves, which repairs the damages that the colds bring upon them; confirming those parts which the cold weakeneth. All strangers admire their sudden changing from heat to cold, that from sweating in an hot stove, they will naked leap and wallow in snow, and immediately return to the heat again. So much has custom hardened and familiarized their bodies to these extremes, if yet custom can do it, and that they have not a peculiar texture and temperature of their parts from their nativity. But it seems out of doubt, that the exercises of their young men, which are boxing, cudgels, and wrestling, do much contribute to their patient enduring of beatings, whippings, and the like. Nor is the familiar recreation of the Ladies to be discommended, which is swinging, or that which the *Romans* called *petarus*. They seem to affect corpulency, especially their

their Nobility, who perhaps imagine, that a prominent belly is an evident difference betwixt one that lives at ease and plenty, and a man of labour.

Authors are very liberal in the censure of their manners, not excusing them from any vice; and interpreting all their customs and actions (I am afraid) too sinisterly. Few, that have written, conversed with persons of better quality (their *Boiars* being prohibited all company with strangers, and even Ambassadors) then such as serve them for gain, or trades-men, who seldom in any country are commended for their justice and good dealing by strangers. But Dr. *Fletcher*, and those few of our own country that have written, confess that there are amongst the Nobility very many, and amongst the populace some, of very excellent parts, courage, and discretion. But it is not rational, to pass censure upon any Nation or Country, from the customs of the meanest people, whose manners are everywhere licentious, turbulent, and bestial enough. It seems indeed, that the education and oppressions amongst them, suggest such customs as render them sufficiently infamous. But good *indoles*, experience of good and bad, examples, and instruction of virtuous persons, and especially our holy Religion, in many conquests shew evil motions and temptations which others, not looking into themselves, do swallow and embrace. Being therefore educated only to write, read, and cast accounts (which yet they do not so artificially and conveniently as the rest of the world, for they count by forties and nineties, not hundreds, or sixties, which is the usual; nor by eighths, which perhaps is the best) and those who are ordained for the Clergy, to sing; they must mispend a great part of their youth. Nor do they attain to the mortifying their passions and the exercise of virtues practised even in rival schools. Nor do they by books learn the examples and prudence of other nations and times. Nor are they able to serve themselves of other useful arts and sciences, as not that of well-speaking, not mathematics, and what depends upon them, as architecture, measuring, fortification, &c. where in they are forced to make use of foreigners when they have necessity. Besides, that all learning hath this use, that it replenishes the memory with good notions, and elevates the mind to some degree of contemplation. Yet in this also they have some that seeing their defect, labour to amend it; as *Ivan Borislovitch Kerkess* got divers histories, and foreign books of arts and sciences, translated into the *Russ* tongue; he was esteemed the wisest and justest person of their nation, by them who yet did not imitate him. But in sum, they have just so much learning as to account whatever they know not to be vanity, and them fools that study it; and yet to make them jealous and afraid to be over-reached and couzen'd by strangers, whom they always suspect to know more than themselves. Their oppression by their superiors drives them to fortify themselves by cunning and deceit, ready also and willing to help themselves by any safe, tho' unlawful, means. They are also hereby rendered very ungenerous and cowardly, and as far from valour as generosity. From hence proceeds also, that they are haughty and insolent towards their inferiors, mistaking that for grandeur and greatness of spirit; cruel also when they have advantage. The coldness of their country invites them to strong drinks; and the pleasure of this provokes to excess and drunkenness; and this to all bestiality and quarrelsome. *Michael Fedorovitch*, a very wife, moderate, and sober Prince, did what he could to hinder this vice; punishing with flogging the nose, the use of Tobacco (which the *Russes* took brutishly, only to cause drunken-

MUSCOVY.

ness and sleep), and also regulating the number of drinking-houses. He also made severe laws against injuring superiors. And his diligence and severity had some, but not the desired effect; for he reformed in a great part those excesses in the Nobility, but the lowest sort were not much amended.

But there being no Nation so good, wherein are not many (should I say the major part, *Litia* and *Litia* should not be disbelieved) bad, and none so bad, wherein are not many good; we ought to be wary how we censure them. Let us therefore proceed rather, to shew their publick actions, and by them take a truer or better estimate. As, that we may judge of their valour, let us consider their soldiery, and manner of warring; that we may know their piety, let us look upon the exercise of their Religion, and the like. To begin with the soldiery. They have four very potent and warlike neighbours; some whereof are always enemies (the *Tartars* and *Turks*), and the rest no very good friends (the *Polanders* and *Suedes*). And such is the situation of the country, that they cannot have near hand any friends or assistants. So that their defence must rest upon themselves; for the foreign soldiers and officers that straggle to them for pay, are not considerable as to a great war. His standing Militia then consists partly in his Garriisons, which in the frontier Towns, especially toward the *Tartars* and *Turks*, (for the *Polonians* and *Suedes* being Christians, when he hath made an accord with them, he hath peace), who keep no articles longer than it is for their advantage, are very strong, numerous, and well furnished with good officers. In the inland places the guards are few and weak; sufficient only to countenance the government, and to be nurseries for a serious war. His garriisons, besides his ordinary guards (which are above twenty thousand) amount to an hundred thousand men, in actual service, and upon continual duty, and therefore in time of war must be augmented. Besides therefore he hath a Militia to be ready upon summons to rendezvous and march as he shall please; which is thus. He letereth out a great part of the land of the whole Nation, to those called *Sinaboiarsky*, upon condition that themselves, their sons, and retainers, or farmers, to such a number as he thinks fitting, shall serve him with horse and arms, and at their own charge, in the wars. Such are the present *Spahi* amongst the *Turks*, and Knights-service amongst us. Now every son of any of these is a *Sinaboiar*, or Gentleman; and as soon as he is able to bear arms, enters himself in the *Roferade* (or Office of Great Contable), and petitions for means to maintain him. If his fathers Farm be not sufficient, nor any other void, they are either put into some low and mean employment, or else deferred till there happen something fit for him; till when he must live as well as he can. When the Emperor goes in person to the wars, he hath a select guard of fifteen thousand horse, who are all paid; the best fort have not under seventy Rubbles, the second not under forty, and the third not under twelve Rubbles per ann. Besides their lands, which are also allowed them. Besides these, the chiefest Nobles, and men of employment, are also obliged to maintain considerable numbers of horse, amounting to sixty thousand, at their own charges; yet receiving a sufficient allowance also for them from the Grand *Tzar*. And these are mustered and employed every year, at least to shew themselves upon the borders of *Tartaria*. The foreign soldiers are mostly mingled amongst his guards, and are sometimes more, sometimes fewer; the greatest part are *Polonians*, *Circassians*, or *Cossacks* (who amount

amount sometimes to four thousand, and are dispers'd in garrisons furest from their own country; *Dutch*, and some few *Suedes*, and *Danes*; many of which are for their skill taken to be officers. All these (besides the hundred thousand by mention'd) are esteemed to make up three hundred thousand horse, which are ready to march upon all occasions.

Arms and discipline of their Soldiers.

Their arms for their foot, are a gun, a sword, and an axe behind them; of their horse, are bows, arrows, iron maces, scimitars, targets, lances; some few have helmets, corselets of iron, or quilted cloth. But now they have great quantity of fire-arms, and abundance of canon. And in all their arms and discipline, they conform to the *European* manner, which was introduced amongst them by the great number of officers, *Poles*, *Suedes*, *Scots*, &c. that have been thither invited by the goodness of the pay. Every one of the *Sinboars* carries his own provisions for so long time, which are biscuit, oats, pulse, pepper and salt together, vinegar, and brandy. Their Commanders are the same that we have; a General, Lieutenant-General, four field-Majors, each of whom takes care of the fourth part of the army; and each hath two under-Majors, who twice every week (whilst in the field) muster and exercise their men. They have also a General of the Ordnance, and other officers under him. They made use of (in their wars with the *Tartars*) a General they call'd the *Walking Captain*, or the Commander of the walking Cattle, which is nothing else but a double wall of thick pales, to contrived that it might be in short time set up in length, and then would reach five miles; and the two walls about ten foot distance. The pales were higher than a man, and in them loop-holes, to lay out the noses of their muskets. And this is sufficient for the defence of their host, where the enemy hath no canon, as the *Tartars* have not; else it is of little use or esteem. They had also one great Drum carried upon four horses fastened together, and eight men to beat it; but these customs are laid aside, and they follow the modes of the *Germans*, and other *Europeans*.

Their Valour.

They are acknowledg'd to be better at keeping Forts and Cities than in a field battle; to which also their frequent failings, slender diet, education to hardship, do much dispose them. Their women have many times supplied the defect of soldiers, kept guards, fought stoutly upon the works, and even defended breaches. In some of the Castles of *Livonia*, when the *Poles* took them, they found almost all the men consumed; in one but two were left, and yet those two refused to yield up the Fort, lest they should seem not to have performed their trust to their Prince. When the *Poles*ians upbraid them with their loss of so many barrels when they had sufficient advantages, they answer, But who hath *Smolensky*, *Novogorod*, &c. Their Forts are very well victual'd and man'd, fortified commonly with turf, kept up with bays, hurdles, or timber, which resist battery the better, tho' the frost have too much power upon them. They now also face them with brick and stone. Their *Sinboars* are educated and inur'd to war in those Forts; but they stay not above a year or two in one garrison, as neither do the *Governours*. There are generally two, and sometimes three *Governors* in one garrison; the chiefest hath care of the munition, and never stirs forth; the other upon occasion go abroad, sally, fetch in contribution, &c. many of them are very valiant, expert, and careful soldiers. Of all their borders, they most apprehend the *Suedes*. The *Polesians* are more valiant, and will not fear with twenty thousand to fight sixty thousand *Russes*; but they are not

MUSCOVY.

so expert in taking Towns, nor are they so easily kept together, their obedience being too voluntary. The *Tartars* do the *Russes* most mischief, for in sudden and violent inroads, they sweep a whole country, carrying away all that are able to march, and children that can endure to be carried in baskets, which they bring with them for that purpose. If the *Russes* meet with them, they never refuse to fight with them; but the *Tartars* seldom come to a battle, but if they apprehend themselves weaker, they will all disperse, and rendezvous again at night, or after one day or two. In their last invasion he is said to have carried away four hundred thousand captives; which is enough to depopulate a country. The best defence against them is a great barren desert of twenty days march, being the confines between them and the *Russes*. But in general all wars are prejudicial to the *Russ*; for they raise great armies for the most part of married men, and are not very careful of preferring their men; all the time therefore that war lasts, the women are unfruitful, and by that means the old stock decays, and the new doth not advance. The remedy they have is by working the *Czermis* and other moderate *Tartars* mingled amongst them, to a coalition with them into the same Religion and Government; which the *Russes* sedulously endeavour, and have in good part effected.

Next for their Religion, and religious ceremonies. Themselves say, that *St. Andrew* planted Christianity amongst them, which was by invasion of the *Tartars* afterwards either abolished or very much defaced, till after the year 900 (some say 960, other 989) it was again restored by *Volodimir*. I find in *Can. 28. Conc. Chalced.* that it is order'd, That the Churches of the Barbarians should receive their Ordinations from *Constantinople*. Both *Balsamon* and *Zonaras* interpret this of the *Russes*. So that these two learned persons were of this opinion, that the *Russes* were Christians before that Council, which began 451. And their Metropolitan being consecrated by the *Constantinopolitan* Patriarch, may seem to argue so much. But neither of these arguments are convincing; let us therefore follow the common opinion. It is acknowledged by all, that they were Christians in *Volodimir's* time, and that they follow'd, or consented with the *Greek* Church, as they do still in most of their opinions and practices.

The greatest difference seems to be their rebaptization, whereof more by and by. Their Ecclesiastical Government was the same with that of all the Churches, till now of late, i. e. by Bishops, Priests, and Deacons; whether they retain the lesser Orders (as they are called) I cannot find. Till of late the supreme Officer in their Church was the Metropolitan of *Moscow*; who being elected by his Clergy, was ordained or consecrated by a commission from the Patriarch of *Constantinople*. But about the year 1588, there came to *Moscow* one *Hieronymus*, who pretended to be Patriarch of *Constantinople*, and to have been banished for I know not what reason by the *Turks*. Others said, that he was deposed by his own Clergy, for complying too much with the Western Church. And de facto he did endeavour to reconcile the *Russes* to the Church of *Rome*; to that purpose *Ant. Poffevine* was at that time also sent by the Pope, the King of Poland, and other Christian Princes, who interceded themselves seriously in this affair; which not succeeding, *Hieronymus* began to treat about resigning his Patriarchship, and translating of the See from *Constantinople* to *Moscow*; which motion was greedily embraced by the *Russes*. And Jan. 25, 1588, in a very great solemnity, (the Prince, and all the Nobility and

Clergy

Clergy going in procession thro' a great part of the City) at length in our Lady's Church, he made an oration to the forefaid purpose, deliver'd up his Renunciation authenticated, and his Patriarchal Staff into the hands of the Metropolitan of *Moscow*; who presently with divers ceremonies was inaugurated Patriarch. And his successors do all use that title, and are consecrated by their own Bishops. Whether this action was valid I dispute not; 'tis sufficient that the Patriarch of *Constantinople*, who is most concern'd, doth not question it; and to stop his mouth, as I suppose, there is every year, besides upon divers other occasions, a very considerable present of five hundred crowns sent to him. Besides, the *Greeks* want not other artifices, as sending things hallow'd, reliques, &c. for which they receive very great presents. Yet *Filaretus Nikitsy*, the late Patriarch and Father to the Emperor *Michael Fedorovich*, was consecrated by the Patriarch of *Constantinople*, but since him none.

Till this time there was no other Metropolitan in all *Russia* but this of *Moscow*; but that Church being become *ecumenical*, they immediately made two new Metropolitans, the one of *Novogorod velica*, the other of *Rostov*, these were the only Archbishops before. But since that they have added two more, one of *Cafanskoy* and *Sviatskoy*, who resideth at *Cafan*; the other of *Sarskoy* and *Pondoskoy*, who lives commonly in the Castle of *Moscow*, and is the Patriarch's Substitute or Coadjutor, when upon any good cause, as age, sickness, or the like, he is hindered from officiating. They had also (as *Poffevine* complains) but eleven Bishops for all that large Empire; but since that time they have added two (I suppose because of their conquests), and advanced all except one, that is the Bishop of *Comenskoy* and *Cafeskiy*, who lives at *Columna*, into Archbishops. The Patriarch hath absolute power in what concerns Religion, with such authority, that even in things relating to the Civil government, he reforms what he thinks prejudicial to Religion, without giving the Grand *Tzar* any account of it; who, without any contestation, commands the orders made by the Patriarch to be executed. As the late Patriarch *Nikon* being an enemy to music, forbade all music in their merry meetings, and search'd the houses in *Moscow* for such instruments, and burnt five wagon-load of them.

Leo, their first Metropolitan, had his See at *Chioin*, afterwards when *Volodimir* was the Metropolitan of the Empire, the Metropolitan also removed thither, accompanying still the Prince; and now is at *Moscow*. The jurisdiction of the Bishops is the same as in other Churches; for besides their authority over the Clergy, and ordering Ecclesiastical matters, they take cognizance also of causes Testamentary, Matrimonial, some pleas of injury, &c. They never visit their Dioceses, but have certain Lay-men, in whose judgments they can confide, to give them account of the lives and demeanors of the Clergy. They have also Officials or Commissaries, (called *Boiaren Vladitsky*) Lay-men (they have both Archdeacons and Protodeacons, but not employed in those offices) that keep their Courts, and exercise their jurisdiction. And these are not appointed by the Bishop, but by the Emperor, tho' he seldom denies the Bishop to nominate, if he request it. But every Bishop hath for Ecclesiastical matters, and for the more solemn service of God, a Council of twenty-four Priests of his Dioceses, who are as it were Friends or Canons of his Cathedral Church, where they continually reside. The revenues of the Bishops have been (as they say) greater then now they

MUSCOVY.

are. The Patriarch hath about three thousand Rubbles *per an.* The Metropolitans and Archbishops about two thousand five hundred. But all this revenue is not for their own use, but they are obliged to furnish at their own charges, such a number of soldiers.

The nomination of Bishops belongs to the Emperor, who always takes them from amongst the Monks, which obligeth them all to live unmarried, not to eat flesh, wear no rings, or linen shirts or drawers; besides other like Monastic observances. The Patriarch is chosen by all the Bishops, Clergy, and Abbots, who give notice of their election to the Prince; if he disapprove it, they chuse another. Lastly, at the election of *Nikon*, the Clergy named two, and could not agree, the Emperor caused them to call lots, and the lot fell three times upon the person of *Nikon*.

Of inferior Clergy they have a very great number; there being many Parishes in their Cities, tho' unequally divided (some much bigger than others), and every Church many Priests belonging to it. They have no particular care of educating persons for this office; but any one that thinks himself fully qualified, presents himself to the Patriarch, or the next Metropolitan, who examining his ability (which consists chiefly in reading, writing, and singing well) ordains him; which is chiefly by cutting of the hair on the top of his head, covering it with a Callos, and putting on a Surplice, a little cross of white silk upon his breast, and then gives him his benediction, and authority to officiate in the Church, and to administer the Sacraments. He must be the husband of one wife, and if his wife die, he can neither officiate as a Priest, nor marry another; so that they do not conceive the character to be indelible. Yet a widower may sing, read, &c. and may serve as a Deacon, but he must not officiate at the Altar. And some of them get leave to keep their Benefices, and yet enter into a Monastery; such they call *Churnapapars*.

Their revenues are not from tithes, tho' it be said, that *Volodimir* at his introducing of Christianity, seized tithes also upon the Clergy; nor have they any fixed salary, but they are content with what they receive from the people for baptizing, marrying, burying, offerings, prayers for the dead, &c. besides, every private person upon any occasion of business, desires the Priest to say a prayer for him, for which he gives him something. They also solemnize the Saints-day of the Parish, when all the neighbourhood come in to be prayed for, and make an offering. Once a quarter also he blesseth his Parishioners houses and families. By these and many other such like ways, they make up a competent livelihood for themselves, and to give the tenth allo of it to the Bishop. Protapapas, or Archpriests and Archdeacons are only in Cathedral Churches.

They have service twice a day, about break of day Mattens, at noon Mass, Vespers in the evening. And it consists of Psalms, certain portions of Scripture, the Creeds, prayers, and sometimes an homily of some of the Fathers, or the life of the Saint of the day in their own language. Never other preaching, except once in a year, when the Patriarch with very great solemnity, makes a short exhortation to the people, to serve God, obey their Prince, and live in unity and charity with their neighbours. They never kneel at their devotions, but stand up, and sometimes bow, knocking their forehead to the ground. *Ivan Vasilevitch* was frequent in the Church, sung the prayers with the Clergy, and sometimes had his forehead swell'd with knocking the floor. They com-

Election of their Bishops.

Inferior Clergy.

Their Revenues.

Their Service.

12

Communion.

communicate children at seven years old, and before in case of sickness; when they communicate, they have an hostie in the middle of a barley cake; the communicants partake of the hostie, the rest of the people have the barley-cake broke amongst them, as a *pain-benift*. They communicate ordinarily but once a year, which is about Easter, and then only three at a time, and afterwards more extraordinary fasting, mortification, or confession, which they make standing in the middle of the Church, and before some picture of a Saint. The Priest appoints him penance, gives him absolution, and admits him to the Sacrament. They are very severe in their fastings, having more of the memorial of one Saint at least, yet are there but thirteen great and solemn holidays, besides the Sundays; nor do the ordinary people observe many of these, and those they do observe, they do it more with debauchery and drinking than devotion. But in their fasts they are so severe, that they will not taste any thing that comes of flesh, nor to much as a medicine, if it have *cornu cervi*, or *ungula Alcis* in it. All authors take notice of the veneration they have to their images. *Possivine* faith, they do only not adore them. Others say, that they look upon the Saints as causes and coworkers of their salvation. Yet divers among them are of another opinion. A Prototopo of *Calansky* speaking too liberally against this worship, was degraded, and thrust into a Monastery. And their late Patriarch *Nicon* seeing he could not remedy it, retired from his charge to a private life. Others excuse this worship, attributing it to the great ceremoniousness the *Russes* use both in their devotions and ordinary conversation.

Their Images.

Their marriages.

All men take notice and make long discourses of their marriages and burials. But there is scarce any Nation that hath not some particularities about these; many men also take delight in their own fancies. That which is most peculiar to the *Russes* is, that they keeping up their women, especially their virgins, very close and private, rarely suffering them to come abroad, so much as to Church, or to make visits, but never to Balls or merry meetings; it happens frequently that a man comes to marry one whom he never saw before, or is not acquainted with her conditions. Parents commonly make up the matches, only the young man may employ his mother, or some other friend, to see and give information of her; as the maid doth of the bridegroom. But in recompence of the inconveniences which may follow, they dissolve marriages upon very slight occasions; and the man, after a short forbearance, hath liberty to marry again. They go to Church, and receive the Priests benediction; who having ask'd their consents, and read some prayers, gives them his blessing, and drinks to them, and they also drink to one another. All their friends present them, and the gifts that please are prized, that the value may be returned in a competent time; those which are unuseful or superfluous, they return again, nor is it ill taken. A woman is not worse esteemed for marrying a second husband, but a third is scandalous.

and burials.

What is particular in their burials, is that they carry out their dead (even the Emperor himself) the same day he dyes, and accompany him with great howlings and lamentations of women. They leave the body unburied for eight days, praying for him every day; then they return, kiss him, the Priest puts a billet into his mouth, to testify of his godly life; and that he receiv'd absolution; and then after some prayers they inter him, and keep his anniversary with

MUSCOVY.

prayers and devotions. They bury none in their Churches.

They think their baptism to be most solemn, and most effectual of any other celebrated amongst Christians. Children they baptize in the Church, adult persons in Rivers; the Font stands in the midst of the Church, and they consecrate new water for every one that is baptized, imagining that the impurity of the child's original sin (cleansed by baptism) remains still in the water. They have a solemn procession about the Font, the Clerk (who is always their Deacon) carrying before the image of St. *John Baptist*. As soon as the child is baptized, he puts a grain of salt into his mouth, anoints him, making the sign of the cross upon the forehead, hands, breast, and back, with consecrated oyl, puts him on a white shirt, and hangs about his neck a little cross; which he is obliged to wear as long as he lives; which if it should not be found upon him at his death, he would not receive Christian burial. He assigns him also a particular Saint to be his Patron, ordering the godfathers to put him in mind (when he comes of age) to have a particular devotion towards him. Conceiving baptism to be the entrance into the Church, they baptize all (except the *Greeks*) that come into their Church, tho they have been before baptized in the name of the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost. Those also who are excommunicated, or are conceived to be out of the Church by any prophane or wicked action (as those they call *Chaldeans*) they receive into the Church again by baptism. So that there are those amongst them who have been baptized ten or twelve times.

Others remain of these.

In the rest of their ceremonies and doctrines, they differ little from the *Greek* Church; only they superadd divers things, as the hallowing of their Rivers, which they do twice every year; the greatest pomp is on Palm-sunday, when the Emperor leads the Patriarch's horse. They account many things and persons unclean, as Christians of another profession; inasmuch that the Emperor washeth his hands after any Christian Ambassador hath killed them. They will not permit such to enter into their Churches, and if they do enter, they sweep after them. Divers sorts of meats also are accounted unclean, nor do they willingly eat of any fowl, or such thing killed by a woman. After they have accompanied their wives, they enter not the Church till they have washed; and many other such observances they have. After any one hath received Extreme Unction, they will hardly give him meat, but no medicine upon any terms, so that he must dy in his own defence. They begin the year on the first of September, that day being, as they suppose, the first day, and they keep their account from the creation. They account our world to have been incarnate in 5509 of the world (reckoning according to the *Septuagint*), to which adding the year of our Lord (as 5509 1679) gives their account of this present year 7188; and subtracting from the present year of the epocha at our Lord's birth (as 7188+5509) gives the present year of our Lord 1679. Their Offices are all in their own language, which is the *Slavonian*; and hath so great affinity with the *Polonian*, *Lithuanian*, *Cassubian*, *Tundalian*, those also of *Bohemia*, *Dalmatia*, *Bulgaria*, and *Croatia*, that they can make shift to converse one with another.

It remains that we speak something of their Religious. They have many Monasteries, and some very rich; but all of one order, which is St. *Basil*. Few of their Governors are *Archimandrites* or Abbots, but most Priors or *Igemens*. Tho many

many of them have great revenues, yet do they difficultly admit any one, except he bring a flock with him, which is seldom under three hundred Rubbles; the rest of his estate he must dispose of at his admission. The ceremonies of their reception are changing his cloths, which are to be all of woollen, clipping his crown very bare, unction, and the like. They vow perpetual chastity, and abstinence from flesh. Nor hath he that is once enter'd, ever any hopes to get out again. The Monastery of *Traitze* is said to have had near an hundred thousand Rubbles per ann. in revenue. It is built like a Castle, having walls of stone regularly fortified, and stored with Cannon; and the ordinary number of Religious (besides their officers and servants) were about seven hundred.

They have also Nunneries of several orders. Some admit only noble widows and maids, others promiscuously; but this is universally observed, that none that are once enter'd do ever return to their secular condition. The Emperor having continued with his wife twenty years without having issue by her, thrust her into a Nunnery, where after two months she was brought-a-bed, but could not for all that go out of the Nunnery.

The History of the Princes of Russia.

THE *Russes* have the same vanity that the *Romans* (and most other Nations) have had, to deduce their original either from Gods, or the most famous of men. Whereby how much honour forever themselves think to have obtained, so much do other Nations think they have lost of truth. Some Authors derive them from *Augustus Cesar*. *Ivan Vasilovich*, the learnedst of all the *Russes*, and who had reason to be best informed, told an *English* Goldsmith smiling, (because the Emperor had said, that all *Russes* were thieves), that he was not a *Russ*, but a *German*, and that their family came from *Beala*, a famous King of *Hungary*. More particulars of this we know not; as neither who, when, or upon what occasion they came; nor who were their successors. But it is certain the Imperial Family was commonly called the House of *Beala*. Others say, that the first Governors were three brethren (*Rurich*, *Sinacur*, and *Traoor*) of the *Varegi*. But who those *Varegi* were, or what Country they inhabited, 'tis uncertain, as is also the time of their coming, which some say was ann. 752, others 861. And of these *Rurich* settled at *Novogrod*, *Traoor* at *Pleskov*, and *Sinacur* at *Bischofer*; these two last dying without issue, *Rurich* succeeded, and left the whole dominion to his son *Igor*. *Igor* married *Olga*, and fighting with the *Drevlians*, was taken by them and beheaded. *Olga* afterwards defeated and destroyed these *Drevlians*, went to *Constantinople*, was baptized, and took the name of *Helena* about the year 876, brought Christianity into *Russia*, and died with the opinion of sanctity, and her anniversary day is July 11. *Sueneslaw* when he came to age succeeded his father, and *Ieropolic* him.

Next after him was *Wolodomir*, concerning whom we have something of certainty. *Zemarsky* faith, that in the time of *Basilus* the Emperor, there was a Bishop sent from *Constantinople* to convert the *Russes*, (I think his name was *Leo*). The *Russes* would not believe except they saw a miracle; whereupon the Bishop threw the book of the Gospels into the fire, and after a long time took it out unblemish'd; and this was the begin-

MUSCOVY.

ning of the conversion of the *Russes*, but their solemn receiving it was not till 988, when their Prince *Wolodomir* marrying *Anna* Sister of *Basilus* and *Constantine*, was converted, baptized, and changed his name into *Basilus*. He is by them look'd upon as their Apostle, and they celebrate his Festival July 15. he died in 1015. This man removed the Metropolis of the Nation from *Kiow* to *Wolodomir*. He had many children, who fought and slew one another; two (*Borisius* and *Chelbus*) are for their holy lives and unjust deaths accounted holy Martyrs, and their day is July 24. *Sewoldus* *Coras*, some call him *Jerusalem*, after many wars was subdued his brethren, and obtained the government.

He was follow'd by his son *Wolodomir*, surnamed *Monomachus*, but others say he was called *Jerusalem* (or *fair bank*) because he built that City. *Saxo Grammaticus* faith, that he married the daughter of *Harald* King of *England*. He was a potent Prince, and kept very good correspondence with the Emperors of *Constantinople*. But it is to be noted, that the actions of this, are confounded with those of the other *Wolodomir*. They say he died ann. 1146, which is not probable, if he was the husband of that Lady who followed, and is not yet down till 1237, when reigned *George*, by some called *Gregory*, call'd by some *Szegeleditz*, others make *Wjsepolod* to be the father, and *George* his son. *George* was ann. 1237 slain by *Batus* a *Tartarian* Prince, who subjected the whole country to the *Tartars*; ordering that the *Tartars* should from time to time chuse the Princes of *Moskov*; that when they sent their Ambassador, the Prince should go to meet and wait upon him on foot, offering a platter of Mares-milk; that if the *Tartar* let any of it fall upon the main of his horse, the Prince should kick it up; and that he should bare-headed and on foot give the *Tartars* horse his provender out of his cap; but the most grievous was, that the *Tartar* had a house and a guard in the Castle of *Moskov*. *Michael* succeeded his brother, and was also slain by the same *Tartar*. Next was *Alexander* his son; and then his son *Daniel* or *Daniel*, surnamed *Caleta*. He transferred the Imperial Seat to *Moskov*, and called himself *Great Duke of Mafkoria*, &c. Some say by the authority of *Innocent* IV. about ann. 1246. Some place after him *George* *Danielowicz* *Caleta*, who (they say) was slain by the *Tartars*. Other place next to *Daniel* his son *Joan*, chosen by *Zanabek* the *Crim-Tartar*; who favoured him so much, that he abated some part of the slavery imposed upon the *Tzars*. His son *Joan* *Ivanowicz* succeeded, and was wholly subject to the *Tartars*. *Demetri* *Ivanowicz* was his son, who refused to pay tribute to the *Tartars*, making a fierce war upon *Manai* Kan, and gained a very bloody victory, the earth for thirteen miles together being cover'd with carcasses. But *Tachistan* Kan in another battel slew *Demetri*, and renewed the power of the *Tartars* over the *Russes*. *Vasili* *Demetriowicz* follow'd ann. 1357, who chased the *Tartars* out of *Russia*, and conquer'd *Bulgaria* beyond the *Wolga*. Being jealous of his wife *Anastasia*, he disinherited his son *Vasili*, and gave the Empire to his brother *George*, who at his death retok'd it from his own sons to the night heir. But those fous making war upon *Vasili*, took him prisoner, and put out his eyes, therefore was he call'd *Vasili* *Cienmoz*, or *dark*. But the *Bolars* being faithful to him, he reigned peaceably till his death; and left the Empire to his son *Vasili* *Iwanowicz* surnamed *Grouzdyn*, who was the first that gave lustre and fame to the obscure name of the *Russes*. For taking away the Dukedoms and Governments from his Uncles, who accounted them-

K

selves

elves absolute in their dominions; he united the whole Nation in his own person, and call'd himself *Tzar*, or as they pronounce it *Tzar*, that is King. He married Mary daughter to Michael Duke of *Tveria*, some say *Severia*, or *Severski*, and presently after chased him out of his Dukedom, and united it to his Crown. He conquer'd also the Duke of *Novogrod* about ann. 1488, and united that City, with all his dominions, to his own estate, and earned from thence three hundred Carts laden with gold, silver, jewels, and other rich commodities, to his Treasury at *Moskov*. He warred also with *Poland* and *Livonia*, with various success. By his first wife he had *Ivan*, who died before him, and left one son called *Demetri*. Afterwards *Ivan* married *Sophia* daughter to *Thomas Paleologus*, who reigned in *Morea*, by whom he had divers children. This being a woman of great spirit and understanding, so continually upbraided her husband with his slavery to the *Tartars*, that at length the forced him to free himself, her self contributing a beginning unto it. For whereas the *Tartars* had an house within the Castle, where lived a Governor, and others that were as continual spies upon the Emperor and his *Ruffes*; she pretended a vow, when with-child, to build a Church there when she was safely deliver'd. Having therefore brought forth a son, she invited the *Tartar* Governor to the Christening, and cajoling him with great kindness and magnificence, begged that house of him for fulfilling her vow; which he granted. Afterwards her husband and the *Muscovites* took courage, and never ceased till they had shaken off the *Tartar* slavery. The *Tartar* continues to this day to call them his *Golops*, or slaves. She wrought also much upon her husband (now very ancient, for he was sixty-five years of age when he died, which was in 1492, after he had reigned forty-two years and seven months), that passing by *Demetri* the son of *Iohn*, whom he had by a former wife, he declared her son *Gabriel* (whose name he changed to *Vasilie*) his successor.

Vasilie proved a very great Tyrant over the people, and his own brothers and family; but he recover'd a great part of the country which had been conquer'd by *Vitoldus* Great Duke of *Lithuania*. In 1514, he took *Pleskov* and *Smolensk*; but was unfortunate in his designs against the *Tartars*. He married *Helena* daughter of *Glinkski*, by whom he had *Ivan* called *Vasilovich*, who was born Aug. 26, 1528. *Vasilie* died 1532, and made *Michael Glinkski* Tutor to his son.

Ivan Vasilovich began his reign ann. 1540, whose very great victories over his enemies, his most barbarous cruelties and tyrannies towards his subjects, and pretended sanctity, have given large subjects to all historians of those times, and amongst others to *Paulus Olorbom* who hath writ a peculiar book of him. However he behaved himself in other respects, he rais'd the Empire of *Muscovy* to its height. He subdued the Kingdoms of *Cafan* and *Afracan*; which are signified by the two Crowns over the Eagles heads in his Arms. And *Afracan* being the capital City of the *Circassians*, having conquer'd that, he reduc'd them also to terms, *i.e.* to accept of his government, pay him some small tribute, and to assist him with so many horse and arms in his wars. This Nation reacheth as far as *Perfia*, and being for upon by the *Turk*, when he went to invade *Perfia*, they sent to the *Tzar* for Engineers to fortify their Towns, &c. which he presently sent, and with them also Governors and soldiers for their defence, and his securing their obedience to himself for the future. The subduing of the *Tartars* alarm'd his neighbours, but none more than

MUSCOVY.

Selimus the *Turkish* Emperor, who ann. 1569, sent an Army of three hundred thousand, besides forty thousand *Crim-Tartars*, to recover *Afracan* and other places from the *Muscovites*. *Serebrine*, a very faithful and valiant General, commanded in *Afracan*; who at first much wonder'd from whence such an Army should come, having scarce ever heard of the *Turks*, but notwithstanding was not wanting to his duty, but hasten'd to strengthen his garrison with men and provisions; and gave order to all the country, especially those upon the *Caspian* Sea, to hinder the *Turks* as much as they could from provision. The *Turks*, whether by mistake or malice of the *Tartars*, got into great woods, where their slow marches made them consume much of their store, and the contrary winds hinder'd their ships upon the *Caspian* Sea, from coming up the river, and cast some upon the shore, which were all pillaged by the inhabitants, who were very active in obedience to the Governor of *Afracan*. However to the banks of *Volga* they came, whether *Serebrine* went, and made many successful skirmishes with them. In one he slew divers of their best Officers, and divers thousands of their men. Mean-while victuals grew scarce in the *Turkish* Army; and those few Ships that escap'd the winds and the *Ruffes*, brought refreshment, but no such quantity as could serve them any considerable time. So that they began to retreat. But their ill diet, and the bad air of these marshes, especially in the end of *Autumn*, brought the plague amongst them. Their magazine of powder also at *Azoph* was by lightning blown up. And to complete their misery, the remainder of the Army being thipt upon the black Sea, were cast away. So that very few of that vast Army returned to *Constantinople*. And the *Russ* had by that means established himself more firmly in the conquest of all those countries. *Ivan Vasilovich* conquer'd also a great part of *Lithuania*, and many other places. By his first wife he had two sons, *Ivan* (whom himself killed with his staff) and *Phedor*, who succeeded him. He had many wives, and one he put into a Monastery for her sterility, who there within two months brought forth a son, called *Demetri*; but notwithstanding that, she was forc'd into the Nunnery, and had a son there, yet could he never get out. Some say, that this was the act of his father; it may be that both concurred in this, as in many other acts of injustice and tyranny. He died March 28, 1584, leaving two sons, *Phedor* and *Demetri*.

Phedor was a very weak Prince, and having married the sister of *Boris Fedorovich Godanove*, left the managing of all affairs to him; who having caus'd *Demetrius* to be murder'd (as was said), and made his party amongst the Nobility and people, (*Phedor* also after awhile (ann. 1597, having reigned twelve years) dying, the last of the house of *Beala*) after much dissimulation tergiversation was chosen Grand *Tzar*; and reigned seven years peaceably, till an Impostor (*Gribski*, or *Gregory Orapleion*) flying into *Poland*, and there declaring himself to be *Demetri*, the son of *Ivan Vasilovich*, who (as he said) was not murder'd, but another in his stead, was furnished by divers Noblemen of *Poland*, with an Army to recover his right. *Boris* in the time of *Phedor*, who had oblig'd some of the *Boiars*, yet had he made away divers even of the best Nobility, who were most likely to contest his power, following herein the steps of *Ivan Vasilovich*. He also incur'd their hatred the more, by his engroing to himself and family all the gainful employments, before he was chosen Emperor; for he had then no less than ninety-three thousand and seven hundred

Rubbles

Rubbles per ann. And for these and the like reasons many of them at first secretly favoured, afterwards openly join'd themselves and their power to *Demetri*. Particularly *Peter Basmanov*, entrusted with an Army by *Boris* to fight against him, went and carried with him all his Army to *Demetri*, and brought him to *Moskov* in a manner without any bloodshed. At which time *Boris* first on April 12, 1605, and shortly after his wife and son died, either by poison, as most say, or murder'd by some sent from *Demetri* to that purpose, and left the Throne void to that Impostor, which he enjoyed not nine months before he was suspected, as not sleeping after dinner, nor using stoves, and in divers other matters not conforming to the custom of the *Muscovites*. And when the *Ruffes* saw moreover, that he had engaged to marry the daughter of the Palatine of *Sandomiria*, and to bring in the *Roman* Religion, they formed a conspiracy against him; chiefly by the practice of *Vasilie Zuisky*. They chose for the execution of their design the seventeenth day of May 1606, nine days after his marriage; when *Zuisky*, with other *Boiars* and the people, after dinner finding the Guards asleep, forc'd their way into his chamber; he affrighted with the noise, leapt out of a window and broke his leg; the *Boiars* follow'd and there slew him, and hurried his carcass into the market-place, where they also hid by him his great fautor *Basmanov*, expelling them three days. Afterwards they chose *Vasilie Ivanovich Zuisky* Grand *Tzar* in his stead, who was crown'd June 1, 1606. He had not reigned long before another *Demetri* appear'd in *Poland*, and being by them assisted, rais'd very great troubles in *Muscovy*. After him also started up another *Demetri* in *Moskov* it self, who also found followers and abettors, people who in the times of trouble and licentiousness, take even a dory pretence to rob and plunder. Mean-while divers of the Nobility banded together against their Lord *Zuisky*, pretending that he was unfortunate; that victory seem'd to shun, and troubles to follow him; that as long as he govern'd there could be no hopes of peace, &c. Which silly stories prevail'd so much upon an amazed people, that they seized upon *Zuisky*, and having him, put him into a Monastery. Mean-while the *Poles* were not idle in defending and asserting their *Demetri*, but came with their army before *Moskov*. The *Ruffes* to heal all their wounds, and foder up their differences, chose *Vladislavus*, son to the King of *Poland*, to be their Grand Duke, upon certain conditions; whereof one was, that *Zuisky* and his family should be put into the hands of the King of *Poland*, which was accordingly done, and he imprisoned till death, and buried in the high-way. The *Polish* army before *Moskov*, understanding the election of their Prince, behaved themselves very peaceably for a while; and the General with part of his army was admitted into the Castle, the rest of the army was quarter'd in the Villages without; but they by little and little got into the City, where they had not long continued ere there happen'd a quarrel (which amongst men used to drunkenness is not hard to find) of the *Poles* against the *Ruffes*; whereupon they fell upon the City, and in despite of their General plunder'd and burnt it. They say, that at that time perished two hundred thousand persons. The treasury also was pillaged, and all the wealth of the Emperor scatter'd amongst the *Polish* soldiers; some of whom are said to have charg'd their pistols with pearl.

The *Ruffes* being in this almost desperate condition, and upon the very brink of ruin, at

MUSCOVY.

length a Butcher (whose name seems to have been *Zachary Lippenow*) began not to despair, and to give out amongst the people, that if there could be found an honest Treasurer, there would not want good officers and soldiers of the *Russ* Nation to deliver them from their miseries, and settle peace and glory again in their country. The people destitute of other hopes, catch'd hold upon this straw, and bid him name whom he thought fit to be General; which he did, and propos'd to them a very worthy, but poor and neglected Gentleman, called *Pezarsky*. The people approved his choice, took him for Commander, and the Butcher they made Treasurer, bringing readily unto him all the money they ow'd unto the Emperor, and what they could spare of their own. Wherewith he presently rais'd an army, and joining it with a body of *Cossacks* then in service of the *Muscovites*. They march'd to *Moskov*, besieged the *Poles* in the Castle, and forc'd them to surrender, and to march out of the Empire, which they immediately performed. Hereupon the *Russ* Nobility convened at *Moskov*, and seeing their country free from strangers, and an obedient army of their own, they resolv'd upon electing of a new Emperor; which they put in execution ann. 1613, and made choice of a young man, called *Michael Fedorowicz*, and swore allegiance unto him. His father had forsaken his wife for Gods sake (as they say) *i.e.* quitted her, and broken himself to his devotions in a Monastery; he was of the house of *Romanov*, and when his son was chosen *Tzar*, he also was elected Patriarch; and being a very wife and moderate person, he put his son (who was always obedient unto him) upon secure and prudent counsels. His name was changed to *Philaretes Nikiditz*, and he died ann. 1632. The first thing he did, was to recover *Smolensk*; and by the mediation of Christian Princes (especially King *James*) he made peace with the *Poles*. He also made a peace with the *Swedes*, who had been the forest and heaviliest enemy to the *Ruffes*. And by the assistance also of King *James* an accord was made, and all differences reconciled. The *Swede* was to render *Novogrod*, *Stara Russa*, *Porkow*, *Legda*, *Aydow*, with all their Territories to the *Muscovites*. And the *Muscovites* surrendered *Ivanogrod*, *Jama*, *Coporia*, *Noteburg*, with their precincts, to the *Swede*, and renounced all title to *Lithuania*; which was no small prejudice to the *Russ*, who thereby lost the salt trade, which had brought in no small revenue. He died July 12, 1645, in the forty-seventh year of his age, and thirty-third of his reign. He was a prudent, pious, and valiant person, endeavouring by all means to banish the memory of former tyrannies, and to make up the breaches of his own people, which he did very successfully.

To him succceeded his son *Alexes Michaelowicz*, a more martial, but yet as mild a Governor; whose actions are so fresh in all mens memories, that I think it superfluous to write them; but such have been these of the house *Romanov*, that if their successors continue to tread in the steps of these their ancestors, they need not doubt of both a lasting reign, and glory to all posterity. He died about the year 1676, and left his son, a young Prince of about sixteen years of age, to succeed him.

The Lakes and Rivers of Muscovy.

Concerning the Lakes and Rivers of *Muscovy*, 'tis to be observed, (1.) That almost all their Rivers take their original from Lakes; or

K 2

MUSCOVY, OR RUSSIA.

else they could hardly be perpetual. (2.) That the Rivers of *Muscovy* are (except where they be strained by mountains, which are not very frequent) for the most part broad and shallow; full of islands, flats, and deep holes; because all their Rivers in a manner chiefly consist of melted snow, and when the snow dissolves, it causeth great floods and violent deluges, but which carry so much sludge that it fills up streams; which remains so till a new deluge cleanse that place and fills up another, so that the channel is very uncertain, and now are depths which were shallows before. (3.) That they are not very full of fish; and were it not for the Lakes and deep holes (which are not frozen to the bottom) there would be no fresh-water fish at all; for fish cannot live in ice. Therefore they observe, that there are no Carps at all, nor much other fish, except what comes from the Sea to spawn as soon as the Rivers are thawed, such as Salmon, Belluga, Cods, Haddock, Omelies, and the like. And of these there are great store, because store of feeding. Some Lakes also are well stored, because not frozen to the bottom. (4.) That there are no Maps extant, except of *Volga*, *Dvina*, and *Dnieper*, because the course of the others are not so well discover'd.

One of the greatest Lakes of this country is *Ioanofora*, i. e. *Johns-Lake* (*Iora* signifying a Lake), in the great Forest of *Epiphonow*, called also *Jepiphanoulies*, and *Okenitzkilies*, in the Province of *Rezan*, eight leagues from *Tula*. This Lake is near five hundred Versts or Italian miles long. And in the said Forest arise also the Rivers *Schaet* and *Don*, or *Tanais*. The *Schaet* running Eastward receives the River *Uppa* or *Uppa*, and emptieth it self into the *Occa*. But *Tanais* (*Tana* and *Don*) cometh out of the Lake at the Town *Donco*, and enreth into the marshes of *Mevitz*, or Sea of *Zabague*. From the spring to its ending is directly about eighty leagues, but by water 'tis twenty days journey. *Donets Sewersky* falls into *Tanais* three days journey above *Azoph*.

Bielejofora, sixteen leagues long, twelve broad, scarce of fish, receiveth thirty-six smaller Rivers, and sendeth out only the *Schosma*, which falls into the *Volga* four leagues below *Mologa*.

Ilinin, *Iimen*, *Imer*, *Limido*, is twelve leagues long, and as many broad; and ends about two miles above *Veliki Novogrod*. It receives the Rivers of *Lowat*, arising in the Forest of *Wolkowsky* from a Lake called *Formow*, and *Scholoma*, and passeth away by the *Wolkowa*, which after running thirty-six leagues, dischargeth it self into the Lake *Ladoga* or *Ladoga*.

Ladoga, about an hundred leagues long, and sixty broad, is full of Isles, and is the mother of the *Neva*, which enters into the *German Ocean*. It is stored with fish, and hath many Towns and Villages upon its banks.

From the same Lake of *Formow* ariseth also the *Volga*, of which by and by. In the same Forest also, about ten leagues from *Formow*, ariseth *Bozithene*, near the Town of *Dnieperche*, and therefore called *Dnieper*. And ten leagues from the *Dnieper* also the *Dvina* or *Duna*, by some imagined to be *Rabus*, by others *Turatus* of *Protony*, taketh its original from a Lake of the same name. It passeth by *Vitepsko*, *Polatsko*, *Dunen-burg*, &c. to *Riga* in *Livonia*, and ends in that part of the *Baltick* called the East-Sea, and by the *Russes* *Wawerzcoie-marie*.

Besides this, there is another *Dvina* whereof we have spoken in the Province of that name.

Weza beginneth in a marsh between *Bielejofora* and the *Volga*, passeth by *Suetzograd*, and so into the *Dvina*.

Mosqui, or *Mosqua*, springeth near to *Twer*, thence six leagues below *Moscow* it enters into *Occa*, after it hath received the *Jagula* or *Jaula*. *Weglin* hath its spring a little above *Moskow*, and joins with *Occa*.

Ugra ariseth near *Drobohus*, passeth thro a great desert between *Worain* and *Coluga*, thence falls into *Occa*. This was sometimes the boundary betwixt *Russia* and *Lithuania*.

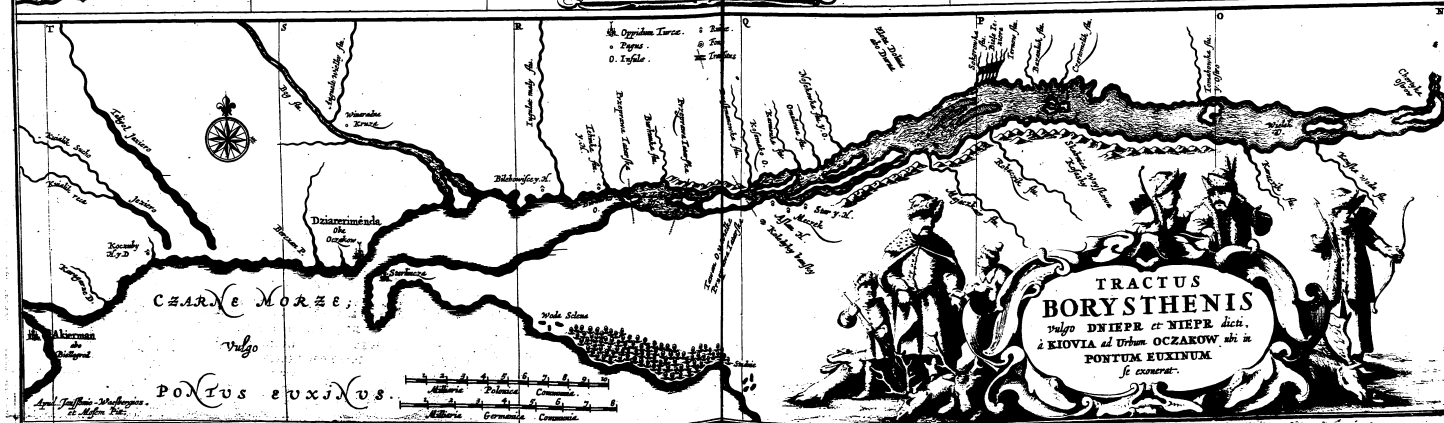
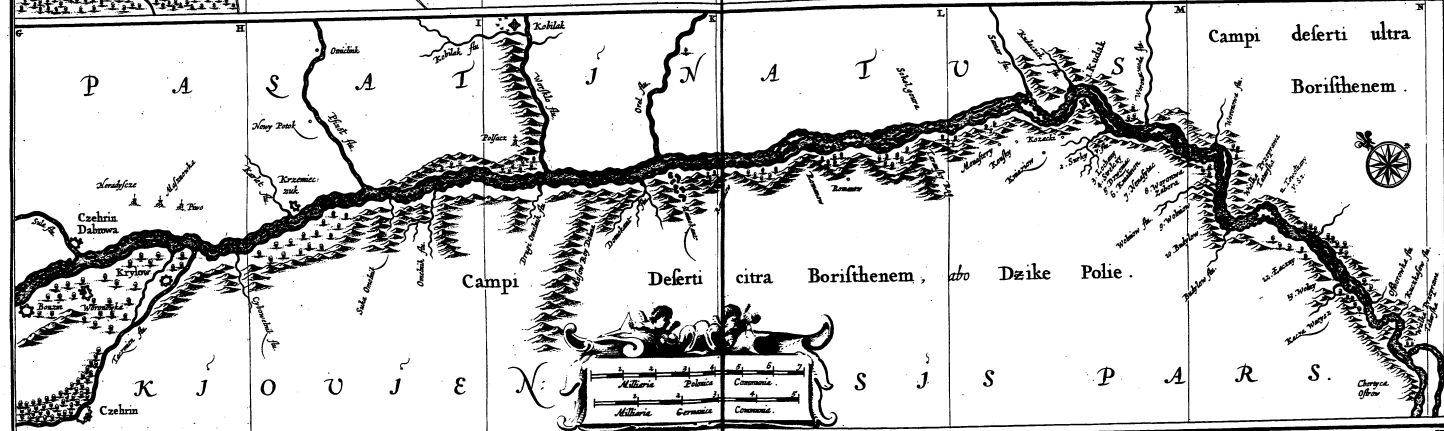
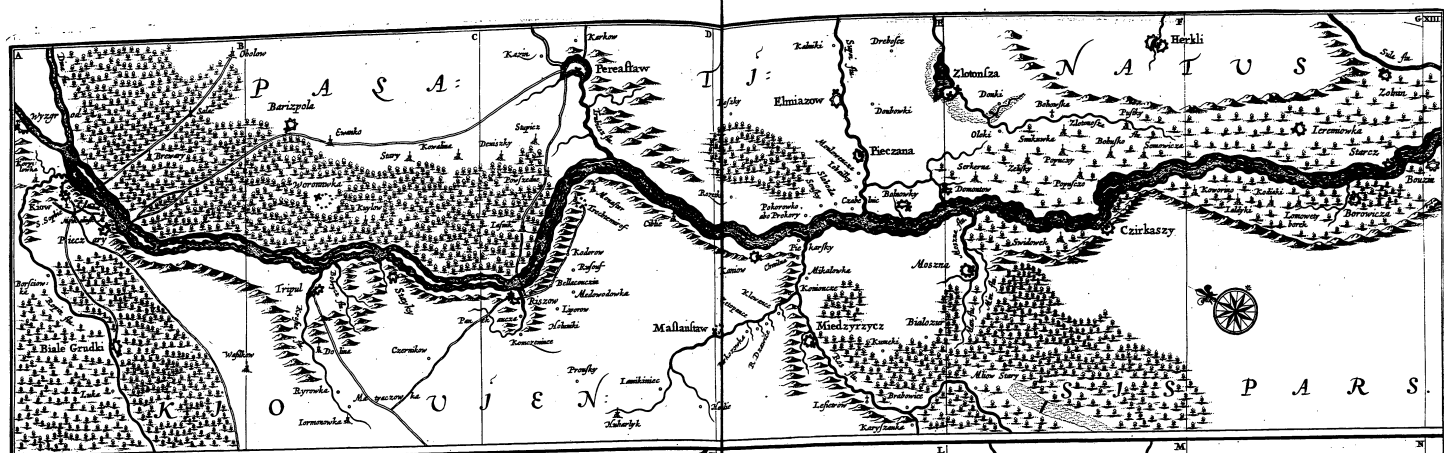
Occa comes out of a great Lake in the Province of *Rezan*, passeth by many great Towns near *Nisi-Novogrod*.

From the same Lake flows *Sem*, and *Schosma*, both fall into the *Dnieper*.

Narwa is navigable from the Lake *Czatzbo*, or *Czulin*, called in Latin *Picis* or *Polas*, and by the *Dutch* *Pesjwet*.

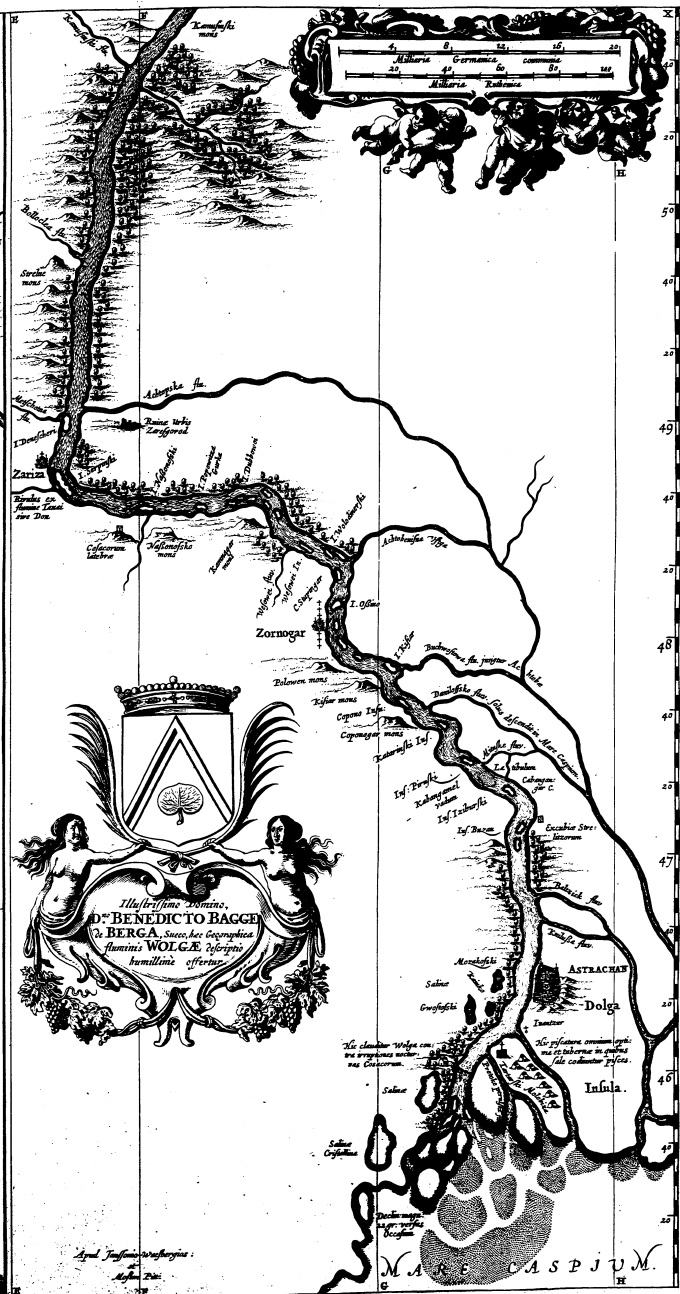
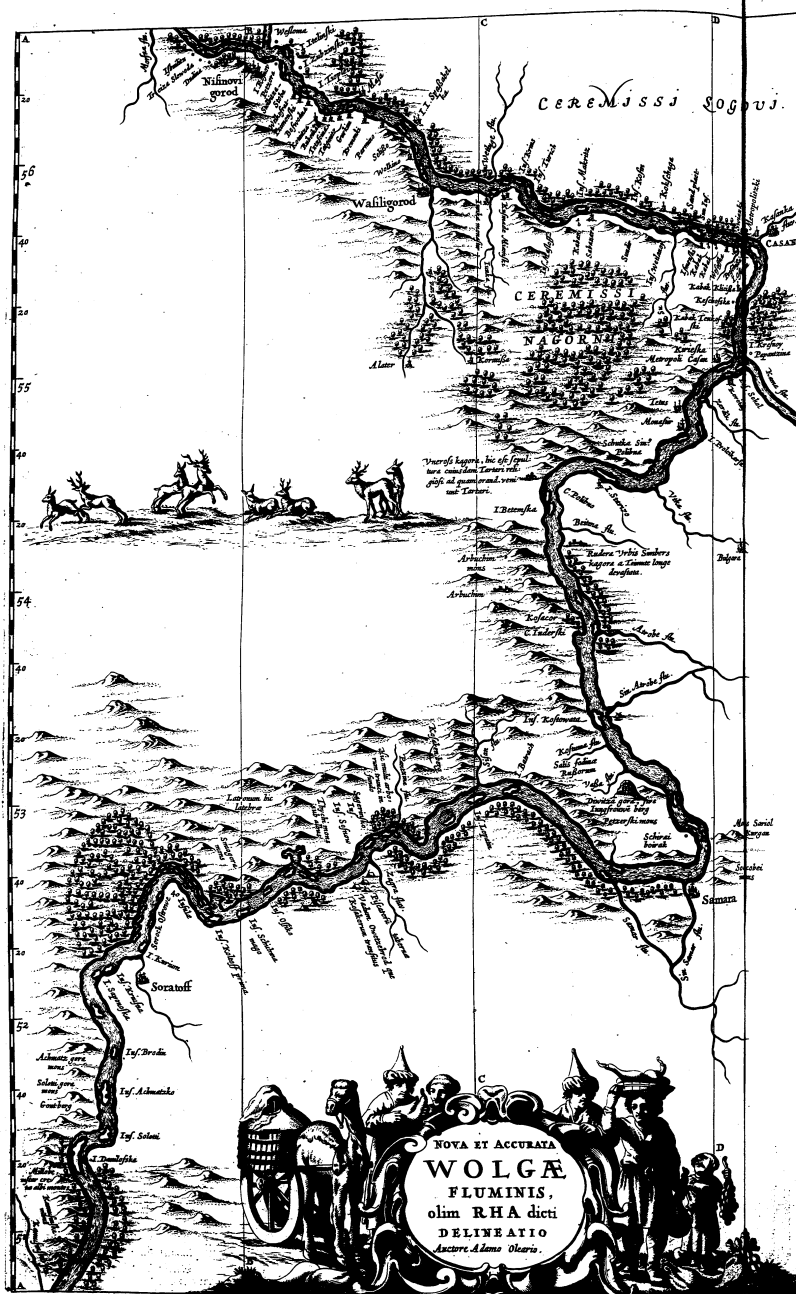
The *Volga* ariseth out of the foresaid Lake of *Formow*, in the Forest of *Volkonski*, two miles after it hath left this mother-Lake, it falls into another called *Volga*, whence it taketh that name; it being anciently called *Rba*, and by the *Tartars* *Edel*. This River till it come to *Nisi-Novogrod*, is not visited by strangers, or Merchants, who passing from *Moskow* down the River *Moswa*, and then at *Kolatin Serge Monastir* down to *Occa*, upon which stands the City of *Rezan*, heretofore a noble City, but being destroyed by the *Tartars* ann. 1568, it was by the Grand Duke transferr'd to another place eight leagues distant, and is called *Perebla Resniski*, southward from *Moskow*. And thence near an hundred and twenty Versts *Cassimogrod*, the chief Town of the *Tartarian* Province called *Cassim*, subject to the *Rafs*. About an hundred leagues from thence is *Morama*, the chief seat of the *Mordwitz Tartars*, and is inhabited by them and *Muscovites*, but is under the Grand Duke. Below which falls into the *Occa*, the Rivers of *Moswa-veca* and *Clesna*, which comes from *Wolodimir*. And all these fall into the *Volga* at *Nisi-Novogrod*, in 56 deg. 28 min. and the needle declines more then nine degrees westward; an hundred leagues by land (by water many more) from *Moskow*, and 550 to *Astracan*. The inhabitants are *Tartars*, *Muscovites*, and *Hollanders*, who have there a Church, and a congregation of above an hundred persons, the most part soldiers and suters, and some Merchants. The *Volga* is here about a mile broad, and in *May* and *June*, when the snow-waters come down, is very passable, else by reason of the frequent sand-banks and shallows, the passage is very troublesome. The next Town of note is *Vasligrod*, in 55 deg. 51 min. built by the Emperor *Vasilie*, to hinder the incursions of the *Tartars* of *Casan*, which are those called the *Czemisses*, of whom we have spoken before. Thence to *Casan*, in 55 deg. 28 min. upon the *Casanka*, a little above where it falls into the *Volga*, reacheth East and Southward to the great deserts; their next neighbours are the *Tartars*, *Schibansky*, *Nagas*, and *Casaks*. The Town it self is large, and fortified after their manner, but the Castle hath very strong and well contrived works faced with stone, much canon, and a strong garrison of *Muscovites*, tho in the Town the *Tartars* live mingled amongst them. This Province was formerly under the *Cham of Tartary*, and was able to bring sixty thousand men into the field, till conquer'd by *Ivan Vasilowich*. The whole story whereof was thus; *Vasilie Ioanowich* having given the *Tartars* a great overthrow, forced them to submit, and receive a Governor from him, who was one *Scheale*, a *Tartar* indeed, but otherwise so contemptible for his person, that his subjects joining with the *Crim Tartar*, surprized and ejected him. Which success gave the *Tartars* so much courage, that under the





TRACTUS BORYSTHENIS

vulgo DNEPR et NIEPR dicti.
i. KIOVIA ad Urbem OCZAKOW ubi in
PONTUM EUXINUM
se exonerat.



the command of two brothers *Mendligeri* and *Sapperi*, they invaded *Russia*, and stopped not till they had taken and pillaged *Moscow*, burnt all, except the *Castle*, the guards whereof were forced to buy their safety with considerable presents; and the *Muscovites* also to sue for a peace, which was granted upon very bad terms; as that the Grand Duke, and all his subjects, should for ever be tributary to the *Tartars*; and the Duke, when he came to pay his tribute, should smite the ground with his forehead (a great expression of submission) before the statue of *Mendligeri*, which he caused to be erected in the middle of the City of *Moscow*. After this victory *Mendligeri* returned to *Chrim*, and *Sapperi* settled himself King of *Cazan*. But *Mendligeri* having a great mind also to *Rezan*, besieged that, and summoning the *Castle*, sent word, that it was in vain to resist, since that now they had taken *Moscow*, and the Duke and all his subjects were become tributaries to them. The Governor (*Ivan Kover*) replied, that he knew no such thing, neither could he believe it, except he saw some authentick testimony: whereupon the *Tartar* sent him (by certain Officers) the very original instrument of submission; which as soon as the Governor saw, he sent away the Officers with this message, that he would keep that writing as faithfully as the *Castle* of *Rezan*, nor would he part with either of them so long as he had a drop of blood in his body. He had in the *Castle* an *Italian*, an excellent Canonier (*Giovanni Giordano*), who did great service, and slew great numbers of the *Tartars*, and with a shot took away part of *Mendligeri's* garment; who being thereby affrighted, offered to raise the siege, if the Governor would return him his writing; which he refusing to do, *Mendligeri* was forced immediately to retire and be gone. The Governor (as soon as the *Tartar* was departed) sent the Instrument to *Moscow*; where it was received with an extraordinary joy of the Prince and people, who presently brake to pieces the statue of *Mendligeri*, raised an army of twenty-five thousand men, and proclaimed open war against *Sapperi*, and sent a defiance unto him; withall set down before *Cazan*, but was forced to retire, after having lost many men before it.

Ivan Vasilovitch succeeded his father, and began his reign with the siege of *Cazan*; which having batter'd in vain for two months together, at last he began to mine the walls; the mines took their effect, blew up the works, slew great numbers of *Tartars*, and gave the opportunity of an assault, which (*July 9, 1552.*) was carried on with that vigor, that the *Castle* was taken; and being well repaired by the *Muscovite*, is still kept by them.

Sixty versts below *Cazan*, falls the great river *Cama* into the *Volga*, on the left hand, by several mouths, some thirty versts distant from others. The water of it is blackish, and riseth out of *Permia*. Upon this river should seem to be (if it be at all) the great forest *Step*, which is six or seven hundred versts long; wherein you may ride a days journey amongst cherry-trees, yet not above two foot high; being so frequently burn'd down by travellers, who careless of their fires at night, set fire on the dry grass and burn down three or four hundred furlongs at a time. They say also, that here grows spontaneously *Tulips*, *Roses*, *Asparagus*, *Onions*, *Marjoram*, and what not? which I suppose not upon any mans faith, because I find somewhat like this, but more probably mentioned in the *Ukrain*. Thirty versts lower *Zer-dick* (another branch of *Cama*) enters the *Volga*, over against which, on the right-hand bank, is the City of *Tetus*, an hundred and twenty versts

from *Cazan*. Twenty-five versts below *Tetus*, but on the left bank of the river, is the river *Urtka*, which rises near the City *Bulgara*. Below that is the Island *Staritz*, in 54 deg. 31 min. where they find Pyrites of several colours, so round and oval that they very well serve for shot. Sixty-five versts below *Tetus* is *Uneroskera*, a ruined City of the *Tartars*. Hereabouts is very good fishing, by a particular invention of the *Russes*; they bait an hook, and fasten it to a strong line, which they tye about a little board of four or five inches cover'd over with tin, and drag it after the boat; the motion of the water, continually turning up the bright tin towards the Sun, induces the greater sort of fishes, who are thereby easily caught. Upon and near the banks of the river, are the ruins of divers Cities, which the people say were destroyed by *Tamerlain*; the names of some of them are *Simbyske-gora*, *Arbuchim*, but of the greatest part the names are unknown. The river *Abrche* enters *Volga* in 53 deg. 48 min. as doth the river *Ussa* not much lower. A little beyond in a great plain is a sandy hill, call'd *Sariol-Kargan*, which they say, was the burial of a *Tartar* Emperor and seven Kings there slain, and made by the Soldiers carrying sand and earth in their helmets. Three hundred and fifty versts below *Cazan* is *Samara*, a large City upon a river so called, three versts from the banks of *Volga*; tho it do not wholly join with the great stream till fifteen versts lower; and over against it on the right hand fall in also the rivers *Alcula* and *Lifan*. Below *Samara* an hundred and fifteen leagues is the mountain of the *Donski Cofacks*, who from hence usually robbed the boats that came down the *Volga*. below this the river *Zagra* joins the *Volga*; and not far thence the river is so shallow that the *Cofacks* ford it, and lurking in the fleggy and bulgy Islands of the river, rob and spoil securely. These people do very much mischief to the *Russes*, and the Emperor to repress the inroads of them and the *Tartars*, hath built divers Cities and Forts, giving them to be inhabited only by soldiers; one is *Saratof* in 52 deg. 12 min. chiefly against the *Kolmuck-Tartars*, whose country begins here and reaches to the *Caspian Sea*; a very deformed, barbarous, and cruel sort of people, great man-stealers, and enemies both to *Russes*, *Cofacks*, and chiefly the *Nagai-Tartars*. *Czaritzza*, *Tjornojar*, and divers others, were built for the same reason. An hundred and fifty versts below *Saratof* on the left hand of *Volga*, is the river *Ruslana*, and over against that the mountain of *Urakess-Naruk*, where they say a *Tartarian* Prince called *Urak* was killed by the *Cofacks*: near to which is the river and mountain called *Cama-schinka*, near whereto *Stenks Radzine* was born; the river rises out of the torrent of *Hoba*, and falls into the *Don*. The *Cofacks* bring over land their boats upon four wheels thence into the *Volga*, where they exercise their piracies and plunders. The river *Bolloclea* is ninety versts below *Cama-schinka*; and near that (about 48 deg. 51 min.) is the shortest distance betwixt the *Volga* and *Don*, which is about seven leagues. In 49 deg. 42 min. is *Tzaritzza*, three hundred and fifty versts from *Saratof*. From thence to *Astracan* is only heads and barren grounds; below lies the life of *Zerpinske*, over against which a little river rises out of the *Don*, but so little that it will hardly bear a small boat (*Masse* in his Map (for in others it is not to be found) calls it *Kammas*) falls into the *Volga*. Near to this place also was begun a trench large enough to convey Vessels from *Don* to the *Volga*, and it is express'd in divers Maps; but it was given over, for the *Nagai*, and the other *Tartars*, fearing (not without reason) that it would be a means to bring the *Turk* upon them, as the

Moscow also did, they joined all together, and not only disturbed the work, but also beat the army of the *Crim-Tartar* consisting of 80000, together with 20000 *Turks*, and 2000 *Tartars*. Below that on the same side, the river *Weslawa*, and thirty versts from the *Volga*. The country all empty themselves into the *Volga*. The country is very hereabouts, and down as far as *Astracan*, is very plentiful in Liqueur. Thence the river descends to *Tzormegar*, a little City inhabited only by a garrison against the *Cosacks*, who there used to rob; and particularly defeated a great convoy of fifteen hundred *Moscovites*, for the river being there very swift, they suffer'd the soldiers to go first, and then setting upon the Merchants killed seven or eight hundred of them, and carried away all the goods before the convoy could come up to help them. The next considerable place is *Astracan*, a great City in an Island made by two branches of the *Volga*, and called *Dolgai*. It was anciently the Metropolis of the *Nagaitars*, and built by one of their Kings called *Astra-chan*; it lies in 46 deg. 22 min. and the needle varies westward 13 deg. 40 min. others say that it lies in 47 deg. 9 min. yet is the winter (which lasts but two months) so cold, that the river is frozen hard enough to bear sleds. The Island is sandy and barren, except some gardens cultivated by the richer Citizens. The country also thereabout is marshy and desert; yet do the inhabitants make a great profit by their salt, which the Sun bakes upon the top of the water about a finger thick; the inhabitants cast it up into great heaps, and transport it to other countries. The river also is mightily stored with fish; and there is great plenty of fowls of all sorts. They have great store of most excellent fruits, and particularly grapes. This City was ann. 1554. taken from the *Tartars* by *Ivan Vasilovich*, who sending his army in small parties, and several ways, arrived at the Town before he was expected, or the enemies provided to receive him; presently encouraging his men, by promising them the plunder of the Town, Aug. 1. he took it by storm, where he spared none that would not be baptized. Having re-peopled it with *Moscovites*, he encompassed it with a stone-wall, and other fortifications. *Michael Federowitsh* afterwards added another part to it; so that the circuit of it at present is 8000 Geometrical feet, defended by 500 pieces of Ordnance, nine Regiments, each containing 500 Musketeers, two Weywods, &c. The situation of it invites Merchants thither from all parts, even from the *Indies*; so that the customs (tho very low) amount to 25000 crowns per ann. The inhabitants of the country (*Tartars of Crim and Nagai*) are not permitted to live in the City, as neither to build Cities, or fortify Towns. But for the most part they live in huts of reed or cane, like to our hen-coops, which in cold weather they cover with a coarse cloth; the summer they spend in rambling up and down to find pasture for their cattle; in winter time retiring under *Astracan*, for their security against the *Cal-muk* and *Jaick Tartars*. The Grand *Tzar* lends them arms, which they restore at such a time; they pay no tribute, but are obliged to serve him in his wars, which they do very willingly, in hope of prey. They have their own Princes, Commanders, and Judges; but some of their chief *Murza's* are always kept as hostages at *Moscow*.

Of the *Cosacks*.
If any one desire to know what these *Cosacks* be, that have caused all this noise and trouble in the world; tho we shall treat more largely of them when we come to the *Ukraine*, yet it will not be amiss to give here some general account of them. Authors differ much concerning the

reason of their name; some say, that they are so called from *Cosa*, which in the *Polish* language signifies a Goat. But I find that in the *Circassian*, and other *Tartar* languages, *Cosac* signifies a Soldier; perhaps as *Cimber* in old time amongst the *Germans*; which name most properly agrees to them, for they are no other then a collection of thieves and robbers, out of all nations and countries, living chiefly upon spoil, pillaging and piracy. They are of two sorts, according to the places of their habitations; which they chuse in fastnesses, desert and unknown places, more for their security then other conveniences. Those that live upon the *Boristhenes* in the *Ukraine*, are called *Zaporowsky*; but besides them there are another sort like these, who (because they live upon and about the *Don* or *Tanais*) are called *Donsky*, and these are they of whom we speak at this time. They are in some degree subjects to the Grand *Tzar* (as the other were to the *Po-landers*), but they obey not much more then themselves please; tribute or acknowledgment they pay none; laws and government, such as it is, they have of their own; only when the Grand *Tzar* commands, they assist him with what number of soldiers he pleaseth, but he pays and protects them against their enemies, i.e. all the world, but chiefly the *Crim-Tartars* their neighbours. One of these was *Stenka* (or *Stepan*) *Radzin*, who, to revenge his brothers death, that was hanged for heading a sedition of the *Cosacks* in the army of the Grand *Tzar* against the *Poles* ann. 1665, by *Jurie Alexowitz Dolgarowsky* the *Russ* General, ann. 1667, after he had got so much into the favour of the *Cosacks* as to be acknowledged their General, he began to pillage upon the *Volga* and the *Caspian* Sea, as far as *Jaick*, which he plunder'd and burnt; he destroyed all their fisheries, their villages, and whatever he could light upon, bringing a very great calamity upon all those nations. Thence he went to the other side of the *Caspian* Sea to *Turki*, &c. and so into *Persia*; where in a certain City finding great quantity of excellent wine, himself and soldiers (of whom he had five or six thousand) were so drunk, that the *Persians* fell upon them and slew them; *Stenka* (with about five hundred of his *Cosacks*) with great difficulty escaped to their boats, which they call *Strogs*. Thence he came again to *Volga*, to recruit his losses both of men and spoils, which he did in short time; and one day entertaining his Officers upon the river with his Mistress (a very beautiful *Persian* Lady, whom he had taken prisoner) he drowned her with his own hands; and presently upon that set up Reformer against drinking, whoring, &c. and got so much into the favour of the people, that *Astracan* was by the Citizens and Soldiers surrendered unto him: where his cruelties upon the Governor and the Officers, are not easily express'd, besides other great mischiefs he did to the Grand *Tzar*. But amongst his own *Cosacks* he was very humble, and of easy address. Nor could any one know him from an ordinary *Cosack* by his garb, or outward appearance, but only by the very great observance they gave him, bowing to the ground when they came to him, and by the compellation they used towards him, which was *Batskie*, Father. Which partly also shews the manner of the *Cosacks* government; which is, that their General hath no more power then the Soldiers give him voluntarily, which is commonly according to the advantage and success they get by him. But (as I said) more of these when we come to the *Ukraine*.



CRIM-TARTARS.

The Country of the Crim-Tartars, containing Precop, and the Taurica-Cherfoncus.

BEfore we treat particularly of this country, it is necessary that we speak of the *Tartars* in general; and shew the reason of their name, and how they came into these places. And because this discourse doth more naturally belong to *Asia*, we shall here only give a brief account of them, reserving a larger treatise to its proper place. We must also premise, that since Historians do so much disagree, especially the Western from the Eastern, in their relations concerning these people, the Reader must not here expect either the reconciling, or setting down, all their differences, much less the confutation of any; but we shall briefly, and with the best judgment we have, deliver that which seems to us most probable; and that also chiefly out of the Eastern writers, who seem to have more exact knowledge of these matters than our own people.

Martinus saith, that in the *Chinese* Histories mention is made of the *Tartars* four thousand years ago; but I cannot find them nam'd in our Historians till about twelve hundred years after Christ. That the *Scythians* anciently inhabited all the northern Regions, I think is out of doubt; as also, that these *Tartars* were a tribe of them, which subduing all the rest, abolished the former, and introduced their own name. They are by all the ancientest Historians called *Tatars*; and this seems to have been the general name of those Nations that inhabit beyond *Imaus*, the north-east parts of *Scythia*, and north of the wall of *China*; built (as some say) a few years before our Saviours time, tho our Historians make no mention of it till the greatness of these *Tatars* suggested to the *Chinese* to secure themselves by this defence from their fury. There are divers conjectures concerning the reason of the name; some derive it from a *Syrack* word, that signifies abundance, because of the populousness of that Nation; some from a word signifying remainder, i.e. of the twelve Tribes; others say, that it is the name of the Province they inhabit, or of the river upon which they are seated, and is the greatest river in all that tract. They are divided into many Tribes, and that which dwells upon this river, is particularly called *Mogul*, i.e. watery or ferry *Tatars*. Others say, that *Mogul* or *Mungul* is the name of the Nation, and *Tatar* of the Tribe; and that Tribe which lives on that river are called *Su-Mogul*, or *Mohal*, which is the *Arabians* opinion, *Su-Mogul* in their language signifying watery *Mogul*.

The great fame, and the first knowledge that we have of the *Tartars*, was from the victories of *Gingis* (*Jingis*) *Chan*, whom our Historians call *Chinghis*, *Changus*, *Gingys*, &c. *Gingis*, they say, signifies the found of iron, and they gave him this name because he was a Blacksmith. *Can* is a title of the greatest honour in their Language, as Emperor in ours.

In the year of the *Hegira* 559, which is of our Saviour 1202, reigned over these eastern Tribes of *Scythia*, call'd *Tatars*, one *Yng-Chan*: in whose service was entertain'd (or as some say brought up with him) a young man call'd *Tamugin*, who became a person of very great prudence, valour, and good fortune, and arriv'd at so great esteem for his military services, that by the malicious

suggestions of those who envied him, *Yng-Chan* conceived a very great jealousy against him, and resolv'd to apprehend, imprison, and proceed against him as there should be reason. The night appointed for this exploit was discover'd to *Tamugin*, by two of *Yng-Chan*'s servants. Who providing against it, left his Tents standing as they were before, wherein were their wives, children, &c. but all the men of war he took with him, and placed himself and them in ambush; who rising up at the approach of *Yng-Chan*, slew him and all his followers; and presently seizing upon the Kingdom, caus'd himself to be call'd *Gingis-Chan*. and from the very beginning of his reign, either incited or encouraged (as all Authors agree, and himself always pretended) by some divine, or at least supernatural apparition, he design'd wars upon all his neighbours, and the enlargement of the dominion and name of *Tatars*. He also set up a new Religion (if it was not the same which was begun by *Sagomorhan-Chan*, who was taken for a great Prophet, of whom we know very little), but wherein it consisted I find not any satisfactory account. He believ'd a Providence; and set up *Mesquitas* to comply with *Mahometanism*; but, as an *Arabick* Author saith, it was like a branch broken off the great tree of the *Muselmans* law, and is extremely detested by them. He compell'd none to his Law, and gave greater indulgence, then they, to the Christians; and some of his successors (either *Manga* or *Kublai*) were actually baptized, with his whole family, and many of his chief Officers, who obtained great victories against the *Saracens*; but afterwards they returned to their former impiety, which is continued by them to this day.

The first thing *Gingis-Chan* did, was subjecting to himself all the neighbouring *Scythians*, which he easily did, partly by force, partly promise; and subdued to the *Tatar* Government, all *Cathay* eastward to the great Ocean, and as far as the *Volga* or *Edil* westward. He also extended his dominion very far into *India* and *Persia*. Yet lived he not many years; but at his death divided his conquests amongst his sons; and (after he had shew'd them by a bundle of arrows, which as long as bound fast together none of them could break, but the youngest broke them all when sever'd) exhorting them to unity amongst themselves, and obedience to his eldest son, he gave him the ancient kingdom, and of his conquests as far as *Babylonia* or *Chowaresme*, and made him supreme over all.

His successor was *Ogtai*, or as we call him *Hocota-Chan*, whose life also was short; besides him he had many sons, particularly one call'd *Tushai*, (whom some call *Ken*, others *Cuine*) the Father of *Batua* or *Baydo*, of whom more by and by. *Hocota* had also *Cuina-Chan* who succeeded him.

The next Emperor to *Gina* or *China-Chan* was *Mango-Chan*, who conquered *China*.

To him succeeded *Cobila* (or *Kublai*) *Chan*, of whom *M. Paulus Venetus*, *Haytho*, and others write largely; he is said to have been baptized, and embraced Christianity by the persuasions of a King of *Armenia*.

The eleventh (or as some say the thirteenth) of this race, not in order of succession to the *Chan*, but to one of the brothers, was *Timurlangh*, whom we commonly call *Tamerlan*, who

His Villories.

His Successors.

Of Tamerlan. attributed all his victories to his observance of the Religion of *Gingis-Chan*, for which he was by the *Mahometan-Doctors* declared an Infidel, and by their writers call'd Devil, Plague, Calamity, Traitor, and *Allighall* (which we corruptly call *Degnal*) i.e. Antichrist of the *Turks*; and indeed he persecuted them with very great violence, and mightily encouraged the Sect of *Gingis-Chan*.

Of Batu. Concerning these, account must be given in due place; it is necessary for our purpose to speak only of *Batu* or *Baatu*, or *Egyto*, whom our authors call *Batu*, son of *Hocata*. He enjoyed the country upon the eastern banks of *Volga* or *Edil*, and to give a specimen of his disposition, when *Ben* (either his brother or brothers son) complained, that he saw no reason why *Batu* should enjoy the fruitful pastures upon *Edil*, and himself as near akin to *Gingis-Chan*, *Batu* be driven into the dry and sandy wilderness, *Batu* sent for him, and the two words were spoken in his drunkenness (which the *Tatars* are used to pardon), he cut off his head.

His Wars. This *Batu* therefore (his son *Sarath* also possessing northwards all betwixt *Don* and *Volga*) fell upon the Nations called *Comani*, *Alani*, and *Gagani*, living between the *Euxine* and *Caspian* Sea, and wholly waited their country, destroying all, except some few who fled into *Hungary*, and there got for awhile secure habitations. Afterwards he fell upon the *Polowczy*, seated upon the *Tanais*, and all along upon the north of *Palus Maotis*. They are commonly said to have been *Gothic* Nations; but *Polotarsky* are called by the *Russes*, such as live without houses, in waggons, wandering from place to place, as they can find pasture for their cattle. Whatever they were, they sent Ambassadors to the *Russes*, their ancient enemies, for assistance against the *Tatars*; as did also the *Tatars*, to advise them to be quiet. But the *Russes* put to death the *Tatar* messengers, and joined with the *Polowczy*. Some say, that *Curtian* their Prince had married his daughter to *Miciuslaus* Duke of *Kiom*, and that this *Miciuslaus Romanowicz*, *Miciuslaus Mscilawicz*, with the Militia of *Halicks*, the Dukes of *Czernowia*, *Smolensko*, and most of the *Russes*, joined all their forces to the *Polowczy*, and having march'd twelve days together, arriv'd at the river *Kalca*. A.C. 1224, July 17, the *Tatars* (who were there encamp'd) perceiving them wearied with so long a march, immediately gave them battle, and made a very great slaughter; many of the *Russes* were slain and taken, and the rest flying homewards, were murder'd by the *Polowczy*, whom they came to assist. The *Tatars* pursuing their victory, absolutely destroyed the *Polowczy*, and seized upon their country, which is that which we call *Tartaria* *Precepensis*. About thirteen years after, A.C. 1238, they fell upon *Russia*, part of which they absolutely waited, as all the country about *Kiom*, part of it being full of woods and lakes, and not fit for the *Tatars* pasturage, they conquer'd, but gave them conditions, whereof we have given before a short account p. 37. thinking it more advantageous to have tribute and dominion over the country, than to lay it waste. Not long after *Batu* divided his army; himself with one part fell upon *Hungary*, the other he gave to one *Peta* to march into *Poland*, &c. who the first year destroyed all as far as *Sandomiria*. The next year he enter'd again, and forced *Boleslaus* the Chast Duke of *Poland*, out of the country; who retired to the Monastery of *Willebrand* in *Moravia*. *Peta* then also burn'd *Cracovia*, all except *St. Andrews* Church, which was fortified and well defended against them. Thence they came to *Breslaw* in

Silesia, which they found burnt to their hands by the foldiers and inhabitants, despairing to keep it. Thence they came to *Lignitz*, where *Henry* Duke of *Silesia* had got together a considerable army, besides those brought to him from *Poland*, *Prussia*, and many other places; and gave battle to the *Tatars*, who there obtained a very great victory. *Henry*, the Grand Master of the *Dutch* Knights, and many other persons of quality, were slain; and so many in all, as the *Tatars*, to shew the greatness of the slaughter, filled nine great sacks with their right ears; and the *Arabian* authors say, they amounted to 270000, which is manifestly false, if spoke of this battle; if of all the war, may have some probability. This battle was fought *V. Id. Apr. 1241*, at a place thence called *Walslad*, a mile from *Lignitz*. The *Tatars* also were to be weakened, that they stirr'd not out of their camp for fifteen days space, to cure their men, and to deliberate whether they should march next; and they resolv'd upon *Moravia*, to be nearer to their General. The King of *Bohemia* raising what men he could, sent them under the command of a very valiant and expert soldier *Jaroslavus a Sternberg*, to defend such places as were most considerable. He with much labour and difficulty got into *Olmuraz*, when the scouts of the *Tatars* appear'd before the Town. Trusting to the strength of his works, he forbore to fight the enemies so long, that they conceiving him a coward, began to despise him, and to keep their own guards more negligently; which *Jaroslavus* perceiving, after they had recommended their cause to God by fasting and prayer, chusing a dark night, march'd out of a postern, and with great silence fell into the *Tatars* camp, of whom they slew a great number; *Peta* was slain by *Jaroslavus* himself; the rest drew off, and march'd to *Batu*, into *Hungary*.

Batu had ravaged for two years together, not only *Hungary*, but *Slavonia*, *Bosnia*, *Rascia*, *Bulgaria*, and the countries on both sides the *Danube*. Some say, that after this, making an attempt upon *Austria*, and endeavouring to swim a great river, he was drown'd; others, that going against the Greek Emperor he was overthrow'n; however it was, it is agreed, that his army returned back, and seizing upon all the country between the *Bozithenes* and *Volga*, and the *Taurica Cheroneusis*, which before they very much waited, there fell into this day, being call'd *Crim-Tartars*, from the chief City of the *Cheroneusis*, call'd *Crim*; and *Precepensis* from *Precep*, which in their language signifies a ditch; such a one being drawn cross the *Isthmus*, to cut off that *Peninsula* from the continent. The *Tartars* at first were Lords, yet not absolute, for they acknowledged the superiority of the Great *Cham*, the chief heir of *Gingis-Chan*, till *Lachan-Chan*, one of the descendants from *Batu*, refus'd obedience to him, and took upon himself the absolute dominion over all those places, except some few cities in *Taurica*: which notwithstanding their conquests, remained in the hands of the *Genoeses*, their inhabitants: till about the year 1574, when *Mahomet II.* Emperor of the *Turks*, took them. A little before that, they had forsaken their old religion of *Gingis-Chan*, by the practices of *Hedeg*, and *Sida-hameth-Chan* their Emperors, and embrac'd the *Mahometan*; yet the common people are not very zealous in it to this day; but make use of their little puppet-idols of felt, &c. and continue many other pagan customs of their former religion. *Mahomet* Great fearing they should grow too powerful for him, under colour of taking in the City of *Cassa*, possess'd by the *Genoeses*, made himself Master of the best part of the *Cheroneusis*, and of the City

City of *Azoph* or *Azek*, a strong place at the mouth of *Tanais*. Afterwards the *Crim-Tartar* aid'd *Selimus I.* (who married his daughter) with an army of 150000 men against his father; and then the two Nations made a league, that the *Tartars* should assist the *Turk* when required with 50000 horse; that they should not make war, except against the *Muscovite*, without leave of the *Turks*; that they should yearly pay to the *Turk* a tribute of three hundred Christians, some furs, butter, and such other things: And the *Turk* should pay them 5500 ducats; and the *Cham* should succed to the *Turkijb* Empire, if the males of the *Ottoman* line should fail. But this lasted not long, for *Anurath III.* in the year 1584, quarrelling *Mahomet* the *Crim-Tartar*, as if he designed to intercept *Osman* *Basha* in his return from *Persia* to *Constantinople*, authorized *Osman* to invade him; who taking him and his two sons, strangled them, and set up *Isfan* the brother of *Mahomet*, under such conditions as the Grand Signior pleased. The *Tartars* did enjoy all the country of *Bulziak*, which lies between the *Niefter* and *Bozithenes*, as we shall hereafter, but the *Turk* hath seized upon that; so that now their dominion reacheth only between *Dnieper* or *Bozithenes* and the *Don* or *Tanais*; and of this, that *Peninsula* call'd *Taurica Cheroneusis* is the chiefest part.

That *Peninsula*, or *Cheroneusis*, was call'd *Taurica*, because inhabited by a sort of *Scythians* call'd *Tauri* and *Tauri-Scythi*. Afterwards the *Greeks* mingled amongst them, and brought the country into great beauty and fame. But their names and actions belongs to the ancient Geography. The *Genoeses* taking advantage of the great enmities of the *Greeks* amongst themselves, in the year 1266 (or about the time of the Holy-war) took *Cassa*, and plant'd a considerable interest in the country, the *Tartars* either permitting them because of the gain they made by their traffick, principally of slaves (which they furnish'd to a great part of the world, but especially to *Egypt*, who generally had all their Mamalukes, as long as that government lasted, from this place); or not being skilled in besieging of Towns, especially such as could be perpetually relieved. And indeed it was very convenient for the *Genoeses*, for having besides this a great plantation at *Pera* near *Constantinople*, they thereby enjoyed the whole trade of the Black-Sea, till (as we said) they were ruin'd by the *Turks*; since which time I cannot find that it hath suffer'd any considerable alterations. We shall therefore describe it (being by Christians an unfrequented country) out of *Mari. Brontovius*, who was sent Ambassador twice thither, from *Stephanes Battori* King of *Poland*; from which such little informations as we meet with since do not considerably differ.

This *Cheroneusis* then is about fifty leagues long, and thirty where broadest. The first Town at the entrance upon the east is *Przepoc*, call'd by the *Tartars* *Or*, situate upon the Dyke, in the narrowest part of the *Isthmus*, where it is not above a mile wide, anciently call'd *Eupatoria*, *Pompeopolis*, besides other names. 'Tis now a small Town of about four hundred fires; it hath a stone Castle, but not strong, wherein the *Cham* hath continually his Beg or Palatine, who commands the guard upon the rivers of *Bozithenes* and *Tanais*, as also the *Tartars* in the plains betwixt; he also examines all strangers, suffering none to pass without the *Chams* letters. *Sachingeri* the Great *Cham* here overthrew the *Nogay-Tartars*, and rais'd seventeen forts upon the Dyke, some of them of the skulls and bones of the slain. *Coslow*, situate near unto the Black Sea, is a Town of traffick,

having near two thousand houses, and is in the power of the *Cham*. *Ingermen* is now only a Castle, but hath been a great Town, as appears by the ruins, amongst which are many caves cut out of the rock, wells, and old buildings of the *Greeks*, witness'd by their inscriptions, there very frequent; it is now an inconsiderable place inhabited by a few *Turks*. *Sari-gemen* by the *Turks*, by the *Tartars* *Topotarkan* (anciently *Cheroneusis* and *Cosina*, the noblest and most ancient City of all the *Peninsula*) is still compass'd with a strong stone-wall, and divers aqueducts, and other noble buildings entire, but without inhabitants; the *Turks* every day fetch away the marble and stones for other buildings. *Volodimir*, the Grand *Tzar* took this Town from *Joannes Zimisces*, and amongst other rich plunder, carried away two large royal brazen gates to *Kiom*; from whence *Boleslaus II.* King of *Poland* transferr'd them to *Gnesna*, where they still remain. They say also, that *Volodimir* was here baptized. *Balachey*, or *Balachaba* (by the *Genoeses* call'd *Jamboli*) or the tower of fishes, the Sea there being very well stor'd, situate under the mountain *Baba*. The *Genoeses* took it without any loss from the *Greeks*, and made it a very commodious, beautiful, and strong haven. The *Turks* at this day build here their galleys and ships; tho' it be but a poor Town, at most but of an hundred and twenty fires, the inhabitants *Turks*, *Jews*, and *Greeks*. *Mangut*, or *Mancus*, was a very magnificent City, tho' not by the Sea-shore; but first by the *Turks*, and afterwards by a great fire, it was so waited that nothing now remains of it except one high tower, and a strong stone-house, wherein the *Cham* thrusts the *Russ*-Ambassador as often as he hath a mind to quarrel his master. There are some few *Turks*, *Jews*, and *Greeks* that inhabit there, in all about sixty fires. There remains still upon the ruins of the walls of some of the Churches, the pictures of divers of the Greek Emperors, and other famous men. *Cerceligermen* is a small *Turkijb* Fort, not far from *Mancop*. The Palaces of the *Cham* are situated in the middle of the country. *Bacalsaray* (*Baccalsaray*) is a Town of about two thousand houses, wherein is a Melchite, and divers sepulchres of the *Chams*, very magnificent, as is their Palace, built with great charges by their former Princes; besides that it is seated in a country very proper for hunting and fowling, and is nobly adorned with gardens, orchards, bathes, &c. *Almasaray* is another house whither he sometimes retires, in a Town of about seventy fires. There are also divers little Castles, where his own brethren, children, and their wives are kept. *Sorfalla* is a Town where the Ambassadors of foreign Princes have many times liberty to divert themselves. At *Creme*, or *Crim*, anciently *Taphros* and *Taphra* (from whence they are call'd *Crim-Tartars*) is his Mint, and a very strong Castle in possession of the *Tartars*, but the Town is most inhabited by *Turks*, in all about an hundred houses. *Sidagios* or *Sudacum*, was a very noble and strong City, situated in the mountains, taken by the *Genoeses* from the *Greeks*, so set one family against another, that they would not come to the same Church; the *Turks* by a long and difficult siege took it from the *Genoeses*; 'tis famous for the wine growing thereabouts. *Cassa*, or *Theodosia*, still the chief City of the *Peninsula*, hath betwixt five and six thousand houses, inhabited most part by Christians, who have about forty-five Churches, *Greeks*, *Armenians*, and remainders of the *Italians*, some *Turks*, and few *Tartars*, all under a *Turkijb* *Sangiac*. Slaves they reckon there about thirty thousand, a Town of great traffick,

about two days failing from *Constantinople*; yet it is nothing to what it was under the *Gemeles*. *Kerky* is a little Town of the *Tartars*, of about an hundred families, upon the Strait called anciently *Bosphorus Cimmericus*, which is here about three leagues broad. This Town is open, for the Grand Signior will not allow the *Tartars* to have any fortified Town besides *Prezcep*. Over against this is *Taman*, a Town and Castle upon the continent, in the country called anciently *Colchis*, now the *Circassians*, or *Peisiger-Tartars*. *Karsly* belongs to the *Cham*, and hath above a thousand houses. *Tulla* is amongst the *Sale-works*, and hath about eighty houses. *Arabet*, or *Orboser*, is a double Castle, near to which the *Cham* keeps his Stud or breed of horses, which are reckon'd to be about seventy thousand. The country towards the south is mountainous, and consequently well water'd; the rest plain, and good pastures, but wants water; for that near at hand is brackish, and their good water is drawn out of very deep wells, of which there is no want, dug by the former inhabitants.

The country of Prezcep.

Thus much of the *Cerfonelus*, without this the *Crim-Tartars* enjoy all betwixt *Borithenes* (*Nieper*) and *Tamais* (*Don*); which from *Ofjove* upon the *Don* to the *Nieper*, in a straight line is accounted about four hundred *Englis* miles; but the *Nieper* fetching a great compass eastward, in some places it is not so much. This is for the most part plain and even ground, and rich pasture, without any Town, or constant habitation, or propriety. Only it seems that the *Cham* by his officers appoints what parts shall be till'd; and in *February* proclamation is made amongst all the *Tartars*, that if any have a mind to till any ground, they should get all their matters ready by such a day, when they will go to such a place, commodious for that purpose; and accordingly some do go, and the rest attend upon them, that they be not disturbed. Betwixt this plain and *Russia* lies walt a great country, (as they say) requiring twenty days to cross it; full of woods and lakes, and sometimes under-water, which is the great secret fecurity of the rest of that Empire.

The Government of the Crim-Tartars.

The government is wholly in the hands of the *Cham*. The *Cadi's* determine lesser causes, but capital and matters of greater importance are judged by the *Cham* himself, with his Council. He is of easy access, and reasonably just. He always chuseth a *Galga*, who is next to him alive, and succeeds after death; this is commonly his son or brother, according to merit. If any one have better pretensions, he flies to the Grand Signior, who judges the cause. His younger sons are Soldans, and are brought up by such as have the custody of their wives, with whom they are educated, till of sufficient strength; and according to their fitness, they are furnished with commands, either in his own country, or are recommended to the neighbouring *Tartars*, who willingly receive them. Part also are hostages with the *Turks*. When the family of *Gingis-Chan* was numerous and potent, they chus'd always the *Cham*, but *Sachibegere* and *Desuletigerei* *Chams* made away with most of them, and fetted the dominion in their own posterity.

The *Cham* hath many Officers and Counsellors. *Hamais* are those who take care of the affairs of foreign Princes. Captains also, *Coracei*, *Ukens*, and the best of the *Murjes* are called to Council. The *Ukens* are those of an ancient family of *Chams*, but were deprived of it by the *Giergys*, the name of the present Royal family; but if this be extinct, the *Ukens* have a right to return again to that honour. The most promising of the *Tartar* youth attend upon the *Cham's* person. Most of the

Courtiers and great persons are very rich, with the booties got chiefly from the *Christians*; are splendidly clothed, keep good hordes, and live as well as the nobilit *Turks*. They wear no fort of arms in the Court. They live in houses also, and upon their lands, which they husband by their slaves, and their herds in the country, which are govern'd by other *Tartars* their retainers. The *Tartars* rarely merchandise, or exercise any manual art; rather chusing to live miserably and poorly, than not idly.

The revenues of the *Cham*, are 1. The Donatives and Presents sent him yearly from all the neighbour-Princes by their own Ambassadors. 2. Tribute of *Christians*, *Jews*, *Tartars*, and in sum, all except the *Turks* under his dominion. 3. The *Turk* pays every day to the *Cham* twenty-five dollars, to the *Galga* twelve and a half; to the Sultan-hoistage two and a half, besides lands. All the great persons also have salaries, but uncertain. 4. He hath the tenth of all the slaves taken, and for every one besides of better quality three crowns, and for others each one dollar. 5. Every well pays him an horse. 6. The richer and better sort of *Tartars* furnish him with provision, and in case of necessity all the Nation contribute. 7. He hath vast herds and flocks, kept by his factors. 8. He coins copper-money, which is only current in his dominions, and once in four or five years he calls it all in, and coins a new sort.

The forces of the *Cham* are esteem'd in all (such as they be) to amount to three hundred thousand horse; foot he hath none, but what he borrows from the *Turk*, as he doth commonly a few *Janizaries* for the guard of his person when he goes to war.

The ordinary *Tartars* live miserably. It is by most authors reported, that it is some days after their birth that they first open their eyes. Their mothers or nurses wash them every day in salt-water, to harden and thicken their skins against cold (which some in *Poland* use also), and 'tis no more then necessary, for from seven years old, that they leave their Cantares (their walking habitations) they never sleep in an house, but in the open air, tho' frost and snow; nor eat they any thing but what they shoot down with their arrows; and at twelve or fifteen years old they go to wars with their fathers. Their clothing at best is a short tunic, with a pair of coarse drawers, and a sheep-skin with the wool upon it over their shoulders; garments very insufficient against cold. Their walking Cabans or houses, are made of reeds, others, or the like, woven like baskets, twelve or fifteen foot wide, cover'd either with a coarse hairy felt, or cloth, inconvenient enough in every respect. Their ordinary diet is flesh almost raw (tho' dead of sickness, or purrified), without bread or salt, and fusc'd with the sweat and foam of their horses; only garlick they eat in abundance, which they think helps to digest their undrest'd meat. A life certainly not desirable, nor to be embraced by any, but such as know no better. Which is the reason that many of them amongst the *Muscovites*, leave their barbarism, and apply themselves to the civility and religion of the *Russes*. All of them intermarrying into their own Nation, renders them all like to one another; that is, they are of mean stature, yet square and big-lim'd, thick shoulders, short neck, great head, broad face, large forehead, large and black eyes, which they open but half; short nose (which some of them break when they are children), narrow mouth, tawny colour, black and stiff hair. Each one when he goes to the wars, carries with him two or three horses

horses at least, a sword, a bow and quiver with about twenty arrows, a knife, tinder-box, anawl to mend his bridle, &c. a dial with a needle, and a string to bind his prisoners.

Their horses also, which they call *Baquemates*, are long, raw-bon'd, low, and very ugly, their mains and tails long and tufty; yet incomparable for service, usually marching twenty or thirty leagues without drawing bit. But the *Cham*, *Mirg's*, and great persons among them, have *Turkish*, *Persian*, and *Arabian* horses (which they buy at very great rates), as also good armour, coats of mail, excellent fire-arms, &c.

The chiefest thing for which they are remarkable, and what is least understood concerning them, is their manner of warring; which is not, as most suppose, by violence and open force, but by cunning and artifice, in this manner:

Suppose they would invade *Poland*; if the *Cham* go in person, he marcheth seldom fewer than eighty-thousand strong; if a *Mirza* command, seldom more than fifty thousand. And they always chuse the winter, when the rivers are frozen; and the rather in a snow, the hard slippery ways beating their horses feet, which are not hoed, except some few, which have pieces of oxen hoofs fowled to them. They make very short marches (ten or twelve miles a day), and they contrive that their return may be before the rivers be thawed, which they seldom are till *March*. They march as much as is possible thro' valleys, low and unfrequented places, to conceal themselves from the scouts of the *Cossacks*; nor do they at nights make any fires; they continually send out scouts to catch some of the inhabitants, and get notice of the enemy. They march commonly an hundred (i.e. three hundred horses, each man having three horses) in front, which takes up near a thousand paces, and in file, when most close, they reach three large leagues; but when they march loosely, ten leagues; an army of eighty thousand having above two hundred thousand horses. They make an halt every hour at a whistle, and alight, that themselves and horses may urine. They divide their army into three tiers; two whereof march in a body, the other third is again divided into two, which make the two wings. The body marcheth slowly, but without giving any more rest than an hour at a time, till they arrive at the utmost whither they design to go; nor do they much harm till they come thither. But when they return, which is by another way, the wings divide themselves into small troops, and ravage every way ten or twelve leagues, and then pillage, burn and kill all that resist; those that yield they bind and carry away prisoners; all their cattle also they carry away, only the hogs they gather into an house, and set fire into the four corners, and so burn them as unclean creatures. As soon as these wings have ravaged so far, they return to the body, which is easily found by their track, and as many more are sent out in like manner; and after their return as many more. So that they all plunder, and the body never diminisheth; nor ever marcheth more than a foot-pace, in very good order, to be always ready to defend themselves, (for they fight not willingly if the enemy should charge them). To prevent their mischief, the inhabitants have always either their own dwellings fortified, or have a Town, or the Landlords Manor-house, or a thick wood, to which they retire in such hazards. The *Cossacks*, where they live, fill their grounds full of trenches and hedges, to hinder their march. They also keep very diligent watches, both be-

yond and upon the river, that they may have timely notice of their invasion. Then, if they cannot overtake them, they repair to the known passages (of which there are not many) thro' the *Nieper*, and there (as well as they can) ambush themselves, to surprize them at their return; as they do many times, and recover much of the prey. After they are return'd into a safe place of their own deserts; they put themselves in order, and divide the prey. And first, consideration is had of them who have lost their horses in the service, as also of the kindred of them who are slain; next the *Cham*, after him the Officers take their share; the rest is divided amongst the foldiers. The richest of their prey, are the persons they take, and of all them the most esteem'd are the *Polish* women, especially virgins, who are sold at very great rates, even into *Persia* and *India*, to be put into their *Seraglios*.

But the *Tartars* of *Budziack* have another manner of stealing. They are less civil, but more valiant than other *Tartars*. The country betwixt *Danubius* and *Borithenes*, was sometimes under the *Crim-Tartars*; till the *Turk* planted Towns upon the convenient places of the Sea-coast, and along the rivers. Yet is the country still possessed by *Tartars*, yet not subjects either to the *Turk* or *Crim*; but (as the *Cossacks* amongst the *Christians*) a Nation of thieves, and *banditti*, libertines; that in their lives acknowledge no superior, either God or man. These many times invade their neighbours in summer, but with lesser numbers (twenty thousand at most). Left they should be discovered, because the *Cossacks* are continually upon the guard, even in these places; they march to their rendezvous (which they appoint in some valley, or obscure places upon the confines) in very small parties, lest they should be detected by treading down the grass. They observe the same manner in the enemies country, appointing certain places for their meetings, and separating again presently. So that it is very difficult to meet with a track, but if the *Cossacks* do happen upon such a one as will lead them to the place of rendezvous, yet except they surprize them eating, or sleeping (which is very difficult, because they keep such diligent sentinels), they know not afterwards which track to follow to overtake them again. The *Tartars* first divide into four bodies, which march east, west, north, and south. After they have gone a little way, each troop subdivides again into three, and after that each troop into three again; so that at length they have not above ten or twelve together, and tho' some take further compass than others, yet all know the time and place of meeting, which according to the occasion is after three, four, or more days. If they chance to be rencountered with the enemy, except they have very great advantage, they fight him not, but divide after their manner, and run away full-speed, yet shooting still if pursued; nor are the horses of *Poland*, or any other, able to overtake them. After they have thus dispersed for some leagues, they join again, and follow their design. All Authors take notice also of a great advantage they have over other Nations, that they can see better and farther, inasmuch that a *Tartar* will discern a single *Russ* further than a *Russ* can a troop of *Tartars*; which they attribute partly to their natural constitutions, that they have little hollow eyes; partly to their custom, that they use continually to half-close their eye-lids. When they would swim a river, each gets him a bundle of reeds, fedges, bulrushes, or the like, about three foot long, upon which

The Tartars of Budziack.

they tie three or four sticks across, and two or three long-ways; upon these they make fast their saddle, clothes, arms, and such baggage as they have; the bundle they make fast to their horses tail; so that from a convenient low bank they go into the river, holding in one hand the bridle of their horse, with the other swimming themselves. Sometimes the *Cossacks* seek them in their own country, and then they march always in their *Tabor*, that is, in the mid-

dle of their chariots, and send out sentinels on every side at a good distance. If they first spy the *Tartars*, they leave their *Tabor* and fall upon them, and commonly have the advantage; but if the *Tartars* first see the *Cossacks*, they assault them in their *Tabor*, but at a distance with their arrows, which tho they reach further than the *Cossacks* guns, yet is their *Tabor* so good a defence, that fifty *Cossacks* will not fly from five hundred *Tartars*.



BORISTHENES





OF THE BORISTHENES, AND THE Cofacks of Ukrain.



WE have spoken before in general of the *Boristhenes*, as far as it continues in the Grand *Tzars* dominions; wherein is nothing observable, but what Cities and Towns are upon it; which appear sufficiently by the Map. But now we come to speak of the remainder, which is betwixt the dominions of Poland and the *Tartars*; which affordeth us greater variety of matter. We have also treated in general of the *Cofacks*, and of those who live upon the *Tanais*, and are under the *Muscovite*; but we now come to the great body of them, who first assumed that name, and inhabit upon or near the *Boristhenes*, and are or were lately under the *Polanders*. We begin with *Kiow*, the place of the original of these valiant people the *Cofacks*.

Kiow, *Kijovia*, or *Kijovia*, was an ancient, beautiful, and strong City, even before it was the Metropolis of the *Russes*. *Miceflaus* their Duke having married the daughter of the Prince of the *Polovtzi*, and assisting them, was himself slain in the battle, and the Town afterwards quite ruin'd, which was the reason why *Volodimir* (deeply engaged in that war, but escaping) made *Volodimir* the seat of the *Russ*-Empire. *Kiow* was situated upon an hill, near the *Nieper*, where still remain the ruins of many Arcades, high walls, Churches, and Sepulchres of divers Kings (ancienter then those of the *Russ*-Princes) with Greek inscriptions. There remain in reasonable good condition two Churches, *S. Sophia*, (whose walls are lined with excellent *Mosaic* work, and the vault is earthen pots cemented, and filled with good plaster): And *S. Michael*, most conspicuous for its gilded roof. Betwixt this and the *Nieper*, is *New Kiow*, along the bank of the river about three *English* miles, containing not above six thousand inhabitants, and encompassed with a fully trench of twenty-five foot broad. The *Roman* Communion hath four Churches, the *Greek* ten, which they call *Cerkvils*, and a kind of University, called *Bracha Cerkvils*. It hath a reasonable trading for corn, furs, wax, honey, tallow, and salt-fish. They have four jurisdictions, that of the Bishop, of the Palatine or *Starost*, of the *Woiw*, and of the Consuls of the City.

Half a league below *Kiow*, is a large Village called *Piechare*, where is a noble Monastery, the habitation of the Metropolitan or Patriarch. And under the mountain, close by it, are divers grots, dug like mines, wherein are conserved many bodies, buried very many years ago; amongst others there are (saith *Beauplan*) three heads in dishes, which every day distill an oyl sovereign for several diseases; the bodies are neither so black nor hard as Mummies; the place is a sandy-stone, but very dry; it seems to be of the same nature of that called *Roma Subterranea*.

Below *Piechare* is *Stayka*, an ancient Town on the top of a mountain, as all those ancient Towns are, even in *Italy*, built so for strength and security. There is also a Ferry to pass men over the river. After that is *Richow*, where is an easy passage over the river. Lower is *Tretemirof*, a Monastery amongst inaccessible rocks. Here the *Cofacks* conserved the choicest of their wealth. A league below that is *Pereaslaw*, a strong Town of six thousand families. Here the *Cofacks* have a Regiment; as they have another and a Ferry at *Kanow*, a little lower, but on the east bank of the *Nieper*. On the same side is *Cirkasle*, the center of all their retreats, burnt by the *Polanders* anno 1637. On the same side is *Krilow*; and below that *Kremierczow*, the lowest Town upon the river, all below it being desert. A league from thence the river *Pleczoll*, and a little lower on *Russia* side, *Omelnik* fall into the *Nieper*; as also on the Poland bank *Worsko* and *Orel*, two rivers very full of fish. Here are divers dwarf-Cherry and Almond-trees, which one of our country-men (I doubt mistake-ingly) hath placed far on the north of *Volga*. Continuing down the river are many Isles, most of them uninhabited, because overflowed in the spring, but much frequented by fishers. Divers rivers also encrease the *Nieper* at *Romanow*, but chiefly *Samar*, which supplies not only much fish, but other commodities, as honey, wax, venison, and especially timber. The *Cofacks* call it the holy river, and in the spring here are said to be caught sturgeons and herrings. A little below that the *Polonians* built a fort in the year 1635 at *Kudac*, which is the first of the *Porobi*.

Porobi, or *Porobi*, called anciently *Catadrapa*, *Porobi*, in the *Russ*-language signifies a rock of stone; and of these there are thirteen chains, or as it were caueys, that cross the *Boristhenes*, and render the navigation from the *Ukrain* to the Black Sea impossible; so that tho the *Ukrain* be a very fruitful country in corn, and all other commodity; yet the inhabitants, not being able to vend them, suffer much of it to lie unhusbanded, or at least not so well as it might be. Of these rocks, some are under, some above water ten foot, as big as houses, and very near to one another, so that stopping the course of the river, they make very great falls, some to fifteen foot, when the water is low; for in the spring, when the river is swelled with the melted snow, they are all (except the seventh, called *Nienafstres*, which only there hindreth navigation) covered with water. Betwixt *Bodelou* and *Tawolzeny* (which are the tenth and eleventh) the *Tartars* do often swim the river, the banks being shallow. A little below the lowest *Porobi*, is an Island they call *Kaczganowicz* (or *hail-millet*) because here they make good cheer, when they have passed the *Porobi*. Below that is a river, a Promontory, and the best passage for the *Tartars* (the river not being above an hundred and fifty paces broad), called *Kaczkesow*. Below that is the Isle *Tamashowka*, whither the *Cofacks* often resort and rendezvous. But near the last retreat is below the river *Czeramelik*, upon an Island where

where are some old ruins, but which is compassed about with a vast number of small islands, some dry, some overflowed in the spring, some marshes, but all covered with canes as big as pikes; which hide the passages between the islands, and render it all a great labyrinth, known only to the *Cofacks*, who call it *Scarvitzka Woskona*, or the *treasure of the army*. Here they lay up all their ordnance, their money, and whatever will not spoil by the water. The *Turks* have lost many galleys so engaged amongst these Isles that they could neither go backward nor forward, and were seized by the *Cofacks*. Here also they make their *Cholna*, of which more by and by.

From these *Poroubi* the *Cofacks* take their name of *Zaporowski*; which are the great body, in imitation whereof the *Donski* are lately set up. None can be a *Zaporowski Cofack*, who hath not passed in his little boat all the *Poroubi*, i.e. who hath not made a course or voyage upon the Black Sea; no more then can he be a Knight of Malta that hath not made a *Caravane*. We shall first tell the original and actions of the *Cofacks*, and afterwards finish what concerns the *Boristhenes*, and the countries adjacent.

The *Cofacks*, so called (saith a late author) from *Cofa*, which in the *Slavonian* language signifies a fythe, their ordinary weapon; began in the time of *Sigismund I.* King of *Poland*, and were certain volunteers upon the frontiers of *Russia*, *Volhynia*, and *Podolia*, that troop'd together, partly to defend themselves from the *Tartars*, which they did by fighting them at the passages over the *Nieper*, as they returned with their prey; partly to rob upon the Black Sea, where they getting very rich booty, drew more into their association. At first they were about fix thousand, under *Eustachius Daskonowicz* their General. But their numbers quickly encreased, their neighbours seeing the rich booties got by their pyracies, part whereof they laid in their *Skarvitzka Woskona*, the rest they brought home to their own houses; agreeing upon a time of rendezvousing the next spring upon the Isles and Rocks of *Nieper*, whence they again return to their pyracies.

Their *Stephen Batory King of Poland* considering the service which might be made of these thieves in defending the frontiers of his country from the incursions of the *Tartars*, (to which they were too much exposed), owned them, and formed them into an orderly Militia, giving them the Town and territory of *Tretbimirov*, about eighty miles in length, in the Palatinate of *Kiom*, upon the *Boristhenes*; appointing them a General, to whom he gave power to chuse his under-officers, giving them many privileges, besides some pay; he joined to them also two thousand horse; to the maintenance of whom he assigned the fourth part of his demesne, whence they were called *Quartani*. These forces had such effect against the *Tartars*, that the country beyond *Breclaw*, *Bar*, and *Kiom* began to be peopled, Towns and Fortresses to be builded, and colonies brought from the neighbouring places. But as their establishment and union was very proper to make head against the *Tartars*, so in short time it proved of great danger to *Poland* itself; for the *Cofacks* knowing their own strength, and of what importance they were, began to set up for themselves; they would not obey the orders of their superiors, nor acknowledge the power of the *Polonians* over them. Their first rebellion was in the year 1587, under *John Podkopa* their General, who was foiled, taken, and his head struck off. In the year 1596, *Sigismund III.* upon the complaints and threats of the Grand Seignior, forbade them to pillage any more upon the

Black Sea; from which they indeed for awhile abtained, but it was that they might fall upon *Russia* and *Lithuania*, under the conduct of *Nalevsko* their General. The *Polanders*, to secure their country, were forced to raise an army against them, commanded by *Zolkiewski*, whom the *Cofacks* fought at *Bialacerkiew* and worsted; but he returning, and forcing them into places of disadvantage, compelled them to give up their General, who in like manner lost his head. In the year 1637, certain *Polish* Noblemen having obtained the lands upon these frontiers, in the places appointed for the quarters of the *Cofacks*, began to force these their new subjects to the same services as in other parts of the Kingdom; which are, to work three days of the week, man and horse, for their Lord; to pay also, according to their Farms, so much corn, poultry, fowl, &c. at Easter, Whitontide, and Christmas; to cart home his Lords wood; besides other duties, as paying so much money, the tenth of their cattle, hogs, fruits, and every third year the third ox; and these ordinarily, besides what the Lord pleaseth to impose upon them; for indeed the Lords are absolute, nor are they punished if they kill their payfants, who are little better then their slaves. These Noblemen also applied themselves to the King and Senators; shewing them, that the *Cofacks* only could frustrate their plantations; (for the payfants, when they found themselves to be oppressed, lifted themselves amongst the *Cofacks*), that they were a thievish, libertine sort of people, and hinder'd both by example and protection the obedience of their Farmers. It was therefore resolved, to build a Fort at *Kiadac*, a place near their *Poroubi*, and therefore very convenient to bridle the *Cofacks*; who well understanding to what this tended, first cut in pieces two hundred men that were set to guard the building of it; afterwards, when it was finished, resolving to take it, they fell into jealousie of their General *Sawakomowicz*, and having murder'd him, chused one *Paulucus*, a man of little conduct and experience; and before they were got into their *Tabor*, being met by the General *Potoski*, they were routed at *Korfun*, and forced to deliver up their General and four more of their chief Officers, who were put to death at *Warlaw*; notwithstanding that the General had promised them their lives. Presently followed the loss of their privileges, and their Town *Tretbimirov*, and the suppression of their Militia, which was new modelled into a more obedient form. This more irritated the *Cofacks*, who again tried their fortune with *Potoski*, but were worsted; and then fortified themselves upon the river *Starzca*, beyond *Boristhenes*. After this, the *Polonians*, having lost so many in trying to suppress them, were forced to compound, and promise that their Militia (of six thousand) should be re-established under a General appointed by the King. But these articles were not observed; for the *Cofacks* (as they returned every man to his house) were killed or plunder'd by the *Polish* soldiers; and another Militia set up, excluding the ancient and true *Cofacks*.

But the *Tartars* a little after ruining a great part of the *Ukrain*, shewed the necessity of the former establishment. For *Uladislaus IV.* pretending to make war upon the *Tartars*, was very careful to set them up again, giving them for their General *Bogdan* (or *Theodore*) *Chmielniski*, son of a *Polish* Gentleman, enrolled young into the Militia of the *Cofacks*, and by the degrees of Captain, Commissary, &c. brought to be General. This man was the spark that kindled that terrible war which endangered all *Poland*. *Chmielniski* in the year

1647, having received some injuries from a *Polish* Officer, whereof he could get no redress, began to complain to his *Cofacks*, who unanimously resolved to stand by him, as did also a vast number of the *Rusticks*, oppressed by their Landlords, who had farm'd out much of their lands to the *Jews*, who had also monopolized all the advantages of the country, as brewing of Beer, distilling Aqua-vitæ, nay even the keys of the Churches, in favour that a native could not be married, or Christen a child, without paying so much to a *Jew*; which so irritated the *Rusticks*, that they came in to *Chmielniski*, and made him an army of two hundred thousand. The King, who pretended to fight the *Tartars*, and endeavour the conquest of *Crim*, underhand favoured them; but the Commonwealth growing jealous, as if he intended to make himself absolute, because he had got together a considerable army of foreigners, caused him to disband that army, and disown the *Cofacks*. And sent against them an army, part of which turned to the *Cofacks*, the rest was wholly destroyed. Upon which, divers overtures of peace unsuccessfully proposed, *Chmielniski* called in the *Crim-Tartar* with an hundred thousand horse, and march'd into *Poland*; but were there so valiantly resisted by the *Polanders* both at *Zbaras* and *Zborow* (where the new King *John Casimir* was in person with an army) that the *Tartar* weary of the war, was very willing to hearken to a peace, as *Chmielniski* also pretended, and accepted of moderate propositions; this was in the year 1649. But *Chmielniski* fearing that the *Poles* would not faithfully observe that treaty, began more and more to fortify himself by leaguings with the Grand Seignior, and forcing the Prince of *Moldavia* to a conjunction and alliance with him. And at a Diet proposing such terms as intimated, that he intended to make himself an absolute Prince under the patronage of the *Turks*, by the *Poles* a new war was generally agreed upon; which broke out very fiercely in the year 1651, when was fought a very cruel and decisive battle, wherein the *Cofacks* and *Tartars* were overthrown; yet not so but that *Chmielniski* found means to raise another army, and to make peace upon articles to him not very disadvantageous.

What became of him and his *Cofacks* since that, we have little account, only that part of them have submitted themselves to the *Masovians*; part also, under *Dorogenski* their General, called in the *Turks* and *Tartars* against the *Polanders*; and that by the agreement in the year 1677 betwixt the Grand Seignior and the King of *Poland*, *Ukrain* and the *Cofacks* were to be under the *Turk*.

Thus much of their Militia by Land, 'tis fit to give some small account of their exploits by Sea. Having assembled (commonly about six thousand) upon the Islands of *Skarvitzka Woskona*, the first thing they do is to chuse their General for that expedition; and to make their Boats which they call *Colna*, which are about sixty foot long, twelve deep, and as many wide; built very slight, pinning one plank upon the edge of the lower, and so widening as it heightens; they have at each end a stern, and about twelve or fifteen oars of a side; they have no deck, but (that it may not sink, the full of water) they encompass it round about with a rowl of reeds as big as a barrel, tyed together and to their Boats with ropes. They have a forry mast and sail, but seldom use them, except in fair weather. Their provision is a tun of biscuit, which they take out of the bung as they use it; a barrel of bould millet, and another of paste made with

water, which they eat with their miller, and serves them instead of beverage. Every Boat carries about sixty persons, every man having two guns, with powder and ball necessary, and in each Boat five or six falconets. They wait for a dark night (about the beginning of *June*, so that they may return about the first of *August*) that they may pass undiscovered by the *Turk* galleys, which ly at *Oczacow* to intercept them. With these Boats they course over all the Black Sea, and the coasts upon it, even to the very suburbs of *Constantinople*, pillaging and spoiling wherever they come. If they spy a galley, they keep at a distance till night, and observing well the course of the vessel, when it is dark they immediately row up to it, and all together board it, and commonly carry it; they take out all the money, cannon, and merchandise that they please, and sink it, not having the skill or opportunity to use it. If a galley spy them in the day-time, they avoid fighting by rowing swifter then they, or retiring to shallows, or amongst reeds, where the galleys cannot follow them.

As long as they used this trade, they abstained from using violence against their Lords, living upon what they got from the *Turks*; till the Grand Seignior threatened *Sigismund* to make war upon him, except he redress'd the robberies and pyracies of the *Cofacks*; and then, wanting subsistence, they turned their arms against their own country. The permitting them to chuse their General and Officers, was taking the bridle out of their mouths; for he, having no power but precarious, and being many times displaced or murder'd without any reason, is forced to comply with all their violences. He is chuse either by clamor, or throwing their caps at him. He had four Counsellors (whom they call *Ajsaul*), a Lieutenant, General of the Ordinance, and all the same Officers that other Christian armies have. They are arm'd with guns, which they manage very dextrously; besides, they have many fythes for long-ways upon poles, with which they fight both fiercely and skillfully. Being all of them farmers, they understand all trades necessary for humane life, and are very capable to learn or perform any employment. But their greatest excellency is in preparing Salt-peter, and making Gun-powder, which they do in great perfection.

Their Religion is the very same with the *Russ*; Religion. (they also call themselves *Russes*, their country being nam'd sometimes Black, sometimes Red *Russia*), and delight to imitate them in manner of living. They have their Metropolitan of *Kiom*, who is consecrated by the Patriarch of *Constantinople*, and is subject to him immediately. Their chief observances consist in fasts and holidays. But the Nobility (of which there are some few amongst them) imitate the *Polanders*, and are most of them *Roman-Catholicks*.

Their manners are like those of soldiers; not careful of what's to come, spending freely what they have at present amongst their companions, and permitting the future to shift for it self; very inconstant, mutinous, and following their present advantage rather then their faith or promise. Potent drinkers, yet having by reason of their labour and hardship to great health, that Physicians are not esteem'd amongst them.

The chiefest thing wherein the inhabitants differ from the *Polonians*, is their marriages; that the maids in this country frequently woo the men; for if a virgin have an affection to a young man, he is not allow'd to go to the house where he lives with his parents; declaring her affection to him, and promising all love and obedience

if he pleaseth to accept of her in marriage. If she be rejected by the young man, as being too young, not disposed to marry, or the like, she tells them, that she is resolved never to part out of the house till he consent, and there she takes up her quarters. To force her out of the house would be to provoke all her kindred; nor would the Church suffer them to use any violence unto her without inflicting heavy penances, and noting the house of infamy; so that after two or three weeks, the parents, or the young man himself, moved with the constancy of the woman, accommodate matters as well as they can, and make up a marriage.

Of the
Ukrain.

Thus much for the *Cofacks*; let us now return to the place of their habitation, the *Ukrain*. The word signifies a frontier-place; which lying beyond *Volhinia* and *Podolia*, containeth part of the Palatinates of *Chio* and *Bracław*, between 48 and 51 deg. of Latitude. A country water'd with so many rivers, that it must needs be fruitful both for corn, pasturage, as also for fish, honey, timber, &c. Being a frontier, all the Towns and habitations are fortified either with a ditch, or have some thick wood, where they make recesses with their goods in time of an invasion by the *Tartars*. The inhabitants glory much to be called *Cofacks*; and indeed many of them in these late insurrections, by the tyranny of their Landlords have been compelled to join with, and take arms amongst them. It is terminated on the East with the great river *Nieper* or *Boristhenes*, of the greatest part whereof (so much as concern'd the *Cofacks*) we have already given an account.

Below *Kaczanowice* is *Kuczofow*, where is the best passage of the *Tartars*, the river not being more than an hundred and fifty paces broad, the banks easie, and the country all about plain, so that they fear not the ambushes of the *Cofacks*. Below that is the cape of *Chortizca*, an Island very proper to inhabit, and easily fortified against the *Tartars*. Next to that is *Wielky Ofro*, and below that *Tomabowka*, an Island easily fortified, which *Chmielniski* chose for a retreat, and where the *Cofacks* first rendezvous'd when they began their insurrection in the year 1648. *Kair* and *Wielecki-woda*, *Nofokowka*, are three Islands very commodious for the *Tartars* passage into the *Ukrain*; the stream next *Tartary* they call *Kolmake*, and there the *Cofacks* disguise themselves when they go into the Black Sea, for fear of the guard which is always kept by the *Turks* in the ancient ruins, which they call *Allan-Korodick*. *Tanan* is the greatest and easiest passage of the *Tartars*, the river not being above five hundred paces broad, being all in one channel. The last pass, and at the mouth of the *Nieper* is *Oczacow*, where the river is three miles broad; yet both the *Tartars* and others pass it frequently in this manner; they furnish themselves with flat-bottom'd boats, at the stern whereof they fasten across poles of a good length, upon which they tie the heads of their horses, as many on the one side as the other, to balance them; they put their baggage in the boat, and row it over, and with it the horses. The *Turks* pass'd over in this manner forty thousand horse, when the Grand Signior sent to besiege *Azak* or *Azow*, at the mouth of *Dun* in the year 1643, which the *Donski Cofacks* had taken from him the year before. *Ouzge Saaran* or *Nowe Koniecpolsky* is the lowest habitation the *Polacks* have towards *Oczacow*, which was begun to be built in the year 1634. *Oczacow* call'd

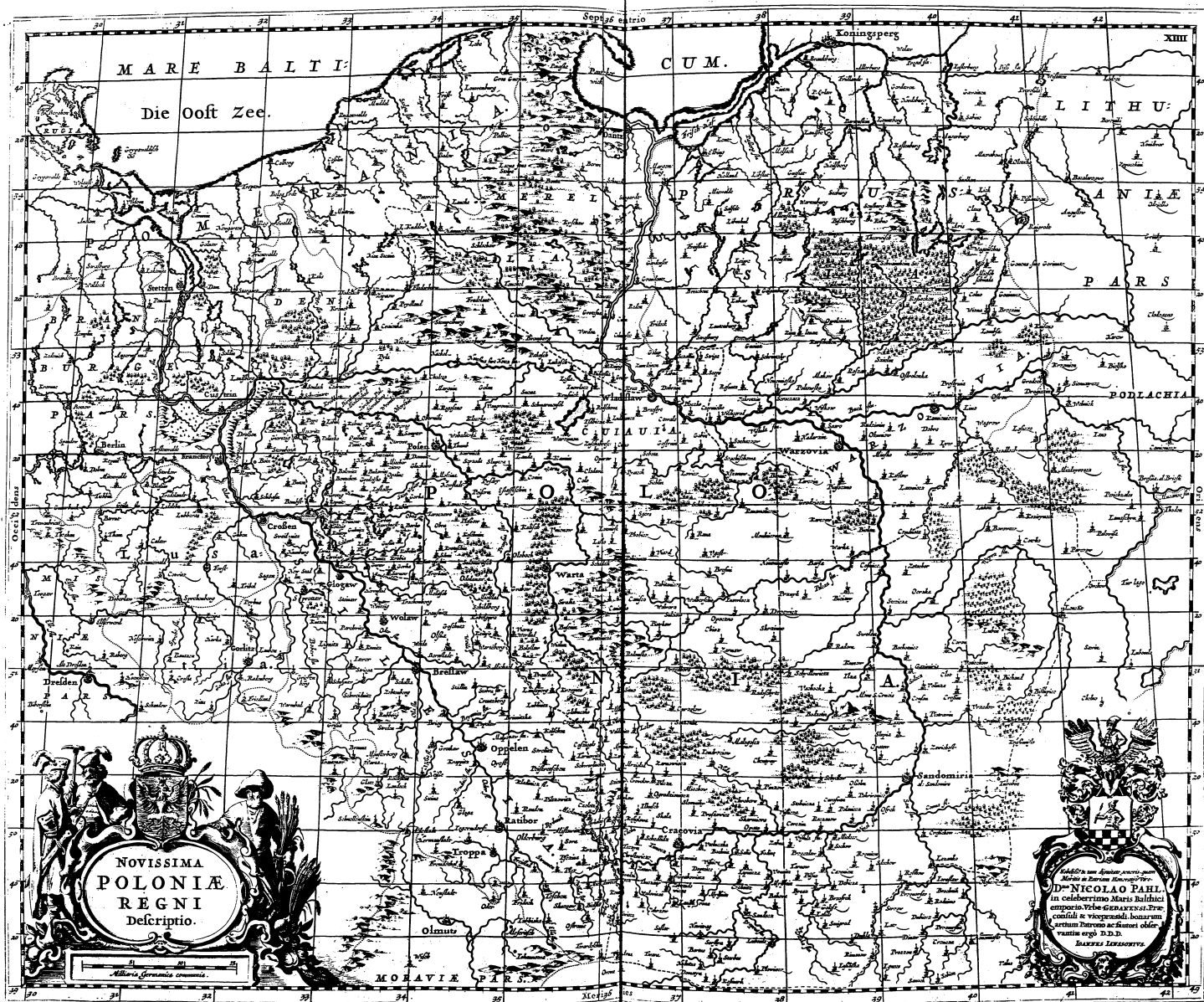
by the *Turks* *Dziancimenda*, is the place where the *Turkish* galleys lye, to keep the entrance into the Black Sea; there is no port, but good anchorage, the Castle is well fortified, the Town not so well, there are in it about two thousand inhabitants. Below that is a platform with good ordnance, to guard the mouth of the river. About three miles below *Oczacow* is an haven called *Bezezan*, upon a river called *Anczakick*; it is sufficiently deep for galleys. Southward of that are two Lakes *Jesero Teligol* and *Kuialik*, both of them so abundant in fish, that the water (having no exit) stinks of them, yet they come above an hundred and fifty miles to fish there. *Bielogrod* is about three miles from the Sea, upon the river *Niefter*, anciently called *Tyras*, by the *Turks* *Kierman*. This Town is under the *Turks*, as is also *Killa*, well fortified with a counterescarp, the Castle is above the Town upon the *Danow*, opposite to it, on the other bank of the *Danow*, is *Kiba*, where are seen divers ancient ruins. Betwixt *Bielogrod* and *Killa* are the plains of *Budziack*, where the rebel or *banditti Tartars* refuge themselves, who acknowledg no superior, either *Turk* or *Cham*; they are always watching upon the confines of *Poland*, to catch what Christians they can, and sell them to the *Turks*; of these we have spoken before. There are also many *Turkish* villages along the south-bank of the *Niefter*; but all the country betwixt that and the *Danow*, as also betwixt that and the *Nieper*, are deserts, and are inhabited by those *Tartars* who there pasture their flocks, of whom we have spoken already. Such also was the *Ukrain* till of late, that the industry of the late Kings of *Poland*, and the valour of the *Cofacks* has render'd it as fruitful as it was before desert. We may judge of it by what Monsieur *Beauplan* saith, that in seventeen years that he lived in that country, himself laid the foundations of above fifty colonies, which in a few years sprouted into above a thousand villages. But being so lately planted, the Reader cannot expect we should have much to inform him. Yet it is not amiss to give some account of animals which are almost proper to this country.

They have a beast which they call *Bobac*, not much unlike a Guiny-pig; they make holes in the earth, whereinto they enter in *October*, and come not abroad till *April*; within they have many little apartments, disposing severally their provision, their dead, their lodging, &c. eight or nine families live together as in a City; each having his particular habitation. They are easily tamed, and are very gamefome in an house. When they go to make their provision, they set a sentinel, who as soon as he spies any one, gives a signal by making a noise, and they all haste to their caves; many more things are spoken of these little creatures, as that they have slaves and punishments, &c.

Sounaky, a kind of goat, is desired for his beautiful fatun-like fur, and white, shining, smooth, delicate horns. He hath no bone in his nose, and cannot feed except he go backward.

They have many wild horses, but of no value, only for their flesh, which they sell in the markets, and think it better than Beef or Vcal. When these horses come to be old, their hoofs so straiten their feet (being never pared) that they can hardly go; as if that beast was so made for mans use, that without his care he was unprofitable.





P O L A N D.



POLONIA, or Poland, call'd by the Natives *Polsky*, takes its name, as some conjecture, from *Pole*, which in the Slavonian language (here commonly spoken) signifies a plain and *champain Country*, such as this Kingdom for the most part consists of. Others suppose, that the inhabitants, from their first Captain *Lachus* or *Lachus*, being called *Pol-lachi*, that is, the posterity of *Lachus*; and by corruption *Polani* and *Poloni*, imparted their name to their country. And in favour of this opinion it may be urged, that they call themselves *Polacci*, the *Italians Polacchi*; the *Russians*, *Greeks*, and *Tartars* call them *Lachi*, and *Lechitæ*; the *Hungarians Lengel*, probably for *Lechel*, the same with *Pol-lachi*. But *Hartknob* finding the *Bulanes* placed by *Pro-lomy* among the ancient inhabitants of *Sarmatia*, and observing the *Poloni* to be call'd *Bolani* and *Bolani* by the German writers, thinks he hath made the fairest discovery of the original of the word. Nevertheless *Cromerus* affirms, that the present name either of the country or people, hath not been in use above nine hundred years. Certainly in the time of *Alfred* King of England, about the year 880, this Country was called *Weomod-land*, and before that by the *Romans* generally *Sarmatia*, as being the best known part of that great Country. Only that branch of *Poland* which lies on the west-side of the *Weissel*, belonged to old *Germany*, and (as *Pro-lomy* acquaints us) was inhabited by the *Alvæones*, the *Luti*, *Omanni*, *Longi*, *Diduni*, and *Luti Buri*, with other German Colonies. By some writers the same is assigned to *Vandalia* (and the *Vistula* called *Vandalus*) having been for a time in the possession of the *Vandals*.

The people of *Poland* are the undoubted offspring of the *Slavi*, *Slavini*, or *Slavonians*, seated in *Justinian's* time, as *Jornandes* relates, on the north-side of the *Carpathian* mountains, from the fountain of the *Weissel* to the *Niester*, and thence extending themselves westward to the *Danube*, and eastward to the *Euxin Sea*; from which parts they then made inundations into the *Roman* Empire. In their first expeditions they were joined with the *Antæ* and *Vindilæ* or *Venedi*; or rather, in the opinion of the forefaid Author, were but the same Nation differently called. The *Venedi* we find mentioned by *Pro-lomy*, as a great people long before, seated in *Sarmatia*, upon the coast of the *Stinus Venedicus* (now *Baltick Sea*), which from them probably took its name, as did likewise the *Venedic* mountains, situate in their territories. And *Hartknob* supposes the *Bulanes*, *Gythones*, *Phinni*, &c. placed also by *Pro-lomy* over against these *Venedi*, in the inland countries of *Poland*, to be of their colonies. Perhaps this people, after they had made themselves considerable by their conquests, took the name of *Slavi* from *Slava*, in their language signifying *same* or *glory*; which their descendents (saith *Cromerus*) still retain in their compounded names, as *Stani-slaus*, *Wenceslaus*, &c. tho now writ commonly *Stanislaus*, *Wenceslaus*. Some writers would have the *Venedi* to be originally a German Nation, yet they

are by *Cromerus* and others sufficiently proved to be of the old *Sarmatæ* or *Sarmatæ*, which were of *Scythian* extraction, and probably brought forth in the neighbourhood of the Lake *Mæotis*, the fruitful womb of so many pusillane Nations.

The name of *Poland* belongs properly to two Provinces alone, the *Greater* and the *Lesser Poland*; from which, as the principal parts, the whole Kingdom hath taken its denomination. It lies, saith *Starovolskius*, between the 38th and 54th degrees of Longitude, counting from the Marquitate of *Brandenburgh* to the *Niester* or *Borjshenes*, which amounts to 250 *Polish* leagues, every league containing about four *English* miles; but the *Podolian* and *Russian* are somewhat longer. The highest elevation of the *Pole* in the most northern parts of *Livonia* subject to this Crown, is about 58 deg. The lowest in the Palatinate of *Pocuce* in *Red Russia*, 48 deg. So that the whole Country being situated between the seventh and thirteenth Climats, hath to its longest day from 16 to near 18 hours.

This Kingdom is bounded on the North by *Bounds*. the *Baltick Sea*, and the *Swedish Livonia*. On the East by the *Moscovian Russia*, and the Desarts of *Tartary*. On the South by *Moldavia*, *Transilvania*, and *Hungary*, from which the *Niester* and the high and woody *Carpathian* mountains divide it. On the West by *Silesia*, the Marquitate of *Brandenburgh*, and the further *Pomerania*.

Poland is an even *champain* country. The *Lesser Poland*, the nearer it approaches to the confines of *Hungary*, the more hilly and woody it is; but the farther it lies from thence, the more open and level. In the very middle also of the Kingdom, the Palatinate of *Sandomir* is mountainous and rocky. Formerly the country was all overgrown with woods, but by the care of *Sigismund* the elder, and *Sigismund Augustus* his son, and the advantage of the long peace they both enjoyed, husbandry was cherished, and the Provinces improved in tillage and pasturage; so that it is now accounted the *Egypt* of *Europe*, as having supplied the wants of most parts thereof with corn; whilst the *Vistula* (being navigable) serves to convey all the commodities of the country to *Dantzick*. Yet this good husbandry doth not hinder but that it is well stored with Trees, as Oaks, Beech, Fir, &c. not only profitable for the common advantages of Woods, but also for the vast quantities of Honey and Wax which they yearly afford; the hollow trees supplying hives, and the leaves and wild flowers nourishment to innumerable swarms of Bees.

The air is cold, even to that extremity, that *Air*. trees are oftentimes parch'd to the very roots, and water pour'd down freezes ere it fall to the ground. The Lakes and Rivers are often frozen five or six months together, and are passable by Coaches and Carts laden, at the end of *March*. This vehement sharpness of the air we may rationally impute to the largeness of the continent, and the opacousness of the over-spreading woods. Yet notwithstanding, Orchards and Gardens are very frequent, and plentifully stored with Fruits and Flowers, as excellent in their kinds, as in any other part of *Europe*.

This country being for the most part plain, *Mines*. abounds not in Minerals; yet some Mines there are, as of Lead and Iron in divers places; of

Quicksilver at *Tuslan* in red *Russia*; of *Viridul* near *Biecz* in *Cracovia*. But the most considerable of all are the Salt-Mines at *Bochnia* and *Velica*, in the *Lesser Poland*, which are the great enricher not only of the country, but of the Kings Exchequer also. They descend into the Mine with long Ropes (as we into our Coal-pits), and there dig out great masses of Salt in streets, leaving so much *interstitium* as is sufficient to sustain the earth. This generally of a bluish colour, yet some is white and transparent like crystal; when it is newly got it hath a bitterish taste, but being exposed to the air becomes sweeter, as also more heavy and brittle. In these Mines are small fountains of salt water, which boil'd with pieces of the Rock, yield great quantities of excellent Salt. They have also some veins of *Sal Gemma*, and of another mineral resembling hard Pitch, call'd by them *Carbunculus*, as *Cromerus* saith, which taken in powder purged. In the deep caverns of the Mines, the workmen are said sometimes to hear voices like those of Cocks, Dogs, and other animals, which they esteem abad omen.

Rivers.

The chief rivers of *Poland* are 1. The *Weissel*, mentioned in authors under the different names of *Vistula*, *Vistla*, *Vistla*, *Vistula*, *Vistula* and *Vandalus*: it rises in the Dutchie of *Telchen* in *Silesia* out of the mountain *Carpatus* (now *Crapack*) in the confines of *Hungary*; whence running to *Cracow*, the chief City of the *Lesser Poland*, and there becoming navigable, by the accession of other streams, it continues its course Eastward to *Sandomiria*, and thence Northward to *Warsaw* in *Masovia*, afterwards winding for some leagues westward to *Thorn* in *Prussia*, it turns again to the North, and at the Island *Großewer* is divided into two streams, emptying it self by the one into the Bay *Frish-Haff*, and by the other into the *Baltick-Sea*. The head of this river lies in 49 deg. 20 min. of Latitude, and its mouth in 54, but both in 41 deg. of Longitude: its course is above 100 *Polsch* miles. It divided antiently the *European Sarmatia* from *Germany*. 2. The *Warta*; rising near *Cromelow* in the Palatinate of *Cracovia*, under 40 deg. 50 min. of Longitude, and 50 deg. 30 min. of Latitude: and from thence taking a winding course to the North-west, washes the Towns of *Olstin*, *Warta*, *Pozna*, &c. in the Greater *Poland*; and near *Coslin*, falls into the *Oder*. 3. *Narex*, which flows out of the Lake *Goblo* in the Greater *Poland*; and after a long course to the South-westward, near *Dresen* discharges it self into the *Warta*. 4. The *Niesler*, or *Tyras* of the ancients; which takes its rise out of the *Sarmatian* mountains, near the head of *San*, running at first to the North, then winding Eastward, and enlarged with many lesser Rivers, waters the Province of *Pocutia*, separates both the upper and lower *Podolia* from *Moldavia*, and in the Province of *Bessarabia*, empties it self into the *Euxine Sea*. 5. *Bug* or *Bugus*, rising in *Red Russia*, near the Town *Olesco*, at *Straczec* enters the *Narex*; nor is it long after that, ere the *Narex* it self flows into the *Weissel*. This *Narex* is said to have this peculiar quality, that no venomous creature will live in its streams; inasmuch that Serpents sticking to the sides of the Boats that come out of the *Bug*, as soon as they enter *Narex* will give a hiss, and fade away with all the speed they can. 6. *San*, rising out of the *Sarmatian* mountains and falling into the *Weissel* near *Sandomiria*. 7. *Niemen*, call'd by the Germans *Memel*, by the ancients *Chomus*, it rises in the Dutchy of *Slucko* in *Black Russia*, runs also thro *Lithuania*, and *Prussia*, at length flows into the Lake *Kurisch-Haff*, and so into the *Baltick* (call'd perhaps from hence the *Choronian*) Sea.

8. The *Dzypina* or *Dvina*, named of old *Rabon*, and since by the *Latins Duna*, which springs in the *Muscovian Russia*, and after a course of an hundred and thirty leagues thro *Russia*, *Lithuania*, and *Livonia*, throws it self into the same Sea two leagues from *Riga*, the Metropolis of *Livonia*. Besides these, we may reckon the river *Bog*, or *Bob* (the *Hispanis of the Greeks*), which takes its origin from a Lake in the confines of *Podolia*, and falls into the *Nieper*.

The bigger *Poland*, *Cujavia*, and the territory of *Lublin*, have several great and remarkable Lakes, abounding with fresh fish of all sorts. The chief of them are *Goplo*, five miles in length, and half a mile in breadth; and *Biale*, or the *White Lake*, so call'd by an *Antiphrasis*, because that in the months of *April* and *May* it dyes the skins of those that wash in it of a swarthy colour.

The Woods in *Poland* are well stored in most places with Hares, Conies, Squirrels, Deer and Foxes: and in many parts with Bears, Wolves, and Bores. Of amphibious beasts they have Castors, Otters, and as some of that country affirm, a sort of white Bears, which live very frequently in the water. The *Muscovian* Forests are stored with *Elks*, *Wild Asses*, *Ursi*, which *Dr. Charleton* interprets *Owres*, and the *Bifontes* *Tubati* by some render'd *Buffs*. These *Bifontes*, according to *Aldrovandus*, in their shape and horns resemble an Ox, but have mains like a horse, beards on their lower jaws, tongues rough like a File, and very hard, a bunch upon their backs, and their hair smells like musk. They are of incredible strength, some affirm that they will toss a man and horse into the air. The *Polsch* Nobility hunt them, and esteem their flesh powdered a great dainty. The *Ursus* or *Ours* call'd by the *Polanders* *Thur*, is a kind of wild Ox, much bigger, swifter and stronger than the tame; hath a short black beard, a bush of hair upon his forehead, and horns excessive large and wide, of which *Pliny* saith the *Romans* made *Lanthorns*. Girdles of his skin are said to be helpful to women in travail. The *Elk*, call'd by the *Poles* *Lofs*, by the Germans *Ellend*, that is, *miserable*, because of the falling-sickness with which it is troubled; is about the bigness of a large Horse, bodied like a Stag, but broader, its legs longer, feet large and cloven; the hoofs whereof are accounted a great medicine against the falling-sickness. In the deserts near *Borishenes*, *Sig. Herberstein* saith, there is a wild Sheep call'd by the *Polanders* *Solbac*, shaped like a Goat, but with shorter legs, and horns growing straight up. It is exceeding swift, and leaps very high. They have also a sort of wild Horses in the *Ukrain* call'd by them *Dziki-Konie*, which the Nobles eat for a great rarity. In *Lithuania* and *Muscovy* is a voracious unferveicable beast, not seen in any other Country, as *Mat. a Michovia* tells us, call'd *Rossmake*, which hath the body and tail of a Wolf, the face of a Cat, and feeds on dead carcasses. When it hath found one, it never leaves eating till its belly is swelled to the utmost stretch; then seeks out some narrow passage between two trees, and by squeezing its body thro, forces out the load of its stomach; afterwards returns to its prey, devouring and disgorging successively till it is consumed. The *Lart-like-Wolf*, or *European Lynx*, call'd by the *Latins* *Lupus Cerearius*, and by the Natives *Ris*, with spots on its belly and legs, affords the best Furs in *Poland*, tho the country be well stock'd with Marrons. They have neither Camels, tame Asses, nor Mules; which beasts thrive not in cold countries: but are compensated with great plenty of excellent Horses; which are very fair and large, pace al-

most naturally, and surpass the German Horses in swiftness, tho they come short of the *Turkish*. Those of *Lithuania* are inferior to the *Polsch* in bigness, strength, and beauty.

Fowl, both tame and wild, is no-where more plentiful than in this Kingdom. 'Twere needless to reckon up their several kinds, since I find none peculiar to this Nation, save only the Quails of *Podolia*, which have green legs, whose flesh is very unwholesome, and if immoderately eaten, breeds the cramp.

The *Polanders* are generally of a good complexion, flaxen-hair'd, and tall of stature. The men, for the most part, corpulent and personable. The women, slender and beautiful, disdaining the help of art and *fucus*: to set them off. They are naturally open-hearted and candid; more apt to be deceived, than to deceive; not so easily provoked as appears; neither arrogant, nor obstinate, but very tractable if they be gently and prudently managed. They are chiefly led by example, are dutiful to their Princes and Magistrates; and very much inclined to civility and hospitality, especially to strangers; whose customs and manners they are forward to imitate. The Gentlemen (who are all noble) take delight in keeping great flocks of Horses and Arms. They entertain a multitude of servants, many of which are only oblig'd to follow them, but disdain any mean office, and sit with their Masters at Table. The principal Senators march, whether on foot or horseback, in the middle of their retinue, putting the best dail before them. The Daughters always walk before their Mothers, as in *Italy*; and the unmarried Sisters before the married. The education of their youth is more loose and negligent than in other their neighbouring countries; but for the most part good nature, and virtuous inclination supplies that defect. Tho they have the Greek tongue, and will not suffer their children to learn it, lest they should imbibe also the Religion of the Greeks; yet they cover nothing more than to have them well instructed in the Latine; so that in no part of *Italy*, not in *Rome* it self, shall a man meet with so many that are able to converse in *Latin* as here. Even the Daughters of the Nobility and wealthy Citizens, at home or in Monasteries, are taught to write and read as well the Latine as their Native Language. When they grow to years of maturity, and not before, they are put to learn good husbandry, and to look after their dairies; or else employed in spinning, weaving or sewing: whilst the men, according to their several qualities, follow their Husbandry, Merchandising, or the more weighty concerns of Church and State. The Peasantry live in great servitude to their Lords, whose dominions they may not quit without their permission, if they were born, or have inhabited three years there; those that do so, are certainly hanged if taken. The Nobles are very much addicted to travel, as admiring foreign Countries more than their own: which is the reason that they greedily, and easily, learn the languages of those Nations they affect. And they esteem it no small commendation of their ingenuity to introduce something of the new habits and customs of the people with whom they have convers'd. For tho they are very docible and easily attain what they give their minds to; yet they rather set themselves to learn the inventions of others, than to invent any thing new of their own. Neither indeed are they so fit for Mechanic as for learned Arts; to which they therefore more apply themselves, as appears by the many eminent Divines, Historians, Mathematicians and

Philosophers that have flourished in *Poland*; witness *Stanislaus Hosius*, Cardinal and Legat at the Council of *Trent*; *Matthias a Michovia*, *Johannes Dylegoffus*, and *Martinus Cromerus*, their excellent Historians. *Johannes Zamofcius* their great General, and Chancellor of the Kingdom, excelling no less in most parts of learning than he did in military conduct. *Nicolaus Copernicus* the famous Astronomer, *Martinus Smiglecius* the Logician, *Ab. Bzguinus*, who hath continued *Baronius's* Annals; with many others, whose works are much esteemed in foreign countries. And doubtless the Learned would have been oblig'd to more of their nation, had not their writings perish for want of Printing, but lately received amongst them. Physick also begins to come in request; since, even in these parts, the modern luxury in diet is attended with more diseases than the homely fare of former Ages.

Their language is a dialect of the *Slavonian Language*, and not so copious as many others. It is difficult to write and read because of the multitude of Consonants joined with one Vowel; yet the harshness is much corrected in speaking, for they pronounce them as if mixt with Vowels. They have borrowed most of their terms of art, for trades and instruments, from the *German*, of which nation there are many Artisans and Merchant, among them, and some Towns and Villages chiefly speak the *German* language.

Hot Baths are very much used in this Country, especially in Winter; and are frequented by both sexes, though in places apart from one another.

Their Habit differs according to the condition, age, and quality of the person; and of late, they much affect new fashions, which are often brought in by the Soldiery, in imitation of those Nations against whom they have been victorious. The women also have the same variety; only they come nearer the dress of men, than in most other Nations.

The antient diet of the *Ruicks*, was Milk, Cheese, Fish and Herbs; now Beef, Veal and Mutton. The Tables of the Nobility and Citizens are furnished with all sorts of dainties, wherein they use great store of Spice and Sugar. And indeed luxury in diet and apparel prevails more and more amongst them every day.

The common drinks of the country are Beer, and Mead boil'd with Hops. Besides which they use great quantities of *Aqua-vitæ*, made by infusing wheat in water for some days, and then distilling off the Spirit, and mixing it with Sugar and hot Spices. The Nobility and Merchants here drink wine as plentifully as in other places, imported from *Hungary*, *Moravia*, the *Rhine*, and *Galscogny*.

The money peculiar to *Poland* is coined in such small pieces, that 'tis very troublesome receiving, or paying out any round sum in it. The *Gros* is a little piece of copper mix'd with silver, valued at three half-pence *English*. The *Artine* at four pence half-penny. Their *Trigros* and *Segros*, both of pure silver, the one three times, the other six times the value of a *Gros*. But the most current money in *Poland* at this time is foreign coin; brought in chiefly, tho not in great plenty, by the *Hungarian*, *German* and *Italian* Merchants, for the Commodities of the Country: they are *Rie*, *Wheat*, *Barley*, *Oats* and other Pulse, *Flax*, *Hops*, *Hides*, *Tallow*, *tann'd Leather*, divers sorts of Furs brought first out of *Muscovy*, but dress'd and vend'd here. *Honey*, *Wax*, *Amber*, *Pitch*, *Pot-albes*, *Mails* and *Planks*. The Horses also of *Poland*, for their swiftness, hardiness and easy pace, are much covered by Foreigners. Besides all these, it supplies the neighbouring countries with vast

numbers of Oxen and Sheep. To which must be added the Salt-pits; whence springs the greatest revenue the King of Poland has.

Traffic.

The riches of Poland consist in the commodities of the country already mention'd; which (though they are of several sorts and general use, yet) bring but little money into the kingdom, being counterpoised by the incredible quantity, and richer variety of foreign merchandize; so that they hardly suffice to pay for the Cloth, Silk, Jewels, Tapitry, the Fruit, Spice, Salt-fish, Wine, Tin and Steel brought in from England, Flanders, Portugal and Spain, &c. But to say the truth the people are neither industrious nor addicted to trade; the Nobility being forbid it by their own constitutions upon the forfeiture of their Honor: and the Commonalty for the most part wanting estates sufficient to promote it. Besides, those of better fortunes spend too much of their revenues in costly apparel and furnishing their tables; by which means, instead of saving and laying up, they become very poor, or at least always in a wanting condition. To which we may add that their Country lies not commodiously for traffick, nor having the advantage of any considerable Port Town, Dantzick only excepted.

Military Strength.

The chief strength of Poland consists in their Cavalry which is very numerous and readily raised; the Nobility being bound by the Laws of the Land, to attend the King in all expeditions for the security of the Kingdom. In such cases the King sends his summons into all the Palatinates, where are proclaimed three times, and at a months distance from one another. Upon the third Proclamation, the Nobility are obliged to repair to the particular rendezvous of their own Palatine who leads them to the general rendezvous; and, in regard they are exempted from all other burthens, they bear their own charges all the time of the war. If there be any that refuse to appear, their goods are presently confiscated to the use of the Kings table. They all serve on Horseback, and are enrolled above 200000, yet in as much as they have very few fortified places on any side, for the security of their frontiers, they can hardly draw together above 100000, without leaving their provinces too naked. But these forces, when assembled, serve only for the defence of their country, and march not beyond its limits above five leagues: wherefore when they have occasion to lead an Army further, it is decreed in the Senate (which is convoked before every war) to levy stipendiary Souldiers: and as they are compos'd principally of the Nobles, they frequently signalize themselves by their valour, and successes against the much greater numbers of their enemies. Thus Zamochius in the time of Sigismund the third with 3000 men worsted Carigarius the Scythian who with 70000, was making an inroad into Poland, and forced him with the loss of many thousands of his Tartars to return into his own country Taurica Cherlonesus. And Zolkiewi with 3000 horse, setting upon 80000 Muscovites unawares, put themselves all to flight: and brought away prisoners three German Regiments that served amongst them. The Polish foot is of little esteem; and therefore although each City is bound to set forth a certain number, yet the King rather chuses such a sum of money as may be equal to the charges, and so makes provision of Foreigners taken chiefly out of Hungary and Germany. The Zeporensian Cossacks formerly served the Polish Kings in their wars, either as Volunteers or for very small pay. They came in sometimes 30000 strong, arm'd with Lances or Scimiters, and long Guns: each had his Horse, and

as occasion required fought either mounted or on foot. They used their own discipline, and chose all their Officers out of their body: even their chief Commander, whom they would depose without any fault, if he were not successful. Now although the strength of the Poles may be said to equal, both in number and quality, most of the Kingdoms of Europe; yet it often falls out that they are unsuccessful in their undertakings, partly because of the slowness as well of their councils, (which consisting of all the principal Officers in the Kingdom, are not readily convened, nor without much ado kept together) as of their Nobles in their rendezvousing, who seldom come in before the last summons: partly also because the generality of the Souldiers depending more upon their particular Patrons than the King, are apt to follow their inclinations tho to the prejudice of the publick. Besides it being a difficult thing to furnish necessaries for so many persons any long time, having no publick Magazines provided towards the Seat of the war, they are inclined to mutiny and disband before they have done their work. Fortified Towns they have but few, as we said before, believing their own courage fortification enough to defend their country; and unwilling by means of Garrisons, to give their Kings opportunity of assuming an absolute power and arbitrary rule over them.

The government of Poland partakes more of Aristocracy than Monarchy; and is shared amongst the King, the Senate and Nobility. Some would reckon in the Citizens and *Kmetones* (for so in old Charters are the Husbandmen called) who live dispersed in Villages; but they being never admitted to publick offices and employments, ought not to be numbered among the orders and estates of the Kingdom.

At first the Kings of Poland were successive, as appears from the testimony of all their Historians: and it was the custom that the reigning Prince appointed his successour. So *Lefcus* the Third appointed *Papielus*: so also *Boleslaus* the Chast, did *Lefcus* the Black. Nay oftentimes the Kings of Poland divided the Kingdom amongst their sons, which is not usual in elective governments. This is evident from the example of *Boleslaus Crivouslus*; and is further confirm'd, in the *Polonian* Histories, by the precedent of *Boleslaus* the Curld. But in the reign of *Sigismund Augustus*, a Law was made that no King of Poland should presume to nominate, or impose on the Kingdom a successour: which law was not only renew'd in the *interregnum* after his death, but several times afterwards: the custom of Elections having encroached upon the Scepter for some while before, for want of issue of the true Polish Royal Family. From this Electioneers it now comes to pass, that from the death of one, till the Election of another King, there are frequently too long *Interregna*; during which the Arch-Bishop of *Gnesna* performs all Kingly offices, acting in all things like their Sovereign; without any distinction, save that he is not crown'd with the Royal Diadem. And such an *Interregnum* may happen (not only by the death, but by the Deposition or Resignation of the King. Deposition of Kings was formerly more frequent in Poland, than now. *Henry Valois* is the last precedent in that kind, who being elected King of Poland, when he heard of the death of his Brother *Charles* the Ninth, withdrew himself privately out of Poland by night, that he might not loose his right in France. Whereupon the Poles, after they had often besought his return, finding him not in the least inclin'd to forsake a success-

five

five for an elective Kingdom, in a general assembly of the Estates discharg'd him from being King of Poland, and renounced their allegiance. The most memorable example of Resignation is that of *John Casimir* in the year 1669; of which a large narrative is given by *Nicolas Chivalkowski* (in his *Treatise de Jure Publico Polonico*) who was an eye witness of the whole Ceremony. The *Interrex*, or person who performs the Regal offices during the *Interregnum* as was said, is the Arch-Bishop of *Gnesna*, a *Legate* born, the Primate and first Prince of the Kingdom, not suspected, as being a spiritual person, of affecting the Crown. Which dignity is not conferr'd upon him by Election, but is annexed to his Archbishoprick, least any delay in his nomination should endanger the publick. This office he takes upon him not only upon the death, but also in the Kings absence, or residence in another Country: as when *Henry* withdrew into France, and *Sigismund* the Third went into Swedenland. If there be no Arch-Bishop of *Gnesna*, then this dignity belongs to the Bishop of *Cujavia*; or in his absence also or vacancy of the See, to the Bishop of *Poznan*. At the beginning of the *Interregnum* the Arch-Bishop betakes himself to *Warsaw*, whither all the neighbouring Nobility repair to him; by whose advice Proclamations are issued forth out of the Archbishops Chancery under his hand, with all his Titles annexed, whereby the *Interregnum* is proclaimed by the publick Ministers in all the Palatinates and Districts of the Kingdom; and in the mean while all necessary orders are taken for the security of the people. The *Interrex* also receives, opens and answers all the letters from Foreign Princes; gives audience to all foreign Ambassadors; and indeed all the publick affairs of the Kingdom pass through his hands. As for the Candidates, this is certainly agreed, that no *Pisist* or Native, is excluded from the hopes of Election. The Electors in the first place, are the prime Senators of the Kingdom, as well Ecclesiastick as Secular: next to them the Nobility, who have liberty to act either in their proper persons or by Deputies; and lastly, the Deputies of *Cracow*, *Poznan*, *Leopold* and *Vilna*. For the *Polonians* believe that it very much avails both to the security of the Governour, and to confirm the allegiance of them that obey, that the King should be chosen by the Generality, who can then have no pretence to complain of their own Act. The place of Election is in an open field not far from *Warsaw*, near the Village *Wola*, by reason of the multitude of them who have voices in the Election; it is mark'd out by the Marshalls of Poland and Lithuania. When the day of Election is come, and the Senators all met, the *Interrex* asks the Question three times, *Whether it be their pleasure to command that such a one shall be declared King?* If by consent of voices, they return for an answer, *It pleases us, Let him live*; then the Arch-Bishop declares him King in these words: *In the name of God, I declare such a one King and great Duke of Lithuania, and beseech the King of Heaven to enable him for so great a charge, and through his mercy so to order that the Election may be prosperous for the Nation and happy for the Catholick Religion.* After which the Marshalls proclaim the Election in the following manner: *King N. is unanimously elected, and so declared by the Interrex; him therefore all ye acknowledge your lawfully elected and declared King.* If the King, so elected, be absent, his Ambassadors are obliged to confirm by oath the conditions, and receive the decree of the Election. After which the Marshalls make a second Proclamation in these words; *The Poles have a law-*

P O L A N D.

ful King. On the other side, before the King is admitted, he is obliged by oath to preserve the Laws and privileges of the Kingdom and the Covenants agreed upon by the Estates, in all their clauses, points and conditions, and to renew the said oath at his Coronation. But though he be now elected, the *Interregnum* does not cease till after his Coronation: for till then he assumes no other Title than that of King Elect; neither are his Letters to Foreign Princes seal'd with any other seal than that of the Chamber. So that though the present King was permitted to make use of the Seal of great Duke of Lithuania before his Coronation; that was only done upon the necessity of the *Moscovitic* Expedition. The usual place of Coronation is *Cracow*: where the Crown is kept in the chief treasury, under the charge of the high Treasurer; and the person performing the ceremony is always the Arch-Bishop of *Gnesna*, if not prevented by sickness. The chief Ceremonies at the Coronation are the Questions propounded to the King, *With thou professe the Catholick faith delivered by Catholick men?* Ans. *I will. With thou defend and maintain the Church and its Ministers?* *With thou uphould, defend and govern the Kingdom by God committed to thy care according to Justice?* Ans. *I will.* All which he confirms by the usual form of words and laying his hand upon the Evangelists. The Ceremony of anointing is perform'd with saying these words: *I anoint thee King with the sanctified oil, in the name of the Father, Son and holy Ghost.* The words of Confirmation are; *Sit and possess the Throne appointed thee by God. Let thy hand be strengthened and thy right hand exalted.* The solemnity being ended, the King repairs to the grand Assembly for the Coronation; where the *Interrex* resigns his Authority, and the Senators, together with the Nobility and Deputies of the Cities, take their oaths of allegiance to the new King.

The present power and authority of the Kings of Poland will more plainly appear by a recital of the articles to the observance whereof they bind themselves, as well before as at their Coronation: for they contain all the essential properties of Regal Dominion under the name of *Paſia Conventa*. As to their power in Ecclesiastick affairs, the Roman-Catholick Kings of Poland have been so kind as to part with their chief prerogatives in that particular, reserving only to themselves the collation of benefices. The King swears to maintain peace between the dissenters in Religion, of which there are many in Poland, and to compose the causes and differences among persons professing the Greek religion, as appears by the *Paſia Conventa* sworn to by *John* the Third, now reigning. As for foundations of Churches and Monasteries, whatsoever liberty the Kings may have to erect, they are to be confirm'd by all the orders at the general assembly of Estates: and thus the immunities and privileges granted by the Kings of Poland to the Academy of *Vilna* were also confirm'd. The next prerogative is the legislative power: concerning which we find, that in the time of *Lechus*, the Kings of Poland had an absolute authority of making Laws themselves, as necessity required. But afterwards, when they had received the Christian faith, they began to make Laws with the consent of the Peers. Inomuch that *Sigismund* the Third, in the year 1570, enacted, That no Law should be of publick force till reviewed and subscribed by such a number of Deputies of the Nobility and Senators, whose consent was to be required before-hand whether the Law should pass: which Law remains to this day. The determination of Controversies was likewise formerly

Bb

in

in the breast of the King as supreme Judge; till *Vladislaus Jagello* granted this privilege to the Nobility, *That they should not be punished or imprisoned till convicted by Law.* After him *Bathor* threw off the burthen of hearing causes from his own shoulders, and erected several Courts of Judicature in *Poland* and *Lithuania*: referring only to himself the judgment of such causes as concerned his Chequer and such Cities as were immediately under his jurisdiction. But now the Nobility create the chief Judge or Marshal, with his assistants in those tribunals; nor does the King sit alone upon causes that come before him by way of appeal: besides, the King swears to determine all Court causes according to the advice and opinion of the Senators and Officers residing at Court; as also to call the causes in order as they are set down in the Register, and neither to retard nor further any cause for favour or interest. The power of making war did formerly without doubt absolutely belong to the King. But *Casimir* the third (in the year 1454) made a promise that he would undertake no war without the consent of the Senate. At this day the Kings of *Poland*, by the *Pacta Conventa*, promise not to admit or call in any foreign assistance without the especial consent of the Estates; not to encrease the number of the standing Militia, nor raise forces privately; not to send aid to any other Prince, without consent as aforesaid; nor to commit the trust of Forts or Castles to strangers or plebeians, but to men of worth and landed Nobility. Besides all these engagements, there is a Council of War, elected out of the Senate and Nobility, to attend and advise him in the field, according to the late Constitutions in the year 1676, and several others before. He is also expressly forbid to undertake any offensive war; as an affair wholly belonging to the General Assembly. Again, his power of making peace, and entering into new leagues, is so far limited, that neither shall be valid, unless approved and confirmed by the General Estates. Only ancient Alliances may be renewed by the King, with the consent of the Senators resident at Court. What his power is in raising Tribute and Taxes, may be easily gathered from the words of *Monarchius in Fredo*, p. 98. *The Estates of the Kingdom, faith he, have exempted thee, speaking to the King, from all charges and expences. It is their business to pay the Soldiery, and to furnish the Magazines; thine, with their joint and mutual consent, to proclaim war, overcome and triumph.* The coining of money is a Royal prerogative, and as soon as *Poland* knew money, was in the sole power of the Kings; but *Vladislaus Jagello*, in the year 1422, made a promise not to coin any money without the consent of his Councilors: which law was renewed by *Sigismund* the third, in the year 1632; and inserted into the *Pacta Conventa*, sworn to by the present King. Nor was it without the consent of the Senate, that *Casimir Jagello* granted to the Cities of *Danzick*, *Elbing*, and *Thorn*, the privilege of coining money, which they keep to this day. The prerogative of conferring employments and honours still remains in the sole power of the King. He is supreme Judge and arbitrator of merit and reward; and disposes of all, as well Ecclesiastical as Civil, dignities. Yet this illustrious prerogative suffers some eclipses too; for first, the King can advance no foreigner, nor any person who has no lands in the Province where the preferment lies. Next, he can neither diminish nor increase the number of the Offices either of the Court or Kingdom. Thirdly, he is obliged to supply such as are vacant by a time limited. Fourthly, he engages

himself not to bestow the Office of Bishop, nor the Commands of Palatine, Castellane or Captain, upon any of his Sons, Grandchildren, or other relations of the Royal Blood. Fifthly, he is restrained from conferring a plurality of high dignities upon one person. Lastly, he is bound not to seek any private advantage by the advancement of any man: and 'tis provided, that all promises of preferment made in order to his advancement to the Crown, shall be invalid. But (granting his power to be considerable in conferring of Honours, yet) he is not able to deprive the same persons, tho' ill deserving, of the honours once conferred upon them, without the consent of the Estates: and with their approbation he may remove from their employments, not only *Seculars*, but *Ecclesiasticks*. By the same permission he has also power to create Dukes, Earls, and Barons: but the reason why he makes so few is, because the *Polish* Nobility will not admit of any other superiority one amongst another, then what comes by birthright. And because they are very cautious of advancing strangers, he is not permitted to advance any foreigner into the number of the Nobility, by way of Naturalization, without the consent of the Estates first obtained, and the particular commendation of the General of the Army. It is in the Kings power to give Audience to the Ambassadors of foreign Princes, and to elect his own; but he cannot fend them abroad, upon the concerns of Peace, War, or entering into new Leagues, without the consent of the resident Senators. Formerly the privilege of hunting belonged solely to the King; but now every one of the Nobility hath power to use that sport in his own grounds. The King cannot contract a marriage for himself, without the consent of the Senate. He is not permitted to enjoy or possess any lands of inheritance in his own Kingdom; nor is he suffer'd to stir beyond his confines, except the Senate agree thereto. He may not have any foreigners employed about him at Court: for all the Court-Officers are sworn to be true and faithful (not only to the King, but also) to the Senate, and are under the jurisdiction of the Marshal of the Kingdom. He is also obliged, by the *Pacta Conventa*, to take care that the Queen do not meddle with State affairs. To all these Articles the Kings of *Poland* most religiously swear observance. Nay, to keep their Kings the more in awe, the Nobility of *Poland* published the following Declaration in the year 1609, if any Nobleman, or Senator, observe that the King has acted contrary to the Laws and Privileges of the Kingdom, he is to give notice thereof to the Primate and the Senators, who are to admonish the King thereof. If he slight the admonition, it shall be lawful publicly to declare the Kings neglect to the Senate; to the end, that the Deputies may be join'd, in the name of the whole Nobility, to advise him to desist from acting so contrary to the established Laws of the Land. If the King take no notice of this second admonition, they are then to acquaint the General Assembly of Estates. If the third admonition prevail not, then all the Orders are to proceed according to the Article of withdrawing their Allegiance.

The Revenues of the Kings Household, arising out of his Lands and Salt-pits, are computed to above three millions of *Florens* yearly. Of which *Paskevius* gives this account: That the allowance of the Kings of *Poland* is such, as is (not only sufficient to maintain the splendor of a Court equal to any Prince in Christendom, but also) large enough for all occasions of Royal munificence. The truth of which many of the Nobility experience, by the large possessions which the King

King often grants them during his or their lives. The publick Revenues of the Kingdom, are either ordinary or extraordinary. The ordinary Revenues are, the fourth part of the Rents of the Kings Lands, granted by him towards the payment of the Soldiery; Impost upon Wines; Custom upon goods exported and imported; the fourth Grays out of *Great and Little Poland*, &c. The extraordinary Revenues are, 1. The *Agaria*, or a certain fund of money tax'd upon Lands and Farms. 2. Excise upon Beer, from which the Tenants of Noblemen, that keep public-houses, are not free. 3. *Capitatio Judicia*, or the *Jens* Pole-money; which in the year 1671 was tax'd at 150000 *Florens*. The *Jens* in *Lithuania*, upon extremity, are tax'd at 40000 *Florens*. Sometimes they pay two *Florens* a head for themselves, their wives and children. 4. The Merchants Donatives; which in the year 1650 was raised to 40000 *Florens*. 5. The Chimney-money; which is doubled and trebled, as necessity requires. Sometimes a general Pole is laid upon the whole Kingdom; where every man, the Archbishop not excepted, pays according to his estate, and the Offices he holds. Nothing of all this belongs to the King, but 'tis all reserv'd for public uses; of which the Treasurers give an account to the General Estates, who have the only power to levy these new assessments and extraordinary impositions, as the necessity of affairs requires.

The Kings of *Poland* and its Dukes, may be distinguish'd into four Classes, or Orders of Succession. The first contains a Catalogue of the Dukes of *Poland*, as follows.

A.D. 700.] *Lechus* the First. Who built the City *Gnesa*, in the place where he found an Eagles Nest; and therefore gave it this name from *Gniazdo*, which in the *Polish* language signifies a Nest: hence also the Arms of *Poland* are an Eagle. Their own Historians are not agreed about his extraction, whether he was a Native or *Croatian*; nor about the time in which he reigned, some affirming, that it was about the year of our Lord 550, others almost an hundred years later; and both parties speaking only by conjecture. Nor lastly, are they agreed about the children he left behind him; but they generally acknowledge, that upon the failure of his offspring, the people made choice of twelve Palatines for their Rulers, calling them *Woiwodes*, i.e. Captains of War; and the Country being divided into twelve parts, each had his peculiar Province. But when they began to cherish private feuds, and thereby also invited their ill-affected neighbours to fall upon them, the people were constrained to seek their peace and safety in a Monarchy. And with much solicitation persuaded *Cracus*, a person of great fortune and interest amongst them, to take upon him the entire Government; which he managed with singular prudence and success. He (or his Subjects after his decease, in remembrance of his virtues) built a new City upon the side of the *Weissel*, which from his name was called *Cracow* or *Cracovia*, and made the Metropolis of the Kingdom.

His younger son *Lechus* II, succeeded him, having first slain his elder brother to make way for himself; but the murder being detected, he was depolled and banish'd.

750.] After him reigned his sister *Wenda*, who chose rather to rule alone, then to be wife to a King. After she had repul'd *Ridigerus*, a German Prince (who not being able either by treaty or force to obtain her in marriage, killed

himself for shame and grief), left any adverse chance should fully her honour, he leapt from the bridge at *Cracow* into the *Weissel*.

Twelve Palatines again.

760.] *Premislaus*, or *Lechus* the First. He was a Goldsmith, and created King, because he had by an unusual stratagem, overthrow the *Hungarians* and *Moravians*: he died without issue.

804.] *Leslus* II. The *Polish* Nobility having agreed to ride a Race for the Government, one of the Competitors strowed galltraps (*tribulos*) in the way, and thereby so disabled all the horses save his own, which he had shod for the purpose, that he won the prize. The cheat being discover'd, he was torn in pieces by them; and this *Leslus*, a poor obscure man, who out-ran the rest on foot, from being the scorn of the multitude, was by the popular applause saluted Prince. He always after kept by him the coarse clothes he had formerly worn, to mind him of his original.

810.] *Leslus* III.

815.] *Papichus* I.

830.] *Papichus* II. He is reported to have been eaten up by Mice, thro' Gods judgment, as is conceiv'd, for the murders committed by him. For he is said to have poison'd all his kindred, that he might unite the *Slavonian* Principalities to his own Dukedom.

The second Class, of which there is much more certainty than of the former, contains the following Princes.

843.] *Piaslus Rusticus*, a Citizen of *Crafcvic*, of noted hospitality and charity.

861.] *Ziemowitus*.

892.] *Leslus* IV.

913.] *Ziemomyllus*.

964.] *Misceflaus*. The first Christian King. He was born blind, and in the seventh year of his age, when at a publick banquet his name was to be given him, received his sight. He founded the two Archbishopsricks of *Gnesna* and *Cracovia*, with divers Bishopsricks; and gave the tythes of the whole Kingdom by a perpetual Edict to the Clergy.

999.] *Boleslaus* I. He received the Title of King from *Otho* III. Emperor of Germany; his predecessors being no more than Dukes of *Poland*.

1025.] *Misceflaus* II.

Casimirus I. Driven out of *Poland* in his minority, by factions occasioned from his mothers ill government. He travel'd thro' *Hungary*, *Germany*, *Italy*, and at last in *France* was made Religious, and Deacon in the Benedictine Convent at *Cluny*; was invited thence to the Crown by the Poles, who to procure the Popes dispensation for his Vow, condescended to a perpetual tribute of an obolus per head upon all the Commonalty, for the maintaining Lamps to burn in *St. Peters* Church at *Rome*, called hence *Peter-pence*.

1059.] *Boleslaus* II. surnamed the Bold; he murder'd *Stanislaus* Archbishop of *Cracow* as he was officiating at the Altar, for which he was excommunicated and depolled by Pope Gregory VII. His successors too were deprived of the Title of King, the Bishops being forbid to anoint any of them; which continued for 213 years, till the time of *Premislaus* I.

1082.] *Vladislaus* I.

1102.] *Boleslaus Krzywoski*, or the wry-mouthed. He is recorded to have been a victor in forty Battels, but being forced to retreat out of the field at his last battel against the *Russians*, he dyed for grief.

1140.] *Vladislaus* II.

Ambassadors at their arrival, providing them with lodgings; performs also most of the functions belonging to the Lord Steward of the Kings Household. In the publick assemblies, or when he goes before the King, he carries a staff upright. While the King resides in *Lithuania*, the Marshal of *Lithuania* has the same power there. The Chancellors are both secular persons; and the office of Chancellor and Pro-Chancellor is the same, only the Chancellor keeps the great, and the Pro-Chancellor the lesser Seal. In short, these two are the mouth and hands of the King in the dispatch of all business. The Treasurers are the Stewards of the publick Treasury, and masters of the Mint. When the King bestows this office upon any one, four Senators are appointed to deliver the Treasury to him by an inventory, of which there are three copies, one with the King, another with the Treasurer, and the third they keep themselves. This, by the way, take notice of in reference to all the Senators, that none of them are permitted to stir out of the Kingdom without particular licence of the Grand Estates; and upon some pressing occasion.

The rest of the Officers about the Court which are not of the Senatorian Order, as the Principal Secretary, Master of Requests, Captain General, &c. I spare to mention, being much what the same as in other Nations; only it is to be observed, that there are two of every fort, one for the Kingdom of *Poland*, the other for the Great Dukedom of *Lithuania*.

The Masters of Requests are always present when the King sits to determine controversies and differences among his Subjects; at which time it is their duty to lay open the nature and grounds of the controversy to the King. They stand fair, upon a vacancy, to be admitted Senators. The Magistrates for the several Districts are of two sorts, that is, Land; or Camp-Magistrates. The Land Magistrates are:

1. The Vice-Chamberlain, or Judg of bounds and limits.
2. The Standard-bearer.
3. The Land-Judge.
4. The Tribune.
5. The Land-Register.
6. The Keeper of the Treasury. Besides some other inferior Officers.

The Camp or Military Officers are:

1. The Captain with Jurisdiction, who is Governor of some Town or Cattle.
2. The Captain without Jurisdiction.
3. The Burgrave, who is Governor of some Cattle, and takes care of the out-guards.
4. The Vice-Captain.
5. The Judge-Advocate.
6. The Field-Register.

Councils.

The Councils, or Parliaments of *Poland*, are of two sorts: 1. Civil, to which the Councils come in their Gowns. 2. Military, to which they come in Military habit. The latter are only held in the time of an *Interregnum*. The former are frequently called: and are 1. Ordinary, which by the Laws are summoned once in two years. 2. Extraordinary, which are assembled as the necessity of affairs requires. When either Ordinary or Extraordinary Councils are to be convened, the King by his Letters summons the lesser Councils or *Conventions*, in the several Palatinates, larger Provinces, and certain Districts. These *Conventions* precede the general Assemblies of the Kingdom fix weeks, unless upon some extraordinary accident: and are held in the proper Cities of the Palatinates and Provinces, appointed for that purpose. Here, after they have chosen

a Marshal (who seems to be much like our Speaker, as being the Director of the Convention) they first consider of such things as are propounded to them by the Kings Deputies, dispatched away to every Convention, and of what other business is to be motioned at the General Session. After that they choose the Land Deputies, or provincial Delegates, for the general Assembly. Every Province sends fo many (almost in the same manner as our Shires, save only that they are not chosen by the people) till the whole number amount to about 300. These Deputies are generally elected out of such Magistrates as are not of the Senatorian order: excluding all Judges and their Assistants, Collectors, and all Officers of the Exchequer, unless they have exact and full acquittances from the Treasurer. The Delegates, like our Burgesses, have a certain allowance from their respective Provinces, during the sitting of the general Assembly. The particular Conventions being broken up (which by the Law are not to sit above four days) three weeks before the Senators and Delegates repair to the Grand Session, they meet at the general Committees for the several Provinces; where they again read over the Kings commands, the instructions given to the Delegates, and what was thought needful to be propounded for the publick good. The grand Assembly being met, the Deputies repair to their Chamber and choose their Marshal or Director; which done, they are all conducted to kiss the Kings hand: and after that ceremony perform'd, the Chancellours of the Kingdom and Dukedom, in order, declare to them the substance of those affairs which are to be the subject of their Debates. Before they depart, they put the King in mind of supplying such employments as are vacant with deserving persons; and desire an account of such Laws or Ordinances as have been made by the resident Senators since the sitting of the last grand Convention. Having fo done, they return to their Chamber. The power of these *Nuncios*, or Deputies, is very great: for when they send any of their number to the King, they are presently admitted, let the King be never so busy, and have an immediate dispatch. If they clash in their debates, the King is careful to send some of the Senators to reconcile them; who then give them the Title of *Mossi Panovite Bracia et Gracious Lords Brothers*. They have also power to impeach any great Officer of Misdemeanours, and to put the King himself in mind of his promises touching the Laws and privileges of the Kingdom; neither is any constitution valid, that has not its Original from the Chamber of the Deputies. And, which is yet more, if any one of the whole number of the *Nuncios* dissent, nothing can be legally concluded. So that upon the protestation and departure of one Deputy, the whole Convention is *ipso facto* dissolved. Whilst the Deputies are thus consulting, the King and Senators have little to do, but to hear certain criminal causes appointed before hand for the first week, and some other civil controversies the second; till the return of the Deputies embodies the whole Senate together. Then every man has liberty to deliver his mind, with the leave and direction of the Marshal. The King suspends his own opinion, till the Senators and Deputies, or the major part of them agree. Then he endeavours to reconcile their different votes; or if he cannot prevail, concurs with that party which has voted most conformably to the Laws and privileges of the Realm. These consultations by the Law, ought not to be continued

continued above fifteen days after the joining of both Houses: though sometimes urgency of affairs causes further prolongation. When the Session breaks up, the Deputies returning home, give notice of their return to the *Captains with Jurisdiction*, and the Palatines or Vice-Palatines give the same notice of the return of the Deputies to the Nobility, inviting them withal to the *Post-Comitial Assemblies* or *Conventions of Relation*; the meeting whereof the King appoints. In these Conventions, the Deputies produce the constitutions made in the last general Assembly of Estates, delivered to them under seal by the Chancellours, and take care that they be fairly transcribed into the *Land and military Registers*; not omitting, after this, to give a full account of what they have acted in discharge of their Trusts. If the grand Session break up in confusion, not having effected any thing to purpose; then certain *Post-Comitial Councils* are called, wherein the King prefixes a time for another grand Session. Nor is it a wonder that much disturbance should rise in the General Assemblies; considering the multitude of the Deputies, and the liberty of each member: for which reason, Cardinal *Johannes Franciscus Comensanus*, facetiously said, That *Morbis Comitalis* was the Epidemical distemper of *Poland*. Now, that the King may not want a Council in the interval of general Conventions, they, before they break up, appoint 24 Senators (8 Palatines, 8 Major, and as many Minor Castellanes) and four Bishops to wait quarterly (four at a time, one Bishop and three Senators) till other 28 are chosen. And these are bound so close to their duty, that they accompany the King to the Wars: for which they have a Stipend allowed and paved out of the Treasury. The Courts of Judicature in respect of their division are the same as in other countries, that is, either Ecclesiastic or Secular; either for civil or criminal causes: but in respect of the Judges and manner of proceeding therein, not easily to be understood without a particular survey. The Nobles have a Court peculiar to themselves, called the *Court of Land-judicature*, wherein all actions relating to estates in Land are tried. Where also the Captains, and by their permission, the Kings Tenants may sue the Nobles themselves for writ done upon the Lands belonging to the Kings table. To this Court likewise belong all actions of debt upon Contract. The Judges of this Court are, a chief Judge, a Judge, and a Secondary. Upon the death of any of these, the Nobility propose four landed men, whom they recommend to the King; who chooses one out of them into the dead place. All the Judges are bound to be resident at the Session of the Court; which is twice, thrice, and sometimes four times a year. The next remarkable Court is that of the several *Captains jurisdiction*, called *Sudy Grodzkie* or *Court-military*. The chief Judge of this Court is a Captain, he sits alone, takes cognizance of Rapes, Burglary, Setting Houses on fire, Robberies upon the Highway, &c. Noblemen not Landed are here also tried; and foreign Merchants coming to Faires. He has also power, without any notice of Law to condemn and punish idle Vagabonds, Thieves, Proscribed persons, Fugitives, and people of infamous conversation. The writ of the Court runs *Nos Capitaneus &c. Tibi &c. Mandamus vigore Regio, &c. iussu, qua hac parte fungimur, Autoritate, &c.* In Criminal causes it is to be served a fortnight, in Civil a week, before the Court sits. To the *Judicia Campestris* may be referred the Vice-Cap-

tain Court: which takes cognizance of the division of Estates between brothers; forcible ejections; servants entertained without testimonial; exaction of customs; non-payment of publick duties; &c. The *Sub-Chamberlains Court* is for settling the bounds of Noblemens Estates. The *Commisorial Courts* are erected for the same purpose, when the controversy happens between a Nobleman and one of the Kings tenants. For then the King sends down Commissioners to settle the limits of his own lands: who therefore issue out their writ after this form. *Nos &c. Commisarii per Majestatem Regiam specialiter deputati vobis Generosis &c. innotescimus, &c. The Tribunal-Courts* are superior Courts, which take cognizance of all causes removed thither by way of appeal from the Courts of Land-judicature, the Captains Courts, the Vice-Chamberlain and the Commisorial Courts. The Judges of these Courts are as well spiritual as secular. The spiritual Judges are elected by the several Chapters of the Provinces; the temporal Judges, by the most voices of the Nobility. These Courts are held only in two places for *Poland*, *Petrow* and *Lublin*. The Causes are heard in order: for three days are allowed to enter all causes that come; and whatever is not entered in those three days cannot be medled with that sitting. Here are tried all causes that concern Ecclesiastical persons, and the revenues of Churches and religious houses. The writs issued hence run all in the Kings name, under the Seal of the Province where the Defendant lives. The Decrees of the Court are sealed with the Seal of the province where the Court is held. From hence there lies no appeal either to the King, or the General Session; unless where the Court is equally divided, or that the case in Controversy be not decided by the *Constitutions*. The Courts of the *General Conventions* are either *Criminal*, or *Civil*. The *Criminal* either for publick crimes, as High Treason, Treason, Robbing the Exchequer, Violation of the privileges of the General Parliament, and adulterating or falsifying the publick Coin; or else for private crimes, as Murder, Poisoning, Incest, Adultery, and such like heinous offences. To the civil *Conventional Courts* belong all causes concerning the Estate of the Kings table; goods unlawfully received; extortion of custom; negligence of Magistrates, &c. all causes concerning the tithes of Noblemens Estates; profanation of Churches; Land-offices and Honours, &c. The Judges of this Court are the King and the Senators. Whilst the Senators and Deputies give their votes, the King absents himself; afterwards, when the decree is confirmed by plurality of votes, he returns, and the Marshal having proclaimed the Sentence in the Kings presence, commands the person condemned to be clapt into irons, and takes care that execution be done. For causes that relate to the public Revenues there is the Court of the Exchequer usually held at *Radom*: and therefore called *Tribunal Radomienje*. The Judges of this Court, besides the Treasurer, are certain Senators, elected for this purpose in the general Parliaments of the Kingdom. Before this Court are examined and tried all Sub-treasurers and Collectors of contributions and Captains which have not brought into the Treasury what collections were paid into their hands; as also all Merchants and others by whom the Treasury has suffered any damage. This Court seldom sits above a fortnight or three weeks, and always adjourns before the meeting of the general Conventions. Nearly relating to this Court is that which they call *The Commission* for

payment of Souldiers wages. Here are tryed such Souldiers as have not appeared after they have received their pay, or that have committed any Acts of violence towards the Kings Subjects. The Judges of this Court are the chief Commission-officers of the Army, with certain selected Senators and Deputies to assist them. To omit the Military Courts which are the same in all well disciplined armies, the Marshal of the Kings house has also his Court; whose jurisdiction extends not only over the Kings servants, but also over the Senators themselves that live in the Court. The *Captural Court* is two-fold; either General, which sits during the *Interregnum* to prevent disorders, having absolute power of life and death; whose Judges are chosen out of the prime Nobility: Or, Particular; in the several Palatinates of the Kingdom, the Judges whereof are chosen out of the Nobility at the several particular Conventions in the beginning of the *Interregnum*. They take cognizance of all causes tryable in the Captains Court, and of all injuries and batteries (but meddle not with civil matters) being like a Court constituted to keep the peace during the *Interregnum*. All *Captural Courts* cease three weeks before the Assemblies for Election meet. After the Election is over, they sit again till the Coronation of the King. The *Jews* are every where tried and judged by the Palatines, from whom there lies no appeal except the sum exceed an hundred Florens. They that live in Towns or Villages belonging to Noblemen are under the jurisdiction of the Lord of the Royalty. In the *Assessorial Court* the Chancellour sits as supreme Judge, assisted by the Masters of requests and the principal Secretaries of the Kingdom. Here are heard all causes removed from the City Courts, as also from the Palatines when the controversy lies between a Christian and a Jew. Of the *Court of Relations* the King himself is Judge, and hears all causes removed by way of appeal out of the *Assessorial Court*. Hence there lies no appeal, but only to the Parliament it self: and that but in two or three cases. As when the action relates to an Estate which the possessor affirms that he holds by inheritance; or that it concern the publick revenue of the kingdom. I do not find any Ecclesiastical Courts particularly named; however most certain it is, that the Bishops have their several Courts, where either they, or their officials, take cognizance of all ceremonies and institutions Ecclesiastical, and are Judges of Heresy, Schism, Magick, Incantations, Usury, Simony, as also controversies about Tithes and Churchlands, of murder or violence offer'd to a religious person, or upon holy ground. Moreover, they determine the rights of Patronage, Matrimonial differences and contests touching birth-right. As for Wills and Testaments, the differences about them are decided in the secular Courts as well as in these; unless in case of some Legacies left to the Church. From the Bishop's Court there lies an appeal to the Arch-bishop of *Leopol*; from him to the Arch-bishop of *Gnesna*; and thence to the Apostolick See. To the Spiritual Courts belong the *Court of Nunciature* under the jurisdiction of the Popes *Nuncio*, for that purpose always residing in *Poland*. However before he enters into his office, he is obliged to present to the King and the principal Ministers of State the Apostolick brief of his Nunciature, wherein he acknowledges the King as supreme. To conclude, it has been often controverted among which of Aristotle's five sorts of government, the government of *Poland* may be reckon'd: which when the most learned have not

been able to determine, they have all betaken themselves to the common Proverb, frequently in the mouths of the *Polonians* themselves, *Polonia confusione regitur*: yet such a confusion, faith *Coricius*, which has preserved the *Virgin bonae* of the Nation safe and undisturbed in the midst of so many cruel and bloody Wars.

At this day there is no less confusion in the religion then government of *Poland*. In the year 965 *Miecislavus* King of *Poland*, (*John* the 13th. being then Pope.) received and entertained the Christian faith according to the ceremonies of the Church of *Rome*; which though it be still the most profest and reigning religion to this day, yet have other Religions and Sects got no small footing in the Realm. For in the year 1264 the *Jews* flock'd into *Poland*, planting themselves whole Colonies together, in this Kingdom. To whom *Boleslaus* Duke of Great *Poland*, granted several privileges and immunities, which *Casimir* the great (at the suit of another Jewish *Esther*, who was his *Mistress*) very much enlarged: by which means their number is now so encreased over all the Cities and Villages of *Poland*, that is now called the *Jews paradise*. In the year 1397, *Vitoldus*, grand Duke of *Lithuania*, having overthrown the *Nagayan Tartars*, translated whole Herds of them into his own Territories; who to this day obstinately maintain the follies of *Mahomet*. Much about the same time, in the reign of *Vladislavus Jagello*, the opinions of *John Hus* brake forth, and (by the pains of *Procopius Holy*, *Brederick Straznick* and *William Katska*) prevailed so far in *Poland*, even among the Nobility, that though several severe Edicts were made against them, yet could they never be wholly extirpated. At length the Lutherans and Calvinists invaded the Roman-Catholic Religion with more danger to the Papacy; their party being encreased by the Students of *Cracow*, through the neglect of the Magistrates in not revenging the murder of one of their Collegiates. For they, thereupon dispersing into *Bohemia* and *Germany*, upon their return so largely propagated the doctrine of *Luther*, that *Sigismund Augustus* himself, the Arch-bishop of *Gnesna*, with the Bishops of *Culmo* and *Camienick*, lean'd very much to their party. Among these the *Arians* intermixed themselves, and although so severely prosecuted by *John Casimir* and others that *Alexander* the seventh, for their sakes, gave the Kings of *Poland* the Title of *Orthodox*, yet they still shelter themselves under the name of *Disenters*. As for the *Calvinists*, how far they have strengthened themselves may appear by the late disturbances in *Dantzick*. The *Russians*, though a great part of them, in the year 1596, joyned themselves to the Roman Church; yet the more numerous party, which go by the name of *Not-united*, still retain the ceremonies of the *Greeks*, under Arch-bishops and Priests of the same profession. And their privileges were confirmed by the agreement made in the year 1658. The *Armenians*, who are very numerous in *Poland* upon the account of Trade, profess the Roman Catholic religion, being wrought thereto by the zealous industry of *John Casimir*. Lately, for the better support of the Roman-Catholic Religion, there was an Article inserted into the *Paſſa Concordata*, to which this present King swore, That no Person should be elected to the Kingdom of *Poland* that was not of the Roman Catholic religion; and that the Queen should be either a Roman Catholic born, or by conversion.

It is considerable that there was not any congregation of the *Antirritarians* continued from the ancient *Arians* and *Photinians*; but the beginning





ginning of them was since the reformation: and they began to appear in Poland about the year 1560, by the fuggections of certain runagate *Italians*, refusing themselves in Countries where the Nobility have the liberty to set up and maintain what religion they please. These were *Paulus Alicantus* a Milanese, a fanatick and very unlearned person, *Valentinus Gentilis*, *Bernardinus Ochinus*, *Paulus Orsacius*, *Franc. Lijmaninus*, &c. who at first, all of them, professed the reformed Religion; but afterwards fell, some to Arrianism, Photinianism, Anabaptism, Judaism, Mahometanism, and some set up new sects of their own. The first person of quality that appear'd in their defence was *Georgius Blaudrata*, (a Elyvitian, sustained first by *Nic. Adzeo* surname the Black, afterwards by the *Barvori*) *Petrus Sistorius*, and some others. These men having long lurked up and down these Countries, sowing their Tares where they found opportunity, at last were discovered and cited to a Synod of the Reformed: where they answered so ambiguously and cunningly, that they deceived the Synod, and were embraced as Orthodox. In 1565, the King of Poland permitted a disputation between the Reformed and them; the sum of which is set down by *Polevius* (*De Athelmo hereticorum hujus seculi* c. 12.) the success was, that both parties departed with the same opinions they brought thither. But the Reformed in divers Synods drew up out of their several Confessions, *Augustinian*, *Bohemian*, and *Helvetican*, Articles of their belief concerning the Trinity; which being approved by King *Stephen*, he allowed them a Church publicly in *Cracow*. But the *Antitrinitarians* lurked and sheltered themselves here and there under such Nobility as they could persuade to believe them; nor were they ever established, for when any of their Patrons died, there succeeded most times one of another persuasion; so that they were forced to remove; till they settled at *Racovia* under the protection of *Stenjenius*: there they set up a School, Press, &c. But not this till after the coming of *Socinus*; who being known by the divers books he had printed, was sent for by *Blaudrata* about 1579. He learned his opinions from his Uncle *Lelius Socinus*, who was the first in that age that revived those doctrines concerning our Saviours mediatorship. *Socinus* at his first arrival was taken up with disputes against the dissenters, such as *Franc. Davidis*, *Christ. Francken*, *Farnesius*, *Greg. Pauli*, and others, particularly with *Petr. Stoinsky*, a very eloquent man; who openly yielded the cause, and went over to *Socinus*; and afterwards assisted him very much in reducing all those that held either Arrianism, or wilder opinions concerning our Saviour. It should seem that *Socinus* was most of all favoured by *Morlinus*, *Blonsius* and other Noble-men; and that they were not yet settled in *Racovia*; till *Greg. Pauli* who had got in there with his Anabaptists, and called it *New Jerusalem*, was by the Magistrates thence dispossessed. There succeeded *Socinus* some persons of more eminent learning, such as *Crellius*, *Schittingius* &c. whose authority kept the party united till the year 1638; when certain of their Scholars thinking themselves strong enough to erect and defend their zeal, put off their modesty, and threw down a cross near unto their Schools in *Racovia*. Of which complaint being made to the Diet, it was commanded, that their Temple, School, and Printing-house should be taken from them, and their Pastors and Citizens banished, which being executed, their Patron *Stenjenius* died for grief.

What has been hitherto said, has related to
POLAND.

Poland in general; which, according to the opinion of the best modern Geographers, may be divided into the following Provinces. 1. The Greater Poland; which contains the Palatinates of *Poznania*, *Calisia*, *Lancicia*, *Bresla*, *Inouladislavia*, *Sirad* and *Rava*, and the Territories of *Vielen* and *Dobrin*. 2. The Lesser Poland; in which are contain'd the Palatinates of *Cracow*, *Sandomir* and *Lublin*; the Dukedomes of *Ofwiec*, *Tabor* and *Zewer*, and the County of *Stepus*. 3. *Lithuania*; which consists of three Palatinates of *Vilna*, *Troco* and *Brescia*. 4. *Masovia*; to which belong the Palatinates of *Masovia*, *Ploco*, and *Podlachia*. 5. *Prussia Regia*; which is divided into the Palatinates of *Culmo*, *Marieburg* and *Pomerania*, and the Bishoprick of *Varna*. 6. *Samogitia*; in which are no Palatinates: but the whole Province is subject to one Governour or Captain. 7. *White Russia*; which borders upon the great Dukedom of *Moscow*, and contains the Palatinates of *Novogrod*, *Micilavia*, *Viteps*, *Poleco*, *Smolensco*, *Czernichovia* and *Rivovia*: of which at present a great part is in the hands of the great Duke of *Moscow*. 8. *Red Russia*; in which lay the Palatinates of *Russia*, *Podolia*, *Volinia*, *Beltz*, and *Braclovia*. Lastly, the Southern tract of *Lithuania* is also reckoned among the Provinces of Poland. But of all these we shall treat more fully in the following Order.

G R E A T P O L A N D.

THE Greater Poland (containing the Counties of *Poznania* and *Calisia*, and the Palatinates of *Sirad*, *Rava*, *Vielen*, and *Cujavia*, which last is subdivided into the Baronies of *Bresla* and *Jemeladislavia*), is bounded on the South with *Silesia*; on the West with the Marquitate of *Brandenburgh*, and the upper *Pomerania*; on the North with *Masovia*, and part of *Prussia*; on the East with the Lesser Poland. 'Tis generally a level champaign country, abounding with pleasant Rivers, Lakes, and Ponds, and well furnish'd with all manner of Fish and Fowl. Some parts of *Cujavia* indeed are more mountainous; but what those want in pleasure, they repay with profit; the hills every-where affording good store of Wool, and the valleys plenty of Corn.

The Metropolis of the whole Province is *Poznania* (called by the Poles *Poznan*, by the Germans *Posen*) seated in 39 degrees of Longitude, and 52 and about 10 minutes of Latitude, on the river *Warta*. The City is not large; but well stock'd with Merchants from all parts of Germany. *John Lubranitzki*, formerly Bishop of this place, founded here a *Gymnasium* (or petty-University) in the suburbs, ordering the Professors to be called from *Cracow*, where himself had been Doctor of Laws.

Though this structure has since that time been very much beautified by *Adam Canar*, one of *Lubranitzki's* successors in the Bishoprick; yet 'tis still outdone by the Jesuits College and Monastery in *Posen*. The people here are civil and gentle; orderly and cleanly in their houses, and go more rich in apparel than is ordinary in any other place in Poland: *Cracow* only excepted, with which notwithstanding *Posen* may vie for beauty, trade, and riches. The greatest part of the inhabitants are Roman Catholics. However, there are many large swarms of Jews, who live among them, and enjoy more privileges and immunities than the Citizens themselves. The Town is governed by a Court of *Schepins* or Aldermen; whom themselves are subject to a Burgo-master, chosen yearly

Great Poland.

Poznanie.

D d d

yearly (as a Mayor in our Cities) out of them: who, during his government has the title of *General of Great Poland* conferred on him. The Bishop and Clergy are in the Province of the Archbishop of *Gnesna*.

Gnesna.

Seven miles from this city you have *Gnesna* (called by the Dutch *Gnisen*) formerly the Metropolis of *Poland*, built by *Lecus* the first Duke of *Poland*; by whom it had its name given from the Polish word *Gniasao*, which signifies a nest: because in this place *Lecus* found an Eagles nest. Whence to this day, the Princes of *Poland* bear a spread Eagle for their Arms. This is the seat of the chief Metropolitan Archbishop in the whole Kingdom: of whose state and grandeur we have given you a relation before. In the Cathedral is kept an inestimable treasure of Gold, Silver, and curious enamell'd vessels, left by several Princes of *Poland* and Archbishops of this See: which was much encreased by the legacies of *Henry Firley*, late Archbishop, who, besides many vessels and vestments of great worth, gave them his own mitre, valued at 24000 *Polish* guilders; which, being reduced to our English money, will amount to about 2300 pounds sterling. The gates leading into the Cathedral are of *Corinthian* brass and rarely wrought. These at first were taken out of the Monastery of *Corfuna* in the *Tauric Cherfone*; whence they were removed to *Kiow*: and from thence brought hither by *Boleslaus* the second. In the year 1613 this city was miserably laid waste by fire; and does yet daily loose something of its ancient glory.

The rest of the Towns of *Poznan* are meanly built, and without any considerable fortifications. Their buildings (excepting onely the Churches, Monasteries, and other religious houses) are most commonly of wood.

Calisia.

The County of *Calisia* has its name from the chief City in it, by the *Polanders* called *Kalisz*, seated on *Przen* and fortified with a strong brick wall. *Stanislaus Karncon*, Archbishop of *Gnesna*, founded here a stately Colledge of Jesuits; and endowed it with a considerable revenue. The country round this City is generally, like the rest of the greater *Poland*, pleasant, fruitful and very well cultivated and inhabited, every where abounding with great Towns and villages. Among which *Borek* and *Golachon* are the most considerable; the former, for a famous picture of the *Virgin Mary* resorted to with a great opinion of devotion by most of the zealous Romanists in these parts; the latter for an extraordinary piece of modern Architecture, in the Palace of the Counts of *Lesen*.

Sirad.

The City of *Sirad*, which gives name to the Palatinate of *Siradia*, is seated on the south of *Calisia* upon the river *Warta*. 'Tis fortified with a strong brick wall. Most of the houses are of wood, and very mean and low. This City, and the territories about it, made formerly a Dukedom, usually given to the second son of the Polish King.

Petricov.

Seven German, or twenty nine English miles from *Sirad*, lyes *Petricov*, a neat and well built City; where sits yearly the Parliament of *Poland*.

Vielan.

Vielan, or *Wielun*, is somewhat differing in beauty from the rest of the Cities of these parts: most of its houses being brick.

Rawa.

Rawa is as populous a City as *Vielun*, but short of it in the splendor of its buildings; which are commonly wood: except the castle which is brick. In this is repositied a fourth part of the revenues of the Crown: and all captives, if

persons of any considerable quality, are here kept prisoners. Instances whereof we have in the natural son of *Charles* King of *Sweden*, who (with other officers of the *Swedish* army) was taken prisoner in the *Lifland* wars; and *Baldise* General of *Gustaphus Adolphi*s forces, who (with *Stresse*, *Tasle*, and other Colonels) was taken in the wars of *Prussia*.

Five German, or twenty English miles from *Rawa* lyes *Lomitz*; the residence of the Archbishop of *Gnesna*. 'Tis a place much more populous than *Rawa*, and yearly (in the Fair-time) throng'd with great numbers of merchants, who flock thither from all quarters. The Archbishop's Palace is seated in a low and marshy ground, nevertheless its fabrick is magnificent, and well becoming the state of so great a Prince.

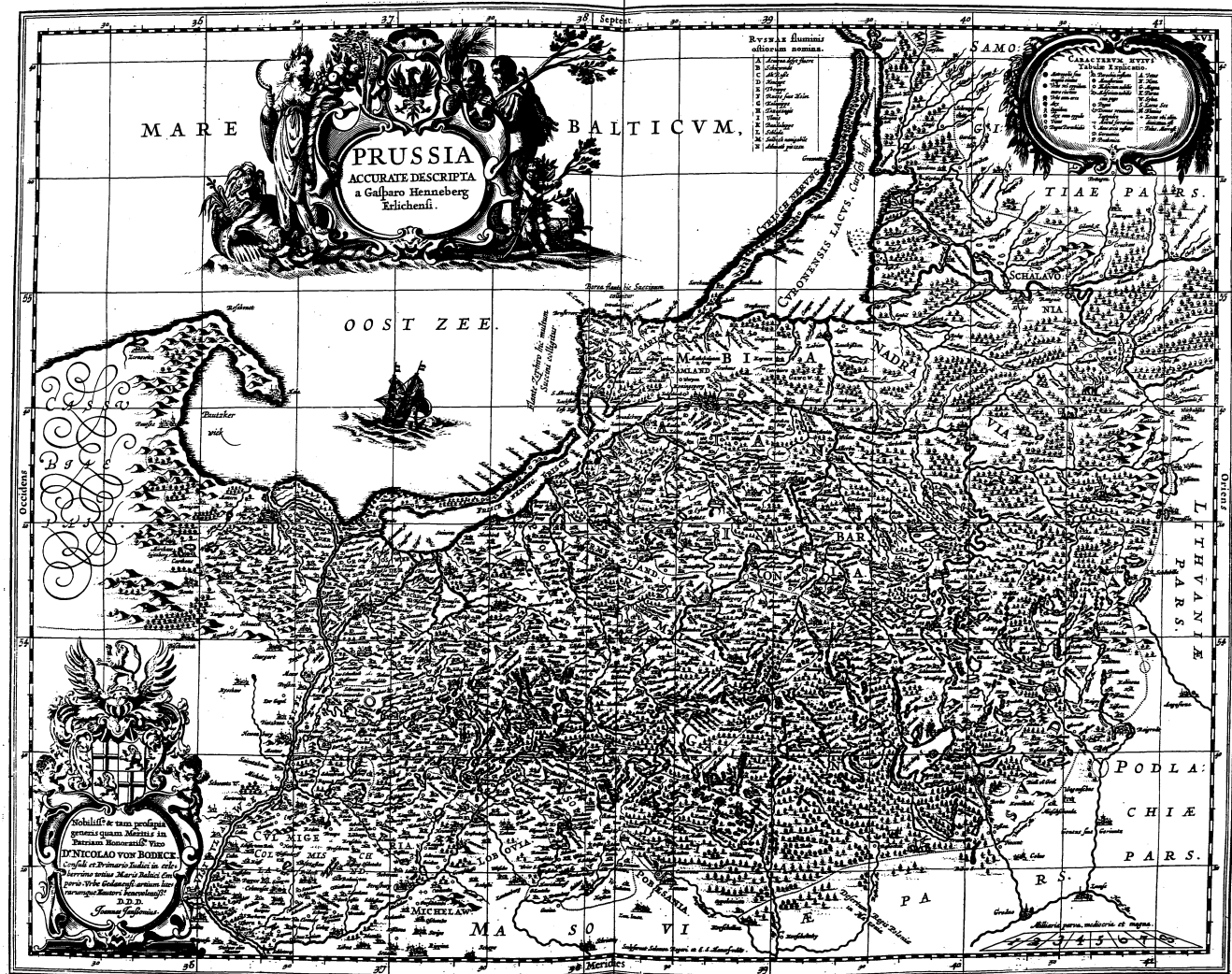
Lancitia (or *Lanschet*) giving denomination to a Palatinate of the same name, is situate in a low and fenny ground; encompassed with a ditch and brick wall. Not far from the City is a Monastery; which might easily (if as well provided for by art as nature) be made impregnable. There is besides little in the City worth taking notice of; except the great fairs kept once a year; and the sessions of the Deputies of this Palatinate, which are here holden.

Cujavia is bounded on the East with *Masovia* and the Palatinate of *Rawa*: on the south with the Palatinates of *Lanschet* and *Calisia*: on the north with *Prussia*. It contains in it two Baronies, *Bresle*, which lies to the east and south; and *Junialadislavia*. This Country is rich in corn and cattle, and well stored with Fish.

In the Palatinate of *Bresly* lies the City of *Uladislaw*: the seat of the Bishop of *Cujavia* and *Pomeran*. The Cathedral here is a pitiful old-fashioned piece of building; but well furnished with plate and rich ornaments and reliques within. The houses are generally of brick. *Marthias Golanciew* (who was forty two years Bishop of this See) beautified this City very much; by building that stately Palace which is seen at this day in *Uladislaw*, instead of an old ruinous castle, and founding the Church of St. *Vital* the Martyr. The next considerable place is *Bresly*, built of brick and wood interlayd. The other Towns of note are, *Nislen*, a wall'd Town; *Rasenski*, guarded with a fair Castle; *Radschow*, seated on the lake *Goplo*; and *Kowale*, upon the *Vistula*.

Craswick belongs properly to the Palatinate of *Bresly*, though situated upon the confines of *Inouladislavia*. In the suburbs of this City stands a Church dedicated to St. *Peter*, built of square stone; with a Colledge of twenty four Canons. In the adjoining Island stands a Brick Castle, built by *Papielus* the elder, who chose this place to live in, rather than *Cracow* or *Gnesna* (whither he had once removed his Court) as being of too timorous a nature to trust himself in the confines of the *Russians* or *Hungarians*. Here (as the *Polonian* Chronicles report) *Papielus*, son of *Papielus* the elder, was devoured by mice: heaven, by this punishment, revenging the blood of several of his relations, whom his greedy ambition of swaying the scepter had prompted him to poison at a banquet. *Cromer* advances the story by telling us, That his father, in his ordinary revels, used to with himself and his children this kind of death; and, That the mice were miraculously generated out of the carcases of his poison'd kindred.

The Palatinate of *Inouladislavia* (or *Inuloz*) comprehends the territories of *Bydgosz*, *Behro*, and *Inuloz*; reaching from *Craswick* and the lake *Goplo* as far as the *Vistula* and confines of *Pomeran*. There



There are in it several Towns, of note and villages, all of them built of wood. It sends to the Parliament of Poland, besides the Palatine, four Castellanes, of *Inoulcoz*, *Bydgosz* and *Conarow*. *Bydgosz* is a walled Town, seated on the river *Barde* (by which all sorts of merchandize are brought from the *Vistula*) and trades much in Sammon. The rest, worth taking notice of are, *Gnieucow*, *Varistlaw*, *Solete*, *Dibow* and *Strelec*; in which last stands the richest Nunnery in the greater Poland.

M A S O V I A.

Masovia (called by the Poles *Mazowſke*, by the Germans *Die Masow*), lies in the very middle of Poland, bounded on the north with *Prussia*; on the east with *Lithuania* and *Poleſſia*, on the west with some part of the lesser Poland; on the south, with the Palatinate of *Rawa*. 'Tis usually divided into these four parts: The Palatinates of *Podlachia*, *Plocko*, *Masovia*, strictly so called, and the territories of *Dobrin*; which last ought rather to be reckoned a part of the Palatinate of *Plocko*. There are different conjectures touching the original of its name. The most commonly received is; That, upon the death of *Mieſſſlaus* the second, the Nobility of Poland (not enduring the impotent and effeminate government of his surviving Queen *Rixa*) layd hands upon what every man could catch. Among these *Masos* (or, as others call him, *Majlaus*) formerly Cupbearer to the deceased King, seized upon that large tract of land which he, after his own name, called *Masovia*. This *Masos* was afterwards overcome by *Casimir* the first; by whom he was taken and put to death. By this means it was again restor'd to the Crown of Poland: though it still retained the name of *Masovia*. But *Stanislaus Serickus* (rejecting, in part, this story), derives more probably the *Masovii* from the *Maslagetes*. I know, saith he, what our Historians have written touching the original of the *Masovians*. But it seems incredible to me, that so famous and courageous a people should stoop to borrow their denomination from so mean a person. In the year 1220 *Lefcus* the white, in the Parliament of *Sandomir*, granted the Dukedomes of *Masovia*, *Cujavia*, and *Dobrinia* to his brother *Comrade*: from which time it was governed by Dukes of its own (doing homage however to the Kings of Poland) till the year 1495, but then the race of the Dukes of *Masovia* began to fail. For that year *John Duke* of *Masovia* dyed a Batchelour; upon which *John Albert* reunited *Plocko* to the Crown, leaving the rest of *Masovia* to his brother *Comrade*. Which (after his decease in the year 1503) was granted to his children, upon condition, that for default of male issue, it should return to the Crown: which was effected in the reign of *Sigismund* the first. In the same manner the Palatinate of *Podlachia* (formerly belonging to *Masovia*, and joynd by *Casimir Jagellon* to *Lithuania*) return'd to the Kingdom of Poland in the year 1567. There are no peculiar Bishops in *Masovia*: but the whole Province is divided under the jurisdiction of *Poznan*, *Plocko*, and *Lucevia*.

The Metropolis of *Masovia* is *Warsaw* (by the Poles called *Warsawa*) seated in the very centre of the *Polish* dominions, upon the *Vistula*: encompassed with a double wall and deep ditch: distant 40 German, or 160 English miles from *Pozen* and *Cracow*. Here the King of Poland keeps his Court, in a large four squared Palace, built by *Sigismund* the third; but much beautified by his successors.

POLAND.

on the other side of the river (which is passable by a stately wooden bridge) sits the great Parliament of Poland in another of the Kings Palaces called *Viaslow*, seated in the midst of many and delicate Groves and Gardens. In the City are public buildings of good note, the most remarkable of which is *St. John Baptists Church*: where divine service is performed by secular Canons. Not far from *Viaslow* (in the suburbs called *Cracow*) stands, as a trophy of the victory obtained by the Poles over the *Moscovite*, a small Chappel, built (by the Kings command) for the burial of *Demetrius Suicius*, great Duke of *Moscovie*, who dyed a captive in the Castle of *Gostenin*.

The Nobility of *Masovia* (which are more numerous than in any other part of Poland, being reckoned to amount to near forty thousand, whereof fifteen thousand appear'd in a body at the Coronation of *Sigismund* the third) are all Roman-Catholics: never suffering any of other religions or opinions to reside among them. Out of these are sent yearly, to the general Assembly of the Estates, one Palatine and six Castellanes.

The Palatinate of *Plocko* lies eastward from *Masovia*: between the *Vistula* and *Prussia*. 'Tis divided into the territories of *Plocko*, *Zawera*, *Mlava* and *Srenko*; and sends out, to the great Parliament, four Senators: that is, The Bishop, The Palatine and Castellanes of *Plocko*, *Radzugas*, and *Sieprez*. It has its name from *Plocko*, its chief City, seated on a high bank of the *Vistula*; whence you have a fair prospect of a pleasant and fruitful Country. The City is an Episcopal Sec; and very populous. There are in it several religious houses and Churches, besides the Cathedral, very well endowed: especially the Abby of *Benedictines* in the suburbs; where, among other reliques, is kept the head of *St. Sigismund* (to whom the Church is dedicated) enshased in gold, given by *Sigismund* the third.

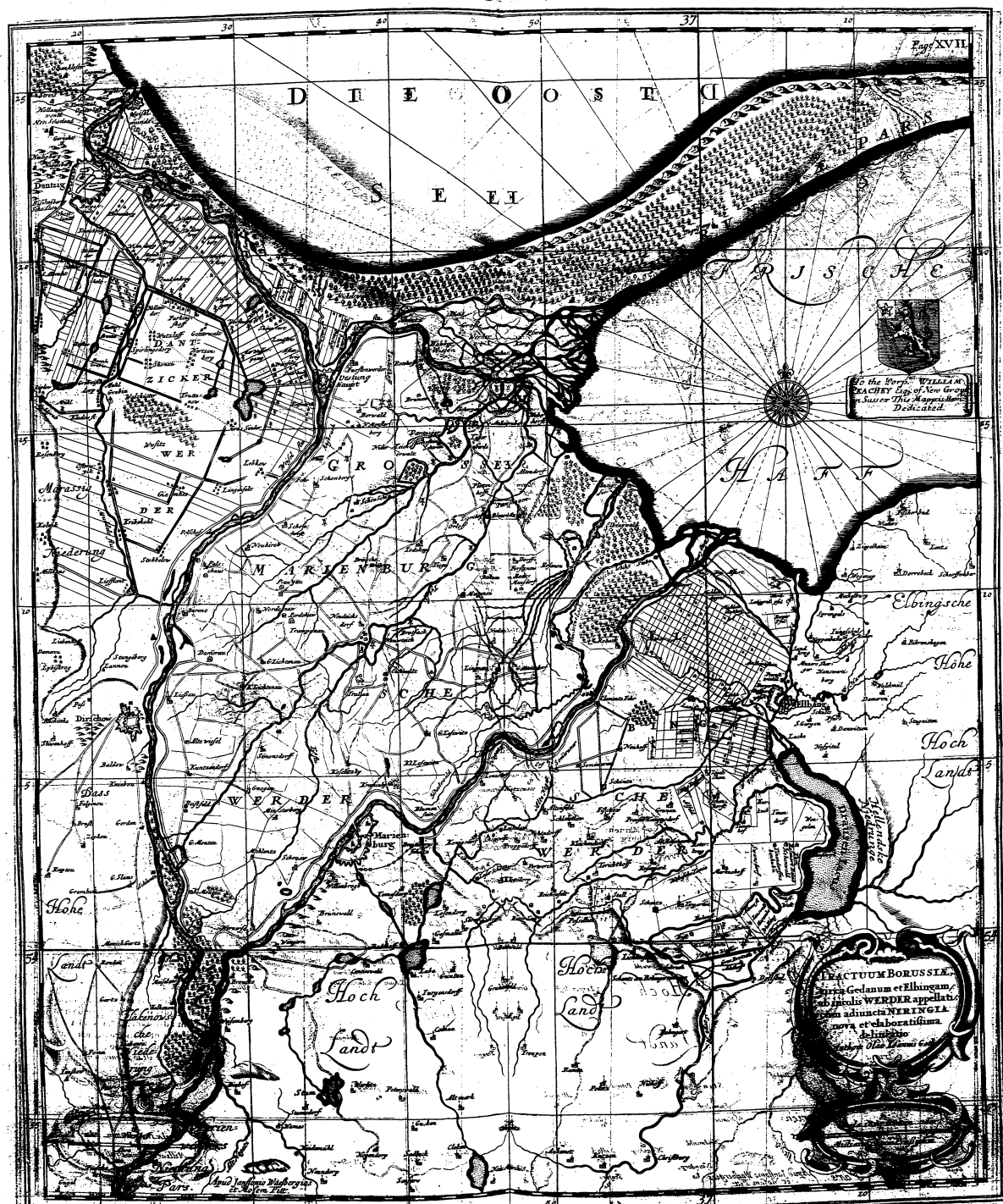
The territory of *Dobrin* is properly a part of the Palatinate of *Plocko*; though Mr. *Blaeus*, and some others, have made it a distinct part of *Masovia*. It has its name from the City *Dobrin*, situated, between *Cujavia* and *Plocko*, on a rock near the banks of the *Vistula*. The houses in it are generally of wood; and the whole City is environed with wooden fortifications. The Country affords great store of fruit and fish.

P R U S S I A.

Whence *Prussia* or *Borussia* (called by the Germans *Preussen*) should fetch its name, is not easily determined. Certain it is, That it is not to be met with amongst ancient authors. *Claverius* thinks *Helmoldus*, who flourished in the twelfth Century, is the oldest writer that gives any account of the Country under this name. But both *Dithmarus* (who lived in the beginning of the eleventh Century, in the days of the Emperor *Henry* the second) and, before him, an Anonymous writer of the life of *St. Adalbert* (the Apostle of the *Prussians*) about the year 990 mention it; *Marianus Scatus* will have the word derived from *Aprutis*; a City, saith he, in these parts, where *St. Adalbert* suffered martyrdom in the year 995. But this conjecture is vain and precarious: for where any City of this name formerly stood, or its ruins can at this day be found, only he himself can tell us. *Johannes Amicus Viterbiensis* tells us, the *Prussians* were at first called *Pruti*; and that from one *Prutius* Sythian King, grandchild to *Noah*. That this nation

D d 2

tion



ded with the *Germans* and other people long before that time, giving furs and hides in exchange for linen, and such other commodities as they needed. The chief trade they had, lay in the *Electrum*, or Amber, so famous among the ancients; though that was at last laid aside; the idle nation contenting it self with the bare provision of necessities. What this *Electrum* should be, all Historians, that write of *Prussia*, have busied themselves to find out. The Poets feigned it to be the tears of the *Heliades*, deploring the harsh fate of their brother *Phaeton*. Some Philosophers have fancied, 'tis nothing else but the fat sweat of the Sea. Others tell us, 'tis the gum of a tree; but cannot agree what kind they should pitch upon; whether Poplar, Cedar, or Elm. *Kircher* is of opinion, that 'tis only a bituminous substance, which, rising from the bottom of the Sea, is tols'd to and fro by the waves, till brought to a consistency. But no man ever that liv'd upon the *Baltick*, could observe any such *Bitumen* on those Seas. Besides the veins of Amber, which are found under ground, in places far distant from the Sea, do sufficiently evince the contrary. It is confessed that now and then 'tis met with in the Baltic Sea, and in the adjoining Lakes and Rivers; but when this happens, we must suppose those fragments broke off from some vein under water by the violence of a flood or tempest. Mr. *Hartman* (a late German author, who has printed a large treatise de *Succino Prussico*) gives this final determination of the nature of it; *since*, saith he, it can neither be melted nor is malleable, 'tis impossible it should be metal; and because 'tis too solid a body to come under the species of Sulphur or Bitumen, it must needs be ranked among the kinds of precious stones. Amber or Succinum is a coagulation of Petroleum; which being of divers colours, white, yellow, red, black, &c. accordingly grows into divers substances. Whilst very liquid, like Oil, it is called Petroleum; if somewhat thicker and clammy, 'tis *Naphtha*; if still more, it is Bitumen; but if into a hard and stony substance; if of such colours it becomes white, yellow, red, black Amber; if very black, it is *Goths* or *Jer*. In breaking the Rocks near *Tanger* for the Mole, they frequently find Amber growing in the clefts of the stones. *Pliny* tell us, 'twas called heretofore, by the *Germans*, *Glesum*, or *Glast*, because of its transparency; and that thence the *Romans* called the Island where it was gathered *Glesaria*, which by the *Barbarians* was, before *Cesar Germanicus* came into these Seas with his fleet, named *Austrania* (I had rather read *Austrina*; for the ordinary German name for Amber is *Augstein*, because 'tis good for the eyes.)

The *Prussians*, as we have said, had little or no knowledge of the use of money before the arrival of the *Teutonic* order among them, in the year 1220. These men, coming out of Germany, brought with them the coin of their Country. Among the rest of their pieces of money, the broad *Bohemian Gros* was long current both in *Prussia* and *Poland*. But, not judging that small stock they had brought with them sufficient to furnish the Country with money, they presently began to set up Mints and Coin pieces of their own: which they did so accurately, that most Nations have granted, that the art of coining was here first brought to perfection. Whence the Learned Sr. *Henry Spelman* thinks, our English word *Sterling* came from the *Easterlings*, who coming out of *Prussia*, first taught the art of refining and coining purer silver in *England*, then before their coming had been made use of. The species of money current at this day in *Prussia*, are these:

1. A *Schilling*; which contains six pence (or *Pfenning*) none of which are now in use in single pieces.
2. A *Gros*; which consists of three *Schillings*. Twenty of these *Gros*es make
3. A *Mark*.
4. A *Gulder* is made of thirty *Gros*es.
5. A *Dollar* (or *Thaler*) is worth three *Gulders*. Two *Dollars* make
6. A *Ducate*; valued at nine shillings English.

These are the most ordinary and proper Coins of *Prussia*: though *Swedish* and *Danish* money is current too. Some of the late *Prussian* writers will have the word *Schilling* fetch its name from one *Bernhard Schilling*, who first stamp'd this kind of Coin. But this fancy is confuted by *Schottelius*; who nevertheless is himself baffled in the Etymology of the word. The *Gros* had its name given it, because 'twas the greatest piece of money made use of in the infancy of coinage. The lower *Saxons* (changing, according to their manner, the high *Dutch* *s* into *t*) call it *Groat*; whence we have our word *Groat*. A *Mark* was formerly no peculiar piece of Coin; but a certain weight of money, worth thirty six of the *Marks* now used in *Prussia*. So that it had not this name, as *Loccenius* guesses, from the German word *Mark*, because 'twas marked or stamped with some particular Coin; but was only used in that Country in reckoning of money, as we count by pounds (and marks) and the *French* by *Livres*; though neither of us have any piece of money of that value. *Gulder* signifies no more then a piece of Gold Coin. A *Dollar* (or *Thaler*, as the *Dutch* write it) has its name from the German *Thal*, a valley or dale; because first coined at the Mines in *Joachim's-dale*, in the year 1517; whence for a while, instead of the word *Thalers*, they used *Joachimicus* for a *Dollar*. The worth and value of every one of these are almost yearly changed, by the continual allays of brass and copper mixt with silver; and other intrigues of state.

That the *Venedi* (the first inhabitants of some Language parts of *Prussia*) spoke the *Slavonian* tongue, is beyond all controversy. After them, the *Goths* brought in a dialect of the *Celtick*, little differing from the German tongue: but this wrought little change among the *Prussians*, who (till the arrival of the *Teutonic* order) spoke, as they do still in many places, a language fundamentally the same with what the *Russians*, *Polonians* and *Lithuanians* now use. *Grænovius* indeed, a *Prussian* born, is of another opinion; because the *Polanders* do not at all understand a *Prussian*, and the *Lithuanians* very little. But how invalid this argument is, any one may perceive, who shall consider with what difficulty an *Austrian*, *Luxemburger* and *Fleming* (and how much more a *Dane*, *German* and *Englishman*) would discourse together. A mixture of the *Slavonian* and German tongues, and a revolution of (perhaps) two thousand years, must needs alter the *Prussian* language considerably from what it was at first.

What time *Prussia*, with the adjoining Countries, began to leave off their idolatrous worship, and to be converted to Christianity is hard to discover. *Stanislaus Lubienicus*, Bishop of *Plocko*, thinks *Andrew* the Apostle first planted the Gospel in these Northern Climates. Others, more punctual in history, tell us, That the same Apostle say'd out of Greece by the *Euxine* Sea, and (coming up the *Boristhenes* or *Dnieper*) landed at *Kiev*, then the Metropolis of *Russia*; whence he went forward, baptizing and converting the Heathens, as far as the *Baltick* Sea. Some, upon

on as shallow ground as the former, will have *St. Bartholomew* and *St. Thaddeus* first preachers in *Prussia*. However, all agree in this; That, towards the latter end of the tenth Century, *St. Adalbert* or *Albert* (Bishop of *Prague* in *Bohemia* and (by the *Polish* writers) afterwards Archbishop of *Gnesna*) came through *Poland* into *Prussia*, where he either first planted, or restor'd, Christianity. But, the Heathenish Priests (perceiving innovation of religion inconsistent with their interest) made the people so incensed against *St. Adalbert*, that they slew him barbarously at *Fischhausen* in *Sambland*, in the year 997. Upon this, *Boleslaus* the first (King of *Poland*) enters *Prussia* with a great army, and brought the inhabitants to these conditions of peace; That they should pay tribute to *Poland*, and embrace the Christian religion. And, to prevent for the future all relapse into Idolatry and superstition, he burnt up the great Oak at *Romanow*; the temple of three of their superior Gods. But no sooner had he left them, than they forsook Christianity, and return'd to their Idols. After him, three of his successours (of the same name) did several times reduce them to Christianity and homage to the Crown of *Poland*. But all in vain; For, at the first opportunity, they were sure to throw of both yokes. In the beginning of the thirteenth Century, the *Polish* Nobility (having rent that Kingdom in pieces) neglected the conversion of the *Prussians* for a while. However, about the year 1215, *Christianus*, a *Cistercian* Monk, was very busy in confirming them in the principles they had received; and to that end, by the Pope's command, took upon him the authority of a Bishop. But finding his own power insignificant, he was quickly forced to beg the assistance of *Conrade* Duke of *Masovia*. This expedient also proved unsuccessful. For the Knights of *Dobrin*, whom the Duke had opposed to the fury of the *Prussians*, making incursions into *Masovia*, were all vanquished and slain by the Idolaters. When all these expedients prov'd unsuccessful, the Christians begun to consider of some other means of converting the *Prussians*: since no fair usage would work upon such a stubborn people as they found these were, they pitch upon the Knights of the *Teutonic Order* (famous at that time all Christendom over) as most likely, either to persuade or force them into Christianity. *Conrade*, Duke of *Masovia*, pleased with these proposals, immediately dispatches letters to the Master of the Order; proffering him the land of *Culm*, and auxiliary forces, in case he should meet with any opposition. Upon this, in the year 1226, *Herman de Salze* (fourth Master of the *Teutonic Order*) forthwith sends *Herman de Balke*, one of his Knights, among the *Prussians*, with the title of *Supperintendent* (afterwards changed into *Provincial*) of *Prussia*. But so vigorously did the Heathens oppose these undertakings, that it was fifty three years before they could be brought to renounce their Idolatry. After Christianity began to take root among them, several Bishoppicks and Monasteries were founded. Notwithstanding all which, many Heathenish Cities were wink'd at: for the barbarous customarily could not, but by degrees, be weaned from their ancient folly. Besides, the Masters of the Order minded the enlargement of their own power and dominion more than the preaching of the Gospel; being grown to that height of influence, that they despised the Canons and Constitutions of the Church of *Rome*, and slighted the Popes threats and excommunication. This neglect gave way to many Schisms and divisions in the *Prussian* Church; inasmuch, that the *Walden-*

ses, *Wiclefians*, and *Husites*, had almost overrun the Land. However, the *Teutonic* Order still professed the Roman-catholic religion, till the days of *Albert* Marquess of *Brandenburg*, last Master of that order, and first Duke of *Prussia*, who having (not without a great deal of blood-shed) rejected the *Polish* yoke, about the year 1520, began to embrace *Martin Luther's* opinions, and (by his own example and authority) first persuaded the greatest part of the *Teutonic* order to marry; and by degrees won over the whole Country to *Lutheranism*. The present Elector of *Brandenburg* (being himself a *Calvinist*) has countenanced of late *Calvinism* in *Königsberg*, and other chief Cities of *Ducal Prussia*, but in *Danzick*, and the other Towns upon the *Vistula*, which are subject to the Crown of *Poland*, the people are *Lutherans*.

The same Laws and Judicature are not observed all *Prussia* over. For some parts of it only, (known by the name of *Prussia Regalis*) are subject to the Kings of *Poland*, and those too enjoy several peculiar privileges and immunities: the rest (which usually goes under the name of *Ducal Prussia*) is immediately subject to the Elector of *Brandenburg*.

The three Islands called commonly by the High Dutch *Die Werder*.

The chief part of the *Regal Prussia* lyes in the three Islands between *Elbing* and *Danzick*; which the *Germans* call *Die Werder*, which signifies properly to many solid pieces of ground in the middle of fens and bogs.

The first and least of these, is *der Danziger Werder*, or Island of *Danzick*, which is seated on the North-West end of it, upon the *Vistula*. When, and by whom, this City was built at first, is not certainly known. *Beccanus* thinks, 'twas built by the *Danes*; and from them called *Danzick* i. e. the City of the *Danes*. But this derivation of the word has too much Dutch in it. 'Tis more probable that to the word *Dan* (*Codan*, *Cdan* or *Gdan*) was added only the *Slavonian* termination *Ske* which made *Danske* or *GdanSke*, changed afterwards into *Danzick*. The chief part of the City (*Die rechte Stadt*) was built by *Conrad Wallenrodt* Master of the *Teutonic* order about the year 1390. *St. Marius* Church in *Danzick* is the statelyst Fabrick in *Prussia*: having in it forty eight altars and 3722 windows. The font in it was made at *Antwerp*, and cost 24000 *Rixdollars*, or 5400 pound *sterling*. The City is exceeding populous, and a place of the greatest trade in these parts.

The next Island is *Der Marienburger Werder*, the greatest of the three: which takes its name from *Marienburg* a pleasant City on the banks of the *Neget*. The Castle of *Marienburg* was built in the year 1281. It was reckoned the strongest hold the King of *Poland* has, and by the *Preussers* set in competition with the best forts in Christendom; according to their hobbeling verse:

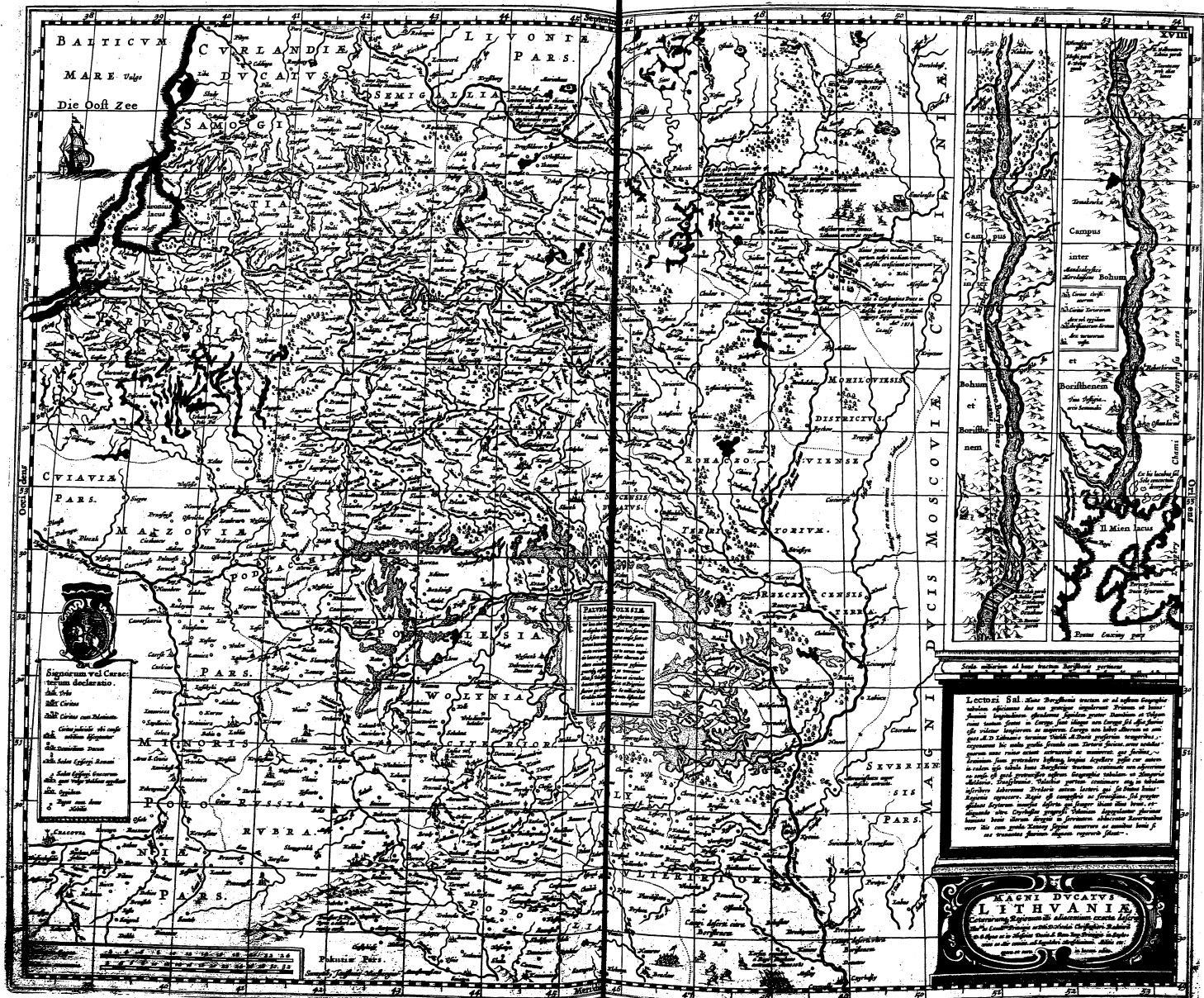
Margenburger ex lato, Offen ex Saxo, ex Marmore Melend.

And *Felix Fidelarus* has given this bold character of it.

Fundamenta latent domibus camerata profundis, Firmior Arctico nulla sub axe jacet.

This old Castle was burnt down in the late *German* wars, and a new one built in its place; short of





of the former, if that deserv'd the *Elogium* they give it. The town it self is but meanly built; most of its houses being wood. The Inhabitants are poor and beggarly. For, though the Island be rich ground, yet it costs near its worth to preserve it from the overflowing of the *Vistula*; which is done by great banks cast up on each arm of the River. The best mead in *Prussia* is made here.

The third Island is *Der Elbingescher Werder*, so called from the City of *Elbing* seated in it. *Protonotary* seems to place his *Elbocones* and *Tacitus* his *Heloecones* near this place: whence *Fridericus Zamelius* takes the liberty to call this City *Augusta Elboconum* and *Elboopolis*, not doubting but it had its name from these ancient people. *Hennebergerus* more probably brings the name from *Oehsing*, *Oelsing* or *Eelsing*, that is, a place where Eels are caught. But *Conringius* (a very learned professor of Physick in the University of *Helmstadt*) with most judgment brings the word from *Elff* which was a common name given by the *Goths* almost to all Rivers: For 'tis certain the *Goths* lived here for some considerable while: though it be but a meer guess to affirm that this was the seat of *Protonotary's* *Elbocones* or *Tacitus's* *Heloecones*. *Elbing*, as it now stands, was built about the middle of the thirteenth Century by the Burgers of *Lubeck*; who prevailed with the Master of the *Teutonic Order* to suffer it to enjoy the same Laws and Privileges which the Emperour *Friderick* the second had granted to *Lubeck*. The Master gave them also for their arms (which the City still bears) two Crosses, and a net out of the arms of *Lubeck*: but in the year 1454 they delivered their laws, liberties, City and themselves into the dominion of the King of *Poland*. The City is well built and very clean. There is in it great store of *Englib* who trade here in cloth: though their number has of late been something abated by the greater concourse of Merchants to *Danzig*. The Country *Rusticks* in the neighbourhood of *Elbing* have as well built houses and as rich clothes as most Noblemen in *Pomerania*; and you can scarce here discern a Bore from a Burger by his habit. The whole Island is a level champagn Country like *Holland*; and as fruitful too and well peopled as any part of that Province, *Amsterdam* excepted.

Prussia Regia.

The other parts of *Prussia*, more immediately subject to the Crown of *Poland*, are the following Cities, all seated on the banks of the *Vistula*.

1. *Derfavia*, or *Dischbau*; called formerly *Zunder-Sau*, because seated on the bank of a small river of that name, which runs into the *Vistula*. It was built in the year 1209; burnt 1433; and utterly destroyed 1577. So that now there is little of it to be found, but ruins.
2. *Marienwerder*, or the City of *St. Mary* in the Island, was built by *Burchard* Burgrave of *Magdeburg* (about the year 1233), who fenced it with walls and a strong Castle. This City has been often in the hands of the Electors of *Brandenburg*; whence, commanding all the Ships that came up and down the *Vistula*, they could easily spoil the whole trade of *Poland*.
3. *Culm*; an ancient and famous City, giving name to that great tract of Land which from it is called *Culmigeria*, or the Land of *Culm*. Most of the *Prussian* writers will have *Culmigeria* to fetch its name from the *Hulmigeri*; ancient inhabitants of these parts. And 'tis as probable the *Hulmigeri* might have their name from *Helm* (easily turn-

ed, according to the idiom of the Northern languages, into *Culm*) which signifies a piece of firm ground among bogges, such as *Culm* is at this day seated upon. The City was built (or rebuilt rather) by *Herman de Balk*, first provincial of *Prussia* in the year 1232. As soon as it was finished *Herman de Salza*, Master of the *Teutonic Order*, gave Laws and Constitutions (*Die Kulfische Handveste*) for its government: a specimen of which ancient Canons is given by *Lambecius*, out of an old *Dutch* Manuscript in the Emperour's Library at *Vienna*. The City at present looks old and ruinous; but is still a Bishop's See. The *Lutherans* were permitted the exercise of their religion in private houses, by a public edict signed and published in this City by *John Melancthon*, Bishop of the Diocesis, the thirteenth of March 1678.

4. *Thorn*; built at the same time with *Culm*, by the Knights of the *Teutonic Order*, for a post against the Heathen *Prussians*; but not in the place where it now stands. Old *Thorn* was seated a mile West-ward from the new; where to this day are found the ruins of an old Castle and City. By whom, and when, new *Thorn* was first founded, is not easily determined: for when in the year 1454 this part of *Prussia* delivered it self up into the hands of the King of *Poland*, the old and new *Thorn* joyned interests, and made up one entire Corporation betwixt them. Whence it hapned, that the records of the new City were neglected and lost. *Thorn* seems to have had its name from the German word *Thor*, a gate; because built by the *Teutonic Order*, as a gate to let in such forces into *Prussia* as they should have occasion for. Hence, the arms of *Thorn* are a Castle and Gate half open. At present this City is the nearest and best built in *Regal Prussia*. The streets are much broader, and the houses statelyer then at *Danzig*. It owes much of its beauty to *Henry Stroband*, Burgo-master of the Town, who died in the year 1609. He built the *Gymnasium* here, and endowed it with a considerable revenue, for the maintenance of several Lecturers, and poor scholars. He founded also the Hospital and public Library; and built a new the Town-hall, which (were it not of late out-done by the *Stadhuis* at *Amsterdam*) might be reckoned the statelyest in *Europe* of its kind.

The rest of this Country (comprehended under the general name of *Ducal Prussia*) is subject to the Elector of *Brandenburg*; and therefore, as a part of the Empire, shall be treated of in the description of *Germany*.

The Great Dalgedom of Lithuania.

Whence this large and noble Country *Lithuania* should have its name, is utterly unknown. 'Tis ridiculous to bring the word from the *Latine Litua*, a hunting-horn; because forsooth the inhabitants are much addicted to hunting. *Erasmus Stella*, an Historian of good credit, tells us, some *Prussians* under the command of *Litva*, one of their Kings sons, came into these parts about the year 573; and called the land, after their Captains name, *Litrana*, or *Litvania*. The *Polish* Historians agree generally in this story; That *Palamon*, flying the fury of *Atrida*, left *Rome*, and came with several *Italians* into this Country, who gave it the name of *La Italia*; which was afterwards corrupted into *Lithuania*. The *Lithuanians* themselves glory in this derivation of the name of their Country; and prove this story of *Palamon* true by the *Roman* names of their Nobles; *Orsin*, *Column*, *Julian*, &c. But this etymology seems too far fetched. *Stella* aims fairst, tho he miss the mark a little. For 'tis cer-

certain, the *Prussians* did conquer this land, and seat themselves in it; tho the additional story of Prince *Litwo* seems feign'd. More likely it is, that the *Prussians* not satisfied with their change, call'd the Country *Lithuania* from *Litwo*, which (in the ancient *Prussian* language) signifies a *vogabond* or wanderer.

Antient inhabitants. The ancient inhabitants are thought to have been the *Alani*; since the *Lithuanians* do still retain some footsteps of the name of this people, in their *Lithalani* and *Roxalani*. But he that shall compare the account which *Ammianus Marcellinus* gives of the manners of the ancient *Alani*, with what the best Authors say of the old *Lithuanians*, will easily perceive that they are not both one Nation. Their language sufficiently proves them to be of the same original with the *Prussians*; and what that is, we told you before.

Alteration of Government. About the year 1235 *Ringeld* (son of *Gimbat*, of the posterity of *Palamon*) is said to have first taken upon him the title of *Great Duke of Lithuania*. In the year 1319, *Gedimin* (who first built *Vilna*) refused to pay homage to the *Russians*; and entering *Novogrod* with an army, took *Volodimir*, and made all *Volhynia* swear fealty to the Magistracy of *Lithuania*. How large the Dukedom is, may appear from the vast territories he left to each of his seven sons at his death. To *Monrold* he gave *Kiermova* and *Slo-min*; To *Narimand*, *Pinsko*, *Mozyr* and part of the Province of *Volodimir*; To *Olgierd*, *Creve* and the Country beyond as far as *Berefine*; To *Kieyslat*, *Samogitia* and the territories of *Troce*, *Lida*, *Opyde* and *Substovania*; To *Coriat*, *Novogrod* and *Volkovisk*; To *Lubart* *Volodimir* and *Volhynia*; To his youngest son *Jazmat*, *Vilna*, *Olsina*, and *Braflaw*; designing him for *Great Duke*. But soon after, when the *Tartars* began to infect *Volhynia* and *Kiow*, *Jazmat* was depol'd, and his brother *Olgierd* made *Great Duke* in his place. He in the year 1331, falls upon the *Tartars*, and in a short time makes himself Master of *Podolia*, which they had kept for some years. About the same time *Demetrius*, Duke of *Moscow*, sent an Ambassador into *Lithuania*, to demand a restitution of all those Provinces which formerly belong'd to the Dukedom of *Russia*. The *Great Duke* immediately upon his arrival commits him to close custody, and marching forthwith in the head of his army towards *Moscow* surpris'd the Duke in his Palace, and forced him to accept of a peace upon this condition; That for the future, the bounds of *Lithuania* should reach as far as *Mosko* and the river *Vizna*. When *Uladislaus Jagello* was chosen King of *Poland*, in the year 1386, he promised, that from thenceforward the *Great Dukedom* of *Lithuania* should be annex'd to that Crown. At the same time the *Lithuanian* and *Russian* Nobility took an oath of allegiance to the King and Queen of *Poland*: which was repeated in the years 1401 and 1414. But this obligation they afterwards shook off. For, when the *Palatines* desired to join *Volhynia*, *Podolia*, and some other Provinces of *Russia*, to their own Kingdom; the *Lithuanians* (loath to part with so fair possessions) oppos'd them with that vehemence, That for several years there was nothing but continual skirmishes between the two Nations. At last, in the year 1566, differences begun to be compos'd; which were finally determin'd A. D. 1569 by articles drawn up, and subscribed to by both parties, in the presence of several Ambassadors of other Nations. The principle Articles agreed upon were these: That the *Lithuanians* should for the future disclaim all right and title to the Provinces of *Podlachia* and *Volhynia*, and the *Palati-*

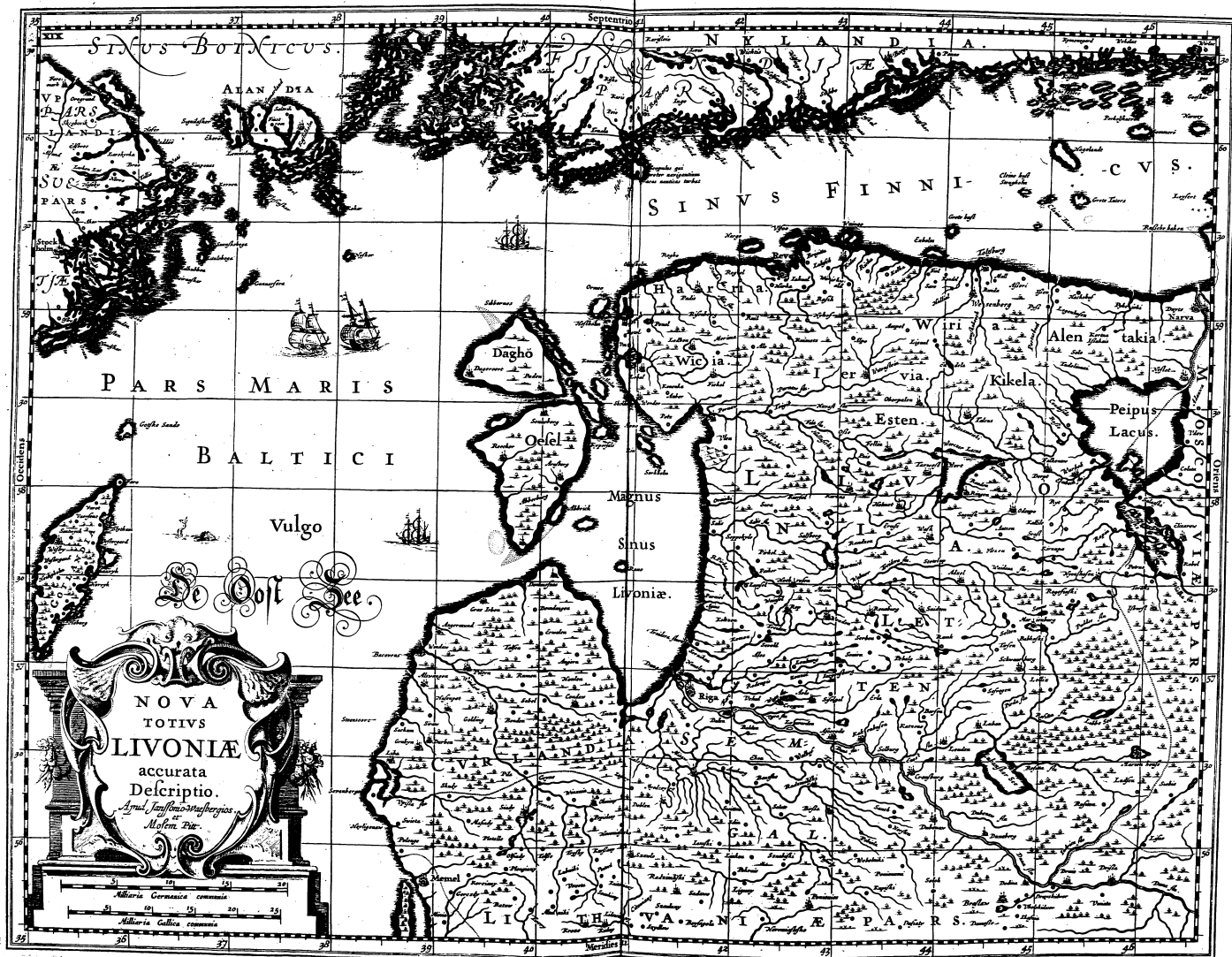
nate of *Kiow*; That they should never by themselves elect a *Great Duke*, but upon a vacancy repair to the place whither they should be summon'd by the Archbishop of *Gnesna* as Interrex of *Poland*; That in every such election the *Lithuanian* and *Polish* Nobility should have equal power in giving of voices; That whoever by a majority of voices of both Nations should be elected King of *Poland*, should at the same time be proclaimed *Great Duke of Lithuania*; That the election should always be had in some place near the confines of both Countries; That the Parliament should sit in *Poland* and *Lithuania* by turns, &c. In the year 1654, the *Moscovites* made many and terrible incursions into *Lithuania*; which were carried on with that success, that A. D. 1655, he took *Vilna*. This hold he kept till the King of *Poland* (having made peace with the *Swedes*, who oppress'd him on the other hand) drove him out, and made him retreat as far as the confines of *Moscow*. However, the war ceased not till, in *January* 1667, a truce for thirteen years was agreed on upon these conditions: That *Polock*, *Vitepski*, *Dunaburg* and the *hither* *Liefland* should return to the *Polander*: Provided, that *Novel*, *Vielisl*, and *Sesib* be excepted from the *Palatinates* of *Polock* and *Vitepski*; That the *Moscovite* should retain *Smolensko*, *Sevir* and all the *Ukraine* beyond *Borisbenes*; That *Kiow* after two years should be restored to the *Crown* of *Poland*; &c. The Country is full of woods and Lakes; Soil which yield good store of Venison and fish. The Forests also afford them great quantities of honey and pitch. The land is tolerably fruitful; but the extreme cold too often spoils their harvest.

The greatest trade of *Lithuania* lies in *Pitch*, *Tar*, and *Timber*: which is transported into *Holland*, and other foreign Nations. For these they receive in salt and Wines. For all other necessities they are well enough provided; being well stocked with great herds of Cattel (though they are not so large as in *Germany* and other their neighbouring Countries) and considerable flocks of sheep. Besides, the woods furnish them with *Ermins*, *Sables*, and all manner of furs, to defend them from the (otherwise intolerable) sharpness of the air.

The *Lithuanians* seem to have natures proportionate to their quality: for the Nobles are as proud and domineering, and the Commonalty as sneaking and mean spirited, here as in any part of *Europe*. The reason of such inequality of tempers, proceeds from the unreasonable slavery that Landlords force their Tenants to undergo. If you have but a good train of attendance, you may uncontrollably plunder any peasant's house in the Land: and, if you please, give him a kicking into the bargain. He dares not open his mouth, except to give you thanks for giving over when you are weary. They are bound to serve the Lord of the Mannor five or six days in the week; and if he spares them (as is usually munday, they must work on saturday for themselves. If any ask them a reason why they labour that day, they will readily reply, *Ought we not to eat on Sundays, as well as other days?* In their wars with *Poland*, they gave a sad testimony of their barbarous cruelty (the usual attendant of a low spirit), by denying quarter to all Captives, ripping up women with child, murdering of infants, &c. They are perfidious to their Pance, and regardless of oaths and promises.

Before *Uladislaus Jagello* brought great numbers of them into *Poland*, and there clad them with woollen, and put shoes on their feet, the *Lithuanians* knew no other clothing, then the raw hides of beasts, linnen, and the inner bark of the Linden-tree. The Nobles indeed wore more





cloth; but their clothes were brought to them ready made out of other Nations. The common people are not yet so much civilized, but that they wear still in many places their ancient apparel.

The *Russicks* eat bread made of the ears of wheat, not winnowed, nor thresh'd. This they call *Duonos*, a gift: (for the same reason that the *Poles* call bread *Bozdyar*, and the *Germans* *Gottes-gab*, the gift of God) and no proverb is more ordinary in the mouths of the *Lithuanians* then,

Dienia dawe dantes, Dosi duonos. i. e.
God that gave teeth, will give bread.

The rest of their diet is flesh, herbs, and roots; of which they have plenty.

The most general drink of the Country, is a kind of Brandy, made of Corn. Besides this, they have some beer, and a sort of mead, boyl'd with Hops; which is kept sometimes an hundred years together in Noblemen's houses. Of late there has been brought hither great quantities of *Spanish* and *French* wines, from *Konigsberg*, and other places near the *Baltick* Sea.

The *Lithuanians* generally (as well in Cities as Villages) speak the *Russian* language: and write all pleadings and proceedings of Courts-judicature in that tongue. However there is a great mixture of *Latin* words in their talk; which seems to confirm the story of *Palemon*. So for *Ignis* they say *ognis*; *unda*, *wanda*; *aer*, *oras*; *sol*, *saul*; *mensis*, *memo*; *dies*, *diena*; *ros*, *rasa*; *Deus*, *Diewas*, *vir*, *viras*, &c. Besides, they have many *Polish* words; though these two languages are not originally the same. The *Latin* tongue is as common here as in *Poland*; and you shall not meet a *Lithuanian* (from a Duke to a plowman) that cannot give you an answer in that language. 'Tis probable the *Greeks* first taught them how to write; for they call letters *Goomata*, *Гѡмѡтѡ*: unless perhaps they had them more immediately from the *Russians*, who use the same word.

No Nation in *Europe* has been more besotted with Idolatry then *Lithuania*. Among the rest of their false Gods they (as well as the ancient *Egyptians*, *Greeks*, *Romans* and *Indians*) were great worshippers of serpents: and many of them continued to till within these few years. Of which *Sigismund*, Baron of *Herberstein* (in *Comment. rer. Moscovit.* P. 84.) tells us this memorable story: "Returning (says he) lately from *Mosovia*, at *Troisk* (a small Town about eight *English* miles from *Vilna*) mine host acquainted me that that year he had chanced to buy a hive of bees of one of these serpent-worshippers, whom he with much ado had persuaded to forsake himself to the worship of the true God, and to kill his adder. Within a while after coming that way he found the poor fellow miserably tortured and deformed, his face wrinkled, his mouth awry, &c. demanding the cause of his misery, he received this answer from him: That this judgment was inflicted on him for killing his God, and that he was like to suffer heavier torments if he did not return to his former worship. Nay to this day here are too great footsteps of this Idolatry: for in many Villages (both in *Lithuania* and *Prussia*) you shall meet with poor Botes that keep Adders in their houses, to which they (though professed Christians) pay a more then ordinary superstitious respect, and fancy some great misfortune will befall them if these *Larva* take any harm. Besides, the ancient *Lithuanians* had an Idol called them *Perenne*, to whom they kept a continual fire burning, with as much caution and di-

ligence as ever the *Vestal* fire was kept at *Rome*. For, if the *Waidela* (or Priest that was to attend the Altar) should happen to let the fire out, he was sure to dy for't. The like ceremonies were performed in remembrance of *Nirn*, one of their Princes, on the top of a high hill near *Dziemalton*. These and many other superstitions they seem to have borrowed from the *Romans*, who came into this country under the conduct of *Palemon*. Hence they used to burn their dead; expecting (saith *Cajalowitz*, part. I. *Hist. Litv. lib. 5. p. 140.*) a resurrection out of the ashes at the coming of a strange God to judge the whole earth from the top of one of their mountains. From these Idolatrous practices they were first converted to Christianity by *Uladislaus Jagello*, their Great Duke; who A. D. 1386 upon his marriage with *Hedwig* Queen of *Poland* turned Christian, and was baptized at *Cracow* by *John* Bishop of that Sec. He is said to have been a very pious and zealous Prince, and exceeding diligent in bringing over the whole Dukedom of *Lithuania* to the Christian religion. At the first he met with no small opposition: but when the King had cut down their tall trees (the Temples of their Heathenish Gods) and no mischief betell him, the people begun to think their Idols would never take this affront, if able to revenge themselves; and therefore they were resolved to listen to their Princes advice. Whereupon, the King immediately built a Cathedral, and founded a Bishoprick, at *Vilna*; and the Queen furnished seven parish Churches in the neighbourhood with Chalice, vestments, and all other necessities for divine service. The *Russians* at that time (as most of them are still) were members of the *Greek* Church: so that the King thought good to forbid marriage with a *Russ* that would not conform to the Church of *Rome*. At this day many *Lithuanians* are of the *Greek* Church, the more of the *Roman*. In *Vilna*, and several other great Towns, vast numbers of the Inhabitants are *Lutherans*.

The whole Dukedom is divided into ten Palatinates; the Metropolis and chief of which is *Vilna*. The next is the Palatinate of *Troisk*; 3. *Min-skoy*; 4. *Novogrod*; 5. *Brest*; 6. *Volinia*; 7. *Kiov*; 8. *Mietzlen*; 9. *Vitebsk*; 10. *Polocko*.

Vilna (called by the Inhabitants *Vilenskij*, by the *Germans* *die Wille*) has its name from the river upon which 'tis seated. The houses are generally low and mean; all of wood, excepting only in some streets where Merchants of other nations, that resort hither for trade, have built themselves more then ordinary gentile ones of stone. Most of the Churches are of stone; some of wood. The suburbs are not built here as at other Cities in *Europe*, but round the walls in a confused and disorderly manner; every man placing his house (which is nothing else but a wooden booth) where he pleases. The citizens are exceeding poor and idle, slaves to their Nobles and their belly. They are taken notice of for great lovers of onions and garlick; which kind of diet (help'd by their smoaky houses) blinds half of them before they arrive at any considerable age. Their excessive intemperance in drinking, breeds continual quarrels among them. If a stranger be kill'd in any such broil, the murderer pays only sixteen dollars as a mulkt. If a *Lithuanian* be slain, and the murderer fly; 'tis usual to preserve the dead corps embalmed till they can apprehend the fugitive, whom they cannot condemn without shewing him the carcase of him he slew. There is not one public hospital in the whole City; though it stands in more need of such a provision then any place in *Europe*; if we judge

judge by the swarms of beggars every street affords. The only piece of neat building is the Monastery of *Bernardine* Monks, all of hewn stone. The *Moscovian* company of Merchants have also a considerably handsome structure built for a repository of Furs, Ermines, and other rich merchandize brought from *Moscow*. The great Dukes Palace has nothing of note in it, but the armory, which is admirably furnished with all sorts of arms and armour, considering that *Lithuania* it self affords no mines of brass or iron. About two *English* miles from *Vilna* the great Duke has another Palace (called from its situation *Wersepia* that is, near the water) built by *Sigismund* King of *Poland*, all of wood, and beautified with a Park, and pleasant orchards, and gardens.

The rest of the Cities of *Lithuania* have little in them observable, save that they give titles to Palatines and Dukes. What numbers there are of these last may be easily guess'd by what is reported of *Vladislaus* once Great Duke, That he had no less than fifty Dukes at once in his army.

Samogitia

This country has its name from its situation, which is low and wet; *Samogitz*, in the language of the inhabitants, signifying a marshy ground: Whence the *Moscovite* calls it *Samozgajemla*.

It is bounded on the North with *Liesland*; on the East and South with the great Dukedom of *Lithuania*; on the West with the *Baltic* sea and some parts of *Prussia*.

A great part of the country is continually overflown with rivers and Lakes, unpassable but in a frost. The rest of it is full of woods, which afford good store of honey, purer and better than any in *Lithuania* or *Liesland*.

The inhabitants differ little from the *Lithuanians* either in manners, habit, or language. They are foolishly ignorant, grossly superstitious and easy to be imposed upon. They use no plough in tilling their ground, but dig it up with spades or picks, as it is usual in some parts of *Moscovy*. When one of their governments, having observed how far his countrymen were outdone in their husbandry by other nations, endeavoured to reach them the art of plowing, it chanced that for two years after their crop was not so rich as formerly it had been; whereupon the people attributing the miscarriage to the new device, grew so enraged, that the government was glad to decry the experiment for fear of an insurrection.

When *Vladislaus Jagello* had converted the greatest part of *Lithuania*, he endeavoured to bring the *Samogitians* to the Christian faith. In pursuance of this resolution he goes himself into this country (buming up their hallowed groves, and destroying the serpents and other creatures they worshipped) with threats and promises made them vowing to abandon their former Idolatry, and worship the true God. And for fear that when his back was turn'd they might relapse into their former heathenism, he found a Bishoprick at *Miedzki*; endowing it with a revenue sufficient for the maintenance of a Bishop and twelve Prebends, who were to officiate at so many parish Churches in and about the City. However, the good King was not so successful in his undertaking, nor his successors so vigilant in the prosecution of his designs, but that to this day many pignoriant Idolaters may be found in the desert parts of this country. These (like the *Lithuanians* spoken of before) worship a four footed serpent, about three hands long, called in

their tongue *Givofit*. Without one of these household gods you shall scarce find a family. If any mischief befalls them, they think 'tis because the little deity has not been well attended. Another piece of heathenish superstition is still retain'd by the *Rusficks*, in the following manner: About the latter end of October they have a general rendezvous of men, women, and children, who bring with them to the place appointed, loaves of bread and vessels full of beer. These they set on a table spread with hay. That done, they bring out a young heifer, a boar and a sow, a cock and hen, with other such cattle and poultry as the house affords, in pairs male and female. When things are thus in readiness, our comes an old Priest or Wizard, who, mumbling over a few hard words, gives the sacrifice a blow with a stick, which stroke is seconded by the whole company till the heifer be dead and beat to pieces. Whilst this ceremony lasts, they cry; *This oblation of thanksgiving we make thee O Ziemniak* (he they call the feigned god) for that it hath pleased thee to preferre us from all the evils of the year past; and we beseech thee to protect and defend us for the future from fire, sword, pestilence, and all our enemies. After this, they take a little of every dish they have provided and put it in four corners of the house, and in the ground, crying aloud, *Accept O Ziemniak our offerings, eat with us and bless*. The solemnity thus over, they spend the rest of that day in feasting and drunkenness.

There is no City or great Town in *Samogitia* of any consequence. *Miedzki* is a poor and despicable City: all the rest scarce meriz the name of villages.

Lithuania and this Province have all along been flarers in the same fortune and change. They were both at once subject to the *Russians*; at once overrun by the *Teutonic* Order; and at once converted from Idolatry and subjected to the Crown of *Poland* by *Vladislaus Jagello*.

Livonia

Livonia, or *Liesland*, is bounded on the East with *Russia*; on the West, with the *Baltic* sea; on the North, with the *Finland*-bay; on the South, with *Samogitia* and some part of *Lithuania*. The length of it is about 500 *English* miles and the breadth near 160.

The country is generally plain and fruitful, abounding with corn and honey: some parts of it are fenny, full of Lakes and rivers.

The many conquests this Land has suffered have made its inhabitants a medley of *Moscovites*, *Swedes*, *Danes*, *Poles*, and *Germans*. But the last have the greatest share in the country; whence the generality speak *High-Dutch*.

The common people are used as hardly here as in *Poland* or *Lithuania*: and the Nobility look it as much. Drunkenness and gluttony are vices the *Lieslanders* are generally addicted to, from the greatest Lord to the meanest peasant. The Bores would be hard put to'to get a living, considering the intolerable drudgery they undergo, if they had not the privilege of hunting hares (of which they have great plenty in these parts, white in winter, and brown in summer), foxes, bears, and other kinds of venison.

'Tis agreed upon by all Authors, that *Liesland* was first annexed to the Crown of *Poland* by *Sigismund Augustus*; though the story is told differently. *Kojalowitz* tells us, that *William* "Furstenberg, Master of the *Liesland* Order of Knighthood, upon his turning *Lutheran* had frequent quarrels with *William* Archbishop of *Riga*; whom he accused, at a session of the Nobility

"Nobility at *Winden*, of a conspiracy of betraying *Curland* into the hands of *Albert* Duke of *Prussia*, and the rest of *Liesland* to *Sigismund* King of *Poland*, his kinsman. Upon this pretence, he immediately enters the Archbishop's territories with an army, and takes him prisoner. "King *Sigismund*, hearing this, wages war with *Liesland*, and A. D. 1557 conquers it. But the reasons of this war seem to be grounded upon better pretensions than these. For (though it be true that there arose many skirmishes between the Archbishop and the Master of the Order, touching points of religion, yet) during *Furstenberg's* government *Joan* Duke of *Moscow*, and not *Sigismund* King of *Poland*, overrun and lay wait the greatest part of *Liesland*. Against whom *Guthard Kestler*, *Furstenberg's* successeur, requested the aid of King *Sigismund*; who quickly beat the *Moscovian* out of his holds, and created *Guthard* Duke of *Curland*, annexing thereto *Liesland* to his own dominions. But he found this country was easier conquer'd then kept. For the *Revolians*, finding themselves unable to withstand the daily incursions of the *Moscovians*, committed their land to the protection of *Eric* King of *Sweden*. Whereupon, this King thought his title to *Liesland* was as good as the *Polanders*: especially, since *Ferdinand* the Emperour had given him the sole charge of defending it. Upon these pretensions he presently routed the *Poles* out of *Habslah*, *Lebele*, *Parnow*, and other places, and put into them garrisons of his own. Besides the *Poles* interest received at the same time another fatal blow upon this occasion: *John* Duke of *Finland* married *Katherine* sister to the King of *Poland*, to whom he lent 80000 (some say 120000) dollars, upon a mortgage of the castles of *Wittenstein*, *Karschke*, *Frichate*, *Helmuth*, *Ermise*, *Raja* and *Bortwick*, all in *Liesland*. Returning into *Sweden* he was accused by King *Eric* his brother of high treason in offering to make a confederacy (as he call'd it) with *Sigismund Augustus* King of *Poland* without his consent. In this rage the King robs his brother of all the castles, and takes them into his own hand: not without the pretence of being more able to defend them from the fury of the *Moscovite*. Not long after, upon the death of *Eric* King of *Sweden* and *Sigismund* King of *Poland*, the Duke of *Moscow* with irresistible force created the great Duke of *Holstein* King of *Liesland*. When the Kings of *Sweden* and *Poland* perceived matters brought to this pass, they thought it high time to lay aside all petit animosities between their two Kingdoms and to join forces against their common enemy the *Moscovite*: fearing lest otherwise whilst they two stood quarrelling for such a shell, he should snatch away the fish. And indeed this confederacy prov'd very successful to the *Swedes*; who, in the year 1580, retook many strong holds from the *Moscovite*: as, *Lode*, *Lebele*, *Habslah*, *Narwe*, the Province of *Wicki*, *Wittenstein*, *Carelogrod*, &c. *Steven* King of *Poland* fearing lest, if the *Swede* went on with the same success and vigour he begun with, he would bring all *Liesland* to his own beck, claps up a peace with the *Moscovite*, unknown to the King of *Sweden*, upon these conditions: That the *Moscovite* should restore all the places he had taken in *Lithuania*; That, on the other hand, King *Stephen* should restore to the Duke of *Moscow* *Vietikoluk* and some other forts he had taken in these wars. After this, when *Sigismund* son of *John* the third King of *Sweden*, was upon the death of *Stephen*, elected King of *Poland*, the *Poles* admitted him upon this condition. That he should annex all that part of *Liesland* which was under his government to the Crown of *Poland*. But *Sigismund* the third coming to be Crown of

Poland

Sweden could not by any means be perswaded to grant this request. When he was deposed from his Kingdom there arose bloody wars between the King of *Poland* and *Charles IX.* whom the *Swedes* had set up King in his place. These *Gustavus Adolphus* continued, and in them overrun almost all *Liesland*, till in the year 1632, a truce was made for six years upon these terms: That in the mean time the King of *Sweden* should enjoy all he had won. This truce was again renewed for 26 years more, A. D. 1635, by the mediation of Ambassadors from the Kings of *England* and *France*, and the States of the *United Provinces*. In the year 1654, whilst a great part of *Lithuania* was laid wait by the *Moscovite*, *Charles Gustavus* King of *Sweden*, before the 26 years were expired, proclaimed war against the King of *Poland*, alleging, among other things, as a reason for his proceedings, That the *Poles* Ambassador at *Stockholm* had protested against his succession to the Crown of *Sweden*. At the beginning the fortune of the war went much on his side; but within a short while the *Danes* making incursions into *Sweden*, forced him to quit *Poland*, and be more concern'd to defend what he had at home, then to seek for new conquests abroad. However the war still continued till A. D. 1660, when, upon the death of *Charles Gustavus*, peace was established between the two Kingdoms at *Oliva*, a Monastery near *Dantzic*, of which these are some of the Articles: That *John Casimir* King of *Poland* should for ever renounce all pretensions to the Kingdom of *Sweden* and Principality of *Finland*; That he should only challenge the title of King of *Sweden* for his life, but not make use of it in any of his letters to the *Swedish* King; That he should deliver up to the *Swedes* all that part of *Liesland* which lies beyond the river *Duna*, and disclaim all right and title to *Elsen* and *Oesel* and whatever on this side the *Duna* was in the hands of the *Swedes* during the truce; That the King of *Poland* should still keep the northern *Liesland*, in which are reckoned *Danzburg*, *Rostien*, *Luzen*, *Marienhafen*, &c.

This country was long subject to Paganism and Idolatry; until about the year 1158 it begun to be frequented by Merchants from *Lubeck*, who got leave of the inhabitants to build a small Chappell in an Island upon the *Duna* (thence called *Kirchholm*) for the exercise of Christian worship. Afterwards *Menard* a Monk of *Segeberg* was consecrated Bishop of *Liesland* by the Archbishop of *Bremen*, and sent over by the Merchants to propagate Christianity in these parts. His feat was at *Uckel* a small village upon the *Duna*, not far from *Riga*. *Bertilodus*, a Monk of *Bremen*, of the order of *St. Paul*, succeeded him in his Bishoprick. He was the first founder of *Riga*, whither he removed his See: but lived not long to enjoy it there. For endeavouring to promote Christianity more by the sword than spirit, he was overcome and slain by the *Pagans*. *Albertus*, *Bertilodus's* immediate successeur, fortified *Riga*, and made it a City. That done, he joyined himself to the order of the *Sword bearers* (an order of Knighthood confirmed by Pope *Innocent* the third about the year 1204) hoping thereby to be better able, then his predecessor had been, to oppose the rage of the *Heathen*. Not long after, when this order was changed into the *Teutonic* order, the Bishop of *Riga*, and the rest of his society subjected themselves to the *Teutonic* Order of *Prussia*. The master of which had power given him to appoint a Provincial of *Liesland*. On the other hand, the *Prussian* Bishops of *Culm*, *Pomefene*, and *Sambland*, did (though not at the same time, as some would have it) advance the power of the Bishop of *Riga*, making him an Archbishop

ff a

and

and themselves his Suffragans. Only the Bishop of Warme, as having never been subject to the Teutonic Order, would not yield to be reckoned a member of the Province of Riga. In this state the Church of Liefland continued for a long time, till (in the year 1513) William Pleitenberg, the XLI Provincial of Liefland, bought off all homage to the Teutonic Order in Prussia, and was himself made absolute Prince of Liefland. His successors lived and enjoyed their dominions in peace till the days of Sigismund Augustus King of Poland: but afterwards (what with foreign and domestic wars, and the continual incursions of the Moscovite, Poland, Swede, and Dane) the Country was brought to be a meer medley of men and religions. At this day those parts are subject to the Dane; and Swedes do generally profess the Lutheran religion. Most of the subjects of the King of Poland adhere to the Church of Rome, though some are Lutherans. In some parts of *Effen* the poor ignorant *Rusicks* are half Pagans.

Liefland was formerly divided into two parts only, *Letten* and *Effen*: to which the order of the sword bearers added *Carland*. Somewhere divided the whole Country into six parts, *Carland*, *Semigal*, *Effen*, *Letten*, *Harland*, and *Vindland*: but *Semigal* is no more than a Province of *Carland*, and *Harland* and *Vindland* parts of *Effen*. Of these, *Carland* is immediately subject to its own Duke: who nevertheless pays homage to the King of Poland. Some parts also of *Letten* (which go under the name of *South Liefland*) are, since the treaty at *Oliva*, in that Kings possession.

The *Caroni*, ancient inhabitants of *Carland* and *Semigal*, are thought by some to be the same with the *Caryones* mentioned by *Prothemy*. There is, not far from *Windau*, a small village which still bears their memory in its name, being by the inhabitants of this day called *Caron*. The most notable places in it are: 1. *Mitau*, the seat of the Dukes of *Carland*, upon the bank of the river *Mausa*, taken by *Gustavus Adolphus* in the year 1621, but restored A. D. 1629. The Town is but mean and inconsiderable, but the Castle magnificently rebuilt by some of the late Dukes. 2. *Windau*, or *Winden*, (as the Germans write it, though the inhabitants call it *Kies*.) Seated on the mouth of the river *Windau*, whence it has its name. Here formerly was the residence of the Provincials of Liefland, afterwards the general Parliament, or great Council, of *Carland* had their sessions in this City; which made it exceeding populous. At this day there is little appearance of its ancient splendor: nor is it frequented by any but a few Dutch Merchants, who are here laden with Tar, Pitch, and Wax. 'Tis mistake very ordinary among the historians that write of this Country, to confound this City with *Wenden* in *Letten*: tellings, that this too is called by the *Polanders*, *Kies*. And the old Dutch sea-carts mention a kind of Castle with three towers upon the mouth of the *Windau*; but never take notice of any sea-port-Town in this place. 3. *Pilten* or *Piltyn*, the seat of the Bishop of *Carland*, built by *Waldemar* King of Denmark A. D. 1219.

The southern, or *Polish* Liefland contains only a few small Towns or villages; among which there is nothing worth taking notice of but *Daneburg*, a Castle (as its name intimates) seated on the river *Duna*.

Volinia, Podolia, &c.

Though the *Polish* dominion reached formerly a considerable way beyond the *Nieper* or *Boristhenes*, taking within its precincts the ter-

ritories of *Kiow* and *Bracław* (which go under the general name of the *Ukrain*, spoken of before); yet, since the treaty ratified between the Grand Seignior and the King of Poland in the year 1677, the whole Country of the *Cofacks* was delivered into the hands of the *Turks*: and the latter *Volinia* is at this day the outmost bounds of the Kingdom of Poland.

Walachia too and *Moldavia* were by *Uladislaus Jagello* annexed to the Crown of Poland; but, soon after his death, his son *Casimir* lost them both back again to the *Turks*. For, when by reason of the continual trouble he had in defending *Prussia* against the *Teutonic Order*, he could not possibly succour those parts, the Palatine of *Walachia* truck up a peace with *Mahomet* upon condition of paying a yearly tribute of 2000 Crowns. Since that time the Palatines of *Walachia* have sometimes sworn fealty to the *Turks*, sometimes to the *Polanders*; but kept their word with neither. Several of the Kings of Poland have been in a condition of repelling themselves of these parts; but, fearing to engage in a war with so potent an Enemy as the Grand Seignior for to mean a stake, they have rather chose to resign them quietly and suffer him still to enjoy them upon condition: That the *Turk* should constitute no Viceroy in these their neighbouring Provinces, but such as was usually descended from the Dukes of *Moldavia*, and consequently of a *Polish* stock: nor should demand any arbitrary, but a certain fixed and determin'd tribute. But these privileges the Poles have now lost; inasmuch that the *Turk* is now absolute Lord of the Country, and governs it by whom, and how he pleases.

But these two Countries could not satisfy the Great *Turk*, who found an occasion to pick a quarrel with the King of Poland, whom he knew himself able to conquer. Wherefore, in the year 1672, advancing further into this Kings dominions with a vast army, he took *Camienec* the best fortress in the Kingdom; and had marched further into the very heart of the Nation, had he not been stopp'd with proposals of peace from King *Michael* upon these terms: That the *Polanders* should quit all title to *Podolia*, and resign it wholly to the *Turks*; That with *Podolia* they should also surrender all pretensions to the *Ukrain*; That they should pay yearly to the Grand Seignior a tribute of 22000 ducats; &c. These conditions (proposed and ratified by the King alone, without the approbation of the Parliament) were looked upon by the whole Nation as too dishonourable to be observed. Wherefore, 'twas resolv'd, they should endeavour to the utmost to recover bravely what their King had so cowardly parted with. Accordingly, towards the latter end of the year 1673, they proclaimed war against the *Turk*, which was carried on with good success under the conduct of *John Sobieski* (the present King of Poland) their then valorous General: who on the 11 of November, discomfited the *Turk's* army, and took the Castle of *Chotin*. After many more bloody engagements, in a war of several years continuance, the peace was at last concluded in November 1676 upon these, and some other conditions: That the *Lipsc-Tartars* should be permitted to remove their goods and families into *Podolia*, and there live subject to the *Turks*; That the *Ukrain* should remain in the hands of the Grand Seignior; That *Polish* Garrisons should be put into *Niemietow* and *Kallin*, and the *Bassaw* of *Camienec* have nothing to do there till matters were adjust'd at the convention of *Ambois* at *Porte*; That *Belozoloz* and *Bialocerkiew* should remain entire in the possession of the *Polander*; That the resignation of *Podolia* should be debated by the *Ambois* at *Porte*;

Porte; That in all places taken by the *Turks* the *Christians* should enjoy the free exercise of their religion, &c. These articles were read and ratified in the Parliament of Poland the 22 day of February A. D. 1677. Since which time the Great *Turk* has not answer'd the expectation of the King of Poland in resigning the Countries he had taken. *Podolia* is doubtless worth seeking after (and too good to be parted with upon slight terms by those who, having made themselves Masters of it by a fair conquest, are able to keep their hold) if what *Maginus* reports of it be true: That 'tis so fruitful, that in one night the *grafs* will hide a rod, and in a few days a plough.

Volinia is as well worth defending as *Podolia* regaining; being a fruitful and plenteous Country, exceedingly well stock'd with corn, sheep, Timber, fish, Honey, &c. Places of greatest note in it are: 1. *Luceria* or *Lusic*, a Bishop's See, first founded by *Ludovic* King of Poland and *Hungary*, about the year 1374. 2. *Obyke*, a seat of some of the Lithuanian Dukes: among whom *John* formerly Duke of this place and *Nieswiele* (with his brother *Nicolas Radzivil*, Marshal of the great Dukedom of *Lithuania*) was made a Prince of the Empire of Germany in the Diet at *Augsburg* A. D. 1547. 3. *Ohrig*, once the seat of Dukes, to whom a great part of this Country was immediately subject: but that line is of late utterly extinct.

The Lesser Poland.

The Lesser Poland lyes on the south of the Greater, from some part of which it is separated by the *Warta*, from others by the *Pilzga*. It is divided in the middle by the *Vistula* (upon which are seated most of its great Towns) and contains in it three Palatinates, of *Cracow*, *Sandomir*, and *Lublin*.

This Province (as all Poland has formerly been) is very woody; which heretofore occasioned so many barbarous robberies as were usually committed under the shelter of their Forests. Inasmuch that, in the year 1450, *Casimir* called an assembly of the Nobles of the Lesser Poland into council of some means to suppress the intolerable thieveries practised among the generality of them, the Nobility not excepted. But, because many of the Grandees of Poland were not at that time satisfied with this King's title to the Crown, nothing could be effectually enacted by his Authority: so that, for a long time Rapines and Murders were encreased rather than diminished. For by these delays of justice the Robbers were come to that strength at last, that (under the conduct of two Noblemen, *Casca Szebowicki* and *John* his brother) they had fortified the mountain *Zebrac* near *Oswenskim*, and several other places; whither such armies of *Ruffians* continually flocked, as could not afterwards be suppressed without a deal of bloodshed and hazard of the whole Country.

Cracow (the Metropolis of this Province and the whole Kingdom of Poland) is seated on a rocky bank of the *Vistula*. 'Tis said to have had its name from one *Cracus*, *Gracus*, or *Gracibus*, whom the *Polanders* (so they themselves say, though the *Bohemian* writers will needs make him one of their Princes) set over them as soon as they grew weary of the twelve Palatinates, who took the government into their hands upon the death of *Lechus* the first. Others think it the same with *Prothemy's* *Caradunum*, corrupted into *Cracow*. This City (as 'tis the largest, so it is) the best built of any one in Poland. *Cromer* sets it in competition with the best built Cities of Germany or Italy: but we must allow him to stretch

a little more than ordinary in commendation of his own Country. The houses are for the most part of free-stone, and four or five stories high; but covered with boards instead of slate. There are in it a considerable company of Italian and German Merchants, who bring in such foreign wares as the Country stands in need of. It consists (like *London* and *Paris*) of three parts: 1. *Cracow*, properly so called, or the ancient City: 2. *Cazimira*, joynted to the rest by a wooden bridge cross the *Vistula*: 3. *Stradomia*, which lyes between *Cracow* and the bridge. The King's Palace is seated on the top of an high hill; whence it overlooks both City and Country. 'Twas rebuilt in the magnificent posture it now stands by *Sigismund* the Elder; who added the gallery on the north side, from whence you have one of the best prospects in Europe. The University of *Cracow* was first begun by *Casimir* the Great, finished by *Uladislaus Jagello*, in performance of the last will and testament of his Queen *Hedwig*, and had its privileges confirmed to it by Pope *Urban* A. D. in the year 1549; the scholars of *Cracow* by a general consent left the University (upon an affront put on them by the Magistrates of the City, who refused to execute justice upon the servants of *Andrew Czarnkowski*, when in a quarrel they had slain a great number of students), and dispersed themselves into several parts of Germany, whence returning Lutherans, they spread themselves to opinions all Poland over, and got great numbers of proselytes. Upon the first planting of Christianity in this Kingdom (*Miecislavus* the first, who begun his reign in the year 964) *Cracow* was made an Archbishopric. But, within a hundred years after, *Lampert* *Pala* refusing to receive his Pall from the Pope of Rome as his predecessors had done before him, it degenerated into a Bishoprick. Afterwards (in the reign of *Boluslaus* the chaff, which begun A. D. 1226) a contest arising between *Two* Bishops of this Diocess and the Bishop of *Vratislav*, about precedence, the Bishop of *Cracow*, upon his submissive appeal to the See of Rome, was again restored to the dignity of an Archbishop: which only lasted during his life. At this day the Bishops of *Cracow* wear an Archbishop's Pall, set richly with jewels; which is the only relique they have of their ancient honour.

The next Palatinate of the Lesser Poland, is that of *Sandomir*. The City is seated on the bank of the *Vistula*; and fortified with walls and a Castle, both built by *Casimir* the Great: who afterwards dyed of a surfeit, by eating too freely of the fruits of this Country, which are reckoned the fairest and best in Poland. Here is nothing else worth the taking notice of, save the Monastery of Dominican Friars founded by *Two* Archbishops of *Cracow*.

The Palatinate of *Lublin* was taken out of that of *Sandomir* (as being too big for the jurisdiction of one Palatine) by *Casimir Jagello*. The City is not very large, but well built and much frequented (especially in the Fairs kept three times a year) by Christian, Jewish, and *Turkish* Merchants. 'Tis much better fortified by the marshes which environ it, than its walls: and more beholden to nature for its defence than either *Casimir* the Great, who walled it round, or the *Russians*, who built the adjoining Castle. The great Church in it was built by *Lefus* the black, upon a great conquest obtain'd against the *Lithuanians* near this City, and dedicated to *St. Michael*, who in a vision the night before the battle had promised him good success. *St. Bridget's* Monastery, among many other magnificent ones, was founded by *Uladislaus Jagello*. One of the

the two chief Courts of Judicature (from which no appeal lies, save to the Parliament of Poland) is kept at *Lublin*. Hither, for judgment in controversies of any great moment, repair the Palatinates of *Cracow*, *Sandomir*, *Russia*, *Podolia*, *Lublin*, *Belze*, *Pollaffia*, *Volhynia*, *Bracław*, *Kiew*, and *Czerembow*: or, at least, so many of them as are still subject to the Crown of Poland.

Of other Countries and Provinces to which the Kings of Poland have formerly pretended a title by conquest, contract, or otherwise.

BEfides the places mentioned, and at present subject to the Crown of Poland, the Kings of that Nation have from time to time lay'd claim to many and large Territories now in the hands of other Princes. Omitting *Bohemia*, *Moravia*, *Wagria*, *Mifnia*, and the Dukedoms of *Ragen*, *Mecklenburg* and *Lunenburgh* (which, whatever some of the *Polish* writers assert and endeavour to make good, were very little, or not at all subject to the *Crown of Poland*, who was the only King that ever could plausibly pretend a title to any part of them) we shall confine our discourse to those Countries to which the *Polonian* Princes may seem to have had a more just and legal title.

Silesia.

That all (or most of) *Silesia* was part of the Dukedom of Poland, in the days of *Lechus* the first, and several of his successors, is highly probable, from the writings of *Adam Bremenfis* and *Helmodus*; who both of them make the river *Oder* the bounds of Poland. Besides, the *German* Chronologists tell us, that *Charles* the Great, *Ludovicus Pius*, and other Emperors conquer'd the *Silesians*, and made them tributary to the Empire. But the *Polish* Historians (upon what grounds I know not) are generally positive in asserting, that *Silesia* was always, without any such intermission or conquest as the Germans strive to make out, a part of the *Polish* dominions. Only *Vincencius Kadlubek* agrees with the Germans, affirming, That *Boleslaus Chrobri* (amongst his many other conquests) regain'd *Scelucia*, as he calls it, and left it annexed to the Crown of Poland. After his time we find that *Casimir* the first translated the Bishoppick of *Piscine* to *Vratiflaus*: whence 'tis manifest, that in his days *Silesia* was part of the Realm of Poland. Not long after, *Henry* the IV, Emperour of Germany (in the Diet at *Munster* A.D. 1086) made over *Silesia*, *Lusatia*, and indeed all Poland, to *Vratiflaus* King of *Bohemia*: though, as *Cromer* says, he had no right to a foot of land in any of them. Whereupon ensued a bloody war betwixt the *Bohemians* and *Poles*: wherein it is to be conjectured, the latter had the better, since all Historians agree, that *Silesia* was under the King of Poland's government during the whole reign of *Boleslaus* the third. His son *Vladiflaus* the second, being deposed by his brethren, who were left Co-heirs with him in the Kingdom, fled first to the Emperour *Frederick* the first, who brought *Boleslaus Crispus* (Duke of Poland and brother to *Vladiflaus*) to such straits, that he was forced to resign all *Silesia* into the hands of his brother's children: but upon condition they should still pay homage to the Princes of Poland. From that time the *Polanders* began to sleight and hate the *Silesians*, seldom calling any of the *Silesian* Nobility to Councils of Parliament, and balking the right succession, if any of this Province had a just title to the Crown. These jealousies and quarrels were fomented and increased by *John* King of *Bohemia* (son to the Emperour *Henry* the seventh) who by this means whiddled the Dukes of *Silesia*

into his yoke; and afterwards forced *Casimir* the Great to resign the supreme government of that Province into his hands. After this the *Poles* (though they had frequent skirmishes with the *Bohemians*, yet) never regain'd any considerable footing in *Silesia*. For, excepting the small territory of *Wschowia* (retaken by *Casimir* the Great A.D. 1343) and some other parcels of ground annexed to the estates of several Bishoppicks and Abbeyes in Poland, *Silesia* is at present wholly subject to the King of *Bohemia*.

Lusatia was once conquer'd by *Boleslaus Chrobri*; but soon after lost again. For (though when *John* King of *Bohemia* subdued *Silesia*, *Lusatia* was reckoned a part of that Country, and has ever since continued, yet) the *Polanders* claim'd no more of it, as Lords of *Silesia*, then a few frontier Towns: the rest was under the Marquesses of *Mifnia* and *Lusatia*, Princes of the Empire, as *Gallastus* proves.

'Tis without all authority of Annals, what some of the *Polish* writers have endeavour'd to make out by Erymologies, that the greatest part of the Marquissate of *Brandenburgh* was formerly subject to the Princes of Poland. That *New Mark* indeed (or, at least, a good share of it) was theirs, is beyond all controversy: since, as the best Historians witness, *Miciflaus* or *Mifcio* (the first Christian Duke of Poland, towards the latter end of the tenth Century) first founded the Bishoppick of *Lubus*. This City was taken from the *Polanders* by the Emperour *Henry* the second, but recovered by *Boleslaus* the first, King of Poland. His successors kept it till the year 1109, when it was again taken by the Emperour *Henry* V, who gave it to *Adelgot* Archbishop of *Magdeburg*. But soon after it return'd into the hands of the *Poles*. When *Silesia* was, as we have said, divided among the sons of *Vladiflaus* the second, the territories of *Lubus* devolved into the hands of the *Silesian* Dukes, whence it happened within a short while after to be made a part of the Marquissate of *Brandenburgh*. *Cromer* says, 'twas mortgaged by *Boleslaus* the bald; and never redeem'd. But *Dlugoffus* (ad ann. 1198), tells us, 'twas sold by *Boleslaus*, son to *Henry* Duke of *Vratiflaus*. From that time the Kings of Poland have had very little to do in *New Mark*; and, at present, have not one foot of land in it. *Vladiflaus* Jagello brought it wholly under his power, but his son found it too hot service for him to keep it, and was therefore fain to resign it up to the Marquess *John* *Casimir* (their late King) parted with the last stake, by delivering up the Town and Castle of *Drabim* to the present Elector of *Brandenburgh* in the treaty at *Bydgosz* in the year 1657.

That the *Slavonians* were ancient inhabitants of *Pomerania* is undeniably true. *Pomerania* (in the *Slavonian* language) signifies near the sea; whence *Vincencius Kadlubek*, an ancient and judicious *Polish* writer, uses frequently the word *Maritima* for *Pomerania*; and, speaking of this Country, these phrases are ordinary with him: *Maritima Prefectus*, *Maritima Dux*; *Ingressus est Maritimum*; &c. But whether or no the *Polanders* were matters of *Pomerania*, immediately upon the entrance of the *Slavonians*, is a grand question: which the *Poles* affirm, but the *Pomeranians* deny; and 'tis hard to decide the controversy between them. *Helmodus*, agreeing (as it should seem) with the latter, places *Pomerania* amongst the free *Slavonian* Provinces, lying without the bounds of the *Polish* dominions. And, before his days, *Adam Bremenfis* gives us the same account. *Micellius* (an Historian of good credit, lib. 2. *Chron. Pomeran.* ann. 46. p. 191.) is of opinion, that the first entrance which the *Polanders* made upon *Pomerania*

was in the tenth Century; when the Emperour Otto III. authorized *Boleslaus Chrobri*, King of Poland, to make war upon, and bring into his subjection, the *Prussians*, *Pomeranians*, *Wendi*, and *Ruffians*. Which done, the Emperour (at a visit given King *Boleslaus*) made the Bishop of *Culberg* a Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Gnesna*. In the beginning of the eleventh Century, *Miciflaus* II. spread his dominions all over *Casubia* and the Eastern *Pomerania*; putting Garrisons into all the Forts and Castles between the *Perlands* and the *Vistula*, and committed the government of them to *Bela*, the King of *Hungary*'s brother. But, upon *Bela*'s return into *Hungary*, *Pomerania* shook off the *Polish* yoke, and only was subject to Dukes of its own, till *Swantibor* surrendered it again to *Boleslaus* III. Duke of Poland, upon condition he would free him from prison; to which his own subjects had committed him. After *Swantibor*'s death, the Dukedom of *Pomerania* was divided amongst his four sons; whereof two (who were Dukes of the Western *Pomerania*, from *Calberg* as far as the *Marck* and the Dukedom of *Mecklenburgh*) were admitted Princes of the Empire by *Frederick* *Barbarossa*: the other two were forced to yield themselves subjects to the Crown of Poland. But the *Pomeranians*, soon weary of bondage, revolted once more from the King of Poland: and perhaps had for ever rejected his government, had not *Mestwin* their Duke (wanting still) endeavour'd to subject them to the Dukes of *West Pomerania*. For, looking upon the people of that Country as meer strangers (being indeed three parts of them *German*) they chose rather to give themselves up into the hands of their acquaintance, than to be slaves to an upstart and foreign Nation. Whereupon, they unanimously swore fealty to *Premislaus* II. King of Poland; who took upon him the title of Duke of *Pomerania*, and quarter'd his Coat with (the Arms of *Pomerania*) the Gryphins. By this means the Kings of Poland became sole Lords of the Eastern *Pomerania*.

In the year 1460, *Casimir* Jagellonides (trained in the wars he was engaged in against the *Teutonic Order* in *Prussia*) committed the Cities and Castles of *Lauenburgh* and *Dantz*, to the trust of *Eric* II. Duke of *West Pomerania*; whose successor *George* (son of *Bugislaus* X. and Nephew to *Sigismund* I. King of Poland) had these Cities confirmed to him and his posterity, upon condition of paying some sleight acknowledgment to the Crown of Poland. Upon these terms the present Elector of *Brandenburgh* renewed his title of these places (after the usual fashion) by his Ambassador, in the year 1670.

What right the *Polanders* have at this day in *Prussia*, we have shew'd before: but formerly their pretensions were much greater then now. Sometimes the Duke of *Maljovia* Lorded it over the *Prussians*, and made the Master of the *Teutonic Order* his Vicergerent. But in the treaty made between *Sigismund* I. King of Poland, and *Albert* Marquess of *Brandenburgh* (whom the Knights of the *Teutonic Order* had made their Master) in the year 1525, it was agreed upon, that the *Teutonic Order* should be wholly extirpated, and that part of *Prussia* which (to this day) is called *Ducal Prussia*, should be govern'd by the said Marquess, with the title of "Duke of *Prussia*," and the rest (or *Regal Prussia*) remain still subject to the King of Poland. But with this proviso, That the Duke should always pay homage to the Crown of Poland, and (as a member of that Kingdom) be President of the Kings Council. Lastly, *John* *Casimir* (the late King of Poland) granted, first in the

year 1657, and again 1663, full and absolute power and dominion over *Ducal Prussia*, to the present Elector of *Brandenburgh*, on this condition, That the Dukedom, upon defect of male issue, should return to the Kings of Poland as supreme Landlords, and be conferred on the Dukes of *Onulbach* and *Culmbach*, as Feudataries.

How affairs stand at present between the Great Duke of *Muscovy* and the King of Poland, may appear by the Treaty of Peace signed by both parties A.D. 1667, spoken of before. But formerly the Kings of Poland have laid claim, and made good their title either by justice or the sword, to several large Territories now in the hands of the Great Duke. For first, *Jorislaus* Duke of *Russia* was forced to pay tribute to *Boleslaus Chrobri*, A.D. 1018. Afterwards, A.D. 1059, *Boleslaus* II. possessed himself of *Kiew*, and indeed the whole Dukedom of *Russia*; over which he set *Jeflaus* a tributary Duke. After his death, continual wars were between the two Nations, till *Casimir* the Great, in the year 1340, reduced the Southern *Russia* into the form of a Province. But how little of that remains at this day in the hands of the present King of Poland, we have shew'd before.

Several of the Kings of Poland have stiled themselves Kings of *Sweden*; upon no other pretence then having made themselves masters of a great part of *Liefland*. But this title ceased upon the death of *John* *Casimir*, their late King; as hath already been observed in the description of *Liefland*.

Of the Pretensions of Foreign Princes to the Kingdom of Poland.

WE have seen to what Kingdoms and Countries the Kings of Poland have in former ages claimed a right and title; and we may perhaps find as many Kings and Princes of other Nations who have challenged the Crown of Poland upon as good grounds.

But (to omit the many conquests obtain'd by the *Russians*, *Bohemians*, *Hungarians*, and others, over the *Poles*, enough to entitle any potent Prince to their Kingdom) the strongest pretensions to this Crown, are those of the Emperour. For the moit of the *Polish* Historians tell us, That *Boleslaus* I. was created King of Poland by the Emperour Otto III. before which time the Princes of that Nation were only Dukes. This story is confirmed by (besides the testimony of the moit considerable writers of Poland) an ancient Epitaph found in the Cathedral at *Posen*; in which (among other commendations of *Boleslaus* I.) are the following rithmes:

*Tu possedisti, velut Athleta Christi
Regnum Slavorum, Gothorum seu Polonorum.
Cesar precellens a te Ducalia pellenis.*

And again:

*Ob samam bonam tibi contulit Otto Coronam
Propter laudamen, sit tibi salus. Amen.*

However (tho the Historians of Poland grant, that *Boleslaus* received the title of King at the hands of the Emperour, yet) they deny stubbornly that this Kingdom was ever subject or tributary to the *Roman* Empire. But *Coringius* (an ingenious and learned German Physitian) in his book entitled, *De finibus Germanici Imperii*, c. 13.) has demonstrated the contrary. For (not to take notice of *Charles* the Great, who, 'tis more than

probable, conquer'd Poland as well as Silesia) is certain, that *Miecislav*, the first Christian Prince of Poland, paid tribute to the Imperial Crown. And the Polish writers are forced to confess, That *Otto III.* remitted all homage (due otherwise) to *Boleslaus Chrobri*, when he created him King. After *Boleslaus*'s death, *Miecislav II.* his successor, was compelled to pay the usual tribute to the Emperor *Conrad II.* After this, several of the Kings of Poland very willingly submitted themselves to the Emperors; and others were forced out of their obstinate refusal. At last (in the long vacancy of the Imperial Throne, soon after the middle of the thirteenth Century, during which *Richard* Earl of Cornwall was one of the four elected Emperors) whilst the Empire of Germany was in a confused distraction, the Poles took occasion to shake off the German yoke, to which they could never since be reduced.

* This is part of the relation which *Covingius* gives us of the ancient state of Poland, in reference to the German Empire, founded chiefly upon the testimonies of *Dithmarus Mersburgensis* and *Helmodus*, men of unquestionable veracity in their Histories. *Hartknob* endeavours to evade the force of his argument by saying: "That (tho' it be true, that the Poles have formerly paid some certain sum of money to the Emperors, by whom it was demanded under the notion of a tribute, yet) this does not necessarily suppose any dependence of the Crown of Poland upon the Empire of Germany. For 'tis ordinary even with the Emperors themselves to buy peace with money. And thus the English bought their peace of the Danes, and made Lewis XI. King of France, pay for his. But let him consider: First, whether the words of *Helmodus* (*Chron. Slav. lib. 1. c. 1. num. 9.*) can be properly understood of any such sum of money as is usually paid by any Nation upon the ratification of a Treaty of Peace, when he says, *servit & ipsa* (speaking of Poland) *sicut Bohemia sub*

tributo Imperatorie Majestati. Here the Historian tells us plainly, the Kingdom of Poland was in his time as much tributary to the Emperor as Bohemia; and how truly that was under his subjection, every Historian will shew. Again, 'twas not very considerably done to instance in the tribute paid by the English to the Danes, or by Lewis XI. to the King of England. For both these were doubtless acknowledgments of subjection and homage. The Danes, all know, were absolute Lords of our Land for 26, and made almost continual incursions into it for the space of 250 years. *Dane-geld* (which perhaps *Hartknob*, as some of our own Historians have done, mistakes for a tribute, or composition-money, paid the Danes upon any invasion) was at first only a Subsidy, gather'd for the maintenance of a standing army to oppose the Danish fury. Afterwards indeed the word was used to denote a tribute (sometimes amounting to 72000 pounds) levied yearly in England, and paid to the King of Denmark; upon the refusal of which payment, the English were sure to feel the weight of that Kings displeasure. This tribute was certainly a sign of a true and real subjection to the Crown of Denmark; which might have lasted longer, had not the Saxon and Danish lines been peaceably united in the pious King *Edward the Confessor*. As to the tribute paid by Lewis XI. of France to the King of England, I shall say no more then, That 'tis well known upon what grounds our Kings (especially *Henry V.* and *Henry VI.*; the latter of which was Crowned King of France in Paris) pretended a title to the Crown of France before his days; and what reason they had to demand a tribute. So that *Hartknob*'s argument drawn from these two examples, amounts to no more than this, That the Emperors of Germany had never any more title to the Crown of Poland, then the Danish Kings have had to the Throne of England, or the English to the Scepter of France: And what kind of pretensions those were, Historians can inform us.





S W E D E N.

SCANDIA, or *Scandinavia*, (probably so nam'd from the ancient Inhabitants, who call'd themselves *Schaanaw* or *Shane*; tho' *Junius* thinks it may be very well so called from the ancient word *Schans*, signifying a Fortification, the situation

of the Country being well fenced), by the *Greeks* *Baltia* or *Basilia*, is a large Peninsula, lying betwixt 55 and 72 degrees of Northerly Latitude, and about 25 and 65 of Longitude. It is bounded on the West and North by the vast Ocean, on the East by part of *Muscovy* and the *Sinus Finnicus*, and on the South by the *Baltick* Sea, which Peninsula was inhabited by divers Nations, as the *Suiones* or *Sueci*, *Queni*, *Northmanni*, &c. and was accounted the store-house of men, and original of thirty potent Nations, dispers'd into most parts of the habitable world. But we shall now at this time speak only of the principal part of it, situated toward the most Easterly point, wherein is the seat of a great and powerful Empire, which has of late spread it self very largely out of this Peninsula; commanded by the King of *Sweden*. His dominion comprehends all from the Frozen Sea on the North; the *Dofrine* Hills or Scars on the West; the Lakes *Ladoga* and *Omego*, and part of *Russia*, on the East; and the *Sund* or *Oresund*, and the *Baltick* Sea, on the South. Omitting for the present the new Accessions in *Lithuania*, &c. of which in due place.

That we may speak distinctly of this great Empire, we will begin first of all with the North; which is inhabited by a sort of people call'd *Laps* or *Laplenders*. All which notwithstanding are not subjects of the *Suede*; the Easterly parts being under the *Muscovite*, and the Westerly under the *Dane*; however we shall speak of them indistinctly, their manners, language, and customs being the same in all.

1. *Muscovitch Lapland*, called by the ancient Geographers *Biarmia*, at present by the *Suedes* *Trennis*, by the *Russes* *Tarchanvoloch*, and by the Natives *Pyhinienni*, takes in all the maritime tract of ground which lies from about *Kola* to the White Sea. It is divided into three parts, or Provinces: 1. *Mowmanskey*, or maritime *Leporie*. 2. *Tersja*, or *Tersky Leporie*. And 3. *Bellamoresky Leporie*. The exact description whereof is not accurately known to us.

2. *Norwegian Lapland*, formerly called *Scrickfinia*, by *Jornandes* *Scretsefinia*, now *Finnmark*, or the Province of *Wardhuus*; runs all along the *Norwegian* shore from the Lake *Tornetresk*.

near the *Dofrine* Hills, to the Cattle of *Wardhuus*; but how much more Easterly is not exactly discover'd to us. All this Province, or Lieutenantancy, belongs to the Crown of *Denmark*.

3. *Swedish Lapland*; or, as the *Suedes* call it, *Lapmark*. It contains all that most Southern and inland part of *Lappia*, from the Province of *Hel-Singia* in *Sweden*, to the Lieutenantancy of *Wardhuus*, or quite to the North Sea. It is counted by some to be of equal extent with almost all *Sweden* properly so called. *Andr. Buræus* says, it contains in length above four hundred *Englisch* miles, and in breadth three hundred and sixty. This *Lapland* is divided into six lesser parts, or Provinces, called *Marker*, i.e. Lands; all which have their names from the most remarkable Rivers that run thro' each of them.

1. The first and most Northerly of all is *Torne*. The Province of *Lapmark*, extending it self from the furthest corner of the Bay of *Bothnia*, all along or near to the *Swedish* North Sea, call'd by our Sea-men *North-Cape*.

2. Next to this, lies *Kimlapmark*, winding from the North toward the East, and bounded on one side by the Eastern *Bothnia*, on another by that part of *Lapland* which belongs to *Russia*, and on a third side by *Cajania* and *Cavelia*.

3. West of *Tornelapmark* lies *Lulapmark*, which has on the West-side the *Dofrine* Hills, and also on the South.

4. *Pithalapmark*, a Province very mountainous and barren.

5. Next to this *Umalapmark*, bounding (as the former) upon the West *Bothnia* and the *Dofrine* Hills.

6. South of which lies *Angermundlandslapmark*, bordering upon *Angermundia* and *Temptia*; tho' *Angermundlandslapmark* and *Umalapmark* are by many Authors reckon'd for one, because they are both govern'd by one Lieutenant, yet are they distinct Provinces.

Each of these Provinces are (according to the ancient manner of the Country) subdivided into lesser parts, call'd by the *Suedes* *Byar*, and are equivalent to our Shires, and the *Pagi* *vicar* or *verger* of the Ancients, which were not Villages or Country Towns, but large parts of a Country. There are several of these Shires or *Pagi* in each Province, except *Angermundlandslapmark*, which makes but one *Pagus*, vulgarly called *Aofabla*. *Umalapmark* hath four; *Uma*, *Lais*, or *Raamby*, *Granby*, and *Vapsteen*. *Pithalapmark* hath seven; *Graotresky*, *Arseversky*, *Lochely*, *Arrieplogby*, *Wiforsky*, *Norversky*, *Westerky*. *Lulapmark* hath five; *Jachmoch*, *Sachjoch*, *Tapijaur*, *Zerkislocht*, and *Rautomjaur*. *Tornelapmark* hath nine; *Tingewaara*, *Siggewaara*, *Sondewara*, *Ronolaby*, *Pellejersky*, *Kiedjersky*, *Musjalka*, *Soodankyla*, and

and *Kithilaby*. So that all the territories are divided into thirty-three *Byars*. In each of these there are several *Clans*, or Families, which the Swedes call *Raher*. In the *Byar* called *Astjala* there are about thirty, in others more or less according as they are in bigness and fertility, distinguishing by several names, each of which have a certain allotment of ground assigned them for the maintenance of themselves and their Cattel; not in the nature of a country Farm, but of a very great length and breadth, so as sometimes to contain Rivers, Lakes, Woods, and the like, which all belong to one *Clan* or Family, who enjoy it all in common, without appropriating it to several persons.

And thus much for the division of *Lapland*, not lately made (except that under *Charles IX.* some *Clans* had certain allotments assigned them) but derived from very ancient time, as appears from hence, that neither the *Laplenders* have known, nor the *Swedes* given them any other since the country has been under their subjection; and it may not seem improbable, that this manner of possessing was begun immediately after the Flood; propriety being the effect of population.

The Inhabitants, and their Original.

The inhabitants of this *Lapland* (supposing the *Norwegian* and *Masconic* *Laps* to be of the same original and extract) are said to have descended from the race of the *Finlanders* and *Samiels*; as may probably be gathered from the likenesses of their customs, language, and manner of worship; and also from the very name of *Laplenders*, i.e. *banish'd* men, or *Runnagado's*, for they are said to have been driven out of *Finland* once by the *Tatars*, when they extended their dominions as far as the *Lake Ladoga*; and afterwards by the *Swedes*. And because such deserting of their Country was thought a disgrace to the whole Nation, none of the *Laplenders* of any quality to this day will endure to be called by that name, but give themselves some other appellation, as *Samieladiti*, *Sameednan*, &c.

And this opinion, that they took their original from the *Finlanders*, or rather were original of the same Nation with them, seems to be confirmed by those descriptions ancient Geographers give of *Finland* and the *Finlandish* people, agreeing exactly to the modern *Lapland* and its inhabitants. *Saxo* says, that the *Finlanders* are the farthest people toward the North, living in a Climate almost uninhabitable, good archers and hunters, wanderers and of an uncertain habitation; wherever they kill a beast making that their mansion; and they slide upon the snow in broad wooden shoes; all which holds true of the *Laplenders*; as also do those descriptions of *Finland* set down by *Tacitus*, and *Ptolemy*. Besides all this, the *Norwegians* and *Danes* call the *Laplenders* *Finni*, or *Finlanders* in general; and divide the whole Nation into *Sioefmar*, i.e. *maritime Finlanders*, and *Lappesfmar*, the same with the *Laplenders*. The *Russes* also call them *Kajienki*, as coming from *Cajania*, a Province in *Finland*.

And as we may hence probably conclude the *Laplenders* at first to have come out of *Finland*, so we may believe that the *Finlanders* more than once march'd out into *Lapland*; which is evident from the several names of their Leaders, whom some call *Thims-Rogge*, others *Mieschogiesche*. The first and most ancient transmigration was that of the *Biarmi*, whom some mis-call *Seridjinni*, so called from their going to dwell upon the mountains *Varana*, signifying in their language a hilly country. Which people was by *Harald Harfager* King of *Norway*, almost all de-

stroyed in battle, and the Nation so scatter'd, that for ever after both the name and credit of the *Biarmi* was quite abolished and forgot.

The second time of their deserting their Country, was when the *Russians* enlarged their Empire as far as the *Lake Ladoga*, which was about the sixth age after Christ. For fearing the cruelty of these people they retired into *Lapland*, and were called by the *Russians* *Kajienki*, for the reason aforesaid. To confirm what has been said, give me leave to insert here a Testimony greater than all exceptions, that is of the worthiest of all Princes *Alfred* the Great, who having himself represented *Orofius*, or an ancient Geographer and Historian in his own *Saxon* Language, so as to add supplies where he is defective, gives an account of these Northern Shores out of the Relation of a *Norwegian* Nobleman employed by himself for the discovery of these Countries. The Testimony being more authentic than any one that hath written upon this subject for long ago, we shall here set it down almost verbatim. *Otherus* said to his Lord *Alfred*, that himself lived in the very Northernly part of *Norway* in the Country called *Halgoland*, that Northwards of this Country was desert; except some few places wherein a few *Finni* lived in Winter upon hunting, and in Summer upon fishing; that having sail'd Northward and Easterly with a good gale for seven days, he arrived at a great River, on the right hand whereof was the Country of the *Ferfumi*, which was thinly inhabited by a few *Fowlers*, *Fishers* and *Hunters*; on the other side were the *Biarmi*, a populous Nation, so that he durst not land amongst them; that they discourt'd with him many things concerning their Country, whether true or false he knew not, but supposed that they speak the same language with the *Finni*. That near this Country was the great fishing for *Whales* and *Sea-horses*, (which we call *Morses*) whose teeth were then accounted of great value.

But there seems to have been another more general migration of these *Finni* into *Lapland*, about the year 1150; and till this time we never find them called *Lappi* or *Loppi*; and the occasion of this name seems to be about that time *Ericus Sanctus* King of *Sweden* subdu'd the *Finlanders* and brought them under the *Swedish* Government, and also planted amongst them the Christian Religion; whereupon they being subjected to Strangers, and forc'd to be of a Religion different from that of their Ancestors, many of them retired from their own Country, and sought out a place where they might live more free, and according to their own manner; and those that stay'd, and submitted to the *Swedes*, and embraced Christianity, looked upon the departers as deserters of their Country; whom fear of a good Government, and better Religion had made Exiles; especially when the King had put forth an Edict that all should be accounted *banish'd* that would not renounce Pagan superstition.

Being thus forc'd out of their Native Country, they liv'd for an age or more upon the *Swedish* Coasts, and in the Woods of *Tanishia*, of late as a stragling and miserable people, neither having Laws nor Governours, till the year 1272; at which time they were made tributary to the Crown of *Sweden*; under *Magn. Ladulas* then King; who to bring them under his subjection, promised any one that could effect it, the Government of them; which the *Birkogli*, i.e. those that lived in the allotment or division of *Birkola*, undertook; and having for a great while cunningly insinuated themselves into their conversation under a pretence of friendship, at last set upon

upon them unawares, and quite subdu'd them; and for their pains (according to *Ladulas's* promise) they alone had the privilege to traffick with them and receive Tribute from them, which they constantly did till about *Ann. 1554*, when they were entirely united to the Crown of *Sweden*; and in 1600 better discovered and more certainly known to the *Swedes*, then formerly they had been; and this was effected by the care of *Charles* the ninth then King, who sent two famous Mathematicians *M. Aron Forfius* a *Swedish* professor, and *Hieron. Birckholten* a *German*, with Instruments and all necessaries to make what discoveries they could of this *Lapland*.

This Country, lying under divers Climates, has the Temperature of the Air, and likewise the nature of the soil very different. In those parts that are most Northernly, and within the Arctic-circle the air is extreme cold and the ground barren; but without the Circle the heavens are somewhat more mild and benigne, and the earth more liberal in her productions, affording in those places near *Bathmia* some few sorts of Pot-herbs, as *Coleworts*, *Rape-roots*, *Parfnips*, &c. for that in those parts only they make Gardens and till their ground. Through the whole Country the air though very cold and piercing, yet is not inferior to any of other Regions in healthfulness and pureness, either because the vapours coagulated and so made heavier by the cold fall down, or from the frequent winds; which sometimes are so strong that they hinder all passengers from travelling, and likewise root up all Trees and Bushes that stand in their way, so that on several of the *Laplandish* as well as *Desfine* mountains there are no trees or shrubs to be met with, therefore the Inhabitants make use of fish-bones for fuel, but most terrible are those Tempests and Whirlwinds, says *J. Mege*, which arise from the North, sometimes taking away the waters of the Sea from under the Ships, and carrying the Ships up into the air, let them fall down again at far distant places; sometimes also sweeping away with them both Stones and living Creatures, and now and then meeting with great quantities of fish, which the Inhabitants use to dry in the cold, they hoist them up into the air, and let them fall, which the poor people gather as a gift sent from God. In those parts nearest the Pole, the Sun for some months never sets, and on the contrary for so long time never rises; and although in Summer it never sets and goes below the Earth, yet neither does it rise more above it, but as it were glides along the edge of the Horizon for the most part; and likewise in winter when lowest it is not much beneath it, which is the reason, that though they have one continued night for some months, yet the Sun comes so near that it makes a kind of twilight. Snows are frequent, which last all the year long upon the mountains, and many months upon the plains, by the brightness whereof they travel with greater security and speed than otherwise they could do.

Springs and Rivers are so numerous in this Country, that together with the melted snows and Frosts they make the ground all summer time generally loose and boggy. The most noted Rivers are those whence the particular Marches and Regions have their names, as *Vimeau*, *Pitheao*, *Ladulas*, *Torneus* and *Kimeau*; these all spring from the *Desfine* mountains, and being increas'd by several lesser rivers, do at last unburthen themselves into the *Bathnick* Sea. In their course they run through many hilly and uneven parts of the Country, and are stopp'd

several dams and wearts, and so violently forcing their way over precipices are not navigable. Such are the flutes *Muscaumokke*, *Sao* and *Nomelaski* i.e. Hares-leap, so called, because the River *Lugbla* runs between two mountains so near, that a Hare may leap over.

Besides these, and other less remarkable rivers there are abundance of Pools or Lakes, as *Ladulas*, *Lugga*, *Sabbag*, &c. well stored with Salmon and such like Fish; one there is named *Stordvaan*, in which there are as many little Islands as there are days in the year; but the most remarkable is *Enarefask* near *Kimus*, wherein the hills and islands are by some said to be innumerable, and *Torneus* affirms, that never any Inhabitant lived long enough to survey them all. Some of these are small, but filthy; they call them *Suino* i.e. *Holy*, and account it a sin to foul them. Some of them have two Channels, and when the Fish forsake the upper, they account it an ill omen, and use ridiculous sacrifices to the Demon of that March.

Here are Mountains most of them small and inconsiderable, some also very high and almost unpassable, especially towards *Norway*, which the *Swedes* call *Fiel*, or, as the Northern English, *Fells*, and the *Laplenders* *Tudderi*, they arise about *Zemland*, whence with continued ascent toward the North, they reach a 100 miles in length, till they come to *Titus-ford*, which is a bay of the frozen Sea.

Till of late no Mines of any Metall were known to be in the Country, but in the reign of Queen *Christina* in the year 1643 there were veins found both of Silver and Lead by the Inhabitants of *Pithalappia* amongst Rocks so hard that they were forced to tear them in pieces with Gunpowder; but in the wars twixt *Sweden* and *Denmark* in the year 1656 one *Van Anea* a *Danish* Governour so spoiled them, that it is not thought worth the charge to open them again; and since that also in the year 1668 another Silver mine (but mingled with Iron) was discovered by a Native. There are also known to be some Iron and Copper mines in *Torne* and *Ladulas* marsh, but not digged. *Scheffer* mentions a report of the discovery of a Golden Mine in the year 1671, but nothing of certainty concerning it comes to our hands; what further concerns them will fall more properly under the discourse of *Sweden*.

The Stones of this Country generally are extremely hard, of an ash colour, and unworkable; some there are found on the shores, which represent the shape of some animals, which the Inhabitants esteem much, and adore for Gods, under the name of *Storjankere*. Some Authors speak of considerable quantities of Diamonds, Amethysts and Topaz; the Diamonds, which are reported to be of an incredible bigness, seem to be nothing but either Crystals or Fluores, and *Scheffer* gives the same sentence of the other. Here are found in some few Rivers a sort of Pearl, but neither so oriental, nor so well shap'd as those that come out of the *Indies*.

In the whole Country there are none of those Trees we call either Fruit or Timber-Trees, but store of Pine, Firr, Birch, Willows and Alder. Plants most frequent among them are divers sorts of Berries, Angelica, highly valued by them for diet and medicine, Sorrel, &c. Proper to the Country are *Calechois Lapponicus*. so call'd from the shape of its flower, a beautiful plant but of no use; great varieties also of Mosses, the food of their Rain-deer.

This Country by reason of the many Lakes, Rivers and Woods abounds much with Fish and Fowl.

Fowl of all sorts; there is one sort of Bird called *Loom* or *Lame* (because their feet are so short and plac'd so far behind, that they cannot go upon land, but always either swim or fly) very numerous in and peculiar to this Country: but no Bird abounds more than the *White Partridge*, not only in the Woods, but on the high Mountains, even when cover'd with the deepest Snows; they have a kind of hair instead of feathers, which in the winter is white; but when the spring comes they turn to their proper color; which seems to be usual in all cold Countries; they have hares feet, whence they are call'd by some *Lagopodes*. Fish are here in great abundance, not only sufficient to supply the Inhabitants, but frequently transported into other Nations, although their constant victuals be nothing but dried Fish; such as abound most are Salmon and Pikes whereof some are found eight foot long.

Beasts.

Of all the Beasts of *Lapland* the Bear is chief, still'd by the Inhabitants the King of the woods; next to the Bear the Elk is remarkable, call'd by the Swedes *Elg* or *Elgar*, and by the Germans *Elend*. It differs much from the Rain-deer; both in height, being as high as any horse; and in the make of its horns, they being shorter than those of the Rain-deer, above two handfuls in breadth upon the Palm, shooting out not many lesser branches; (see a description of this Creature among the beasts of *Poland*.) There is no great breed of them in *Lapland*, but they have them from other places, especially *Lithuania* and *Russia*, whence twice a year they swim in great herds over the river *Niva*, in the spring to go into *Carelia* and those parts, and in Autumn to return into *Russia*. Here are likewise besides these and the Rain-deer great plenty of Stags, Wolves, Gluttons, Beavers, and more sorts of Furs. As for the Stags, there are but few and little, such as are call'd *Damiceer* or *damiceer*, which since they have nothing peculiar from those of other Nations, let it suffice that they are named. Wolves are here in great number, distinguished from those of other Countries only by their colour, which is commonly white; a great enemy to the Rain-deer, but are observ'd never to assault them if bound to a stake, the Wolf being a jealous Creature, and suspects every rope he sees to be a snare to catch him. The next are the Gluttons (so named from their rapaciousness) an amphibious Creature, with a round head, strong and sharp teeth, like a Wolf; a plump body, and feet shorter than the Otters; their skin is of a very dark colour, some of them resemble Sables, only they have a softer and finer hair. Beavers also are very numerous here, and generally by reason of the quietness of the waters (which are never, or seldom troubled with Ships and Boats then the *Rhine* and *Danube* are) all creatures that live in Rivers and feed upon Fish abound in this Country.

Beasts also that live wholly upon Land, are in great number and variety; as Foxes of several sorts and colours, as the black, brown, ash-colour'd, white, and those that are mark'd with a cross all along the back, and down the shoulders, call'd *Crucigeræ*. Martlets or Martins (a little beast not unlike a Ferret, feeding upon Mice, Birds, and such like.) Ermins (which are white Weasels, with black tails, feeding also upon Mice, and the like little Animals.) Sables (a kind of Martlet, the white are very rare and of extraordinary price, of the rest the black are the better) with some others, whose skins are highly priz'd and reckon'd the chief commodity of *Lap-*

land. There are also on the mountains of *Lapland* vast numbers of Mice, which because they appear commonly after rain, have I suppose, given occasion to some Authors to think them generated in the Clouds, and so rain'd down: of these Mice are reported several incredible things, as their waging war, and drawing themselves in bodies like armies, their economy also, and such like stories; they are meat for the Foxes, Rain-deer, and their Dogs, which eat only the fore part of them.

Cattle common to other Nations, as Horses, Oxen, Sheep, &c. are not to be met with in *Lapland*; the beasts proper to this and the Northern Countries are the Rain-deer, an ancient name call'd by King *Alfred* in his Saxon *Periplus* *Hymas*, and the Latine name *Rangifer* seems to be derived from it; they differ much from the *Tandus* of *Pliny*, and also from our common Stags; they have three horns, two branching out backward like our Stags horns, sometimes five cubits in length, and adorn'd with five and twenty branches; the third spouting down their forehead, by which they defend themselves against wild beasts. The Doe has but two horns, somewhat shorter, one whereof is fix'd in her forehead. Their feet are thick like Bulls feet, of an ash-colour, except under their belly and haunches, which is white, resembling more an Afs than a Stag. This beast when it walks or runs makes a noise with its joints like the clashing of Flint, which is peculiar to these creatures. Though their hoofs be cleft, they do not chew the cud, they are naturally wild, but not difficultly tamed, and made servicable to men. The males they employ in drawing their Sleds, and the Does they keep for their milk, of which they make Cheese, but not any Butter, for they have none in the whole Country, but make use of a kind of Tallow instead of it.

The Inhabitants both in figure and manners are not unlike the *Samoieds* of *Muscovy*, and the Description there given of that people, may in many respects be said to agree to them. They are generally short of stature, and for the most part very lean, and perhaps both by reason of the extreme coldness of the Country. They are observ'd to be very light of body, which some, perhaps not without reason, attribute to their not eating any salt. They have great heads, prominent foreheads, hollow and bleak eyes, short flat noses, and wide mouths; their hair is generally flaxen, their breast broad, slender waists, and though their legs be small, yet are they nimble, strong and swift of foot; their usual exercises being running races, and climbing high Rocks and Trees. Though they are thus nimble and strong, yet they never go upright but stooping, which habit they get by frequent sitting in their Cottages on the ground, or by bending their bodies as they slide along the snow in their skis. By reason of their living in woods among wild beasts, and want of correspondence, as well among themselves as with other Nations, they are very superstitious, fearful and men spirit, and above all things dreading war; so that the Swedes seldom or never employ any of them in their armies, though it be falsely reported that *Gustavus Adolphus* made use of both them and their magic in his expeditions upon *Germany*; but of late they begin to be more courageous, and considerable, and we are inform'd that this present King *Charles the Xlth*, in his wars with the King of *Denmark*, had some Regiments of *Lapps* in his Army, who for the good service they did him, has given them better Lodgings than they had before, and caus'd them to change quarters with

with some of the Inhabitants of *Schonen* who by reason of their treacherousness, were not to be deliver'd as they. If they chance to be removed out of their own, into a more Southern Country, they frequently fall into deceases and dye; being less able to endure a milder air, and to feed upon Salt, Bread and boild meat, than other Nations are to live upon their raw Flesh and dried Fish. Formerly they were accounted plain-dealers, and in bartering very honest; but having been deceiv'd by strangers they took up cheating and countenancing as well as others, and are so far from being behind hand with them in it, that they are notorious and infamous for deceiving and over-reaching one another in bargaining. They (especially the women) are jealous of all strangers whatsoever, and being conscious how much their simplicity exposes them to the craft of others, they are revengeful and desperate, endeavouring to prevent any mischief that may seem to threaten them, by the destruction of the person that caus'd the suspicion. And this they do frequently by the assistance of Magic and the help of the Devil; as is said of one, who attempting often to mischieve his Enemy, who was secur'd by his Counterspells, after long lying in wait for him, at last watch'd his opportunity, and finding him asleep under a great Rock, by his Spell split it upon him, and so buried him under it. They are also noted to be of a censorious and detracting humour, covetous and yet lazy withal, so that where the soil might be improv'd, they often through idleness let it lie barren and uncultivated. They seldom take pains so much as to hunt or fish, till the flock take by want and necessity. Consequent to these qualities they are stubborn, undutiful to Parents when old, lustful (all except the married people, lying promiscuously together in one Hut, without any difference of age, sex, or condition), and subject to whatever vices attend an idle and unthinking life. Yet in the midst of these enormities and depravations of manners, some good qualities are to be found amongst them, as their great veneration and respect for marriage, which they seldom or never violate; their abhorrence of theft, which is remarkable in that they do keep their hands from pilfering, having so good opportunity to the contrary, there being no secured Magazines, nor Locks and Keys in the whole Country, but Merchants leave their goods oftentimes in the open street, not at all from the treachery of any disposed to be the thief. Their hospitality to Strangers and those in distress is very remarkable, they receiving them into their Huts, liberally affording them the best cheer they have, and often charitably supplying them with stock to traffick, lending money gratis, without any usury, and such like good deeds; which seem to be happy fruits sprung up in some of them since the plantation of our holy Religion amongst them; the ignorance and gross superstition among the natives very much disappearing since the light of the Gospel was known to them.

Concerning the Religion of the *Laplanners*, we may observe what progress they have made in Christianity since it was plant'd amongst them; as also what was the ancient manner of worship proper to these Northern Nations, for the reliques of heathenish superstition amongst some of them to this day seem to be only rak'd up under the embers, ready to flame out, were it not for the strict Government of the Swedes. They worshipp'd they knew not what, but they call'd him *Jumala* or *Tomala* a word which they

use now for the true God, as they did before for the supreme Entity. Another God also they worshipp'd under the name of *Turris* or *Turris-As* the prince of the *Ales* or *Astiatiks* [whence it does appear that they conserv'd some knowledge of their migration, together with the rest of the *Scandinavians* out of *Asia*, under *Woden*]. Several other distinct Gods they had on different occasions, as to preside over Ry, Barley, Oates and all sorts of fruits (whom they worshipp'd in *Finland*, but had not any occasion for after their banishment); one also for Temples, one to protect their Cattel, another to command Wolves, Squirrels, and such like ridiculous Deities. *Jumala* was represent'd under the image of a man, sitting upon an *Altar*, with a Crown upon his head, adorn'd with twelve Gems, and a golden Chain about his neck, to which was fasten'd a large Jewel call'd from its figure *Mens* or *Mene* i.e. a *Moons*; upon his knees stood a large golden dish, into which they cast their offerings; and this dish they are supposed to have brought out of *Finland*, for when they lost it they could never procure another. His Temple was in the woods, not built with any roof, but only a piece of ground fence'd as the old Roman Temples were; this God being in time found useless, was at last cashier'd; and the Deities in greatest reputation amongst them at this day, are those things from which they think they receive the greatest benefits, as the sun, fire, and such like, of which more by and by.

All the Heathenish Religion the *Laplanners* retain to this day, may be reduc'd to two heads, *Heathen* Magical and Paganish, or Superstitious and Diabolical. (Those superstitions they intermix with Christianity, we shall speak of under Religion as 'tis Christian.) Of their Gods some are publick and common to the whole Country, other private and belonging only to a Division, neighbourhood, or some one particular Family; all which have their several names. Those of *Lapponia Pithensis* and *Lapplensis* have their greater and lesser Gods; the greater to whom they pay especial worship, are *Thor*, *Storejunker*, the Sun, and some add *Fire*, which may seem not a distinct Deity, but only an emblem of the Sun; The lesser, common also to the *Tornesjes*, are worshipp'd under one name, except only that which they call *Wira Aecha*, signifying a *Livonian* old woman, which at first was only an old stump of a tree, but now its Godship is quite rotten and moulder'd away. They worship also the Ghosts of men, their friends especially, departed, and think some Divinity to be in them, as the *Romans* fancied to be in their *Manes*; Spectres also and Demons are ador'd by them, which they say wander amongst Rocks, Woods, Rivers and Lakes, as the *Roman Fauni*, *Sylvani* and *Tritones* are said to have done; The *Genii* also, good and bad; which they suppose to fly in the air about Christmas, and they call them *Jubly* from *Juhl* (a word still in use among the Northern *English*) denoting at present Christmas, but formerly the New-year.

Some Gods also there are common to the whole Country, the chief of which is *Thor*, or as the Swedes call him *Thordsen*, and the *Lapps* themselves sometimes *Tiermes*, i.e. Thunder, or noise-maker. His proper place is thought to be in the clouds, and winds, rain, thunder, good as well as bad weather to be at his disposal. The *Romans* could not have greater thoughts of their *Jupiter*, than the *Laplanners* have of their *Thor*; whereupon they give him many great and honorable titles, as *Ajske*, great-grand-father, &c. To him belongs the abatement of life and death,

health and sickness, he can also refrain whatsoever is injurious, and give whatever is beneficial or advantageous to men. So as the third of man's life was supported by the Ancients to be tied to *Jove's* chair; they fancy it to be in the power of this God to lengthen and shorten it as he pleases; that they cannot dye except he give leave, nor could he have had a being but by his permission; that 'tis he that drives away those Demons from the rocks and mountains that are enemies to them in hunting, fowling, and fishing; that he never suffers them to be hurt or dye, but when it is either for their good, or for the punishment of their offences. His image is always made of Beech-tree (therefore he is by some call'd *Muora-Jubmel*, i.e. the Wooden God), and the stumps that shoot out from the root of this tree, are easily by the help of fancy and a little art, made like a mans-head, arms, &c. by him lies a bow and arrows, and sometimes a hammer, to kill the mischievous Demons. Into his head there is driven a piece of iron or steel, and a small flint laid by him, by which is signified fire, the chief commodity of life. The place where this God is commonly worship'd, is a piece of ground not far from their huts, set apart for that service; where, upon some boards fit together like a table, they place their images; this table they make use of instead of an Altar, and boughs of Birch and Pine, which they surround it, serve them for a Temple. When they offer sacrifice to him, they exclude all women, esteeming it a great crime if any of that sex be present. The first thing they do, is to enquire of the God, whether he will accept their sacrifice or not; and this they do by a certain instrument they call *Kamms*, not unlike an old fashion'd Drum, commonly call'd by the *Swedes* *Lapländsb* Drums, on which are pictur'd several of their Gods (of which more hereafter); to this Drum they fasten a ring, whereto is tyed some of the hair of the beast designed for slaughter; then one of them beats the Drum, and therewith to this purpose, *What sayest thou, O great and sacred God, dost thou accept this sacrifice which we design to offer unto thee?* And while some thus chant, others repeat the name of the place where they are (of the mountain if they do sacrifice to *Storjunker*); this done, they observe upon what part of the Drum the ring rests; if upon that part where the Idol is pictur'd, they take it for granted that he is pleased, and so go on with their business; if not, then they carry their sacrifice to another of their Gods, repeating the same ceremonies; and so from one to another, till at last some of them vouchsafe to accept it. If they find by the resting of the ring, that *Thor* or *Tiermes* is pleased with it, then they proceed in their superstitious fooleries in this manner. First they bind the sacrifice (which is for the most part a Rain-Deer), behind their house or hut, and with a sharp knife running him thro the heart, gather the hearts-blood into a vessel; then reverently approaching the table on which the Idol is placed, they therewith anoint his head and back all over, and upon his breast draw only some small strokes or crosses; behind him they place the skull, feet, and horns of the beast given in sacrifice; before him, a coffee made of the bark of Birch-tree, into which they put a bit of every member of the said beast, with some of the fat; and the rest of the flesh they keep for their private use, and so depart very well satisfied. Left this wooden God should corrupt and moulder away, or by reason of his ugliness grow out of repute amongst them, they once every year (about the latter end of Autumn) provide themselves a neat, new, and fashionable Image,

which they with a great deal of solemnity consecrate, anointing it with the blood and fat of the sacrifice, whose flesh they do not carry away with them, but bury it under ground, and so end their devotions. After which solemnity about the Idol, they count it as good a Deity as any of the rest, and give it place accordingly.

The next of their principal Gods is *Storjunker*, i.e. Great Commander; a *Norwegian* name (*Junker* signifying in that language a Governor), yet now in use amongst the *Lapländers*. He is sometimes call'd *Stoura-Paffe*, i.e. Great Saint, and seems to be the same with *Seita*, which those of *Kimi*- and *Torne-Lapmark* worship. To this *Storjunker* they pay their devotion next after *Thor* or *Tiermes*, whose Lieutenant they suppose him to be. He is said to preside peculiarly over all beasts and carrel; and as *Tiermes* affords life and being, so all things requir'd to the subsistence of man are supposed to be at the disposal of this God, and all blessings to come thro his hands. 'Tis believed by them, that he has often appeared to fowlers and fishers in the shape of a tall personable man, habited like a person of quality, with a bow in his hand, and to have had bird-like feet; and if any happen thus to see him when they are fishing or hunting, they certainly promise to themselves good success at that time, and think the place to be holy where he vouchsafes to shew himself. His chiefest place of worship is where they suppose he most of all frequents, mountains and rocks, some of which are so high and craggy that they are unpassable to any but *Storjunker* himself, who they think by the advantage of his birds-feet, can climb to the top of them; which the *Lapps* not being able to do, they consecrate any small stone they find, anointing it with the blood of a Rain-Deer, and so throw it up to the top of the rock, as sacrifice to this inaccessible God. In *Laple-Lapmark* are said to be thirty mountains or hills, (which we omit to name), wholly fit apart for the worship of this God, and the number is proportionable in other parts of the country. He is represented by a stone, which sometimes is like a bird, sometimes a man, and now and then resembling other creatures, as they can find them, for they never use any art to polish any of them, but think that their shape comes by the immediate procurement of *Storjunker*. In the *Ille Dama*, which is made by a Cataract of the river *Torna-trælf*, are said to be found several of these *Seitas* in the exact shape of a man, one of which is very tall, and hard by him four others of a somewhat shorter size, with a kind of caps on their heads. Here formerly was the chief place of worship; but because the passage into the Island by reason of the Cataract is very dangerous, they are now forc'd from their Idolatry in that place. These stones they do not set singly, but always three or four together, or more, according as they find them; to the first they give the title of *Storjunker* himself, the second they call *Åtte*, or *Storjunker's* wife, the third they place as his eldest son, and the rest they dispose of as his servants and attendants. The manner of worship which is used to this God, is much what the same with that of *Thor* or *Tiermes*. In the first place they try if any one be able with all his strength to move the stone which represents their Deity; if they cannot lift it up, or find it heavier than usual, they desist from their worship at that time; but if it seem lighter than ordinary, they then think him well pleased, and so proceed in their ceremonies. They bind their sacrifice (which is always a male Deer) before their stone Idol, and after having run a thred thro his right ear,

kill him, and reserve the hearts-blood in a basin; this done, the Priest takes the horns and bones of the head and neck, with the flanks and hoofs of the Rain-Deer, and carries them to the consecrated mountain, where their God dwells; at the first approach he uncovers his head, bows or prostrates his body, and pays all ceremonies of honour and respect; then he anoints the stone with the blood and fat of the sacrificed beast, and places the horns behind it; to the right horn heaves the Rain-Deer's yard, and to the left some red thred wrought upon tin with a little piece of silver. All the flesh that remains, the *Votaries* take away with them, and depart with a mighty deal of satisfaction. This is the ordinary way of sacrificing to *Storjunker*, tho in some places of the country the ceremonies alter a little, but not much.

The last of the principal Idols is the Sun, whom they call *Baive*, common to them with all other Heathens; worship'd especially for his light and heat, both extremely grateful to these poor people. They fancy all things, especially their Rain-Deer, to be made by this God; and that he is an universal principal of being. They sacrifice to him in the same manner as to *Storjunker*, only the thing which they run thro the beasts ear is white, the Victim a Rain-Deer, and there are neither tables, images, nor horns erected, as in those ceremonies.

Not is their Idolatry more notorious than their Witchcraft; it being generally believ'd by all that have heard the name of *Lapländers*, that they are strangely addicted to Magic, and all arts of Sorcery. The ancient *Biarmi* are said to have been so skilful at the trade, that by only speaking to, they could ensnare and bewitch one another; and by their very looks not only stare men out of countenance, but their reason too: nor are the *Lapländers* at present much degenerated from them, but rather seem to have attain'd to greater proficiency in it. They have professors of this black Art, not inferior to *Zoroaster* himself, from whom some say they receiv'd their knowledge; Masters also and Tutors to bring up their children in the way of their forefathers, and never count a son worthy the inheritance of his father, till he is able to manage a spell; which is commonly his best portion. Their familiar Spirits are peculiar to each distinct family; and more or less in number, according as they are resolved to be upon their guard, or inclined to be mischievous. If the Devil have a mind to make especial use of any one of them, he seizes them whilst young with some distemper or other, and all the time his close siege to them, filling their imaginations with all sorts of dreadful apparitions; and this he does sometimes three or four times to the same person, making him fitter for his councils, by giving him a nearer prospect of Hell. Those that are thus seized by the Devil, are the ablest Sorcerers of any, and can effect their Magical designs without the usual assistance of a Drum; as Mr. Scheffer tells a story of a *Laplander*, who upon complaint made against him for keeping a Drum, brought it and deliver'd it up to him, and with tears confess'd, that tho he did thus willingly part with it, and never intended to provide another, yet he should still be tormented with the same fearful and troublesome visions about future events, which (tho his eyes were shut) were always present to his imagination. Yet such inspired Wizzards as these are rarely to be met with; most commonly they make an art of it; which according to the diversity of instruments made use of, may be divided into two parts; the former employ'd about their Drum,

the latter about knots, darts, spells, &c. The Drum is peculiar to the *Lapländers*, call'd *Kamms* or *Luobdas*, made of a hollow piece of wood, which is always the root either of Pine, Fir, or Birch, growing in a peculiar place, and having the grain of the tree following the course of the Sun, i.e. winding from the right hand to the left. It is made hollow on one side, upon which they stretch a skin, fastening it with wooden pegs, on the other they make two holes to hold it by, the shape of the upper part is oval, about half an ell in diameter; upon the skin they paint several pictures in red, stain'd with the bark of an Alder-tree; and thro the middle they draw some cross-lines, in every quarter of which they place their chiefest Gods, with their attendants; neither do they observe always the same Gods, nor the same method, as appears by the picture of them in Scheffer; only it is remarkable, 1. That ordinarily they paint the Sun in the middle, their Gods above, and the earthly things under him. 2. That since Christianity came amongst them, many of them do place upon their Drums our Saviour and his Apostles, acknowledging him to be, or have the power of one of their Gods. 3. And that they alter their figures according to the occasion of their inquiry; retaining the general notion all Heathens had of the Deity, that divers of them had particular charges and employments; and hence, i.e. from this general concept of Idols, it may not improbably be gather'd, that their was but one original of all mankind, in as much as all acknowledge sacrifices and ceremonies, whereby they might consult of things future, of their good success in their affairs, and the aversion of their calamities; only this may be noted, that all Nations as they grew to be more civilized, became less addicted to Magic; the unpunish'd practice of which became so exceedingly harmful, and destructive to mankind; so that the poor Northern Nations were left in a manner abandon'd to the power of the Devil, their great enemy, till Christianity was brought in, in a manner forcibly by the rigorous commands of the Kings of Sweden. Notwithstanding which, tho they have in many places given over their Drum, yet do they practice still their knots, have their Familiars in the shape of Flies, Bees, &c. but chiefly their black Cats (whom they not only consult at home about their household affairs, but take with them also in their huntings, tho in the depths of snow), and their diabolical extacies, if I may so call them; which are exercised sometimes with, sometimes without a Drum; if with a Drum, the Sorcerer kneels down, and having a bunch of rings, or other pieces of brass, laid in the middle of the Drum, he beats with a consecrated hammer, so strongly that the rings dance upon it, by the resting of which upon such a figure, they draw forth an answer to what they would desire to know; but if this be not satisfactory, then the Drummer puts himself, by dancing and howling, into a violent motion, till he falls down, which he chuses to do upon his Drum; and there he lies without motion or disturbance, and without sense, till he voluntarily rise again, and gives answer to what is desired. This kind of divination is chiefly used when something at a great distance is desired to be known. The stories are so frequent, and from persons not credulous, that it is very hard to disbelieve what they speak concerning these Sorceries. Take this from a person of worth and understanding, (as an example of the rest), who said that being one time at dinner with his Father, Mother, Brother, Sisters, &c. his Fathers knife was missing upon a sudden, nor could be found,

till two years after, when a Coffin of his returnings from being Factor in or near *Lapland*, brought it with him, telling them, that out of curiosity he had employed a *Laplander* (a pretender to great skill in this art), to bring him notice of the health and condition of that family, who after he had lain some time in this now desir'd manner, brought him news, that they were all well, that he found them at dinner, and that to confirm his relation, he brought away that knife, which he deliver'd to the Merchant, and the Merchant brought home now to his Uncle.

Sometimes also they practise their Sorceries without the Drum, using instead of it commonly strings or darts, by which they advantage their friends, or injure their enemies at their pleasure.

The strings they make use of to raise or quell the winds, which they fell to Mariners for that purpose. They consist commonly of three knots, the first of which being untied, affords a favourable wind; the second a brisk gale; and the third a violent storm; as has been approved to the great danger and loss of several Mariners, that have given account of it in publick. By their darts, which are short Cylinders of Lead, they wound any who have offer'd them an injury, or their malice puts them upon to assault. There are said to be the most powerful charms of any, and upon occasion to have split rocks, level'd mountains, and such like incredible exploits.

Christian Religion planted amongst them.

Besides these, they have some other remains of Idolatry; as a ball, which they work up of Cow-hair, and so send it of malicious errands; with several fuch like heathenish fooleries, all which are at this day in most parts left off amongst them, the Natives themselves informing one against another, and causing such delinquents to be brought to condign punishment, which is most frequently done in those parts that are under the *Swedish* Government, for Christianity, which was first planted in *Finland* by *Ericus* the Saint, and so made known to the *Laplanders*, has in these latter times made considerable advances amongst them, under the Reigns of their late Princes. In the year 1600 *Charles IX.* built some publick Schools in *Lapland*; and in the year 1619, or about that time, *Gustavus Adolphus*, who took especial care of the *Laplandish* Countries, and having united them more closely to the Kingdom of *Sweden* then his predecessors had done (they having been in former times rather tributary to the *Birkkil*, then subjects to that Crown) erected more publick Schools, and caused divers Christian Churches to be built amongst them, all which by the charity and piety of *Christians* were augmented both in number and endowments, for the promoting of Religion and Learning amongst them; and many Pastors were considerably stipended for that purpose. So that whereas formerly those that had a mind to have their children baptized, used to carry them (as *Olaus Magnus* relates) sometimes above two hundred *English* miles to Church, they now are eased of that trouble, and have Churches built at very inconsiderable distance one from another; and whereas they had opportunity of hearing only one Sermon a year, viz. when they came to a general Market which was held in *February*, or to pay their taxes to the King of *Sweden*, they now have Ministers provided which are always resident amongst them, whom they very much respect, and whose Sermons they constantly frequent; so that now the light of the Gospel has very much expell'd all heathenish superstitions out of these remoter Regions of the world, and a pious and godly life, with the Lords Prayer repeated with sincerity, are experienced to be the

most effectual countercharm against all Sorceries whatsoever; it being constantly observed, that neither their Drum, nor any of their Magical instruments have any power against them that call upon the name of our Lord, nor are able to defend them from the power of his Ministers; inasmuch that it has lately been reported upon very credible authority, that the Devil foreseeing the danger of his Kingdom, appeared visibly to his servants, encouraging them by all means to continue in their obedience to him. The truth of this I cannot assert, but all Authors affirm, that as Christian Religion got more ground amongst them, so Government, Civility, Arts, and Ingenuity have also proportionably advanced.

We meet not with any thing concerning their *Birkkil*, but what was of the chief of the Family, which toward their wives was very rigid, and toward their children very indulgent, or rather negligent; neither did the *Birkkil* exercise any greater power over them, then to fright them into paying of tribute, part to themselves, part to the King of *Sweden*, and some other such subjection, as was for their own, not the peoples profit. But *Gustavus Adolphus* took even this power also from them, and the country was by him wholly and entirely subjected to the *Swedish* Government; which is at present managed by three chief Governours (called by the *Swedes* *Lagmen*), and as many Provincial Judges, for nam'd from the Provinces where they are plac'd. Under these there are particular Governours, *Under-Lagmen*, which have power to determine Suits at Law, or pass sentence upon Malefactors, even unto death; but never without the assistance of a Judge and a Priest. Anciently their Courts were called only twice a year, at their publick Fairs, in winter and summer; but now for the more effectual restraining of vice, they are more frequently used amongst them; and if any controversy arise, which is of lesser concern, they put an end to it by these Courts; but if any hope of greater moment or difficulty, they appeal to the supreme Courts of Judicature in *Sweden*.

Tribute, which formerly in the reign of *Laurelius* was granted to the *Birkkil*, is now by the *Laplanders* paid only to the Crown of *Sweden*, (save that those of *Torna*, for their privilege of sitting upon the coasts of *Norway*, pay some acknowledgement to the King of *Denmark*). It is commonly paid in kind, as furs, skins, or dried fish. By a contract made betwixt *Gustavus I.* and these *Laplanders*, the inhabitants of *Luhla* and *Pithe* were engaged to pay yearly eight timber of furs (or to every timber), and those of *Torna* were tax'd with the same number; and shortly after by another agreement in the year 1528, this number was doubled. In the year 1602, under *Charles IX.* they paid instead of skins, every tenth Rain-deer, and one tenth of all their dried fish. And in the year 1606, it was order'd by the same King, that over and above this certain Tax, every one when they came to the age of seventeen years, should pay either two Bucks or three Does out of their Rain-deer, and eight pound of dried fish; but this was found very burthenfome to the people; and the more, because the Magistrates took several occasions and pretences to encrease their burthens; wherefore *Gustavus Adolphus* about the year 1611, order'd them less, more certain, and equal payments; either of money, Rain-deer, or furs; more or less according to the largeness or smallness of the Provinces or allotments wherein they dwell. If the allotment be somewhat large, such as they call *een heel skat*, i. e. of whole Tribute, they pay yearly to the King two Patacoons; but

but if lesser, *een half skat*, i. e. of half Tribute, they pay but one Patacoon, or in lieu of it fifty Squirrels and two Foxes skins, with one pair of *Laplandish* shoes. If any one has no mind to part with his Rain-deer, then he is to pay three Patacoons, which is the set price of it, and cannot be refused by the Tax-masters. Besides these greater Contributions of Rain-deer, &c. which are only imposed on every hundred, each particular Family pays a lesser sort of Tax, which is constantly levied upon it, viz. one white Foxes skin, and one pair of shoes; or instead of these, half a pound of dry'd Pike. These are all the Tributes which the King of *Sweden* at this day receives out of *Lapland*; which, notwithstanding they might be a very considerable addition to the Crown-revenues, have been by the singular piety of their late Princes, either wholly or in the great part allow'd for the maintenance of Ministers, and endowment of publick Schools in the *Laplandish* countries.

And because the *Laplanders* are thus obliged to pay Tribute of money and furs to the King of *Sweden*, which every Native cannot provide himself with, but must procure by bargaining and trade, they have several Markets and Fairs appointed amongst them, whither Merchants of other countries, as *Muscovy*, *Norway*, and *Sweden* especially, resort, and bringing with them those commodities the Natives think most valuable, exchange them for furs, or whatever this country affords, frequently to the *Laplanders* small, but the buyers great, gain. These Fairs they practise'd even to the last light of reason from their beginnings; all other Nations do so for when one abounds, and another wants, it necessarily follows, that they must have a meeting-place to supply one another. But these *Laps*, fearing or abhorring the face of a stranger, were put to some difficulties in their bartering: so that they had no other way, but to leave their commodities at a certain place, and after a while returning, accept what the buyer was plac'd to leave in exchange for them. Therefore *Charles IX.* encouraged them to a more confident and profitable way of traffick, appointing two or more publick Fairs in every Province, and setting certain different rates upon all their commodities; so that at this time they not only barter, but have no small dexterity in over-reaching and cozening stranger chapmen. Of late also they have some quantities of money brought in amongst them, and they understand the use of it; but even yet are either so stupid or unaccustom'd to Arithmetick, that they have but very few species current amongst them, which are the Patacoon, and half Patacoon, besides some very few Bras pieces of smaller value; but all their commodities are estimated according to the Patacoon, as the best Bear or Fox skin at one Patacoon, forty Squirrels or one Marron at half a Patacoon, and so all the rest; which manner of trading would be very disadvantageous to the buyer, if there were not customarily a price also tacitly set upon what they import, as a Suit of Clothes is by them estimated at three Patacoons, and one pair of Shoes, or four pair of Mittens, at half a Patacoon, and the like. But tho they use of necessity, for they can, and many do, make a shift with their natural conveniences, using themselves to as much hardship as nature can endure.

But habitations they have none, but remove their dwellings according to the season for hunting, &c. tho in the time of *Charles IX.* this their wandering was restrain'd, by his confining every one of them to his own Province. Those that

like Herdmen live upon their flocks of Rain-deer, in summer frequent the mountains; which being too cold in winter, they retire to the valleys, carrying with them their houses and stuff, either upon the backs of the Rain-deer, or (if of greater quantity) upon sledges in baskets, the artificial making of which, is the greatest part of their employment.

Their dwelling-houses are built after the most natural and homely fashion, made only to secure them against the injury of the weather, and the assaults of wild beasts, after this manner; first, they erect four posts, in the figure of a square, which they bind together with cross-girders, and rear to them smaller pieces, fastening all with wythes; these, except the door-places, the poorest sort wholly cover with boughs of trees, or such like stuff; the richer, with a coarse woollen cloth, or an ordinary sort of Canvas. In these Houses or Tents they have two doors; the fore-door, which is of common use and entrance for the whole family; and the back-door, thro which the men pass, and that only when they go a hunting, fishing, &c. but all women are forbid it; either because that sex is thought to be very unskilful to those exercises [for if any, when he is going to hunt, do but meet a woman, he presently returns back, and leaves his design for that day], or because the image of their God *Tho* was commonly plac'd near their back-door, from whose sacrifices and presence all women-kind (as was said before) are wholly excluded. These houses are distinguish'd into several partitions, not by any wall, but only by great posts, or logs of wood laid upon the ground. Their fire-place is in the middle, about which the whole family lies, either upon the bare earth, or upon the skins of Rain-deer, Bears, &c. When they have a mind to change their habitation, (which they do constantly twice a year), they untie this Tent, take it away with them, and pitch it in a more convenient place. Another sort of houses amongst them are the Granaries or storehouses, which, that they may the better secure their provision from wild beasts and vermin, they do not build upon the ground, but at some small distance from it, upon the bole or stump of a large tree.

Their garments are very coarse and mean, made either of the skins of wild beasts (frequently in use amongst them), or the worst of our *English* cloth, which they wear only on Holidays and at their publick Fairs; they alter them according to the season of the year; yet each sex, for distinction sake, has a different mode or fashion. The men use a long garment, reaching down from their middle to their ankles, which serves them for breeches and stockings; above this they have a sort of wide coat, call'd *Mudd*, which they tie about them with a leathern thong. Their shoes, as the rest of their ordinary garments, are made of the skins of Rain-deer, Elks, &c. with the hair outward; the toe bending somewhat upward, and according to the ancient fashion, ending with a sharp point. On their heads they have a cap, made of the skin of some fowl, as Geese, Ducks, &c. but especially of the *Loom*, having the feathers, head, and wings along with it, after the manner of the ancient *Germans*. The habit proper to women, is a large wide Gown, of cloth or skins, according to their ability; gather'd close in the middle, and adorn'd with divers figures of birds, beasts, &c. which they themselves work very artificially. Linnen they use none; and in colder weather they only gird their ordinary clothes closer about them, and cover themselves entirely, except one little hole to look thro; for which reason *Adam Bremenfis* reports them

Their dwelling-Houses.

Their Garments.

Their Diet.

them upon his own knowledge to be Cyclopes.

Their ordinary diet is either of fish, or the flesh of their Rain-deer, &c. which they eat sometimes raw, sometimes (amongst the more civilized sort) boil'd, but for the most part dry'd in the air. Bread and salt are unknown to them. Instead of Bread, they make use of their dried fish, ground small like meal; and for salt, they take the inward bark of the Pine-tree, which they dry at the Sun, and putting it into boxes, bury it a small depth in the ground; then, after it hath lain there a competent time, they kindle a fire upon the place, and so dry it; whereby it becomes of a reddish colour, pleasant taste, and gives a good relish to their coarser victuals. Tho they are very greedy of flesh, yet under the Swedish Government they constantly abstain from it on Fridays, keeping fast that day with great observance.

Their Drinks.

Their ordinary drink is pure water, which in the winter time they keep in their houses continually hot, and so drink it. Of late some quantities of Brandy, and such like hot liquors, are known amongst them, which they highly value, and drink only on Holidays and at their marriages. Tobacco they frequently take, and count it a very great delicacy. The place where they commonly eat their victuals, is in the middle of their Tent, about the fire, without table, dishes, spoons, trenchers, or any such thing which is a sign of neatness and handiwork. Their potage they drink; And their commons each one lays upon his mitrons; and when he has eat it, says Grace, shakes his fellows by the righthand (which is their charity-cup), and so depart every one to his business.

Their Employments.

Their chief employment is hunting; in which they make use of divers sorts of instruments, as Spears headed with fish-bones, Nets, and of late Guns. In the snow time they make use of a kind of shoes call'd *Skider*, or *Skidb*, with which they will run down the strongest Deer. They are made commonly of Fir, or the bark of trees, about three or four, *Olaus Magnus* says, five or six ells long, and four or five inches broad; turn'd up at the forepart, after the manner of their shoes; for better convenience in sliding, they are cover'd with the skin of a Rain-Deer with the hair on; they fasten them to their feet with a piece of wythe, which is tyed to the middle of the Skair and to their ankles. In these the men are able to travel an hundred and fifty English miles a day; and the women are no less expert at it, tho never permitted to go a hunting. If they kill a Bear, they use very great solemnity and triumph about it, inviting their friends, and distributing its flesh (which they count a great dainty) amongst them; honouring him that did the exploit, with several titles, and the best portion of the beast. They never bring home their prey by the fore-door, or after them; but always observe this as a special rule, that they throw it into the Hut before them.

Marriages.

Marriage they hold in great veneration; it being seldom known that Adultery is committed, never if known, that it goes unpunished. When any one has a mind to marry, he enquires out a Maid who has a good share of Rain-deer (for the Parents give portions to their Children not equally, but with respect to primogeniture); then he, not being permitted to woo for himself, acquaints his nearest Kinsmen with his intentions, who manage the business for him, sollicite her Father, Mother, and Friends, presenting them with Brandy and Tobacco, or what is most esteemed, and so gain their consent. This done, the young man is invited to the Hut where his bride lives,

where he accepts some conditions propos'd by her Friends, and lists himself as her Fathers hired servant for one whole year; after which time expir'd he takes his Wife to him, and proceeds to the solemnizing the Marriage, which is always done with great ceremony and pomp, according to their abilities. The bride they deck with the choicest ornaments they can get, as pieces of Tin and Alchymy, with several Rings of fish-bones and Brass, &c. and being thus attired, her nearest Friends, (much, as seems, against her mind) rather dragg, then conduct, her to Church, where she is married to her Husband, according to the form, prescrib'd in their Liturgy. Formerly (says *Olaus Mag.*) Wedlock was solemniz'd by the Parents and Friends (the Father supplying the place of the Priest) by the striking of Flint and steel; the fittest Emblem as they thought, of a married life. And here it may be observ'd, That no one man is permitted to have many wives at once, but is constantly limited to one only; Polygamy not being so much as heard of amongst them; That they never marry without the consent of their Friends, but refer themselves wholly to their advice, inasmuch that clandestine Marriages are never practis'd by them; and that after they are contracted, they are not presently free to trade for themselves, but must serve their Father in Law as an hiring for a certain time, that he may be witness of their good husbandry, which seems to be a Custom from ancient times and Nations.

Their Children, as soon as born, are put to the greatest hardships, that they may be able afterwards to endure the severity of the air the better. They take two Vessels one of hot, the other of cold water, and dip the Infant first into one, and then into the other: and if its strong enough to endure so sudden a change of heat and cold, they think it will make a hardy Fellow, and fit for their business; whereupon they endeavour to have it baptiz'd, as soon as they can possibly, wrapping it in moss, and so carrying it to Church, though at a very great distance, either upon their backs or in a Pannier upon their Rain-deer, as they anciently us'd to do to their publick Fairs, whither Priests were sent twice a year out of Sweden. While their Children are young, they use them to bow and arrows, by which they are to get their future livelihood, and to make them the more expert, always place their victuals upon a post, as their mark to shoot at, which they hit down, or fast.

Diseases, especially infectious, are seldom or never known in this Country; but if it happens, that any pestilential distempers be brought in, (as the Plague was lately amongst Hemp) the malignity of them is corrected by the pureness of the Air; so that they never do any great mischief. The disease they are commonly troubled with, is the soreness of eyes, (whether caus'd by their smoaky Huts, or ill dress'd food, or any other reason, I know not) but it usually ends in blindness. Pleurifies also, and inflammations (perhaps by reason of their constant feeding upon flesh) are sometimes incident to them; which they cure by drinking the decoction of the root of Moss, or the stalks of Angelica, in the whey of the milk of their Rain-deer. If a member be benumm'd with cold, they apply Cheese made of the milk of their Rain-deer, which is a present remedy; and when any pains or aches in their joints or body, as the Gout, Cramp, Sciatica, &c. seize them, they apply a Caulstick of the flame of any chips to the affected place, much after the same manner as the *East Indians* are said to cure such like Distempers, by a kind of moss call'd

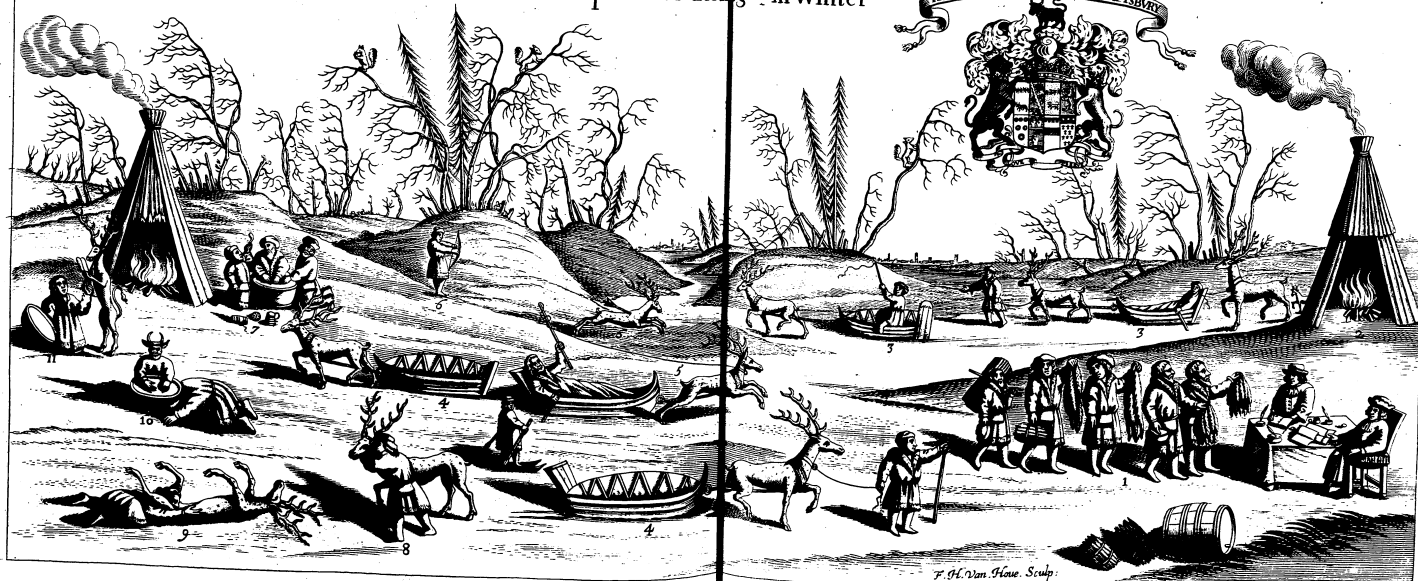


The Manner of the Laplanders Living in Summer

Sweden Page: ii



The Manner of the Laplanders Living in Winter



J. H. Van Houw. Sculp.

call'd *Moxa*; and the *West Indians* by an excellence of black Birch tree, call'd by them *Spunk*, and applied after the same manner; from all which it seems, that the cure is to be attributed rather to the fire, than the fuel.

If any one be dangerously sick, they either find for the Priest, if near, to prepare him for death; or to the Magician, to resolve them by his Drum, if he shall recover, parting their respects 'twixt Gods Ministers and the Devils Servants. If he dye, they imagine that his Soul is not at rest till the body be in the grave, and for that reason use all haste possible to convey it to some Burying-place, which is frequently the nearest Cave or Wood; (Church-yards by reason of their remoteness, they seldom make use of) The dead body they carry upon a sled, and when they come to the Cave, cast it in, and the sled after it; or else cover it with great Logs of Wood, to secure it from wild Beasts; always laying besides it a Flint and steel, and sometimes

a Hatchet, which they suppose may be serviceable to them in the other world. At their return, they provide a Funeral Banquet, or rather a sacrifice to the Ghost of the deceased person; which is thus. They take those Rain-deer that dragg'd the dead body to the grave, and offer them in sacrifice to the *Manes*, feasting upon their flesh, and making merry with Brandy and Tobacco, and the best cheer they have; at last they drink a health round to the person departed; this done, they carefully gather the bones of the Rain-deer, put them into a box, with a rude image of their friend, and so bury them together. These Ceremonies, observ'd also in their Heathenism, shew'd, that even then, as it were by the dictates of Nature, they conceived themselves to consist of an Immortal part also; and that they expected another life after this, wherein they imagine every one to follow their former employments, and consequently to be again united to their bodies.

The Lives and Manners of the *Laplanders*, as it is express'd in the Plate here annex'd. The upper-part is their Summer-living: The under-part their way of living in Winter.

In the Upper-part you have,

(1) A Church for those who are converted to the *Lutheran Religion*; At the entrance of which, in lieu of a (2) *Bacon of Holy-water*, there stands one full of Brandy-wine, with a spoon in it, of which every one who comes to Church takes a sup, to encourage and warm his zeal. The first man you see represents the (3) *Priest*; the next the best (4) *man of the Parish*. Then follows a (5) *Bride*, attended upon by two (6) *Bride-maids*, after whom comes the (7) *Bridegroom*, and other friends. (8) Their manner of making Baskets, which is their greatest trade. (9) Their way of carrying, and of rocking their children. (10) The manner how the young children grown up, suck the Rain-deer. (11) The man and wife's way of lying in bed. (12) Their Houses for keeping their provisions; themselves, in the coldest part of Winter, lying in Tents. (13) Their manner of eating. (14) The Priests way of Baptizing, and the Clarks bringing water. (15) Their way of Wire-drawing, which is much used amongst them, for adorning of their Boots and Coats. (16) Amongst those who are not yet converted to the *Christian Religion*, you have their way of sacrificing. (17) Their three Gods standing uppermost, and under each of them upon the Altars lie three pieces of the sacrificed Rain-deer. (18) Their way of praying to them. (19) Their

way of Burial. (20) Their way of praying to Death, that it would be pleas'd to spare them awhile.

In the Under-part you have,

(1) Their manner of bringing their Taxes (consisting of several sorts of Skins and dry'd Fish) to the Kings Commissioners, which being paid, each one takes a large spoonful of Brandy-wine, which stands at the end of the Table, and so away. Above which you see the (2) Commissioners Tent. (3) Their way of travelling in Sleds, drawn by Rain-deer, (which, by the by, do agree so well with those barren Countries, that if you do but bring them into *Sueden*, (which yet is none of the most fertile), they dye in a short time). (4) Their way of carrying their goods. (5) Their manner of ruling their Rain-deer with a whip or line. (6) Their way of shooting them. (7) Their taking Tobacco, which they prize above meat. (8) Their speaking in the ear of the Rain-deer, telling them what they should do, or whither they should go, (which, as I am credibly inform'd, they will observe exactly). (9) Their manner of gelding them. (10) Their way of laying their heads under a Drum; which the Devil beats, and from thence the man learns what success he shall have in his affairs. (11) His giving the man the Hammer, and letting him beat.

Provinces of Sweden

Properly so taken.

NExt to be spoken to, is *Suecia* or *Sweden*, strictly so call'd; of which, because it has been honour'd always by the Residence of their Kings, and been the chief Scene of *Swedish* Affairs, we shall in the first place treat; and afterwards speak of *Gothia*, or *Gothland*, with all its Provinces, rather as an Accession to the Crown of *Sweden*, then a distinct Kingdom from it: though anciently *Gothia* and *Suecia* had their distinct successions of Kings. Of *Finland*, *Ingria*, and *Esthonia*, with the late Conquests in *Livonia*, *Pomerania*, &c. we shall in the last place discourse; reserving the Laws and Government, as also the manner and customs of the People, till we come to *Stockholm*, the present Metropolis of this great Empire.

Suecia. *Suecia* then, or *Suetia*, call'd by the *English* *Sweden*, or *Swedland*, is bounded on the North with *Lapland*, on the West with the *Doerine* Hills, on the East with the *Botnick* and *Finnick* Bays, and on the South with *Gothland* and *Sconen*. A fruitful, but in some parts mountainous and woody, Country; abounding with several rich Mines, and affording very great conveniences of water and fuel for working them. It is divided into two General parts, viz. *Suecia* strictly so taken, and the *Northlands*, or *Northlandish* Provinces.

I. The *Northlands* contain in them two distinct Countries or Provinces, *Helsingia* and *Gefricia*; parted one from the other by the great wood *Oedemord*.

Gefricia. 1. *Gefricia*, which affords some Iron-mines and indifferent good store of corn. It has but one City in it, call'd *Gevalia* commodiously situated upon the Bay of *Bothnia*, half a days Journey from *Kapferberg*.

Helsingia. 2. *Helsingia*, which was anciently a general name for all the Northern Provinces, from the North-sea to the River *Ula*, and the Lake *Ulatresk* in the North of *Cajania*, as appears from some records of a Parliament held at *Telgis*, A. 1328, and a distinct Kingdom of it self; govern'd by its own Kings, till the time of *Ingellus* the second, King of *Upland* (so were the Kings of *Sweden* anciently styl'd) who at his Coronation invited the King of *Helsingia*, and several other Princes, to the solemnity; and after having made them drunk with strong liquors, set fire on the Palace, and so destroyed them all, and seized their possessions; which ever after were united to the Crown of *Sweden*. The inhabitants of this Country had anciently a peculiar language of their own, and also an Alphabet altogether distinct from the *Runic*, as appears by several old monuments found amongst them. They are recorded to have fought many famous battles, with their neighbours of *Finland*, *Carelia*, and *Cajania*; and after having driven some of their Enemies as far as the *Sund*, in memory of their conquest, and to eternize their name, to have built the City *Helsingburg*. From them are said to have come the *Nylanders*, who border upon *Carelia*; and use the same manner of speech to this day. The Natives are generally very hospitable and courteous to strangers, of a docile and ingenious disposi-

tion, and above all things endeavouring to be neat and handfom within doors. The whole Country of *Helsingia* is divided into four Provinces.

1. *Helsingia*, properly so call'd, heretofore known by the name of *Sundbede*; which has in it three lesser divisions: *Alora*, thro' which runs the river *Liusna*: *Sundbede*, in the midst whereof is the Lake *Dil*: and *Nordstigh*, not far from the wood *Arskog*. The soil is indifferently fruitful for Corn, but chiefly for Pasture; the inhabitants mostly employing themselves in feeding and managing their flock of Cattel. Here is but one City in the whole Country, call'd *Hudingsvoldia*, remarkable for the great quantities of Corn, Butter, Hydes, Pitch, Rosin, Malts of Ships, and Deal-boards, that are convey'd hence into other Countries.

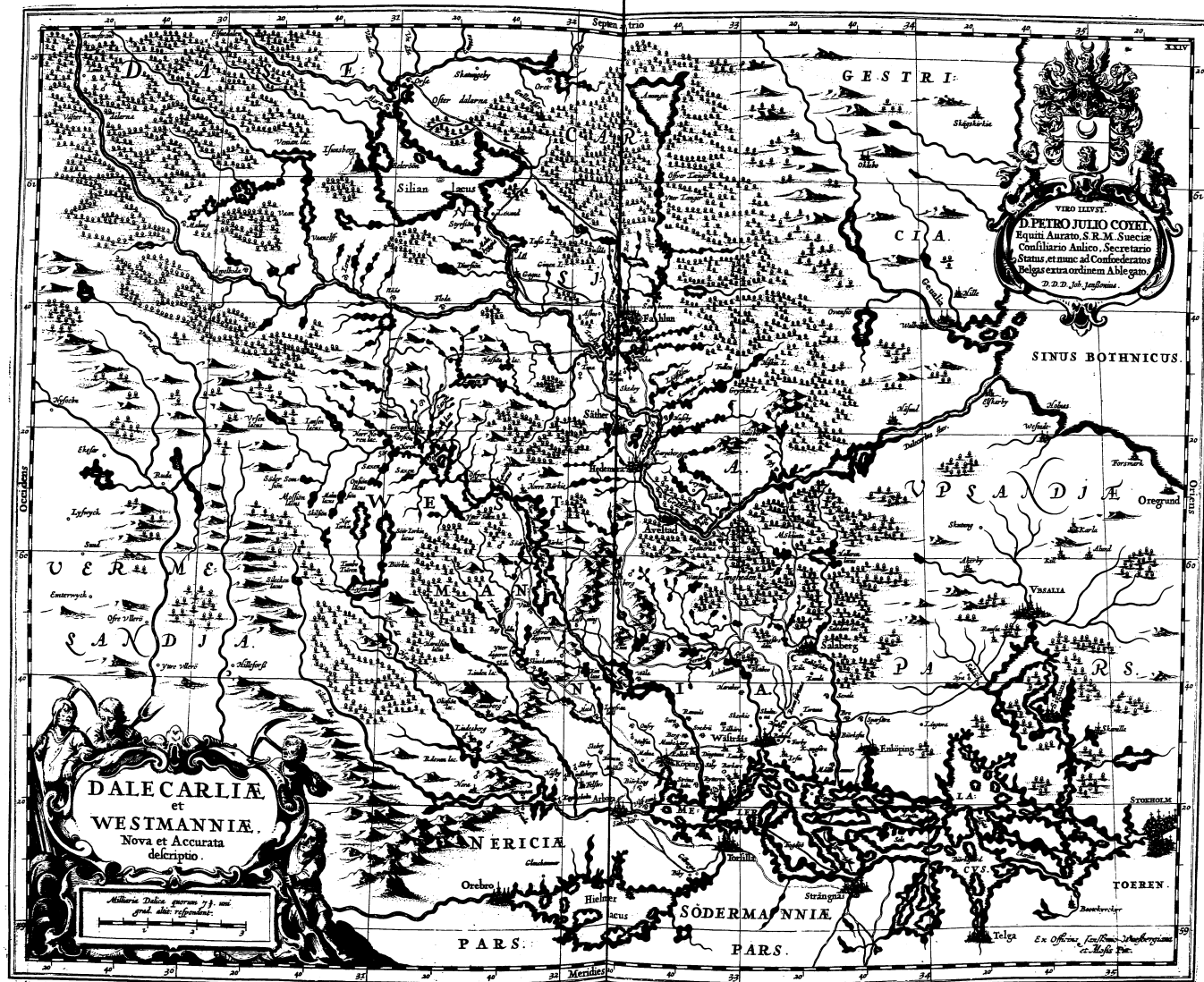
2. *Medelpadia*, much of the same nature with *Helsingia*; but only it is narrower, and a-little bounds more with woods and mountains; in it are two rivers very full of fish. Some say the Kings of *Helsingia* anciently resided here.

3. *Angermannia*, a fruitful and pleasant, yet in some places mountainous, Country. The soil is so good and certain, that tho' it bear Corn plentifully, it needs not be manur'd above once in ten years. It is divided in the middle into two parts, the northern and southern, by a great wood, which runs all along from the ragged mountain *Scula*, and thence takes its name; water'd it is by only one river, well stored with Salmon and other fish; secur'd by one City, nam'd *Hernsandia*, yielding the same commodities as *Hudingsvoldia*, only it affords no Copper.

4. *Bothnia*, not so full of mountains as *Angermannia*; of a sandy and barren turf, but well supplied with fish and other commodities. It has in it several rivers of considerable bigness, which empty themselves into the *Botnick*-Bay. Cities here are none, but this defect is supplied by a frequency of Market-Towns, which are almost as numerous as the Parishes. The advantage of this Country is chiefly by the trade from the nearer parts of *Lapland*, which is managed chiefly by the *Birkarli*, and all comes to the Sea-side this way.

II. *Sueonia*, or *Sweden*, strictly so taken, which contains in it these five Provinces, *Uplandia*, *Westmannia*, *Dalecarlia*, *Nericia*, and *Sudermannia*.

1. That which lies most North, or North-west, is *Dalecarlia*, i.e. the Dale or Valley of men (*Carle* signifying a man); a woody and barren Country; yet very considerable for its abundance of Copper, Allum, and Vitriol; all which are said to be dug out of one and the same Mine, which is very large, and no less remarkable for its Metals, then for the virtue of the water that is found in it; for if they steep a piece of Iron in it, it will in a short time (as they say) turn it into very good Copper, wanting a fourth part of the weight of the Iron. Which seems to confirm the opinion of some Philosophers, that all these three are of the same nature; and that Allum is the matter of Vitriol, as likewise Vitriol is of Copper. This Province is in the Diocesis of the Bishop of *Westeras*, and has never a City in it.





2. On the South or South-east of *Dalecarlia*, lies *Wesl-* or *Wesler-mannia*, or *Weslmannerland*, bordering upon *Upland* and *Gesfrica*. It is, according to the several Dales or divisions that are in it, divided into three parts, viz. *Offer- Wesler* and *Sun-Delia*. The soil is very fruitful, and the Mines very considerable, affording Steel, Iron, Copper, Lead, and some veins of Sulphur, in greater quantity than those of any other Province of the whole Country. There is also a Silver Mine discover'd, and made use of at *Salberg*. The Cities here are three, *Arosia*, *Arbogia* and *Koping*; the chief of these is *Arosia* or *Wesleras*, a Bishops seat; where, in the Cathedral Church, are several great stones with *Gothick* inscriptions, as there are likewise at *Stregnesia*. In this City the agreement, by which the State of the Kingdom was changed from an Elective to an Hereditary Monarchy, was concluded ann. 1540, in the time of *Gustavus I.* and thence call'd *Pactum Arosense*. The history was thus: The *Suedes* not being able to endure the tyranny and oppression of *Christi- er II.* then King both of *Sweden* and *Denmark*, forsook their Allegiance to him; and under the conduct of Prince *Gustavus*, (who had wonderfully escap'd from his imprisonment in *Denmark*), took up arms against him, expell'd him their Country, and at last gain'd their former liberty and privileges; whereupon, to requite their General for this signal good he had done the publick, they (at the instance of one *Canutus* President of the Council, and *Johannes Gothus* the Popes Legat, ann. 1523) unanimously elected him King; and considering how much it might tend to the happiness of the Kingdom, to have the Succession ascertain'd to his Issue, they, in the year 1540 wholly gave up their power of Electing their Kings for the future, and by Oath and solemn Covenant setled the Crown upon him and his Heirs for ever; which confidence of the people in their Prince, was justified in the event, for the new King was so far from abusing his Absolute power, that in that very year he published many Laws for the benefit of the people.

3. South of *Weslmannia* lies *Nericia*; a little, but fruitful, Province; yielding good store of Sulphur, Allum, and Vitriol. Some Silver Mines there are, but not labour'd. Most of its inhabitants are Smiths who supply the whole Country, especially those that work in the Mines, with Iron instruments of all sorts. Here is one City nam'd *Orebro-gia*.

4. South or South-east of *Nericia*, lies *Sudermania*, or *Sudermanland*; having on the East the *Baltick* Sea, *Offer-Gothia* on the South, and the Lake *Meller* on the North. It is famous for several Cities it contains; the chief and most considerable of which is *Nicopia*, the ancient seat of the Dukes of *Sudermania*. Here also is the place for building of Ships; the workmen are good, and materials cheap. Next to this is *Stregnesia*, a Bishops seat: with *Telga*, *Torslia*, and *Trofs*, all commodious for trade.

5. North or North-east of *Sudermania*, lies the Province of *Upland*, so call'd from its situation in the Country, or as some say, from King *Ublon*, who reigned here. It is bounded on the Eastside by the *Baltick* Sea, on the South by the Lake *Meller*, on the West and North by the Rivers *Same* and *Dalecarle*. This Country affords great plenty of Corn, with which it supplies the neighbouring Provinces. Some few Mines it has, of Lead and Iron especially; some also of Silver, tho not digg'd. It is divid'd into three Lands, or (as the *Suedes* call them) *Folk-lands*: 1. *Tibundria*, which lies most Northerly of any, and takes its name from ten Prefectures, or Hundreds, into which

it is shar'd out. 2. *Aibundria*, lying betwixt *Upsal* and *Stockholm*; so call'd because it contains eight Prefectures. 3. *Fiedrundria*, which takes its name from four Prefectures, into which it is divided; in it is the City *Enkoping*, four leagues from *Upsal*, and seven from *Stockholm*. And here it may be observed, as peculiar to this Province, that it (as the Counties in *England*) is shar'd out into several Prefectures or Hundreds, as *Erling-hundrat*, &c. Each of them containing at first one hundred families, all, two thousand two hundred; which is not observed in other Provinces, but their divisions are called *Haroldh* (*Har* signifying an Army, and *Odha* a possession), all which at first were supplied with Inhabitants from this Province of *Upland*; for when families increas'd above their hundreds, some (after the manner of an army) were singled out and lited to go and people, or rather subdue, other parts of the Country; wherefore these men settling in other Provinces, called the place where they first sit down, The possession of such a Colony or Army; as *Daga-Haroldh*, *Lystugn-Haroldh*, &c.

In this Province are five Cities; 1. *Encoping*, where was formerly a Monastery of *Minorites*.

2. *Sigunia*, so called from *Siggo*, King of *Sweden*, who founded it. Here was anciently a Monastery of *Dominicans*, the burying place of some of their Archbishops.

3. *Oregrundia* or *Oregrund*, a rich & populous City, abounding with corn & several forts of Merchandise, because of the commodiousness of the Port.

4. *Upsal*, the most Antient, and most famous, City in the whole Kingdom. It takes its name, says *Johannes Magnus*, from *Ublon* King of *Sweden*, who founded it, about the year after the Flood 240: but as others, from its situation upon the River *Sala*. Here was formerly the chief seat of the *Swedish* Kings; for which reason, as well as for the dignity of the City, one of their Titles was *Upsala-Konung*, i. e. King of *Upsal*. Here were also the suprem Courts of Judicature, Civil and Ecclesiastical; and the seat of their only Archbishop, continued to it to this day. Fortified it is, by one only Castle, built after the modern, not antient *Gothick*, fashion; upon a high hill, some small distance from the City, overlooking and commanding the whole Town: begun by *Ericus*, continued by King *John*, and perfected by *Charles Gustavus* the first in this City is the Metropolitane Church of the whole Kingdom, covered upon the roof, (as are most of the chief buildings), with Copper; adorned with an Artificial Clock, and honoured with the Monuments of several of their Kings: *Ericus* the Saint is said to lye buried here in a golden Coffin: *Gustavus Adolphus* also has his Tomb in this Church, upon which the whole History of his life is inscribed in large golden Characters. Here is also the only Universty they have in the whole Kingdom; begun at first, say some, Ann. 1248, under *Ericus Balbus* XI. by a College of only four Professors: or as *Loccenius* will have it, about the year 1306, under one *Andreas* President of the said College, who kept a free Table for Choristers and poor Scholars to assist in the Quire; but now, by the care of some of their later Kings, advanc'd into a famous Universty. An. 1476, in the Reign of *Steno Sture Senior*, Pope *Sixtus* IV. gave it the same privileges with *Bononia*: An. 1595, *Charles* then King endowed it with several Immunities and Revenues, by his Royal Patent: which, says *Messenius*, was in the year 1608 upon some differences 'twixt the *Catholics* and *Lutherans* fraudulently got from it; which if so, yet probably that Prince who favoured the Reformers so much, did restore it to the Universty: D d d

verity: of this See *Loccenius, Hist. Suec. Lib. 8. Pag. 474.* An. 1622, in the time of *Gustavus Adolphus* it was most considerably augmented; that King settling upon the University 306 Mannors, 8 Granaries of Tythes, 4 Mills, and 30 Demesnes, out of his own Crown Revenues, free from all Taxes and Impositions, towards the maintenance of more Professors and poor Scholars: commanding that the chief Rector should be elected by the Professors; that one of these should read a publick Lecture throughout the whole year (continued at present only in the Winter-time); that the Scholars should live peaceably, soberly, and minding their own affairs, not meddle with state matters, that none of them should (as they had formerly done) wear swords, or carry arms. This University in the time of King *John III* 1592, was removed hence to *Stockholm*; but that place being found, for several reasons, inconvenient, it was in a short time remanded to *Upsal*. A Library they have, well stored with books: a considerable part of which was given by *Gustavus Adolphus* An. 1631, which he in his expeditions against *Germany* took out of the Library of *Wurtzburg* and other places. To this City three anciently did belong several Lands and Revenues by the title of *Upland Oedom* or the *Parishony of Upsal*, given by *Freins* surnamed *Pacificus*, one of their ancient Kings, and of his own hereditary Lands, as a publick flock, which Parthony being embroiled by those men that had the managery of it, and for many years no account given, An. 1282, in the Reign of *Magnus I.* surnamed *Ladulus*, it was order'd in Council, That these publick Lands should be fought after, and reunited to the Crown, or some other way found, to maintain the Grandeur of the Court. The Lands, by reason of long alienation, could not be regain'd: wherefore it was enacted, that in lieu of them, all the Revenues of fishing in the *Finnick* and *Bothnick* Bays, the Lake *Meller*, and all other Lakes and Rivers within the Kings Dominions; as also of all Mines of what Metal soever, should over and above the Land-taxes, wholly and entirely belong to the Crown.

Their ancient manner of Worship.

This City was anciently the chief Place of their Heathenish, as it is at present of their Christian, worship: wherefore it may not be amiss here to treat as well of their ancient superstitions, as of their present true Religion: The Heathenish Deities, to which they pay'd their devotion were *Thor, Oden, and Freia*, who are said to have come out of *Asia* into this Country, and were, though under divers names, worshipped by most of the *Scandinavians*. *Thor*, so call'd from the Affiryan word *Thor* or *Thurra*, i.e. powerful, had a Temple dedicated to him, so flatly and magnificent, that, by the relation of *Johannes Magnus*, who tells prodigious stories of the Golden Roof, &c. the Temple of the Sun in *Cuzco* was but a poorly adorned Chappel to it: In the middle of this stupendous Fabric their God was set, upon a bed or couch, with a Crown upon his head, adorn'd with twelve stars, and a scepter in his hand: Upon his right hand stood *Oden* or *Odin*, arm'd like a soldier *Cap a pie*, nor unlike the *Roman God Mars*: On his left was plac'd the Goddess *Freia*, their *Venus*, holding a sword in one, and a bow in the other, hand. These three Deities were had in special reverence amongst them; Votaries coming from very remote parts, every ninth year, to visit the Temple, and pay their devotions; offering the most precious gifts they could provide, and sacrifices, for nine days together, (*Pythagorean* like counting nine an auspicious number); and on every day nine flocks of Animals, three of every sort: not sparing their servants, friends, chil-

dren, nor even their own selves, from being part of such bloody victims: This they did, not by choice, (every votary striving to be presented a sacrifice to his God), but by lots; taking him on whom the lot fell, tying a cord about his middle, and so let him down alive into a large well, dug close by the Temple for that purpose: if he escap'd quietly, and without any great struggling, or motion of the water, they concluded, that their god was pleas'd, and their Petitions heard: if otherwise, and he seem'd to dye with any reluctancy, they suppos'd their god was angry, and thereupon presently made ready another such-like sacrifice, to appease the wrath: When the body was drawn up out of the well, (if a pleasing sacrifice), they thought it not fit, to bury it in the ground the ordinary way, but hung it up upon a tree in the consecrated grove; and for ever after suppos'd it to be instant in a place of happiness, and esteem'd it as one of their Demi-gods: In these cruel sacrifices their Kings themselves were not only present, but sometimes, when the lot fell upon them, offer'd up to their Gods: being attended to the place of execution with great joy and acclamations by the greatest part of their subjects, who promised themselves great and lasting happiness by so Noble a victim.

Besides these three principal, they worshipp'd many other inferior Deities, upon different occasions; as *Merthothim*, who presided over their Magical Arts; *Fro*, to whom they always offer'd black victims; *Vagnost*, *Hading*, &c. with all the Sons and attendants of their principal Gods: Of which see *Johannes* and *Olaus Magnus*, *Adam Bremensis*, and *Loccenius*. The most foolish superstitions to which their Ignorance and credulity made them subject; as their arming themselves whenever it chanc'd to thunder, and shooting arrows up into the clouds, to assist these Gods of their Country, who, (as they suppos'd), were waging war against those of other Nations; their using to sacrifice their horses before they engag'd with their enemies, and setting the heads of them upon pales before the Army, in manner of a Palladium; and such like, frequently met with in Authors, are scarce worth mentioning: only this may be observ'd, that in their customs and ceremonies about their worship, they had some faint notions of an Infinite power, to which they ascribed their being and happiness, that their soul did not dye with their body, and such like common dictates of natural reason: All which were clearly discover'd to them, and the mists of Idolatry and Irreligion quite dispell'd, by the happy plantation of Christianity amongst them.

In the year of Christ 780, *Bero* or *Bjorno III.* King of *Sweden*, desir'd *Charles* the Great Emperor of *Germany*, to send some able Ministers into the North, to plant Christian religion amongst them; who accordingly sent one *Herbertus* surnamed *Belga*, a man of noted piety and learning in those times. He succeeded well in his undertakings, gain'd many proselytes, and built a Church at *Lyncopen* in *Uthra-Gothia*, where himself was Rector, and afterwards dyed. An. 814, *Ludovicus Pius I.* Emperor of *Germany*, in the sixth year of his reign, sent hither more Apostles; one of which was nam'd *Ansgarus*, a Monk of *Corbej* in *France*, who brought with him from thence divers of the Monks; and planted in *Saxony* a Monastery of the former name, intending it for a Seminary to supply the want of Preachers in the North. But all this Emperors time Christianity was rather privately brought in hither, (*Paganism* prevailing, and most of these poor men being martyr'd for their Religion) then publicly countenanc'd or established; till about An. 955, when

when *Olaus Scat-koning*, desirous to enjoy the purity of the Gospel, sent to *Ethebed* then King of *England*, desiring him to furnish him with Ministers to preach Christianity to him and his subjects. [That there hath always been great friendship between those two Crowns, appears by many particulars; one especially not to be forgotten, is that the Kings of *Sweden* would never permit any of their subjects to engage with the *Danes* and other Northern people, to exercise Piracy against, or invade, the *English* Dominions, as 'tis observ'd by *Jo. Magnus*, and other Authors.] *Ethebed* readily consented to so pious a request, and dispatch'd over one *Sigfrid*, then Archbishop of *York*, with divers other godly Priests, and worthy labourers; who at their arrival in *Sweden* found kind reception, baptiz'd the King himself, with all his Courtiers; and prevail'd so far to have the Gospel propagated amongst his subjects, that Christian Churches were built in every Province of the Kings Dominions. This so happy plantation was water'd by the blood of three of his Followers, *Unaman*, *Sumaman*, and *Vinaman*, murder'd by the contrivance of a wicked woman, and lye buried at *Wexio*, a City in *Smalandia*. After this, Christianity was nurs'd up by their succeeding Kings; *Ericus* especially, who (as was said before) propagated it to the *Finlanders*. *Ericus* it was according to the Ceremonies of the Church of *Rome*, till about the year 1530, at which time *Gustavus I.* then King, (upon what motives Authors do not agree), established the *Lutheran* Religion; displacing all those that refus'd to subscribe the Articles he propos'd, amongst whom was that elegant Historian and very learned person *Jo. Magnus*, then Archbishop; who refusing to comply with the King, left his Country, fled to *Rome*, there wrote his History, with an account of this Metropolis, and dyed 1544. In the year 1537, the said *Gustavus* enter'd into a League with *Christianus* King of *Denmark*, *Philip Landgrave of Hesse*, the Elector of *Saxony*, and other German Princes, to defend this Religion thus reformed, against the Emperor and other Princes of the Communion of the Church of *Rome*. In the year 1613, it was publickly consented to by the States of the whole Kingdom. A.D. 1627, *Gustavus Adolphus* gave sanctuary in his dominions to all those that were any way persecuted in *Germany*, or elsewhere, for this profession. Confirm'd it was, and agreed to, by *Charles Gustavus X.* An. 1655; and by this present King *Charles XI.* in 1663, publicly ratified and subscrib'd to, and ever since by him maintain'd; so that *Lutheranism* may seem to have taken deepest root in this Kingdom.

The Clergy of *Sweden* is had in great honour and reputation. And tho the revenues belonging to the Church are since the Reformation very much impaired, (*Gustavus I.* annexing, as 'tis said, to the Crown at one time 7500 Farms and Ecclesiastical Livings), yet the respect due to their Ministers does not seem to be much abated. Their Archbishop always performs the Religious Solemnities at the Kings Coronation, and with as many Bishops as the King pleases to chuse, is admitt'd Privy-Counsellor to his Majesty. He is reckon'd the chief person in the Kingdom next to the King himself, and accordingly takes place of all Temporal Lords; and anciently when it was granted to a Knight or Lay-Privy-Counsellor to have only twelve, and a Senator eight, it was order'd that he might have forty, and a Bishop thirty, Horses in their Retinue. He has under him seven Suffragans, viz. the Bishops of *Lyncopen*, *Scare*, *Stregnes*, *Wetters*, *Wexio*, *Abou*, and *Riga*: And divers Superintendents, who have Episcopal

Jurisdiction, viz. of *Calmare*, *Gottenburgh*, *Mariehamn*, *Revel*, &c. All which make up an Ecclesiastical College, call'd the supreme Consistory of the Kingdom, wherein the Archbishop always presides. The Clergy of this Nation, says *Loccenius*, according to the manner of the Eastern Churches, us'd to marry; till Pope Innocent IV. by a Council held at *Senejia* a City of *Uthra-Gothia*, An. 1248, forbade marriage to Priests, and caus'd those that had wives to put them away. What concerns their Religion, or their Church-Government, being the same with that of the *Lutherans*, must be elsewhere more largely treated of. The King is the absolute Sovereign in Ecclesiastical matters, which he determines not without the advice of his Archbishop and Bishops. He names all the Bishops, and by his power are summon'd all Ecclesiastical Assemblies. Authors make a difference betwixt their Bishops and Superintendents, but it is not considerable, both equally depending upon the Archbishop; but the Superintendents have not in all things equal power with the Bishops.

The fifth and last City of *Upland* is *Stockholm*, *Stock* lying in 42 degrees of Longitude, and of Latitude 58 ten minutes. A Town of great Trade, the present seat of the Kings of *Sweden*, and the Metropolis of the whole Kingdom. Situate it is in an Island on the side of the Lake *Meller*, encompassed on all sides, especially that toward the Lake, with high rugged Rocks (called *Scheren*) which hinder the prospect of the City, but very much secure the Haven, which is very large and of dangerous entrance; though these Rocks are a defence to the Town, yet by reason of them it is sometime set upon by an enemy unawares, as it was by *Stigismund* King of *Poland*, An. 1594. It is said to have been founded by King *Birgerus* Anno 1261, and from the great quantity of wood used in the building of it, called *Stockholme*, (*Stock* signifying wood and *Holme* an Island). But Anno 1552, a fire happening in the City and by reason of the wooden buildings burning down a great part of it, it was by publick command rebuilt, part of stone, part of brick, part also upon Piles, so that the sea flows under the houses. In it are several large well-built bridges; only two gates, opening to the South and North. Publick Inns or Lodging-houses here are none, but strangers take up their quarters with some of the Burghers, entertainment handsome, and charges not great. An. 1407, it was consumed by Lightning, and some thousands of people destroy'd by the fire. In 1529, King *Gustavus* the first, called several principal Burghers and Merchants out of other Cities, to inhabit this; most of the inhabitants being driven hence by the tyranny of *Christiern II.* King of *Denmark*. There are in it eight Churches in all; one of which is supplied by a *Finlandish*, another by a *German*, Minister, who constantly preach in their own language. In the Citadel are the Kings Palace, handsomely built, some part eight or nine stories high, yet of great strength and security; within it is a large and magnificent Church, built by King *John*, erected upon Marble pillars, and roof'd with Copper; with a private Chappel for the King, very large also, having forty windows on each side; where at the high Altar is said to be a truly Silver Image of our Saviour crucified, in full proportion. This City has been very often besieged; An. 1434, by the people of *Sweden*, who rebelled upon account of Foreign Officers employed in the affairs of the Kingdom, contrary to the Laws of the Land; By King *John* 1481: 1522 by *Gustavus I.* and at other times; the enemy always taking advantage of a hill called *Brancaberge*, so

D d 2

near,

near, that from it they can batter the Cittadel. The Arms of this City are the Head of Saint *Erius* Crown'd *Or*, taken by the agreement of the States, in remembrance of that Kings Virtue and Piety; and those of the Kingdom are three Crowns *Or*, in a Field *Azure*, given for the same reason. This being the Metropolis, and lying so conveniently, is the greatest place of trade in the whole Nation; from whence are exported Copper, Iron, Steel, Lead, Deal-board, and very many Manufactures made of those materials: Copper especially, whereof this Kingdom supplies the necessities almost of the whole world.

This City is govern'd by four chief Magistrates or Consuls, who are elected out of the Burghers, and enjoy the dignity for their life. Their Office is to give Laws, and decide controversies arising 'twixt one Citizen and another, if of lesser concern; but if of great moment, they always have the assistance of the Lieutenant of the Castle, who is President of the Court for that time; and either puts an end to the case, or transmits it to the Kings Council. They perform this office by turns, two having precedence, and supplying it one, and the other two the next year. When any extraordinary affairs happen, they may have the assistance of some of the principal Citizens, who take upon them particular businesses, as the care of Buildings, the decision of some private action, promulgation of Laws, &c. Besides these, there are twelve Senators or Aldermen, chosen out of the Body of the City, who have the office likewise for their lives. Out of these, four are elected to be Assessors to the Consuls; and in all cases and differences arising, to assist them.

In this City commonly reside a great number of Foreigners, *Germans* and *Finnlanders* especially, who, as all others of the *Lutheran* persuasion, are allow'd free exercise of their Religion; which is not granted to any of the *Roman* Communions.

Soil. The soil of the Country hereabouts, as in most parts of *Sweden*, is generally fruitful; affording store of Corn, as Wheat, Rye, Barley, Oats, &c. and pasturage, and in some places no small quantity of Wood. In the South parts of *Westro-gothia*, the ground is so rich and fertile, that three-six days after they have sown, they reap their Barley.

Beasts. Beasts of all sorts are here in great plenty, as Horses, Elks, Bears, wild Bulls, Castors or Beavers, Sables, Ermins, Marrons, &c. Sheep also and Oxen, not only sufficient to supply the whole Country, but also to have great numbers transported out of *Finland*, *Schonen*, &c. into other Nations.

Trees. Trees also are here in great abundance, as Fir, Pine, Birch, Juniper, &c. Apple and Pear, Plumb, and other Fruit-trees; and of late Hop have been planted here. The Pines and Firs which grow upon the Sea-coasts, are said to have in the summer-time a kind of Rofinous Gum distilling from them, which falling into the *Baltick* and *Botnick* Seas, and by the waves carry'd to the *Prussian* shore, has given occasion to some, to ascribe to this the original of their Amber, which seems to be rather a coagulation of Petroleum. Honey abounds very much in this Country, not only preserved in Hives in their Gardens, but ordinarily to be met with in the Woods. Wines have been sometimes in such scarcity here, that they could not be furnished for the Communion, to remedy which, divers Authors report, that P. Innocent VIII. ann. 1486, gave leave to the Priests of *Norway*, and places under the same parallel, to celebrate in some other Liquors.

The Air is of different temperature, according to the diversity of Climes; for the most part it is cold, pure, free from vapours, and consequently healthful. In those parts near the *Baltic* and *Baltic* coasts, it is frequently mudded with sea and marsh vapours. Serpents and venomous beasts, whatever some Authors say, are not at all, or very rarely in these Countries; but fowl and fish of all sorts in so great abundance, that even the Peasants, contrary to the custom of other Countries, are permitted to catch and to make profit of them.

Lakes here are many, and very large; the greatest and most considerable are, 1. *Meller* in *Upland*; well stored with Salmon, Pike, and such like fish; and in winter so hard froze, that it is ordinary to have Markets and Fairs kept upon it. 2. *Hiemer* in *Nerica*. 3. *Sitian* in *Dalcarlia*. 4. *Vener* in *Westro-gothia*, an hundred and thirty English miles in length, and forty in breadth; having many Islands in it, and twenty-four considerable rivers which fall from the *Norwegian* mountains, unburthening themselves into it; all which have but one passage out, call'd *Tralbeta*, i.e. the Devils Cap, lying towards the South. 5. *Veter*, in the same Province, whose waters are so clear and calm, that one may discern the bottom at a great depth. Upon the banks of this Lake were anciently founded the Monasteries of St. *Bridget* the chief Saint of this Kingdom, and of St. *Catherine* her daughter, with several other noble buildings. 6. *Ula-trasch* in *Cajania*. 7. *Pejenda* in *Tavastia*; to which may be added, 8. *Ladoga*, upon the confines of *Muscovy*; the greatest part of which was by a treaty of Peace ceded by the *Muscovite* to this Crown. All of them abound with fish, the revenues of which make no small addition to the Kings Exchequer.

From these Lakes arise many Rivers, running so orderly from one to another, that they may seem, like those in *Holland*, to have their channels cut and directed by art. The first is *Dale-carle*, whose head is in the *Dofine* mountains, whence it falls into *Dalecarlia*, takes in several lesser Currents at *Torslang*, and so parts the Provinces of *Upland* and *Geftricia*, and at last falls into the *Botnick* Bay. 2. *Saga* or *Sawe*, which divides *Upland* from *Westmannia*. 3. *Angermanie*, which waters *Angermannia*, and is noted for its abundance of Salmon: with several others of lesser note.

Mines in this Country, are very frequent; as of Silver, Copper, Iron, Lead, Allum, Vitriol, Sulphur, &c. every Province almost affording some, more or less; where we shall make mention of them. The greatest part belong to the subject; yet some few are wholly in the Kings possession; workmen being maintain'd, and the whole revenues receiv'd, by the Crown. In the year 1244 *Magnus Ladislaus* then King instituted, or rather re-establish'd a society of Miners, to take care of all affairs relating to the Mines, and to determine all controversies arising concerning them. These men in the year 1649, in the reign of Queen *Christina*, had many privileges granted to them, and several new Laws made amongst them; of which we find extant these, viz. If any subject discover a Mine in his own ground, of what metal soever, the whole profit of it is to be long to him for six years; after which time he is to pay tenths to the King; and, if he maintains a Forge, to fit out for every Hammer he keeps, one man and Waggon in time of war, for the Kings service. From these Mines comes the most considerable part of the Kings Revenues. In the year 1578, two or three Copper Mines are said to have yielded to the Kings Exchequer above

500 Squepons, every Squepon being valued at 30000 Dollars; and other Mines proportionably every year since.

Of the Government and Manners of the Swedes.

THE Kings of *Sweden* are said at first to have been elected by the Governours of the Provinces, who never assembled but upon this occasion. He whom they commonly made the subject of their choice, was of the Royal Line, or some one of the Nobility of their own Country; and as some say, amongst these *ceteris paribus*, the tallest and most personable. The place where the election was perform'd, was *Upland*, where they assembling, and having agreed who should be their Prince, they went forth of the City to a place call'd *Moresen* a small distance from it; here were set in order thirteen large stones, one in the middle whereon was plac'd his new elected King; the other twelve round him for the twelve Senators: where after some few Ceremonies, a Declaration of the duty of the King &c. they propos'd to him an Oath, that he would protect and administer justice to his people; and the Electors for themselves, the absent Nobility, all the Body of the people; and all their posterity mutually engag'd that they would obey his Laws and bear faithful allegiance to him. These rites perform'd, the new King us'd to inquire all his Electors and Nobles to banquet, where he himself waited on them; and afforded them great and splendid entertainment, all which ended with a solemn Grace-Cup, call'd by them *Bergs-beger*.

These customs, since under *Gustavus* the first, the Kingdom was made hereditary, are quite left off; and when the Coronation is to be solemniz'd, the Nobles and chief Officers of the Kingdom meet at the Kings Pallace at *Upland*; whence they go to the Metropolitan Church in order. The Senators of the Kingdom carry the Royal Ornaments, the *Droster* or Viceroy the Crown, the Marshal the Sword, the Admiral the Scepter, the Chancellor the golden Globe, the Grand Treasurer the Key, and the King on horseback follows them to the Church; where the Archbishop receiving him, demands of him an account of his faith; then reverently approaching the high Altar he tenders to him an Oath to this effect. That he will fear God and defend his Church; promote love, justice and truth amongst his Subjects; that he will govern his Kingdom by Natives and not admit any Strangers into Council or places of great trust; that he will not alienate any Forts, Lands or Territories within his Dominions, but preserve them whole and entire to his Successors; that he will provide himself and his Court out of his constant Crown Revenues, and never burthen his Subjects with Taxes, but upon these accounts, viz. Either upon an Invasion, whether by Christians or Infidels; a Domestic Insurrection; upon the marriage of his Sons or Daughters; for the building of some new Forts; or upon diminution of the Exchequer: and that he will introduce no laws or Constitutions without or against the consent of the people. [To *Stigismund* the third, King of *Poland*, who claim'd this Kingdom, they propos'd that he would not alter any thing in the establish'd Religion, which was the *Lutheran*; which Oath he either refusing, or presently breaking, lost the favour of his people, and the Kingdom it self before he was well settled in it.] This done, the Archbishop puts on him his Crown and other Kingly Ornaments, and one of the Heralds

proclaims, such one is crown'd King of *Sweden* and *Gothland*, and none but he: then all the people answer, *Let the King live*.

After this the King calls before him the Governours or Legifers of every Province and chief Cities within his Dominions, who for themselves and their respective Governments take an oath of Allegiance to the King; this done the King gives to every one of them, to the Legifer of *Upland* first, and the rest in order, an Escutcheon with the Arms of that Province or that City where they are to preside, as Badges of their Offices; and returning to his Pallace, his Nobility are by him splendidly entertain'd, and the Ceremony ends. Henceforward he hath power in Ecclesiastical and civil matters, and rules his people as an absolute Monarch.

The next heir to the Crown, is the Kings eldest Son, if he have any, who sometimes is by publick declaration acknowledg'd to be so, before his Fathers death, as *Charles* eldest Son to *Gustavus* the first is said to have been; and though in that Kings time the right of succession was by the States granted only to his issue Male, yet in the year 1627, *Gustavus Adolphus* presc'd that the Kings Daughters also, might be admitted to the Throne, by which procurement his Daughter *Christina* was made capable to succeed.

Upon default of issue Royal, it is by the *Unio Hereditaria* provided, that the nearest in blood to the Kings Family shall succeed: and upon failure of these, the power of electing is to devolve upon the States. The Kings younger sons, he commonly makes Governours over some particular Provinces, giving them Titles fitted to their Commands. His Daughters are provided for at the expense of the whole Kingdom, their Portions being not taken out of the Kings Exchequer, but levied by publick Tax. In the *Interregnum*, absence, sickness or minority of the King, the Kingdom is govern'd by the *Droster* or Vice-Roy, the Marshal, Admiral, Chancellor and Treasurer of the Kingdom, who at their admission to the publick management of affairs, take an Oath not to diminish any thing of the Kings Rights, but preserve them whole and entire: and if it happen that any part of them be by these Trustees during the Kings Minority sold or alienated, the King, when he comes to full age, may by law recover it.

Anciently the Kings of *Sweden*, shortly after they were elected, us'd to make a publick Progress through their Dominions, the Legifer or Lieutenant of every Province being bound to provide for his Reception: what the King did, was to assure the people of the great care he had of them, and that charge wherewith they had entrusted him, and to receive of the people Oaths of Allegiance and Fidelity. This custom being found somewhat expensive, and the civil troubles of the Kingdom oftentimes not permitting it, is now quite left off, and the people rest content in the confidence they have of their Prince, without thus seeing his Person.

The Court of the King of *Sweden*, like that of *England*, consists of Ecclesiastical, Civil and Military persons and government; 1. For the Ecclesiastical, there is the Archbishop with as many Suffragans as are by the King thought convenient, who attend the King both at Church, and Council: upon these several of the inferior Clergy continually wait. 2. For the Civil, officers the *Droster* or Vice-Roy is chief, whose office was anciently to admonish and direct the King, to inform him upon any default whatsoever, and upon non-attendance to declare the same to the Governours of the King's

dom, in whose power it was when they thought fit to dethrone their Prince. 2. Next is the Chamberlain or Commisary General, who presides over the chief Court of Judicature, the Kings Chamber, commonly held at *Stock-holme*, and discharges all expences, and orders all the disbursements of the Kingdom. He has under him one Questor, who takes care of what money is brought into the Exchequer and gives account to him. Under these are twelve Masters of accounts, who keep Registers of the Kings Revenues, take care lest any detriment happen to the Crown, and once a year make up their accounts to the Commisary General in the presence of some of the Privy Counsellours. Every one of these has one particular Province of the Kingdom given him in charge, in which he employs divers Tax-Masters who collect the Tributes, Tenth, and other Crown Revenues, and bring them to his hands. 3. In the third place succeeds the Chancellor of the Kingdom, whose Office is much what the same, as in other Kingdoms. 4. The Treasurer of the whole Kingdom, who has under him several Secretaries and other Officers; his office is to keep the Crown, Globe, Scepter and Sword: he is Master of the Royal Mint, and Pay-master general of the whole Kingdom, accountable to none but the King only. 5. For the Military Officers, the principal is the Grand Marshal or Generalissimo of the Kings Forces. Next is the High Admiral of the Kingdom, with the several other officers not different from those in other States.

Besides these chief Officers of State, each Province of the Kingdom has its peculiar Governor, called *Land-here* or *Statthalder*, whose power is very great, and office considerable: under him there are in every Province as many *Lands-men* or *Nemendaries* or *Nempenen*, as there are Districts or Prefectures in it; all which have distinct and subordinate offices, appeals lying from the lower to the next immediately above it, and so to the supreme Court of Judicature the Kings Chamber: all actions depending in the King as the source and fountain of the laws. By these Governors and Deputies agreeing together, Tributes are exacted, and Taxes levied. According to an order of the Senate held at *Lyncopen* 1599, they were to keep Courts of Justice twice in every year; all of them meeting in the Winter time about *February* at *Upsal* at the publick Fair called *Disting*, and in Summer at *Lyncopen*.

States or Orders of men in this Kingdom there are, says *Bureau*, six: 1. Princes of the Blood Royal, Nobility, Clergy, Souldiery, Merchancy, and Commonalty.

Princes of the Blood.

1. The Princes of the Blood-Royal are disposed of by the King, according to their Age and capacity. The eldest, as was said, is His apparent to the Crown. The younger are commonly created Dukes, and made Governors of Provinces; of *Upsal* first, and the rest in order of dignity. These after the death of their elder brother, if he dye without issue, have right to succeed in the Throne.

Nobility.

2. The Nobility, which is said to have descended from King *Ingon* or *Harald* of *Norway*, and spread through *Germany*, *Suitzeland*, *Spain*, &c. when the *Goths* invaded the *Roman* Empire. It is divided into three ranks or orders: 1. Counts of Earls and Barons or Franch-Barons. The Earls (*Jarl*) anciently were created only upon extraordinary accounts, as were also their Dukes, called *Hertog*, neither of their titles being then hereditary. A war happening between them and some of their Kings, their Honour and Titles were for some ages quite laid aside, till King *Eri-*

cus XIV. about the year 1560, first of all reneved these lost Titles, and restored them to their owners; which gracious favour of his was followed by his successors, they not only continuing his honour during life, but at present making it hereditary. The second consists of those whose ancestors have been advanced to the honour of Senators of the Kingdom. The third sort is made up of those, who are neither Counts nor Barons, and whose ancestors have not been of the Senatorian Order: of these Orders may be either their Knights, for their valour created by the King, whose Titles are not transmitted to their Heirs, tho frequently upon equal desert conferred on them; or Gentlemen, who are the lowest degree of the Nobility, anciently called *Assapen*, either because they were expert in war, or bore a Coat of Arms. All these Noblemen enjoy great privileges and immunities: All their estates are free from taxes and impositions, so much only out of the Lands of Earls and Barons excepted, as they at their creation receive of the King, for which they pay some acknowledgement to the Crown only in time of war, and all exigencies whatever, they are obliged to fit out horses and men for the Kings service proportionably to their estates. Out of these are commonly elected the Senators, Judges, and chief Officers of the Kingdom; men of low birth, tho of considerable parts, seldom advancing themselves into places of great trust and employment in Civil affairs, in Ecclesiastical more frequently. The estates of these Noblemen are inherited as well by their daughters as their sons; the son (if one) having half, and a daughter three parts of them; which custom King *Bergerus Jarl* is said to have made and brought in about four ages ago.

3. The Clergy, concerning whom what we have said, is set down under *Upsal*.

4. The Souldiery, which enjoys very great privileges from the King; as soon as any is lifted Souldier he has over and above his ordinary pay, all his Lands Tax-free: if in time of war a Souldiers horse be killed under him, the King provides him with another, and if any be taken Captive by the Enemy, the King redeems him at his own charges, and such like, which we shall mention when we speak of the Forces of the Kingdom.

5. The Merchancy, in whose possession the most considerable part of the riches of the Kingdom is kept, and by whose procurement foreign Commodities are imported. For the good government and benefit of these, every Maritime City and Mart-Town had anciently their particular Municipal Laws, derived from *Bera* the ancient feat of their Kings, and about 600 year ago, a Town of the greatest trade in the Kingdom: by these it was ordered how, and in what manner, the Maritime Cities might exercise Trade as well with Inland Towns as Foreigners; what Commodities they might traffick with, not hindring one anothers commerce. &c. These laws were by the Civil wars in the Kingdom quite neglected, and for a long time out of use; but by the care of some of the late Kings, they or some equivalent to them, begin to be restored and put in Execution.

6. The last and lowest state, and as it were the Basis of the rest, is the Commonalty, called *Bond* or *Bond*, of which there are four sorts. 1. Named *Seabonders*, who have Hereditary Lands, privileges of fishing and fowling, &c. belonging to them: these in time of war are bound to fit out one Horse and Man for the Kings service. The second sort, are those that labour in the Mines, called *Bergs-men* no less profitable to the publick than

then the former, and enjoy no less privileges and immunities, both possessing Estates and Fishery of their own, and like the Commons of *England*, having their Representatives in the publick Council of the Kingdom. Of these, some by reason of their freedom and advantage of Education, which is denied the Peasantry of other Countreys, sometimes arrive at great honours in Church and State; the famous King *Erius* surnamed the *Saint*, is said to have been a Country-mans son.

The *Suedes*, as all other Nations, were for a long time governed only by the laws of nature, the consuetudinary edicts of their Kings, Decrees of the States, and Responces of the wife: till about the year 1251, *Bergerus Jarl* compiled a body of Laws and Constitutions for the Kingdom, collected out of the former. These, before the invention of Paper, were engraven upon large wooden Posts; thereby, after the manner of the *Romans* and *Athenians*, to be promulgated to the people. They were commonly very short and general, as denigating the decision of particular cases to the publick Magistrates. Besides these they had upon any emergent difficulties, other ancient Laws, which they called *Recessus Regni*, and other ancient Statutes of the Kingdom by which only great controversies were decided.

At present the Courts of Justice are more regular; and for the speedier execution of it, there are in the whole Kingdom five supreme Courts of Judicature.

1. The Kings Chamber, which is divided into three ranks or degrees; 1. Supreme in which all Cases twixt Senator and Senator, brought thither by Appeal, are decided. 2. The Middle in which are determined actions of Treason, and all others twixt Noblemen, Lagmen and publick Officers. 3. The lowest, where ordinary Trials are decided, whether Civil or Criminal, where it is judged, whether the procedure in Inferiour Courts, in actions brought thence by Appeal, has been Legal or not. From this Court there lies no appeal, but only to the King; who may pardon the crime, or mitigate the punishment, as he pleases. Under this, for dispatch of business, are two other Courts, one for Civil, and one for Criminal matters of inferiour contentment.

2. The Court Marshal, in which all matters relating to War are decided. The Grand Marshal of the Army is always President, having two Assessors, Senators of the Kingdom, or publick Officers; all men of the sword; with the Master of the Camp, Master of the Artillery, and Captain General of the Kings Guards.

3. The Court of Chancery for the decision of all Cases Civil or Ecclesiastical; here the Chancellors of the Kingdom presides with four Senators Assessors, and the two Secretaries of State: here all Mandates, Edicts, Commissions, &c. are made in the Kings name; all Decrees of Senate and Constitutions of the Kingdom registered; and in a word, cognizance taken of all complaints and Cases twixt one Subject and another, whether relating to the Church or State; which are brought thither by Appeal from some Inferiour Courts.

4. The Court of Admiralty for the inspection and determining all business relating to the Navy or Sea affairs; here the High Admiral presides, four Senators, four Vice Admirals and several Captains, Assessors.

5. The Court of the Kings Exchequer, in which all business relating to the Kings Revenues, or wherein the Crown is any way concerned are examined and decided; here the

Grand Treasurer is Judge, who has four Assessors, two Senators and two Noblemen.

Besides these there are other Inferiour Tribunals, instituted at first by *Gustavus Adolphus* in the years 1614 and 1615, in some of the most principal Cities of the Kingdom. 1. At *Stock-holme*, where the *Drotset* presides with sixteen Assessors, four Senators, six Knights and six Lawyers. 2. At *Juncopia* in *Gothland*, where the President is a Senator of the Kingdom, six Nobles and as many Lawyers Assessors. 3. At *Abo* in *Finland*, where a Senator is President, six Nobles and six Lawyers, Assessors. 4. At *Dopar* in *Livonia*, a Senator President and twelve Assessors; two other also were by him appointed, one at *Wismar* in *Pomerania*, and another at *Rugen* in the Dukedom of *Breme*; but all proceedings there, by reason of the wars twixt this Crown and the neighbouring Princes, are quite stoppt, and the four former at present only made use of.

In the Cities of lesser note Justice is executed in this manner, the first hearing is before an Inferiour Magistrate called *Cammerer Rat*; the second before the Consuls and Senate of the Town, which are always four in number, each having his particular charge; the third, if the case be of importance, before one of the supreme Tribunals; where upon the first hearing, the Judge or President of the Court is bound to determine the case, or else to give under his hand that it is very intricate and requires longer time, or a higher Court, for its determination; or else with the twelve Assessors are to be fined each three Marks apiece.

Over and above all these Courts, and as it were a Compound of them all, is the Senate of the Kingdom, held anciently only for the election of their Kings, and consisting of the Governors of the Provinces; but at present made up of more members, and summoned for the same reasons and in the same manner as the Parliament in *England*. In it there are two Persons elected out of every Consistory, and one Rector of a Country Parish: out of every District one Colonel, with other Lieutenants and Majors: out of every City one Consul, one Senator or some other principal Citizen; and out of every Territory one Inhabitant: every different order of these have a distinct house to sit in, and for every house a Chair-man or Speaker. For the Nobility the grand Marshal: for the Clergy the Arch-bishop; for the Burgeses of Cities one of the Consuls of *Stock-holme* or the Master of the Artillery: and for those of the Country some one elected out of their own Body. When they have finished their Deliberation severally, they confer all the Houses together, and having agreed upon a form, present their resolves to the King; if he is pleased with them and thinks fit to pass them into Acts, he with the Members of the Parliament subscribe and seal them: the Records of which the Marshal of the States (an Officer appointed for that purpose) puts into the Chancery; causes them to be promulgated; and then quits his Charge, and his Staff the mark of his Dignity.

The Laws used in *Sweden*, as well as those of *The Lams*, *Ostro* and *Westro-Gothia* are very ancient; every Province having formerly had, says *Luxenius*, particular Constitutions by which it was governed: the Plaintiff and Defendant using to plead their own Causes, or to give the management of them to some of their Kindred, never taking the assistance of any Advocate or Proctor, contrary to their present practice. In cases dubious it was in use here, as in most parts of

Inferiour Tribunals.

Europe,

Europe, to refer the determination of them, to the trial either of *Fire Ordeal*, (sufficiently known to most men), used at first in this Country by *Olaus Skotkenon* about the year 986, and quite abrogated by *Bergerus Jers* about 300 years ago; or of scalding water; or of bringing the suspected Person, in cases of murder, to the dead body: (which if upon his approach begun to bleed, they judged him to be the murderer), or of *Duel*, call'd *Whiding* i.e. confederation. This manner of Trial was first allowed, say some, by *Frodo King of Denmark*, whence being brought into *Sweden*, and for sometime prevailing, it was first of all by *Gustavus the Great* under great penalties forbid; but not absolutely extirpated, till the time of this present King *A. 1662*, when its punishment was made arbitrary.

At present if a *Legislator* be to be elected, it is done by the *Bishop*, (who gives notice thereof in the Court eight weeks before the election-day), and the people of the Territory; who return three sufficient persons to the King, and he chuses one of them. If a *President*, the *Legislator* and the people of the District chuse him. Who takes an Oath to administer Justice impartially amongst them, and can be Judg in any only District at the same time. When a Plaintiff commences an Action against the Defendant, he with two able House-keepers, goes to his house and summons him to the Court: if he appear the first, second, or third Court day, 'tis well: if not, he loses the Action, and distress is made upon his Goods. In cases of Murder, Adultery, &c. punishable by death; if the guilty persons *flie*, *Dad kess* or Hue and Cry is sent out after them, which is to go through the whole Precinct, and to be continued from one place to another, by the delivery of a Staff, the sign of authority. A Woman convicted of adultery by six Witnesses, loses her Dowry, her Estate, and if her husband pleases, her life too. Whoever takes Life for Money loses it, and is punished beside: though privately at *Stockholme* and places of Trade, Usury-money begins to be taken. If any person have scandalized his Neighbour and be convicted of it, he is besides the Fine, forced to recant and make a publick confession of the injury in writing: [formerly for such offences, the Fine was nine Marks, called *Lopp-gold* or *Lip-fine*, and the guilty persons were forced to beat their own mouths, to crawl backward out of the Court, and were for ever rendered incapable of giving evidence.] Besides these and many such like Laws, there are published several belonging to the *Gahs*, which they using in other Countries, as well as this, are not more fit to be mentioned here, then in any other place.

Land Forces.

How powerful the Kings of *Sweden* are in Sea, as well as Land, Forces, is sufficiently manifested by their late, as well as present, wars. How far *Gustavus Adolphus* went in his expeditions against *Germany*, is sufficiently known to the world; and how this present King has behaved himself between two powerful enemies, is no less manifest. And such is the great strength of the Kingdom, that sometimes it has maintained war with three potent adversaries, the *Dane*, the *Pole*, and the *Muscovite*, all at once. The Land-forces are provided and kept in readiness, after the manner of our Trained-Bands, by the Provinces of the Kingdom, thirty-two Regiments in all, seven hundred souldiers in each Regiment. These are most of them *Musquetiers*, Pikemen being, by reason of their thick and frequent woods, not so serviceable in this, as other, champaign Countries. The body of their Army, to their great advantage, is in time of

war composed of Peasants (such souldiers as the ancient *Romans* desired to have), people laborious, frugal, hardy, and being us'd at home to make all their clothes themselves, prove when they come to field, as many Tailors, Shoemakers, &c. as Soldiers. Every Company of Foot has its particular Captain, Lieutenant, and Ensign; who have always, but especially if the fear of war be within the Kingdom, very small pay; the Captain himself not having (besides the abatement of all Taxes for himself, and some of his relations) above one Coat a year, and four Dollars *per messem*; and a common souldier one Dollar and a fourth part *per messem*. Regiments of Horse are in *Suecia* and *Gothia* twelve, and in *Finland* two, one of which is made up by the Commonalty, the other by the Nobility of that Province. Each of these has its Captain, Lieutenant, and Cornet, and much what the same discipline as in other Countries. Their horses are commonly lesser, but stronger and more accustomed to labour, then those of *Germany*. The Horsemen carry with them Carbons or short Guns. The reason why *Finland* maintains so few, and *Suecia* and *Gothia* so many, Regiments, is, because the former is particularly obliged to maintain the Fleet and Sea-souldiers, and the latter abound more with horses and men; the Province of *Dalecarlia* being said at one time to have raised thirty-thousand men, well armed. Of these Land-forces there is, according to the Laws of the Kingdom, a general muster once every year at least; all the Courtiers (some few only excepted) being allow'd pay, and bound to accompany the King to the place of Rendezvous.

Next are the Sea-forces, no less considerable then those of the Land; the King having commonly in readiness above 50 Guns, all under the command of one High Admiral. In a war against *Denmark*, King *John* the third, fitted out seventy men of war with several Merchants Ships; in which besides the Seamen, were embarked 18000 *Land-Souldiers*. The chief Port in the Kingdom is *Stockholme*, where lie at anchor sometimes above 300 Ships; in *Finland*, *Lionia* and other Parts, there are very convenient Harbours, though not so well stored with Ships; by reason that the *Muscovite*, the greatest enemy on that side, maintains no Sea-forces.

The Kings Revenues, by which these are maintained, consist chiefly in the Crown-Lands, as Chafes, Forests, &c. which the King as was said, takes an oath not to embezzel; but these being formerly by the civil Troubles of the Kingdom, in great part alienated from the Crown; and of late, since the Titles of Earls and Barons were renewed amongst them, very much impair'd; (it being the custom that when the King honours any person with either of those Titles, he with it gives him a piece of Land which has formerly belonged to the Crown), other ways are sought out for the maintenance of their Courts and Armies, which are

1. From these Crown-Lands or Kings Patrimony daily regained, for which a College of *Reduction* is of late instituted.
2. From the Mines of Copper, Silver, Lead, &c.
3. From the Sea-customs.
4. From the imposition upon Oxen transported out of *Schonen*, *Finland*, &c. Which being about the value of 5 s. English by the head, amounts to a great sum; especially in times of Peace.
5. From the several Companies of Merchants:

of which there is but one for Exportation, viz. The Tar-Company; though there be divers for Importation, as the Tobacco-Company, the Sugar-Company, &c. who each pay yearly considerable sums to the Crown.

6. From Impost on the Exportation of Guns.

7. From the Mulcts payed by those that are cast in Law; a third part of which is paid to the King.

8. From all moneys which the King pays out, from which he deducts to the value of one per Cent.

Besides these there are many other ways whereby the King raises money, as the Frank-Subsidies or Quit-rents, the revenues from all sorts of Skins and furs brought out of *Lapland* &c. which not being constant and certain, but more or less according as the Snows fall or the Frosts continue, I omit to mention.

When his Majesty of *Sweden* is engaged in a War, he can and ordinarily doth, make use of these extraordinary means, as

1. All persons whatsoever, none excepted, who received salaries or pensions from the Crown, in the time of war, abate one half, and sometimes the whole, as 'tis said they did in these late wars.

2. The Gentry of *Sweden*, *Finland*, &c. pay a Contribution of about sixteen pence English, a man; which is called the *Six-Mark Contribution*.

3. All Towns pay a Contribution according to their in-comes, some more, some less.

4. Every Town, which is obliged to have constantly in readiness a certain Company of Seamen, (whom the King sends for upon occasion, to serve in the Fleet) is bound in time of war to double the number.

5. When any army is transported over the *Baltick*, it goes either to *Pomerania* or *Bremen*, which Provinces pay so much, a month, in money or provision, towards its support.

6. The Gentry of *Lifland* and the Neighbouring Provinces, contribute so many thousand measures of Corn for the supplying of their Magazines.

7. Every Peasant plowing so much ground a year, must give one Shirt, one Lamb-skin Coat, one pair of Mittens, one pair of Woollen Stockings, and one pair of Shoes, towards the maintenance of Souldiers.

By these and such-like means, great additions are made to the Kings Exchequer; the ordinary income of which is said to have been in the year 1598 fix or seven Tun of Gold of 100000 Dollers apiece, all charges of the Crown being first deducted; though in that year, as also in several following, there were spent in maintaining *Wiborg* and *Revalia* Cities upon the Borders of *Muscovy*, 100000 Dollers extraordinary.

The *Sueci* or *Suedes* (by some Writers mistaken for the *Suavi* or *Schwabs* a people of *Germany*), seem to be the same Nation with the *Suones* or *Suones* of *Tacitus*, by that description of them which he sets down. An ancient and warlike people, united under distinct Laws (if *Swedish* Authors may in this case be credited) not many years after the Flood by one *Suemo* or *Sueno* eldest son to *Maggo*, and great grand-child to *Noah*, and from him called *Suones* or *Suones*: though others will have them so named from *Suedia* or *Suidia* i.e. to burn Wood or Forests that are cut down; they being forc'd at their first arrival into this Country, to fell and burn the Woods in order to Tillage; but these opinions as well as that of *Grotius* who derives their name from the *Swedish* and *English* word *Swet*, because the *Suedes* were always a laborious people, are conjectures

scarce worth naming. That this Nation was not only before, but the Parent of the *Guthi* or *Getae*, is asserted by many Authors, and, says *Loccenius*, apparent, from several *Runic* Monuments and proceeded the *Guthib* people diffusing themselves into other Countries, as *Thrace*, *Spain*, *Italy*, &c. One of these Laws is said to have been made about the time of *Alexander the Great*, for calling them back into their own Country *Scandia*; every one being commanded presently to return, or forfeit all Title to any Inheritance there which they or their Ancestors had formerly posses'd. That they were not so well known to the world as these *Guths* or *Getae* (which we take to be the same People) is on the contrary altogether as certain: but the reason of this may be, that there were several Emigrations of the latter, when the former remained in their own Country, either not known by strangers as a distinct People from the *Guths*, or passing under the same name with them. The *Norwegian* Chronicles reckon five and twenty Kings of *Sweden*, before *Haldanus Hoviden* the first Founder of their Kingdom, which was afterward by *Harald Harfager* the third King from him, very much enlarg'd and made an absolute Monarchy. That out of this Country a vast number of men went to people *Schonen* and the *Cimbrik* Islands in the Reign of *Ericus* (the first *Swedish* King according to *Loccenius* his account), is attested by *Johannes Magnus* and other Authors; and about the year of Christ 870 one *Otherus* in his account of the Northern Regions which he made to King *Aelfred*, makes mention of *Swedland* or the Land of the *Suedes*, and the Isles of *Gotland* and *Juland*, giving them much what the same Limits they have at present. And in all ages so famous have been the warlike Exploits and victorious Arms of this Nation, that one *Nicolaus Ragnaldi* Archbishop of *Upsal*, making an Oration (extant in *Johannes Magnus*) in the Council of *Basil*, A. D. 1440 concerning the noble achievements of the *Sueo-Guthib* People, prevailed so far with the Holy Fathers there present, that it was moved in Council that the King of *Sweden* should have precedence of all other Christian Kings.

The men of *Sweden*, as to their persons are generally of a proper and big body, a comely presence, and gentle carriage; in their younger years bred up to learning, travelling, and especially languages, (of which 'tis ordinary for a *Swedish* Gentleman to be able to speak five or six in perfection); and in their riper age, accustomed to affairs of State and War. Honest, free, and plain-dealers they are noted for, inasmuch that the Granaries in the whole Country had anciently neither Lock nor Key, but only a Hatch, judged sufficient security amongst honest and trusty neighbours: and to steal Corn out of the common fields was a crime so horrid, that it was punishable by death. The women are also of a tall stature, and very personable, generally chaste (adultery, which is severely prohibited by their Laws, being seldom committed by them), modest, virtuous, and endowed with those qualities which are commonly the consequences of wholesome Laws and Government. They, the Citizens especially, love to go neat, and provide themselves generally with good clothes and fair houses, counting that ill spent which is superfluously bestowed upon their worst part, their belly. When Marriage, Christenings, Burials, &c. are to be solemnized, they spare no expences to seem noble and magnificent; sometimes rather than want a splendid Funeral for their Relations, keeping the dead corps for several years, and in the

Their Manners.

interim labouring to gather up as much money as will maintain the pomp of it's burial. [Anciently they burnt their bodies; a custom, as they say, brought in by *Wooden*; however they make it one of their Epochas, and call that time *Ætas Cremationis*: afterwards they buried them on the tops or some eminent places of hills, and this is call'd by their Writers *Ætas Colium*; but Christianity hath reduc'd to the same customs, that were us'd by the rest of that Religion.] Frugal and laborious they are; inured as well by their exercises, as the Clime of their Country, to all extremity of hardship; it being ordinary for a common Souldier to watch upon the Guard at *Stockholme* a whole winter-night full eighteen hours long, without being relieved. To be a Gentleman, and well defended, is highly esteemed amongst them; tho' frequently their titles of honour out-swell their estates; for when any one of a competent estate dyes, one half of it is allowed to the surviving widow, and the other half divided among the children; the son having two parts, and a daughter the third; the widows part upon her decease is shared amongst them after the same proportion; so that one great estate is cut out into many little parcels, by many children; which being again subdivided by these childrens children, the family is commonly reduced to a low condition, all inheriting equally the Titles and Privileges of the Nobility.

Their Hospitality. The hospitality of this Nation is amongst the rest of their good qualities, the most remarkable; they anciently using to entertain those that were strangers with the like civility as they would treat their friends; affording them victuals, and what necessaries they stood in need of, gratis; and furnishing them with horses to the place whither they intended to go. The contrary to this, viz. churlishness and inhospitality, was thought so great a crime, and so unworthy the genius of any *Swedish* inhabitant, that in the time of *Charles* the second, (who is said to have reigned some-time before our Saviours birth,) if any one denied lodging three times to Strangers, that King sent to set fire on the houses of such Offenders, and burn them down to the ground. This freedom of entertainment sometimes causing damages and inconveniences to private Persons *A. D. 1285 Magnus Ladulaus* then King, put forth a Decree, that no one should think himself obliged, (as they, perhaps by some natural dictate did think themselves to be), to afford Lodging, Victuals and Horses, to Strangers; but might demand Money for what they afforded them: which some of the more Southern People (more accustomed to Strangers) at this day do exact, though among the more Northern, the ancient custom does still prevail.

Their Habits. Their Cloths anciently, as those of the *Laplanders* at present, were (as may be gathered out of *Clandian* and *Jornandes*) ordinarily made of Skins of Wild-beasts, and called *Mudd*; the black being in most request and used by the better sort. At present not only the Gentry, but the Common People, use Habits equal to those of other Countries, but strive to outgo one another in fineness and costliness. In the time of *Gustavus* the first, there was such irregularity of Habits among the people, the Courtiers especially, that the *Dalecarli* petition'd him that all foreign Modes and Fashions might be left off in his Court, and forbid to be used in his Kingdom: but that King (perhaps seeing as great advantage by it in respect of Trade, as disadvantage any other way) put the Petitioners off with a complement. The Common People have their Apparel made of coarse woollen-cloth; the Nobility and Gentry

have diversity of Garbes according as they are *A-la-mode in France*.

Their Drinks, before the use of Wine amongst them, were water mixt with Honey call'd *Midd*, *Mead*, and Ale or Beer, which latter was only drunk at their publick Feasts, thence call'd *Ol*, i. e. Feasts where they had the liberty to drink Ale. The Cups which they used to drink in were anciently made of the Horn of a beast call'd *Urus*; but at present are of Copper, Brass, and among the richer sort of the Commonalty, ordinarily of Silver. Healths to their King, their Friends, &c. they, for the greater Honour, always drink standing, and count it a great disrespect if the whole Company will not pledge them: infomuch that one complained to *Gustavus* the Great of his Companion, who would not drink the Kings Health in as many Cups as he had done; who instead of being rewarded (as he supposed he should have been), was severely reproved, by that King. As an Attendant to their drinking, Tobacco is very much in use amongst them, which within these fifty years was altogether unknown to this Country.

In their Diet they are sparing and abstemious: the better sort have their bread made of Corn, but which though there be sufficient in the Country to serve all the Inhabitants, yet the poorer sort very frequently, and in time of scarcity always, make use of a kind of Bread made of the bark of Fir or Pine Tree, mingled with Chaff and made up with pure water: which is the chief reason why the *Swedish* Souldiers can endure a Siege or any Extremities of war, much better than any of other Nations. Anciently at their Banquets they had Poets Laureat maintained by the King, who sung before the Guests some Poems composed in honour of their Kings: as they did also in their Camps and Garrisons amongst the Souldiers, thereby to animate and encourage them to an imitation of their Ancestours; but at present their customs in these matters are very little different from those common to other Nations.

After their Victuals and manner of treating their Guests, follow their Exercises; which were commonly such as might fit them for Warlike Exploits and hazardous Enterprizes. *Olaus Magnus* reports, that the ancient *Goths* used to dip their Children as soon as born in cold water, and as they grew up to riper years to inure them, like as in a house of correction, to constant and severe labouring, and such like severities. Tilts also and Turnaments were in use amongst them, in which and such like Sports *Totila* one of the Kings of the *Goths* was, says *Procopius*, very early and carefully instructed. The ordinary sort of People use to make Fortifications, Bastions, &c. of the Snow or Ice, and after the manner of Souldiers engage one another; to Climb Rocks also, and like the rest of the *Scandians* to slide upon the Snow in Scaits. Chess-play also (perhaps to teach them, or to advantage their conduct in War) was very much in use amongst them, their Kings and chief men delighting in it, and thereby says *Olaus Magnus*, prognosticating future events, as of Victories, Marriages, and such like; this people being very much addicted to Magick and prying into secret occurrences.

Marriage, as it anciently was, so at present is esteemed very sacred, and chastly observed. A Maid without the consent of her Parents or Tutors is not permitted to marry, nor can a Guardian betrooth his Pupil or Orphan to any one, but in the presence of four Witnesses at least, two in behalf of one party, and two of the other. If after a Virgin is thus contracted to any one, her Guardian do not stand to the Proposals agreed on, but endeavour to hinder the Marriage,

Marriage, the Husband may demand his Bride, break any Lock to come to her, and if any resistance, he may without being questioned for it, kill him; and if he happen to lose his life in the Quest, he that kills him shall be deem'd a Murderer. If any Husband leave his own, and contract and cohabit with another mans wife; he shall upon sufficient proof, lose his head: and the Woman be learn'd to death.

Learning, which thrives best in a peaceable and quiet Country, has sometimes been under so general a disrepute in this Kingdom, that 'tis said, the eldest son of *Amalaswentha*, who was Heir to the Crown, was not suffer'd to be brought up in the knowledge of any Liberal Arts. But such disrepute never lasted long; Learning being always, when the heat of war was over, recalled from her banishment; and when men had leisure to think upon their better part, constantly embrac'd and follow'd by them; and that even in their Kings Palaces, they always maintaining Philosophers to instruct them in the secrets of Nature; and Poets (which they call'd *Scald* from *Scall*, i. e. found), because they repeated their verses aloud) to inform them of the worth of their predecessors; these not only remain'd in their Garrisons (as was said) but some one always accompanied the King in all great expeditions, that they might be eye-witnesses of those actions, of which they were to give an account in publick. One of these is reported to have had so good Lungs, that being commanded by the King to repeat some verses, he spoke them so loud, that he was heard throughout the whole Army. The letters which they made use of, were call'd *Runic* from *Ryn*, signifying a *sworn*, for the same reason that the Latins use *versus*, *exarare*, &c. because that anciently when they had writ from the left hand to the right, they turn'd back again from the right to the left. By whom at first invented, is uncertain; some say by *Odinus* or *Woden*, one of their chief Gods. That they came into *Sweden* about the year of Christ 380 or 400, is affirmed by many, altho the superstitious use of them generally practis'd by the inhabitants, seems to prove, that they were much sooner known to them. With these the common people used to carve certain sticks or staves (still in use among some of them), setting upon them the names of their Gods, their Months, their Holydays, &c. which served them for an Almanack, and some Idolatrous purposes. These characters, in the reign of *Olaus Scotckoning*, at the desire of Pope *Sylvester* II. and *Sigfrid* Archbishop

of *Tork* (who was sent thence to preach Christianity in *Sweden*) were quite abolished; and some-time after, by the whole Council at *Toledo*, says *Wormius*, utterly condemn'd; it being by them thought almost impossible ever to have extirpated Paganism, unless they had first rooted out these letters, in which so much of their idolatry (tho perhaps something of good learning and antiquity) was writ.

The *Swedish* language differs only from the *Danish* and *High-Dutch* in dialect, being rougher and less capable of improvement than either of the other two, whence the *Svedes* rarely write any thing in their own tongue. Some of their Authors endeavour to bring the language from another fountain, telling us, That the old *Runic* (fragments of which may be seen in the *Runic* monuments published by *Wormius*) is the mother tongue of *Denmark*, and the *Gothick* of *Sweden*. But these differ only in character, not words; as may be easily perceiv'd by comparing *Ulpilila's* *Gothick* Version of the Gospels (not long since published by the learned *Franciscus Junius*) with *Wormius's* Collection of the old *Runic* monuments. The College of Antiquaries at *Upsal* have lately taken great pains in publishing a new Edition of the *Codex Argenteus* with the modern *Swedish*; thereby to demonstrate their tongue a dialect of the ancient *Gothick*. (Of this see more in *Denmark*.)

The *Swedish* year was anciently divided only into Summer and Winter; but afterwards, according to the custom of other Nations, measured by Months and Nights: this Nation rather using to count by nights then days, as also rather by Winters then Summers, both because they were longer, and (chiefly) because that was the mode of all Northern Nations, perhaps from the beginning of the world. Their Months are call'd *Monat* from *Mona* signifying the Moon; the particular names yet in use amongst them, were given in remembrance of some of their Heathenish Gods, as 1. *January* they call *Thor-monat* from their chief God *Thor*. 2. *February* *Gota-monat*, from *Gota* or *Freia* daughter to *Thor* or *Jupiter*. 3. *March* *Thur-monat*, from *Thur* which seems to be the same with *Orthen* or *Oden* an *Asiatick* Deity the same with *Mars*; and so of the rest.

Their Trading, as of all other Nations, was Their anciently bartering, but at present Money is very plentiful among them, as of Gold, Silver and Copper, and these last as well supplied, out of their own Mines, as imported by Merchants.



G O T H I A

A N D I T S

P R O V I N C E S.

Gothia
and its
Provinces.



Gothia or *Gothland*, i.e. the Land of the *Goths*, is parted from *Suecia* by the Woods *Nolmard* and *Tydweth*: A large and fruitful Country, situated betwixt two potent Nations, and frequently at war one with another, the *Suedes* and

Danes; for which reason it became anciently the ordinary seat of their wars, till the inhabitants observing the *Suedes* to be their nearest and more dangerous (as being upon the same Continent), and very often victorious, neighbours, they join'd and incorporated with the *Suedes*, and their Country has ever since been reckon'd as a chief part of the *Swedish* dominions. It is bounded on the East with the *Baltick* Sea; on the West with the Mountains called *Lyma Fiell*, and the *Sinus Codanus*; on the North with the Provinces of *Nericia* and *Sudermannia*; and on the South with the *Sund* or *Oresund*, and part of the *Baltick*. It is divided in general into *East-* and *West-Gothia*.

Westro-
Gothia
and its
Provinces.

1. *West- or Westro- or Wiso-Gothia*, which has in it these three Provinces, 1. *Westro-Gothia* properly so taken. 2. *Dalia*. 3. *Vernlandia*, to which may be added *Hollandia*.

Westro-
Gothia.

1. *Westrogothia*, a plain and fruitful Province; somewhat inferior indeed in fertility to *Upland* and *Sudermannia*, but exceeding both of them in abundance of Cattel and convenience of pasturage; in which the great wealth of this Country does consist. In this Province are several great Rivers, as *Tida*, *Lida*, *Nos*, &c. which falling into the *Lake Vener*, are sent out by two passages at *Elfsburg* and *Kongeliff*, and at last unburthen'd into the *Sinus Codanus*; with some others, as *Eda* and *Visk*; which fall not into the Lake, but empty themselves into the same Bay. Here are several Cities of good note, viz. 1. *Gothburg* or *Gottenburg*, a considerable Mart-Town, lying upon the mouth of a small River which runs out of the *Sinus Codanus*; between the Towns of *Elfsberg* and *Goldberg*, frequented very much by *Hollanders*, and other strangers, and of late endowed by the *Swedish* Kings with many notable privileges. The unsuccessful efforts of a great *Danish* Fleet against it ann. 1644, shews it to be a place of great strength and consideration.

2. *Stare*, anciently the residence of the *Gothish* Kings, and at present a Bishops seat: so called from *Starinus* a potent King of the *Goths* who built it; it was in the time of *Adam Bremenfis*, the Metropolis of *Westgothia*, but now a ruined and fenceless Town. 3. *Mariefeld*, and 4. *Liddecopia*, less considerable than the former. Towns of most note are 1. *Falecopia*. 2. *Skedvi*. 3. *Hlo*. 4. *Rogsfund*. 5. *Breta*. 6. *Old Ludofia*, taken and fortified by *Christianus* the I. King of *Denmark*, but soon after in the same year regained by the *Suedes*. This Town seems to be the same with *Lofa*, mentioned by *Maurus* in his *Danick* History.

2. *Dalia*, lying betwixt the *Lake Vener* and some part of *Norway*, a Province for the most part mountainous, and consequently barren. It is watered with several Lakes and Rivers well stor'd with Fish of all sorts: Here the pasturage is good, and their Cattel larger than those in any other part of the Country; there is one Town of note called *Daleburg*.

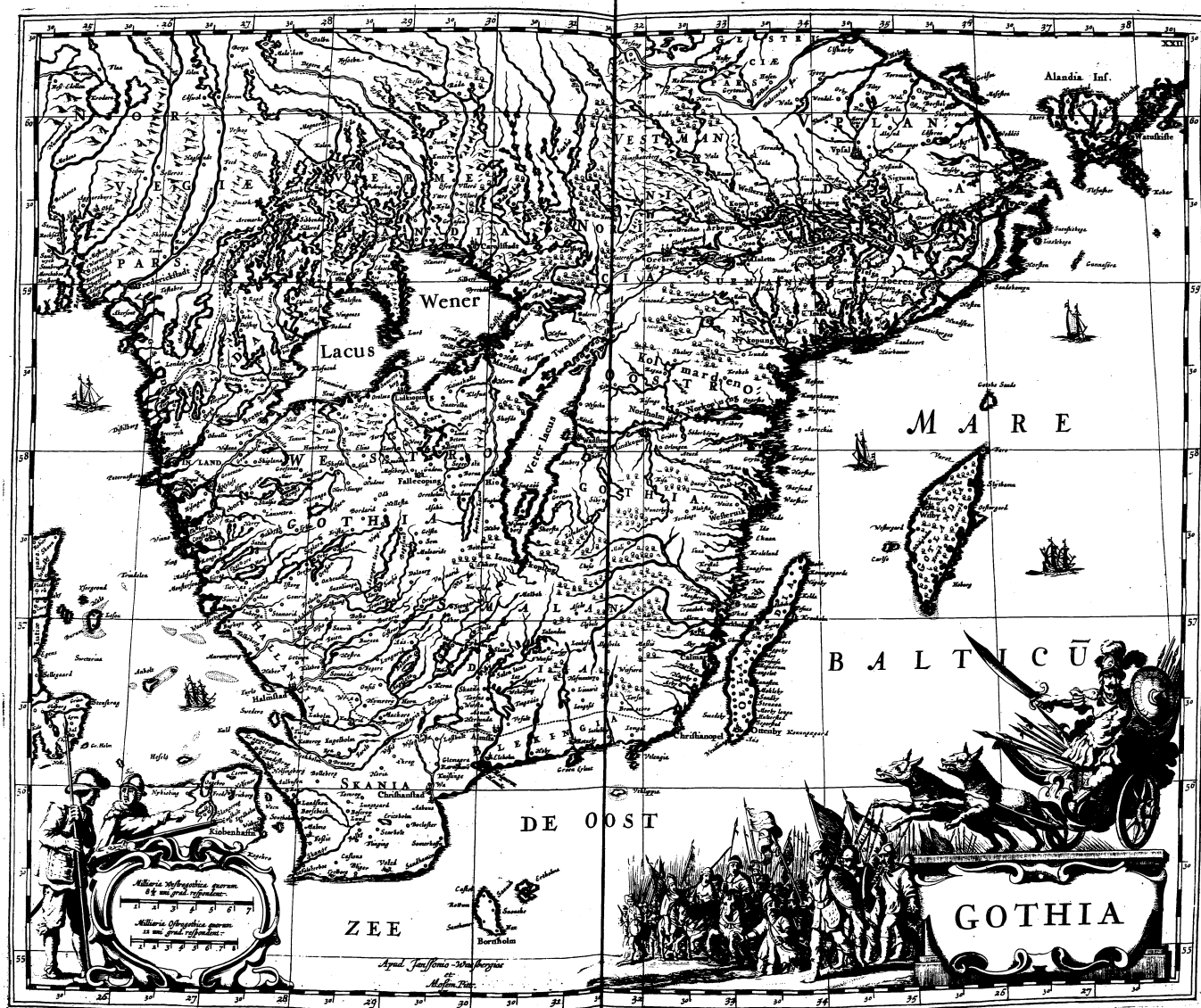
3. *Vernlandia*, last inhabited, as Authors report, amongst all the *Gothick* Provinces, one *Olof* was *Iretelia* being said first of all to have brought Colonies hither. It is a Country Mountainous and Woody, having some Mines of Iron, and one vein of Copper indifferently rich. Lakes and Rivers it has many, though but one only City, called *Charlesstad* from *Charles* the IX King of *Sweden* who built it, in the place of an ancient City named *Tingoalla*.

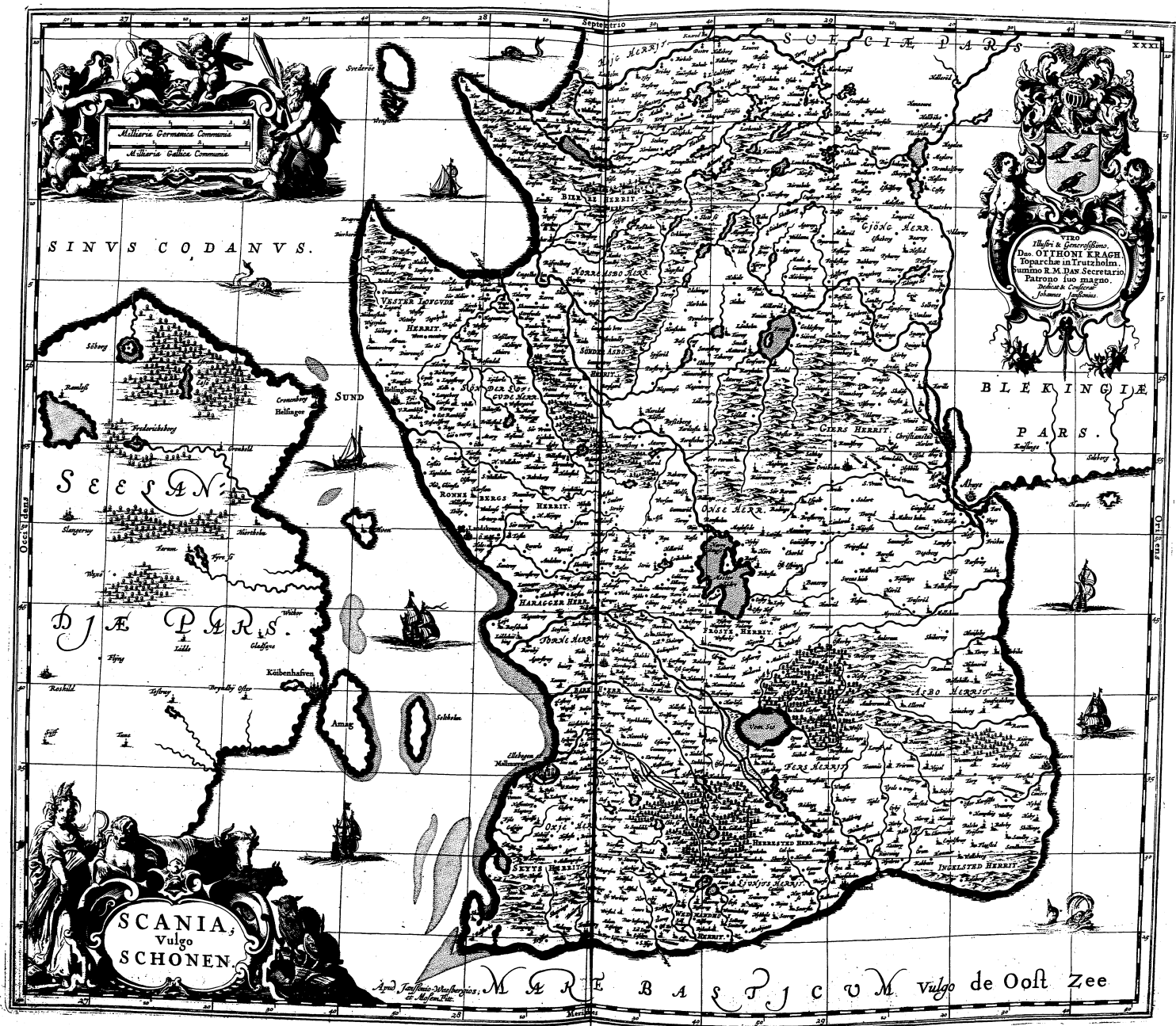
4. *Hollandia*, which has on the West the *Sinus Codanus*, on the South *Schonen*, and on the North and North-East *Smalandia* and *Westro-Gothia*. A pleasant and fruitful Province, reaching in length from *Babusia* to the City *Laubola* upon a small River which falls into the *Sinus Codanus*, several miles; but in breadth in some parts not above half a mile, and where broadest not exceeding three miles. It has in it four Cities 1. *Halmstad*. 2. *Falkenberg*. 3. *Laubola*. 4. *Wernburg*, all lying upon the *Codane* Bay, very conveniently for Trade and exporting of those Commodities which come out of the more Northerly Provinces. In the year 1645 by a Ratification of peace held betwixt *Christina* Queen of *Sweden* and *Christian* the IV King of *Denmark*, this Province with all its Cities, Towns, Forts and Appurtenances was granted to the Crown of *Sweden*, for thirty years as a pledge of security, whereby the *Suedes* might be ascertain'd of their free passage through the *Sund* or *Oresund*, the controversies about which had been the chief occasions of their former war. At the end of thirty years if the *Suedes* thought convenient, either this Province was to be retained by them as a pledge for the performing of the covenant on the part of the *Danes*, or they to have some other Province, or Cities and Forts equivalent to it, given into their hands, which might be to them sufficient asscuration. An. 1658, by articles of a peace concluded at *Roschild* a City in *Zeland*, it, with all its Cities, Towns and Forts, was granted to *Charles* the X, then King of *Sweden* and to his successors for ever.

II. *Eastern-East- or Ostro-Gothia*, which has in it these Provinces, 1. *Ostro-Gothia* properly so call'd. 2. *Smalandia*, and 3. *Oelandia*, to which may be added *Gotlandia*, *Scania* and *Bleckingia*.

1. *Ostro-gothia* divided from *Westro-gothia* by the *Lake Vener* or *Wetter*; for the most part a level and champagne Country, abounding with Corn and Cattel of all sorts, which are exported hence in very great plenty into other Countries. Here are very great conveniences for Hunting, Fowling and Fishing either for pleasure or profit. Nor are Mines







Mines altogether wanting, but some few are to be met with in the Mountains near *Godegard*, *Helsingberg* and *Vongaberg*. Cities in it are 1. *Vadstena*, where was anciently a Fort and a Monastery dedicated to *St. Bridget*, and (at present) an Hospital for lame Souldiers. 2. *Schening*, anciently a very famous City, but now a ruin'd and very inconsiderable Town. Here 'tis said, that by command of *P. Innocent IV.* an. 1248 a Council was held, in which Marriage was forbid Priests, which they had used from the plantation of Christianity till that time. 3. *Lincopia*, *Lincöpping*, a Bishops seat; not far from the mountain *Kettleberg*; a pleasant, though not spacious, City. In the middle of it are Springs bubbling out, the like whereof are not to be met with in all Sweden: here is an ancient and stately Church built by one *Herebertus*, who is said to be one of the first planters of Christianity in these Countries. 4. *Norcopia* lying betwixt *Sudercöpping* and *Neuccöpping* upon the banks of a large Lake, and thence very well supplied with Fish of all sorts. 5. *Sudercöpping* or *Soderöpping*, a handom, but fenceless, City: near this place, says *Olaus Magnus*, are found Cubical Crystals, or rather as I conceive *Fluores*, of small bigness, but in great plenty.

2. *Smalandia* parted from *Osro-Gothia* by the Wood *Holatsedh*; a very large Province being 25 German miles in compass, indifferently fruitful in those parts where it is not overgrown with wood. It abounds very much with Cattel (whence some say it has its name, *Smala* signifying Cattel), which are exported hence in great numbers into *Denmark* and from thence into *Germany* and *Holland*. In it there are very many Lakes, the chief of which are *Balm*, *Vijster*, *Moklen* and *Asnan*. Rivers likewise not a few, as *Nysse*, *Laga*, *Helga*, *Marboa*, *Ram*, &c. This Country is cut out into several Divisions or Territories, the principal of which are *Tieherad*, *Verendia* (which is said anciently to have had distinct Laws of its own), *Tustia*, *Finbeidia* and *Mauringia*, &c. It abounds with several Mines as of Copper and Lead, and in some parts with great store of Iron; which is said to be found in the bottom of their Lakes and Rivers. Cities here are 1. *Calmar* whose name is said to have been given to it by the *Germans*, from the coldness of the air which blows from the *Baltick* Sea. Here is a very convenient Port frequented by our English Merchants and some of other Nations. In the year 1230 *Ericus* King of *Denmark*, *Norway* and *Sweedland*, instituted thirteen Prebendaries in this City: and ordered that the Cathedral Church here, should have the privileges of an Ecclesiastical Colledge. It is at present governed by one Superintendent, who with the rest of the Bishops has a place in the publick consistory of the Kingdom. This City was sometimes under the power of *John* King of *Denmark* and *Christiern* the second who succeeded him, but not long after regain'd by the *Suedes*. In the year 1611 *Christianus* the fourth King of *Denmark* took this City, putting all the Inhabitants to the Sword; but two years after it was by virtue of a ratification of peace made betwixt the Northern Crowns restored to the *Suedes*. In the year 1647 it was almost quite consumed by fire, not above sixty houses left standing in the whole City; but since that, is very handsomely rebuilt and at present by reason of its commodious Situation upon the *Baltick*, a very considerable Trade-Town. 2. *Jenöcopia* or *Jenököpping*, situate in a Vale near the Lake *Veter*, built for the most part of Wood: a City quite naked and easy of access. It is reported that anciently the houses of this City were covered on the outside not with Thatch or Stone, but with a sort of counter Cloth or Canvas, which the Inhabitants

thought a great piece of handfomness. *M. Heberer* in his Itinerary reports, that when he came to this City he found a great number of very large Serpents, which were kept tame by the Citizens, and though they were familiarly admitted into their houses, yet never did them any injury; whether or no they used to eat them, as the *Indians* are said to do at this day, is not by him for down; though 'tis probable they did not feed them in their houses for no other end than to sport with. 3. *Vexio*, a Bishops See; where some of the first Planters of Christianity, as was said, lie buried. 4. *Ekeflo*, and 5. *Vesferwick*.

3. *Oelandia*, a pleasant and fruitful Island, lying in the *Baltick* Sea, divided from *Smalandia* by a very narrow Bay; in it are Cattel, as Oxen, Horses, &c. Birds also and Wild-beasts, in great plenty: and besides the Fort called *Barkholme* or *Bornholme*, two and thirty Parishes in all. This Island was by the Dane yielded up to *Gustavus Adolphus*, an. 1613. See more concerning it amongst the accessional Provinces of the Crown of Sweden.

4. *Scania* or *Schonen*, a Province abounding with Corn, Beasts, Birds and all other Commodities of life; here several Mines of Silver, Lead, Iron, &c. are said to be laboured, and their Metal to be hence transported into other Countries; but this seems to be a mistake, either from the confounding of the word *Scandia* with *Scania* (which is frequently done by Geographers) or from counting that Metal which is brought hither from the more Northern Provinces, to come immediately from this. This Province an. 1658 was ceded to the *Suedes*, and an. 1660 confirm'd to them; so that it may seem one of the new accessions to the Kingdom, amongst which see a description of it.

5. *Blekingia*, a fruitful Province lying upon the *Baltick* coast. It was given up to the *Suedes* an. 1658, and (as was *Schonen*) confirm'd to them an. 1660. A larger account of this Province may be expected by and by.

6. *Gothlandia* or *Gothland*, an Island lying in the *Baltick* Sea, over against *Osro-Gothia*, about eighteen German Miles in length, and five or six in breadth; fourteen miles from the *Gothick* Shore, twenty from *Curland*, thirty from *Dantzic*, fifty from *Bornholme* and eighty from *Rosack*. It has in it one City named *Wishuy* or *Vishburg* the residence of the Governour of the Island. When it was under the *Danish* Government, *Friderick* the second ordered one superintendent to preside here, and subjected all the Churches and Parishes, (about an hundred in all) to his jurisdiction; which authority was shortly after lost, and by *Christian* the fourth again restored. Upon the decaying of *Wineria* and *Jultnaam* Mart-Towns in *Pomerania*, this City became famous for Trade, and may be reckoned among the chief of the whole North. In this City Hydrographical Tables and Sea-mens Cards are said to have been first printed and perfected; and rules for Navigation and Commerce for the whole Ocean, as far as the *Scythian* Sea and *Hercules* his Pillars, here prescribed and by Sea-men observed. In it were anciently ten Churches and four Monasteries, at present only seven Churches in all. Near this place are several large Rocks with *Gothic* Epitaphs and Inscriptions, of which see *Pontanus*. This City was formerly under the command of the *Teutonic* Order, in which time it was besieged by *Ericus* King of *Sweedland*, *Denmark* and *Norway*, and after much loss both of men and money on both sides, the difference was referred to the Emperor, who ordered that the *Teutonic* Order should yield up to the King their Title both to the City and the Island; and he in consideration

sideration of it to pay them in hand a 1000 *Engl* Nobles. After King *Ericus*'s death it was sometimes in the possession of the *Swedes*, sometimes of the *Danes*. See more amongst the *Swedish* Islands.

That this Country was first of all inhabited by the *Goths*, and from them receiv'd its name, is agreed on by most Authors; but whence they came hither, under whose conduct, or in what age of the world is very much controverted. That they came out of *Scythia Europa* over the *Venedic* Bay under *Magog*, and from him were call'd *Magog's*, *Gothi* or *Getae*, is the opinion of *Jo. Magnus*, and *Olus Magnus* his Brother and successor in the Archbishoprick of *Upsal*. Tho they seem to have no motive for it, other than the affinity of names, not being able at such great distance of time, to have any certain authority of Historians. Other Authors, and those of very good account, affirm the *Goths* or *Getae* at first to have been a Colony of the *Messagete* who inhabited *Scythia Europa* in those parts near the *Palus Maeotis* or the *Calpian* Sea, and thence to have come into *Scandia*, there to have settled, and from thence Colonies into *Germany*, *Italy*, and other parts both of *Europe* and *Asia*; and from the *Messagete* to have been called by an abbreviation *Getae* or *Gothi* being (as most are of opinion) the same Nation. Thence *Getae*, as soon as come over the *Baltick* Sea, erected a Government among themselves, admitted justice by their own Laws and in a short time (Northern Nations being observ'd to be most prolific) encreas'd to a numerous and potent Nation; and the bounds of the Kingdom not being able to contain, and the Provisions not sufficient to satisfy, so great a number, they were forc'd to seek out for themselves other more large, and more convenient, habitations: which they chose to do in the neighbouring parts beyond the *Venedic* Bay, and in other more Southern Countries; where they became to the *Roman* and *Greek* Empires more known, and more considerable than any other enemies with which they had to deal.

Their Emigration out of Gothia.

At what time their first emigration out of Gothia was, *Crantius* and *Jornandes* are very positive; It was say they A.M. 3790, the whole Colony was imbarqued in three Vessels, (too small a number to contain the seeds of so potent a Nation, had not several other peoples as the *Vandals*, *Suevi*, *Herali*, &c. join'd with them, and made them in a short time very potent); the first place they touch'd at was the Isle of *Gotland*, (not improbably so called from them), thence they came to *Rugen*, and so on to *Pomeran*, where two of their Ships arriving before their fellows, thence that came first to harbour call'd the other, when they came up to them, by way of reproach *Gepante* or *Gepide*, i.e. *slow* or *stupid*, whom, as not fit for their company and designs, they left in those parts, and joining themselves with other Nations advanc'd on by land as far as *Poland* and the *Palus Maeotis*, where they divided themselves into two Companies. 1. Those that went toward the East, call'd by the *Romans* the *Oriental*. 2. Those that march'd into *Transilvania* and places near *Germany*, *Spain*, &c. call'd the *Occidental* *Goths*, which branch about the year of Christ 450 posses'd almost all the Kingdom of *France*. [This division to be made first of all after their emigration out of their own Country, *Loecinius* with some other *Swedish* Writers cannot allow, but say, that their Country was divided into *Ostro*- and *Westro-Gothia* before ever they parted from it; that being the most certain, constant and first distinction, as may be gather'd from the ancient *Swedish* Laws, which in the very beginning, says the same *Loecinius*, testify the same thing.] Those that went into *Spain* are said to have driven out the Inhabitants, planted

themselves in their room, about the year 369 or 407, and retain'd that Kingdom till A.D. 710: the chief families of *Spain* counting it an honour to have their pedigree deduced from the ancient *Goths*. By those that went toward *Italy* under the conduct of *Alaricus* or *Albrich*, (who *Ann Christi* 409, sack'd *Rome* it self) and the Government of it retain'd by *Theodoricus Venerabilis* (Dietrick vonberne) who died A.D. 526, and after the Government was for seventy years by them maintain'd, they were quite overcome and utterly expell'd that Country by *Narjes*; of which see the Catalogue of their Kings. They that travell'd as far as *Thracia* and *Mesia* and the parts of *Macedonia*, were by *Claudius* the *Roman* General almost all overcome in Battle, he at one time killing 320000 of them, as he himself in a Letter to the Senate declares; for which signal victory a golden Statue was erected for him in the Capitol. At several other times and in several other places, they made head against the *Roman* Empire, as in the time of *Constantine*, and *Theodosius* who overcame 20000 of them, which to mention in this place is not so pertinent as in that where the Seat of the war was; wherefore at present we shall relate no more of those famous exploits which were performed by the *Goths* after their departure out of *Scandia*; but leave them to be taken notice of in other more convenient places.

Besides this emigration, which is said to have been under the conduct of *Berico* or *Berig*, Authors make mention of another egression of the *Gothish* or *Gethish* people, as should seem much ancienter; in the reign of *Ericus* one of their first Kings, about the time of *Sarg* or *Samir* great Grandfather to *Abraham*; when, as was said, were peopled *Denmark*, *Jutland*, *Finia*, and the neighbouring Islands then call'd *Wendheedia*, i.e. marshy and waterish places. This opinion, tho as to the time of the transmigration it may seem somewhat improbable (the earth then not being so well stored with inhabitants, especially in *Suecia* and *Gothia*, places so far removed from the Mount *Ararat*, which is generally supposed to be *Caucasus*, (upon which, as many Authors are of opinion, *Noah's* Ark rested) as to be forced by reason of the multitude of them, to send out Colonies into other Countries), yet as to the evincing an emigration into these western and southern parts very anciently to have been, it is by *Jornandes*, *Crantius*, and all *Swedish* writers unanimously approv'd; to whom we refer the Reader for further satisfaction in so difficult and obscure a controversy.

This people, tho at present united under the same Government and Laws with the *Swedes*, and commonly passing under the same name with them, was anciently different from them as well in their manners as their policy; whereupon it may not be amiss to set down in this place, what occurs amongst Authors as proper to this Nation in relation to their manners and customs, which may probably seem to have been the same, not only in *Scandia*, but also in all the other parts of *Europe* and *Asia*, which they subdu'd, and whither they extended their dominion: they always ruling by their own Laws and Constitutions, which they suffer'd not to be translated into any other language, but always published in their own; not only making those they overcame, their subjects, but, by insinuating their customs and manners into them, as much as possible, the same Nation. [This piece of policy was practis'd by *William* the Conqueror here in *England*, who caus'd all our Laws to be turn'd into the French language, that thereby this Nation might

might in time forget its own tongue, and be better dispos'd to endure his yoke.] That the *Goths* were always a warlike people, their several framings into other neighbouring Countries, and the great victories they obtain'd over them, do fully manifest. *Mela* does not only commend them for their courage, but their honesty and plain-dealing, who says, *Of all the Thracians* (it seems they had in his time advanc'd into, and been considerable in, the more Southern parts of the world) *the Goths or Getae are the most valiant, and the most just*. And this their courage in war was from the belief they had of the immortality of their souls (a doctrine they receiv'd from *Zoroaster* their great King and Prophet); according to *Lucan* lib. 2. *De bello Pharsal*, where speaking of the *Goths*, he says:

—certe populi, quos despicit *Arctus*
Felix error tuo, quos ille timor
Maximus haud urget *Lethi* metus: inde ruendi
In ferum mens proma viris, animaeque capaces
Mortis, & ignavum reditura parcere viam.

Their education and usage whilst young, was such as best fitted them for warlike enterprises and courages exploits; for their children as soon as born were dipp'd over head and ears first in cold, then in hot water, and as the *Spartan* children us'd to be whipp'd at the Altars of their Gods, these were constantly lash'd with scourges till the blood gush'd out, thereby to inure them to hardship; nor, when they were grown up, were their exercises or employments any other, then such as agreed best with the nature of a military constitution. They practis'd Tilts and Turnaments, as did also the *Swedes*, riding the great Horse, vaulting, &c. and for recreation, Chess-play. As any one exceed'd another in rank and quality, so more, and more noble, performances were expected from them; their Kings sons being never admitted to sit at table with, or force come into the presence of their fathers, before they had received some signal testimony of their courage from the very chief of their enemies; as is reported of the *Longobards* (a people, says *Wolfgang*, anciently inhabiting *Scandia*), who under the conduct of *Aleimus*, son to their King *Othrim*, obtaining a great victory over the *Germani*, requested that their General who with his own hand had slain the King of the *Gepide*'s son, might be admitted to sit with him at the publick or triumphal Banquet: but the King refused their address, and told them, that it was against the custom of theirs, and the *Gothick* Nation in general, that their Kings son should be permitted to eat with his father, before he had commendations of his valour from another Prince. This the son hearing took with him forty soldiers, went to *Jarimundus*'s Camp (so was the King of the *Gepide* named) and telling him he was the man who slew his son in battle, desired of him a testimonial of his courage; the King admiring his boldness, courteously received him, placed him by him in his dead sons room, and giving him the armour which he us'd to bear, peaceably dismissed him.

Lovers they were, tho no great practis'd, of Learning; and (according to the character *Johannes Magnus* gives of them) easier drawn by persuasion then command; as always hating and thinking it unworthy themselves to be inferior to any in knowledge or courage. Towards their friends courteous; towards their enemies, if obstinate, cruel and revengeful; if submissive, none more merciful and kind, and no Nation readier then the *Goths* to accept a parley, or any overture of peace.

Their wives (of which they, as also the *Scythians*, were allow'd plurality) were not less valourous,

considering their sex, then their husbands; they accompany'd them in all dangers, and frequently, taking up arms, made a great and considerable part of their army: as they are said to have done in *Thracia* and *Mesia* when they were led on by *Claudius* the *Roman* Commander. [Yet did not the women always, and upon every Colony and Detachment of *Goths* sent out of *Scandia* (several of which are mentioned by *Wolfgang Lazius*) follow their husbands for the Laws commanding the men to return into their own Country, or to forfeit their Estates, (every one that presum'd to be absent after such a time, being thereby adjudg'd dead in Law, and his next heir to enter upon his inheritance) were chiefly procur'd by the women, whom the *Goths* at their departure had left in *Suecia* and *Gothia*. The Virgins were taken in marriage without any other dowry then their own perfections, to commend them to their husbands choice, never having any portions given them. Adultery amongst them was punished by death; with many such-like customs, which may be gather'd out of their Laws publish'd by *Johanne* Bilhop of *Sevil* in *Spain*.

Their manner of Government was the best, *Their* and (according to *Aristotle*'s opinion) the Government most natural of any, the Monarchical; their ment. King (when distinct from the *Swedish*) not being bound in any Covenant with his people, nor holding his Estate at the Will of the Subject; whereupon perhaps their Kingdom was more considerable in it self, and more terrible to its enemies; as being more expeditious in its determinations, and united in its designs, then a Democratical State is frequently found to be. Their Kings did not only bear rule over the *Goths* their own Nation; but after their uniting with the *Swedes*, sometimes commanded that people also: tho at present the King of *Sweden* is, and for many years has been, absolute Monarch over both Kingdoms.

A Catalogue of their Kings is given by *Jo. Magnus*, *Grotius* upon *Procopius*, *Crantius*, *Loecinius*, *Wolfgang Lazius* and other Authors, whom we shall follow; setting down what we find most remarkable, and agreed upon, concerning them. They are commonly divided into foreign and domestic, or internal and external, Kings; who exercised their authority sometimes in *Gotland* and *Sweedland*, sometimes in *Scythia*, *Italy*, *Spain*, and other places which they subdued. [*Wolfgang Lazius* is of opinion, that those Kings which were made in Foreign Countries, as not only in *Thracia*, *Mesia*, &c. but even in *Scythia* before the time of the *Trojan* war, did not only rule over their own particular Colonies, but had the whole Kingdom of *Sweedland* subject to them: which seems to be contrary to what we have alleg'd out of *Loec*, and other approv'd Authors; for if the *Swedes* were subject to them in *Thracia* &c. upon what authority did they publish Laws for the recalling them thence? and if those were Lords and Masters of *Sweden*, upon what account could they be justly disinherited for not returning thither? and it is further said, that when *Theodoricus* was King of the *Goths* in *Italy*, one *Radolfus* King of *Sweedland* with many of his Subjects went to visit him: which shews that even then, when the *Gothish* Nation was most potent abroad, the *Swedes* had a distinct King of their own and exempt from their Jurisdiction.] *Johannes Magnus* by what authority I know not (*Loecinius* himself in a matter to obscure not venturing to be positive) deduces the Original both of this Nation and Monarchy of the *Swedes* from

1. *Magog*, Grand-child to *Noah* by *Japhet*, whom he makes to be their first King and founder.
2. After him is said to have succeeded *Svenno* his eldest

Their Kings, Swedish and Gothish.

- eldest son, who (as the same Author says) first of all gave name to the *Svedes* or *Sveonans*.
3. *Gerber* or *Gogus* who founded the *Gothib* or (as afterward named) the *Gothib* Nation.
 4. *Vibio* brother to *Sveeno Anno* a *Dil.* 246, who is said to have built *Uplal*.
 5. *Siggo*, who, to defend his Territories against the *Finlanders*, built the City *Sigtuna* near the Lake *Meller*.
 6. *Ericus, Anno* a *Dil.* 357, he so prudently managed, and so far extended, his Kingdom, that by many Historians (amongst which *Laccenins* is one) he is reckoned as the first King of the *Svedes* and *Goths*: how defended, is somewhat uncertain; but by some said to have been a poor mans son, and advanced to the Throne by the voices of the people. In his Reign several men (vagabonds), such as would not conform to his Laws and Government, were sent out into *Schoonen* and the *Cimblick* Islands. He lived to a great age and died peaceably. After the death of *Ericus*, (*An. Mundi* 2014, according to the *Swedib* Chronicles), the state of this Kingdom was much disturb'd by civil commotions, and the succession in the Throne for some time interrupted. The next names are
 7. *Uldo*.
 8. *Ala*.
 9. *Othenus*.
 10. *Charles I.*
 11. *Biorno* and *Gerbarus*. All which ruled both in *Gothia* and (their own Country) *Suetia*.
 12. *Gylfo*, who is said to be descended from one *Ferinto* King of *Finland*.
 13. After *Gulfo* the Kingdom is said to have been govern'd by Judges for sometime, till *Othinus* or *Odinus*, who came out of *Asia* into the Northern parts, and settling at *Uplal*, by his Magick and Sorceries gain'd so much favour amongst the people, that they elected him King, and after he was dead esteem'd him as one of their principal Gods. He was, as I may say, the *Numa Pompilius* of the *Svedes*, being the first that established any set worship, and sacred solemnities amongst them; that gave Laws and ordain'd Officers, both to execute justice in his Kingdom, and take care of all Religious matters; the chief of which were twelve, of a Senatorial order, call'd *Driar* or *Drotmar*; (whence *Drotter*, the name now in use to denote their Viceroy, seems to come). This he did, as he pretended, by the advice, or at the command, of the Gods, with whom he kept great familiarity and correspondence.
 14. *Niardo* or *Nearchus*, a famous Magician.
 15. *Freins*, *Froerus* or *Frisbo*, sumam'd the Peaceable, the first that took upon him the name of *Drott* or King. He is said to have given the patrimony of *Uplal*, call'd *Uplala Oedom*, which belongs to the Crown, and which the King takes an oath not to alienate or embezzle.
 16. *Odder*, and *Freia* or *Frigea* his wife, who with her husband rul'd peaceably, and was reputed a Goddess after her death.
 17. *Fidmas*, a foolish and negligent Prince, who neither regarded his own, nor the peoples, welfare. Being invited to banquet by *Frisbo* King of *Denmark*, and made drunk with strong Liquors, he was accidentally drown'd in a Vessel of Mead.
 18. *Suegier*, of whom the *Norwegian* Chronicles mention many fabulous Stories and Diabolical Enchantments.
 19. *Walandor* or *Wanlander*, who made an invade into *Schoonen* and *Hollandia*, and conquer'd them, or rather regain'd them out of the hands of one *Otlarus*, who had possess'd him-

- self of those parts. In his time the *Ruffes* are said to have employ'd one *Reibo*, a famous Pirate, to infect the *Svedes*, who lay upon their coasts and did very much injury to them; (hence *Retheran* signifies in the *Swedib* Language, to commit rapine). Against this first the King levied all the forces he could, but withal distrustful their power, desired assistance of the Devil, promising him his body and soul, upon condition he might obtain a victory over him: which he is said to have done, and the Devil shortly after, according to compact, to have come and fetch'd away his bargain.
20. *Wisbur*.
 21. *Domalder*, who with many of his Nobles, was sacrific'd to their God *Odinus* or *Woden*.
 22. *Domarus*.
 23. *Vignerus*, in the *Norwegian* Chronicles call'd *Dygie*, the first that took upon him the name *Kuning* or King.
 24. *Ingemar* or *Agnus*, as some report, murder'd by his wife.
 25. *Hamelus* or *Hambulus*, whose eldest son *Dan* was the first King of the *Danes*, and gave name to that Nation.
 26. *Sigragnus*, who defeated *Gramus* King of *Denmark* in battel.
 27. *Suablagerus*, first of all King of *Norway*, next of *Denmark*, and afterwards of *Sweden*: the first Forraier after *Odinus* that obtain'd the *Swedib* Kingdom.
 28. *Almundus*.
 29. *Uffe*. Both which waged a long and bloody war with *Hadingus* King of *Denmark*.
 30. *Hanningus* or *Hendingus* who concluded a peace with *Hadingus*; and lov'd him so entirely, that hearing a (false) report of his death, he made a funeral Banquet (as was the custom) in honour and remembrance of him; invited his Nobles to it; and, as not willing to survive his Vessel of *Metheglin*; which *Hendingus* hearing, and being resolv'd that affliction should not seem cold on his part, for very grief hang'd himself.
 31. *Regnerus*, a good and peaceable King.
 32. *Hothelbrodus*, who took up arms against *Helgo* King of *Denmark*, because he, in disgrace of the *Swedib* Nation, had made a law amongst his subjects, that if any of them kill'd or injur'd a *Suede*, he should pay only half the mulct, which was to be pay'd, if he had done the like to any other person whatsoever.
 33. *Atiflus*, a warlike and magnificent King.
 34. *Hotherus*, who waged war with the *Danes* and *Ruffes*, and died of a wound he received in battel.
 35. *Rodericus*, King of *Denmark* and *Swedland* at the same time; but either leaving or loosing the former, he retir'd into the latter, and there ended his days.
 36. *Artius*, who kill'd *Wermundus* King of *Denmark* in single Duel, and was himself afterwards slain by *Wermundus's* two sons. After this Kings time, the succession for about 600 years was much interrupted; who enjoy'd the Kingdom is uncertain: *Borvildus*, *Charles II.*, and six more are mention'd, but little more known of them, than their names. He whom Historians first pitch upon to have certainly succeeded was
 46. *Aricus*, who challenging *Gestibindus* King of the *Goths* to Duel, thereby lost both his life and Kingdom.
 47. *Ericus* III. surnam'd the *Wife*, and by some

- the *Eloquent*; a happy and peaceable Prince. He reign'd according to *Johannes Magnus's* computation about four and thirty years before our Saviours Birth.
- A Catalogue of the *Gothib* Kings, who reign'd shortly after their Transmigration out of *Scandis*, while they dwelt about the *Palus Maotis*, near the time of the *Trojan* War: collected out of *Wolff Lazius*, upon whose credit you are to take them.
1. *Telephus*, well known for his exploits in the *Trojan* War.
 2. *Bericus* or *Beger*.
 3. *Filmar*.
 4. *Fogadus*.
 5. *Aringis*.
 6. *Eurypilus*.
 7. *Tantris*.
 8. *Antregrus*.
- After this succession of Kings in *Scythia Europea*, the *Goths*, either weary of that Country or driven out of it by force of their potent Neighbours, are said by the same Author (though I find not his opinion seconded by any *Swedib* writer) to have returned into *Gothia*, and particularly to have pitch'd upon the Isle *Gotland*, as the fittest feat for their Kings; a long series of whom might seem not very necessary to be set down, being for the most part, the same with the *Swedib* Kings before mention'd.
9. *Hallanus*, in whose reign the *Huns* overrun *Gothia* and the greatest part of the Kings dominions, built *Hannaberg* an ancient City in *Offro-Gothia*, and after some continuance in the Country were, by this King at last utterly expelled.
 10. *Storvus* or *Sigvardus*, in whose time commotions arising in the Kingdom, the *Goths* elected separate King of their own nam'd *Carulus*, whom some make to be
 50. *Charles III.*
 51. *Ericus* IV. slain by *Haldanus* King of *Denmark*.
 52. *Haldanus*, who got the Kingdom by his valor. Of this King are reported several prodigious Stories, as of his Gigantick stature, his pulling up Trees by the roots, and such like, not inferior to those, which Poets relate of *Hercules* and the *Giants*.
 53. *Unginus*, who to his own Kingdom united *Guthia*, for a long time govern'd by distinct Kings.
 54. *Regaldus* or *Regnaldus*.
 55. *Almundus*.
 56. *Huginus*, in whose reign the *Goths* elected one *Storvo* King of *Guthia*.
 57. *Offens* II. who entertain'd an implacable hatred against the *Norwegians*: sent a great Army against them, subdued their Country, made the Inhabitants Tributary to the *Swedib* Crown, and as an opprobrium to the Nation, sent a Dog to be chief Governour over them, to which they were to pay all subjection and feier allegiance, under the penalty of losing one hand and one foot: this is mention'd both in the *Swedib* and *Norwegian* Chronicles.
 58. *Alaricus* or *Alaricus*, elected, says *Krantzius* out of the Nobles; and in the midst of his happy Reign, stab'd by his Brother *Ericus*, who was impatient to obtain the Crown, which he thought he might procure after his death; but vainly, for the Government was conferr'd on
 59. *Ingo* I. eldest son to *Alaricus*. He was the first that order'd the election of Kings to be held at *Moren* near *Uplal*, (of the manner of which, see what was said in *Suetia*) About

this time the Kingdom was governed by Judges: the next King is

60. *Ingellus* I. kill'd by his Brother.
 61. *Germander*, in a war against *Denmark* taken Prisoner and hung up upon a Gibbet.
 62. *Huginus*.
 63. *Egellus*, after whose time succeeded several Kings: *Johannes Magnus* reckons twenty, concerning whom nothing very remarkable is set down by Historians.
- The next great *Epocha* is counted from the reign of
64. *Bero* or *Biorno* III. the first Christian King in *Sweden*, converted to Christianity by one *Heribretus*, at his request sent to him by *Charles the Great*, Emperor of *Germany*.
 65. *Brautamundus* or *Amundus*, in some civil commotions in his Kingdom, kill'd by his brother, and Successor.
 66. *Storvus* II. who in his expeditions against *Norway*, was, with the greatest part of his Army, overcome in battel, the enemies Forces mostly consisting of Women.
 67. *Hericus* or *Haraldus*, twist whom and the King of *Denmark* a war broke out concerning the Province of *Schoonen*; which this King at last freely granted to the King of *Denmark* as a reward of his signal prudence and valour.
 68. *Charles VI.*
 69. *Biorno* IV.
 70. *Ingellus* II. in whose time *Helsingia*, and several other Provinces in *Suetia*, had their distinct Governours: these he under colour of friendship, invited to a Banquet, and when he had made them drunk with strong Liquors, he caus'd a fire to be set on the place where they were, and so destroy'd them all, and seiz'd on their possessions. To revenge this cruelty *Gramus* Duke of *Sudermannia*, and *Hannu* Duke of *Offro-Gothia* rais'd Forces, and came against him, but with no good success at last, for under pretence of a Parley they were taken Prisoners, and at *Ingellus's* command burnt to death.
 71. *Olaus* (from his commanding many thick woods to be cut down) surnam'd *Trelata* or *Tree-Feller*. He is said by some, to have embrac'd Christianity, at the perswasion of *Ansgarius* a Learned Bishop sent into *Sweden* by *Lewis* II. Emperor of *Germany*. But though he himself (perhaps) did favour Christian Religion, it got small footing amongst his Subjects; for Paganism is said for a long time to have prevail'd in the Reigns of the succeeding Princes.
 72. *Ingo* II.
 73. *Ericus* VI. surnam'd *Windy-Cap*; who is said to have had a Cap, by holding up of which he could cause the wind to blow from what Point he pleas'd; for which and such like magical exploits, he, by the consent of the people, was elected King.
 74. *Ericus* VII. surnam'd *Victorious*.
 75. *Ericus* VIII. surnam'd *Aarfel*, i.e. *Rich in Corn*. He is said to have countenanc'd Christianity which had been from the time of *Bero* till his reign, very much suppress'd; and endeavouring by Law to establish it in his Kingdom, to have been by the fury of his Subjects torn in pieces, and martyr'd for his good intentions toward them.
 76. *Olaus* surnam'd *Scotkenning*, i.e. *Infant-King*: because advanc'd to the Crown when young. He embrac'd Christianity and sent to *Erlebert* King of *England* to teach him and with able Ministers to teach him and his Subjects in that Religion.
- H h h cordingly

cordingly order'd *Sigfridus* Arch-bishop of *Tork*, and with him two Priests *Elchillus* and *Davids*, to go into *Sweden*; where the King kindly receiv'd them, was by them baptiz'd, and at their intreaty built Christian Churches in most Provinces of his Dominions, and as some say, by reason of his great constancy and zeal in his Religion, had the name of *Christifirmus* given him. He among several good Laws and Constitutions, order'd that the chief power of electing the Kings of *Sweden*, should not belong to the *Goths* in any case, but principally to the *Swedes*: and that they (before call'd Kings of *Upsal*) should be thenceforth still'd Kings of *Sweland* and *Gothland*. This King suppress'd Duelling and the *Runic* Characters, introduc'd the trial by *Fire Ordeal*, and dyed in a happy old age.

1019. 98. *Anundus*, nick-named *Carbonarius*, because he order'd that whoever offended against the Laws which he had promulgated, should in proportion to the crime, either have all his house, or part of it burnt down. He was educated in the Christian Religion by the care of his father *Olaus*, which in his reign he defended, and dyed peaceably.
1035. 99. *Enundus*, base-son to *Olaus*, and brother to *Anundus*, furnam'd *Gammel*, i. e. base, from his contempt of Religion; or, as some are of opinion, because he yielded up to the Crown of *Denmark*, *Schonen*, *Blekingia*, and *Hallandia*, which belong'd to him, as being part of the Kingdom of *Gothia*.
1041. 100. *Harquius* III. furnam'd *Rufus*.
1056. 101. *Stenichillus* II. bred up in the Christian Religion, which he very much encouraged amongst his Subjects; making his Palace a sanctuary for any that were persecuted in any parts of his dominions for that profession.
1059. 102. *Ingo* III. Not defended from the Blood-Royal, but, for his singular virtues elected King by the voices of the people. He is said to have been so exact an observer of his own Laws, that he never offended against any of them.
1064. 103. *Halfanes*, a just and peaceable Prince.
1080. 104. *Philippus*.
1110. 105. *Ingo* IV. in his progress through his dominions, by some of his Courtiers, poison'd at a small Village in *Ofro-Gothia*.
1129. 106. *Ragnaldus*, furnam'd *Knapfode*, i. e. cock-brain'd; elected by the *Swedes* without the consent of the *Goths*, which they not enduring, (as thinking it a breach of their privileges) rebell'd against him, and in battel fell him. For one to succeed him both Nations pitch'd upon.
1143. 107. *Suercherus* II., who as he was going to Church on Christmas day, was, by a *Russian* (employ'd by one *Scateleus*, who hop'd to obtain the Crown after his death) miserably assassinated.

Gothick Kings out of their own Country, who reign'd over the *Goths* while they inhabited about the River *Vistula* or *Weissel*, and also in *Dacia* and *Thracia*: near that time when, according to some Authors, they divided themselves into *Ofro*- and *Westro-Goths*.

1. *Antinus*.
2. *Antheas*.
3. *Gothilas*, a Famous Queen, whose Daughter *Medampa* was married to *Philip* King of *Macedonia*.
4. *Sitalcus* elected King *An. ante Christum* 300. He, with an army of 150000 men lay'd wait all the Country of *Greece*.

5. *Dromgethes*.
6. *Tanobanta*.
7. *Borojfa*, cotemporary with *Sylla* the Roman Dictator, who lived *An. ante nat. Christ.* 76.
8. *Comofitus*, both King and Priest.
9. *Corillus*, under whose conduct the *Goths* (says *Lazius*) first of all invaded *Dacia*.
10. *Dorpaneus*, co-temporary with *Domitian* the Roman Emperor, *An. Christ.* 83.
11. *Decebalus*.
12. *Ostrogotha*.
13. *Cinna* or *Omba*.
14. *Cannabas* or *Canabandes*.
15. *Hildericus*, furnam'd *Ovidla*, who liv'd in the time of *Constantine* the Great.
16. *Gebeiticus*.
17. *Armanaricus* who was, (says *Damasc.* suppl. *Eutrop.*) overcome by the *Huns*, and made Tributary to them.
18. *Vinnitarius*.
19. *Hunimundus*.
20. *Totimundus*.
21. *Alaricus* and *Fritigernus*, who, as *Lazius* mentions, reign'd at the same time in *Thracia*; they defeated the Roman Forces sent against them, commanded by *Valens* the Emperor, whom they put to flight, and apprehending him in a small Cottage, whither he had fled to hide himself, burnt him to death.
23. *Theomarus*, who conquer'd *Mesfia*.
24. *Radagailus*, who to *Mesfia* added a great part of *Pannonia*, *An. Christ.* 390.
25. *Alvaricus*, a Potent King.
26. *Alaricus* II. who subdued all *Illyricum*, and extended his Arms as far as *Italy* (*Arcadius* and *Honorius* sons to *Theodosius* the Emperor, either for some private ends, wishing the success, or not being able to withstand the power of his Forces; and thereupon not timely preventing his designs) he sack'd *Rome*, subdued *Neples* and overran the greatest part of that Country. But at last the *Goths* were by *Stilico* General of the Roman Army, driven out of *Italy*; and after their departure thence, they are said to have fate down in *France*.

The *Ofro-Gothick* Kings who ruled in *Italy* according to *Wolf. Lazius*.

1. *Alaricus* I.
2. *Theodericus*, whom *Leo*, or (as *Scalig.*) *Zeno* the Emperor made his adopted son; he expell'd the *Heruli* out of *Italy*, and wholly subjected it to the power of the *Goths*, he had one daughter nam'd *Amalasuentha*.
3. *Theodatus*, or (as *Jornandes* has it) *Eutharius*, call'd out of *France* by the *Italic* *Goths* to be their King.
4. *Alaricus* II. though he was the first of that name who seded in *Italy*.
5. *Alaricus* III.
6. *Athalaricus*, who had one only Daughter, whom he married to *Vitrigis*, who maintain'd a war against *Justinian* the Emperor for about fourteen years; and defended himself bravely against the Roman Power.
7. *Illuadus*, he was kill'd in battel by *Nafes* the Roman General.
8. *Alaricus* IV. who reigned only five months.
9. *Totilas*, or *Odila*.
10. *Teias*, the last *Gothick* King in *Italy*, who himself was kill'd by the *Romans*, and his people almost all rooted out and destroyed by them; some few only remaining, who mixing and incorporating with the *Italians*, at present pass for the same Nation with them.

Westro- or *Wiso-Gothick* Kings, who reign'd in *Gaul*

1. *Alaricus* I. who (as was said) conducted the *Gothick* people into those parts. *An. Salut.* 411.
2. *Audolphus*, son to *Alaricus*.
3. *Theodericus*, kill'd by *Attyla* King of the *Huns*.
4. *Tarimundus*, son to *Theodericus*, who, to revenge his fathers death, waged war with the *Huns*, and overcame them.
5. *Diananus*, in whose time a great part of the *Goths*, under the conduct of one *Vallia*, went into *Spain*.
6. *Gondicarius*, in the time of *Theodosius junior*. After his reign the *Goths* in these parts grew inconsiderable, as intermixing themselves with other people, and not having a distinct King of their own, but being subjected to (many) other Princes.

Besides these *Gothick* Kings which we have mentioned, there were many other, who ruled over the *Wiso-Goths* in *Spain*, and the adjacent parts; a Catalogue of whom we leave to be set down in *Spain* and *Aragon*, and the Kingdoms where they reign'd; for the *Goths* in those parts blending with the *Romans*, *Alani*, *Suevi*, *Mauri*, *Saraceni*, &c. did not so much continue a distinct Nation of themselves, as become a people incorporated with those of other Nations; or these with the *Goths*: so that they were ruled by Foreign Princes, and their manners modell'd by different Laws.

The second great Epocha in the *Swedish* Chronicks, is from the reign of

108. *Erius* IX. furnam'd the *Saint*, a virtuous and pious Prince. He never lay'd any Taxes or Impositions upon his Subjects, but was content with the Crown-Patrimony, and when Money was offer'd him by his people, he refus'd to accept it. He built the Cathedral Church at *Upsal*, and propagated Christianity to the *Finnlanders*. This King new modell'd all the *Swedish* Laws, and expung'd those that any way favour'd Paganism. He was murder'd by a Party of Rebels, and in the very place where they cut off his head, there presently issued out (says *Loccen*) a spring of pure water, famous for curing diseases.
109. *Charles* VII. a peaceable and religious King; who founded several Monasteries, and had an Arch-bishops fee granted him, in his own Dominions.
110. *Canutus* son to *Erius*.
111. *Suercherus* II.
112. *Erius* X. a quiet and peaceable King.
113. *John* I. furnam'd the *Meek*. He propagated the Christian Religion amongst the *Leitlanders*.
114. *Erius* XI. furnam'd the *Stammerer*. He rooted out Paganism in *Tavastia*, and brought over the Inhabitants to the Christian Faith.
115. *Waldemarus* son to *Bergerus* *Ferl*, who upon the death of *Erius*, in his Fathers absence, was elected King: which his Father being dissatisfied with, at his return declaring his displeasure, that an unexperienc'd youth (his Son) should be advanc'd to the Crown, and himself disgraced, he was thereupon desir'd to take upon him the management of all publick affairs. After his death, *Waldemarus* had absolute power in his Kingdom, and ruled by his own (unfortunate) commands. He was depos'd by his people, and his Crown given to
116. *Magnus* I. furnam'd *Ladulais*, i. e. the *Lock* to *Granaries*, because he made such severe Laws against stealing Corn, and breaking up *Granaries*, that in his reign, the people used nei-

ther Lock nor Key; his Laws being sufficient to secure them from Thieves and Robber. He built many Churches and made several wholesome Laws; ordering that all Offenders, instead of paying mulcts, should be obliged to assist in building some Tower or Fort.

117. *Birgerus* son to *Magnus*, in his time and by his means *Carelia* receiv'd the Gospel. He manag'd affairs imprudently, and thereupon was depos'd and banish'd by his Subjects, and his Kingdom conferr'd on
118. *Magnus* II. furnam'd *Smeek*, i. e. the flatter'd or cocker'd Prince. In the former part of his reign he ruled peaceably, and had the affections of his people, but falling into foolishness, and following strange women, he lost the love of his Subjects, and was in a Senate at *Stockholm* publicly arraign'd for his misdemeanors, call'd for to answer for himself, and not appearing in his own defence, by them depos'd. [*Erius* XII. son to *Magnus*, sometime during his Fathers reign manag'd all business of State, and therefore he is by some reckon'd amongst the Kings of *Sweden*, though without good reason, for he was only an assistant to the King in Council, not a Partner in the Government.]

The fourth *Swedish* Epocha is reckon'd from the remarkable alteration of affairs under

119. *Albertus* of *Mecklebourg*, elected by the Suffrages of the people. For some time he rul'd well, but preferring *Germans* to the chief places of trust in his Kingdom, he thereupon lost the love of his Subjects, and his Crown to boot. After he was depos'd he retir'd into a Monastery. The person who succeeded was
120. *Margareta* Queen of *Denmark* and *Norway*. She vex'd her Subjects with intolerable Taxes, admitted *Danes*, *English-men* and *Italians*, into publick Offices, and was thereupon assaull'd by the Nobles of the Kingdom; who had certainly slain her, had he not given them fair promises, and propos'd to them one to succeed her, viz.
121. *Erius* XIII. her Nephew, son to *Warrilavus* Duke of *Pomerania*. He was King of *Denmark*, *Norway* and *Sweden* at the same time: He married *Philippa* Daughter to *Henry* IV. then King of *England*: for some time he reigned happily, but breaking the Laws of the Kingdom, and not observing his Coronation-Oath, he fell into great troubles, and at last, after he had enjoy'd three Crowns for five and forty years, was dethron'd by his Subjects; [this King after he was depos'd is said to have turn'd Pirat, and very much infested the *British* Coasts,] his Kingdoms of *Denmark* and *Sweden*, were given to
122. *Christophorus* Duke of *Bavaria*. This King revis'd and corrected the municipal Laws of *Sweden*, and caus'd them to be promulgated; from him call'd *Christophers* Laws. He dyed suddenly at *Helsingborg*, as he was going to consult with his Nobles at *Jensceopia*. After this Kings death, there was an Interregnum for some small time, during which, all publick business was manag'd by one *Benedictus Bilelk* and *Nicolaus Baner*, two Principal Officers of State in the time of King *Christophorus*. The fifth Epocha is reckon'd from the ending of the Interregnum, which was, when the Government was undertaken by
123. *Carolus* VIII. *Canuti*, Marhal of the Kingdom, who was defended from the Stock of the ancient *Gothick* Kings. As soon as he was settled in the Throne, he pretended Title to *Gotlandia* which the *Danes* then posses'd; and thereupon made war with *Christianus* I. King of *Denmark*; but

with small success. He lay'd upon his Subjects heavy and grievous Taxes, and attempting to take away Church Lands and pious Donations, lost the favour of his Subjects, and was by them expelled, or rather by the *Danish* forces driven out of his Dominions. His friend whom he in his Banishment trusted himself with, was *Casimir* King of *Poland*, who entertained him nobly for seven years, during which time *Sweden* was govern'd by.

1457. 124. *Christiernus* I. King of *Denmark*, call'd hither by the prevailing Faction; but seizing the publick Treasure of the Kingdom, and committing many cruelties, he was shortly after depose'd from being King; and

1464. 125. *Carols Canuti*, recall'd from *Dantzick*, and restor'd to the Throne; but being troubled with civil Commotions at home, chiefly manag'd by the Arch-bishop of *Upsal*; and endanger'd by the *Danish* Forces from abroad, commanded by the depos'd King *Christiernus* I. he voluntarily left the Government of the Kingdom, and appointed for his Successor his Nephew

1471. 126. *Steno Sture Senior*, who was receiv'd by the Senate at *Stockholm*, rather as a Protector, than an absolute Governour of the Kingdom; he manag'd all publick affairs very happily, and with great satisfaction to the people for a long time, till in the year 1491; at which time he was accus'd by the Senate, for acting in several matters without their knowledge and advice, for making a League with the Inhabitants of *Riga* against the *Teutonic* Order, (of which the *Russes* taking advantage, had made some inroads into *Livonia* and *Finland*), and such-like Crimes; and thereupon by them turn'd out of all office: the Kingdom was conferr'd on

1497. 127. *John II.* son to *Christiern I.* King of *Denmark*. He took *Steno Sture* into favour, and going (as was then the custom) to visit his dominions, left him Vice-roy at *Stockholm*, to manage all the affairs of state during his absence. *Steno*, got into the Office, endeavour'd nothing more than to lessen his Masters, and to advance his own credit and interest with the people; and thereupon calumniates him as a publick Enemy to the Nation, seizes upon those Castles and Forts which the King had Officer'd with *Danes*, besieges *Stockholm*, gains the City presently, the Castle (in which the Queen had fecur'd her self) after two years siege, and not long after, the command of the whole Kingdom. Upon these disorders in *Sweden*, the King shelters himself in *Denmark*, thence sends a Messenger to *Steno Sture*, desiring him to send his Queen *Christina* to him, whom he courteously attending to the Borders of *Denmark*, dyed suddenly at *Jeneopiea* a City in *Suavia*, being (as was suppos'd) poison'd by some of the Queens friends. The Kingdom was dispos'd of by the Nobles, and given to, or rather (as *Johannes Magnus* relates), forcibly obtain'd by,

1507. 128. *Steno Sture* son to one *Niclaus* Grand Marshal of *Sweden*. He was Administrator or Protector of the Kingdom, not absolute King. He took *Colmar* then posses'd by the *Danes*, and maintain'd a bloody war against *John II.* of *Denmark*, the exil'd King of *Sweden*. A Treaty of peace being agreed on to be held at *Colmar*, he refus'd to be present, and was thereupon by *Maximilian* the Emperor of *Germany* and *John* of *Denmark* declared an Enemy to the publick, and a disturber of the peace, and as such he and all his accomplices, were by all good men to be deem'd, and their possessions

to be confiscated. *Steno* not valuing all these protestations against him, declares against their proceedings, and striking a League with the *Lubechers* (which they afterwards broke) put himself in a posture of defence: in the prosecution of the war he dyed at *Arhus* after he had govern'd very happily for eight years: the next who succeeded him was his son

129. *Steno Sture Junior*, Protector of the Kingdom: Upon some grievous quarrels and animosities breaking out 'twixt this King and *Gustavus Trolle* (who afterwards enjoy'd the Crown), the Kingdom was miserably flatter'd and opportunity given to *Christiern II.* son to *John II.* King of *Denmark*, to make an invasion into it. *Steno* to defend himself, raises an Army, goes against him, and near the Lake *Wener*, loses his life in battle. The Kingdom was by the Nobles under certain conditions, as of having their Laws and Religion protected, &c. given to

130. *Christiern II.* King of *Denmark*, who having obtain'd the Diadem, meditated nothing more, then revenge and cruelty, and committed to many Massacres and Acts of hostility upon his Subjects, that he may seem not much inferior in tyranny to *Nero* himself. He under pretence of friendship, and deciding the troubles of the Kingdom, invited all his Nobles to a royal banquet, and after having treated them splendidly for two whole days, at last (pretending the disturb'd state of the Kingdom, requir'd that they should be taken out of the way, and that the *Popes* Bull (which he caus'd publicly to be read before them) gave him authority to do it, murder'd them: calling their dead bodies out into the streets, where they lay for three days, to be torn by Dogs, and trod upon by the Souldiers. The body of *Steno Sture*, which had layn some time in the ground, he caus'd to be dug up and given to the Dogs to devour; with such-like unheard of Cruelties, which made him hated amongst his *Swedish* Subjects, and not secure while he liv'd among them. Hereupon he retir'd, or rather fled into *Denmark*, and the whole management of *Swedish* affairs was undertaken by

131. *Gustavus I.* Nephew to *Steno Sture* by his brother *Ericus*, whom *Christiern* had put to death. He when young was taken by *Christiern*, and carried prisoner into *Denmark*, whence miraculously escaping, he came into *Sweden*, put himself in the head of the dissenting party, manag'd several engagements against the Tyrant very successfully, and was at last, seemingly much against his will, crown'd King. This King was the first who made the Kingdom of *Sweden* Hereditary; the Nobles and Commons in consideration of the great service he had done the Nation, freely giving up their ancient right of electing, and establishing the Crown upon him and his heirs for ever. He was the first that encourag'd and propagated the *Lutheran* Confession in *Sweden*, and made a League with the Reform'd Princes of *Germany*, to defend it against all Opposers. He proteit'd against *Christiern III.* King of *Denmark*, who alleg'd some pretensions to the Arms (three Crowns) of *Sweden*: made a peace with the *Russes*, and after he had reign'd happily for nine and thirty years, dyed in a quiet and peaceable old age: his Diadem (according to the right of inheritance) was conferr'd on the head of

132. *Ericus XIV.* his Eldest son. As, soon as or before, he was well settled in the Throne, the first thing he propos'd to the Senate, was to consult

consult about a marriage with *Elizabeth* Queen of *England*. He concluded a peace with the *Danes*, which they not observing on their part, he made war against them, invaded *Norway*, and committing some cruelties upon the *Norwegian* Noblemen, and was by them in favour of his own Subjects, and was by them under the command of his rebellious Brothers (notwithstanding their oath of Allegiance) treacherously betrayed, thrust from his Throne, and shut up in Prison; where, after nine years confinement, he died miserably. During his imprisonment, when he perceiv'd what way affairs would go, and to whom the Kingdom after his death (according to justice) be transferr'd, he is said to have writ under his Escutcheon these words; *Translatum est regnum et salum est fratri mei; a Domino constitutum est ei: quod loquutus sum, pro Diadem (in right) defendendo* upon

133. *John III.* brother to *Ericus*. He, as soon as invest'd with his Royal Robes, endeavours to lay a Foundation for a quiet reign; and thereupon concludes a peace with the *Muscovites*, the *Pole*, and the *Dane*, his three potent Neighbours. This King is said to have endeavour'd to introduce the Religion of the church of *Rome* into his Dominions, and labour'd to persuade his Brother *Charles* to embrace that Profession; but with small success. In the latter part of his Reign he was victorious in war, and saw his son *Sigismund* crown'd King of *Poland*. He died, not without suspicion of being poison'd. After his death, his Brother *Charles* Duke of *Sudermannia* for some time manag'd all publick affairs, till his Nephew, to whom according to the right of succession the Crown did belong, could conveniently come out of *Poland*, to receive it.

134. *Sigismund* son to *John III.* He was educated in the Religion of the church of *Rome*. Hereupon the States of *Sweden* fearing lest he, being admitted King, might reestablish Popery amongst them; before his Coronation, propos'd to him an Oath, not to alter any thing in their Religion reform'd according to *Luther*, but to allow his Subjects the free exercise of that profession. This Oath he endeavour'd at first to evade, but (being advised by the *Popes* Legat and some *Jesuits*, that an Oath taken by him with Heretics was not obligatory; or if he scrupled that, that a Dispensation for the breach of it was easily attainable from the *Pope*) at last solemnly took it, and promising the States faithfully to observe all the conditions of it, he left *Sweden*, and return'd into *Poland*. During his absence, all affairs of the Kingdom were managed by Duke *Charles* his Uncle; who for some small time executed the Office of Vice-Roy very quietly, and to the great satisfaction of the Kings subjects; but some differences arising about Religion (the *Papists*, *Jesuits* especially, to whom free exercise of their Worship had been granted, growing powerful, and thereupon behaving themselves insolently towards the *Lutherans*) the business of State became troubled, and the determination of controversies, and removal of jealousies out of the peoples hearts, a very difficult matter. Hereupon *Sigismund* is sent for out of *Poland*, but both delaying to come into *Sweden*, and

to send Orders to his Uncle, that *Papish* Delinquents (as they were represent'd to him) should, according to Law, be proceeded against as enemies to the State, and that other (such-like) grievances should be redress'd; he so lost his interest with his *Swedish* Subjects, that when (at last) he came amongst them, they oppos'd him as a public enemy; made war against him, and overcame him in Battle. After he was defeated, he return'd to *Poland*, and his Crown of *Sweden* was by the States set upon the head of his Uncle

135. *Charles IX.* Duke of *Sudermannia*, and brother to *John III.* He maintain'd the *Augustan* Confession during his whole Reign; carry'd on a bloody war against his Nephew *Sigismund*, and *Christianus IV.* King of *Denmark* (whom he challeng'd to a Duel); and after he had reigned eleven years, dyed at *Nycopia*, in his return from opposing the *Danes*. The Government after his death, according to the right of Inheritance descend'd upon his eldest son

136. *Gustavus Adolphus II.* surnam'd the Great. 1611. This King, in the beginning of his Reign, prosecuted the war with *Denmark*, which his father was engag'd in at his death: but, intending to turn the whole forces of his Kingdom against his Cousin *Sigismund* K. of *Poland*, he, within a short time, concluded a peace both with the *Dane* and *Muscovite*; this done, he invaded *Livonia*, took several places of great importance in that, and other Provinces, which belong'd to the *Pole*; and at last, making a Truce with his Cousin for six years, he return'd into *Sweden*. During the war with *Poland*, *Ferdinand II.* Emperor of *Germany*, had done him (as he alleg'd) very many injuries; (as, his sending assistance to the *Pole* into *Borussia* under the command of *Armenius*: his not admitting the *Swedish* Delegates to a Treaty of Peace at *Lubeck*, but charging them to depart the Empire, &c.) whereupon he invaded the Imperial dominions, took several strong Cities, and, after he had over-run a great part of the Empire, was kill'd in battle near *Leipsick*. He was succeeded by

137. *Christina* his only daughter, who being then but seven years old, the affairs of the Kingdom were order'd by her Guardians, till she came to the eighteenth year of her age; at which time she took the Government upon her self, made a Peace with the Emperor, and the King of *Denmark*; and at last, either weary of ruling, or potent a Kingdom, or thinking the care of it too great a burthen for her to undergo, voluntarily laid down the Crown, and commended it to

138. *Charles Gustavus X.* A Noble and Victorious Prince. He maintain'd war against the *Pole*, the *Muscovite*, and the *Dane*. As he was returning from *Gottenburg* upon the confines of *Denmark*, to *Stockholm*, he dyed of a Fever; and his Kingdom, according to right of succession, descend'd upon

139. *Charles XI.* his son, then four years of age. 1660. During his Minority, the Kingdom was govern'd by his Guardians; but coming to full age, he took upon himself the management of all publick affairs; and is now reigning A.D. 1680. Aged twenty-four years. A warlike and virtuous Prince.

Of the Great

PRINCIPALITY O F FINLAND.

Finland.



Beyond the *Bothnic Bay* lies the Great Principality of *Finland*; call'd by the Natives *Somi* or *Soma*, from the great number of Lakes that are in it (*Soma* signifying a Lake); but by the *Swedes* first, and after them, by all strangers, call'd *Finland*, *q. Fine-land*, from the pleasantness of the Country; or (as others say) *q. Fiende-land*, i.e. the Land of Fiends or Enemies: the *Finlanders* using for a long time, before they were under the *Swedish* power, to make frequent incursions into that Kingdom, and very much injure and molest its inhabitants.

It is bounded on the East, with the *Sinus Finnicus*, and the Lake *Ladoga*; on the West, with the *Bothnic Bay*; on the North, with part of *Lapland*; and on the South, with part of the *Finnic* and *Baltic Seas*.

Its Provinces.

It is divided into these seven Provinces: 1. *Southern-Finland*. 2. *Northern-Finland*. 3. *Cajania*. 4. *Savolaxia*. 5. *Tavastia*. 6. *Nylandia*. And 7. *Carelia*.

Southern Finland.

1. *Southern Finland*, parted from the Northern by the River *Aujaroki*, which waters the Episcopal City *Abo*. It extends it self all along the *Finnic Bay*, Eastward; having on the North and North-East, the Provinces of *Tavastia* and *Nylandia*. In it are, besides several little Towns, two remarkable Forts, viz. *Gusto* in the Western, and *Raseberg* (to which belongs a Dynastie or Principality) in the Eastern, part of it.

Northern Finland.

2. *Northern Finland*, running along the East-side of the *Bothnic Bay*, towards the North. It is indifferently large in circumference, taking in both the *Satagunda's*, with *Vieno* and *Maseo*. Water'd it is by one only River, call'd *Cumo-elf* (famous for its abundance of Salmon, and other sorts of Fish) which falls into the Sea near the City *Bjorneborg*. Towns of note here are *Raumo*, *Nystad*, and *Nadhdendal*: to these *Sanson* adds *Castelholm*, in the Island *Alandia*.

Cajania.

3. *Cajania*, or *Ost-Bothnia*, as some call it, in opposition to *West-Bothnia*, which lyes over against it, on the West side of the *Bothnic Bay*. In it are many large Rivers, the chief of which are, *Kimi-elf*, (which emptieth it self into the *Bothnic Bay* at the most Northern Cape of it, and parts this Province from *West-Bothnia*), *Iio-elf*, and *Vla-elf*. Cities here, are 1. *Vlam* or *Vlo*, 2. *Vasa* or *Wessam Cal*; to which may be added, the Forts *Cajaneburg* and *Vlaburg*.

Savolaxia.

4. *Savolaxia*, which is bounded on the East, with the Lake *Ladoga*; on the West, with a ridge of Mountains, which part it from *Carelia*; on the North, with part of *Masconitic Lapland*; and on the South, with *Tavastia* and *Carelia*. This Province abounds much with Lakes and Rivers, most of which disburthen themselves into the Lake *Ladoga*. The Rivers

afford Fish (Pike especially) in great abundance; and the Lakes, besides the great quantity of Fish they breed, supply the inhabitants with Sea-Calfs, not met with in any other *Scandian* Lakes. Here is one remarkable Fort, call'd *Nyfort*, or *St. Olavs's Fort*; built in the year 1475, by one *Ericus Axelsson* Governor of *Aboa*, in the reign of *Carolus Canuti VIII*.

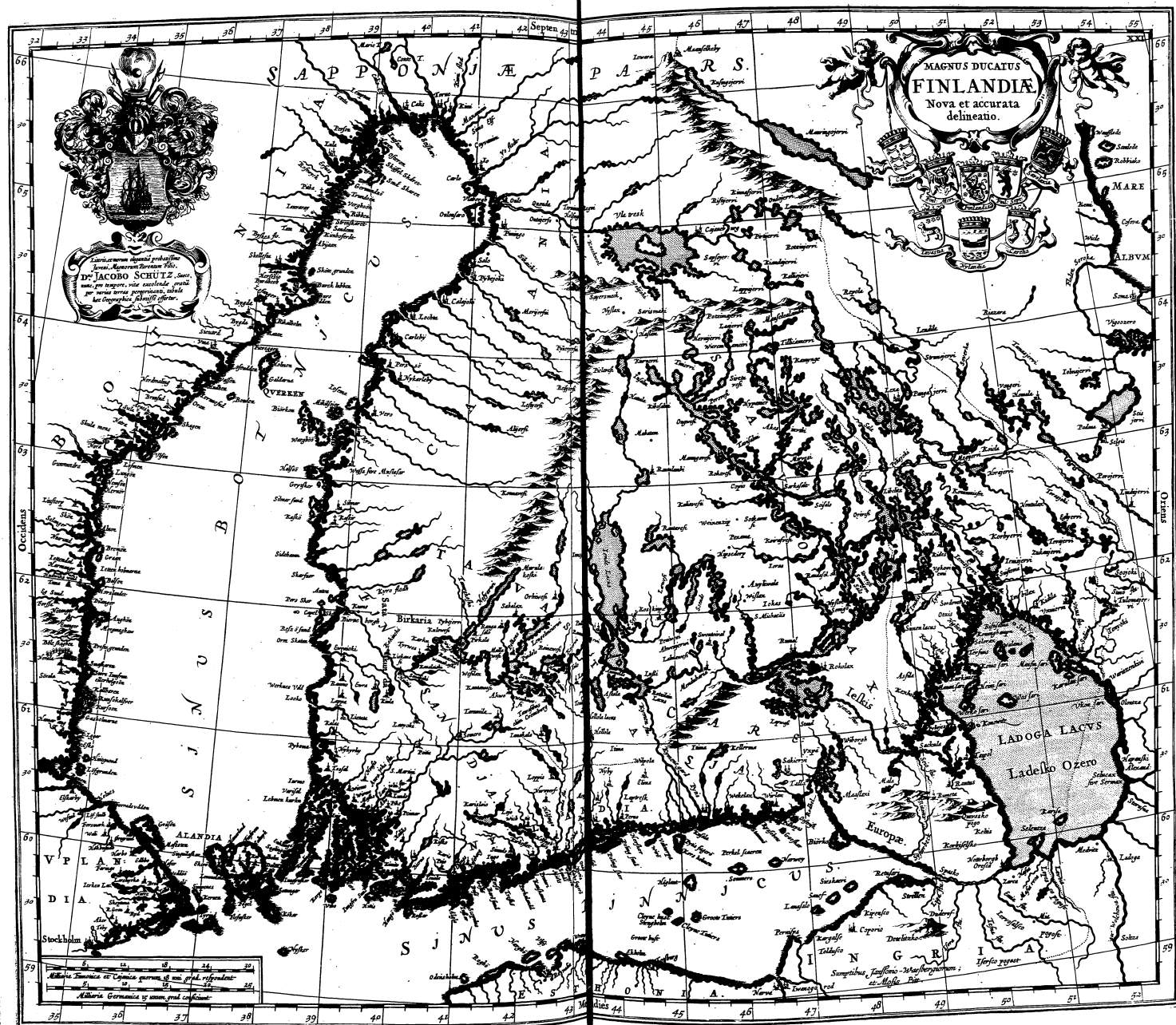
5. *Tavastia*, an in-land Province, having on the West, North *Finland*; on the North, *Cajania*; on the East, *Savolaxia* and *Carelia*; and on the South, *Nylandia* and the Principality of *Raseborg*. In it there is one Fort, call'd the Fort of *Tavastia* or *Tavasthus*; built by *Berjerus Jern*, A.D. 1250, to keep the *Tavastians* in awe; whom he at that time had brought over to the *Swedish* Government, and forc'd to profess the Christian Religion. Here is one Lake of a considerable bigness, nam'd *Jende* or *Pejende*; and towards the Northern parts of the Province, several others, call'd *Kautilambi*, i.e. Iron Lakes; not so large as the former, but no less remarkable, by reason of the great quantity of Iron which the inhabitants find in them, and (as is said) daily hook out for their private use.

6. *Nylandia* or *Neuland*, so call'd *New-land*, *Nylandia* because its ancient inhabitants (the *Finni* and *Carelii*) being driven out, new Colonies were sent out of *Helsingia* and *Suecia*, to go people, or rather defend, this Country. Here are two Cities, *Borgo* and *Helsingfors*.

7. *Carelia*, lying upon the East-side of the *great Peninsula Scandia* or *Scandinavia*: parted from *Russia* by the Rivers *Pinsjoki*, which runs toward the North Sea; and *Povevotz*, which falls into the Lake *Onega*. [by the near approaching of these two Rivers toward each other, *Scandia* is almost made (as the Ancients suppos'd it to be) a perfect Island; the nick of land call'd *Maanselke*, not being above three *German* miles in length in that part where the Rivers come nearest together.] This Province anciently contain'd all that large tract of ground which lies between the River *Kymi* on the North, the Lake *Pejende* on the West, and *Onega* on the East; and the Rivers, *Sueci* which falls into the Lake *Ladoga*, and *Nieva* which empties it self into the *Finnic Bay*, on the South and South-East: but at present its bounds are much narrower, taking in only the more Southern part of that large Country which formerly it did (wholly) contain. It affords good store of pasturage, and breeds Cattel, as Oxen, Horses, &c. in great abundance, whence it has its name *Carelia*, (*Caria*, in the *Finlandish* tongue, signifying Herds or Drovers of Cattel).

While the *Finlanders* had Kings of their own, all *Carelia* belong'd to their jurisdiction; but after the *Swedes* on the one side, and the *Muscovites* on the other, began to infect it by frequent wars and invasions, the title to it became very disputable, and was for a long time very hotly contended for by those two potent enemies. About the year 1319, *Magnus II*. surnam'd *Sweeth King*





King of Sweden, and George Duke of Novogard, divided the whole Province betwixt them, setting certain bounds in Syfterbeg, and other places towards the North; beyond which it was not lawful for either of them, without the others leave, at any time to pass. These limits, tho not punctually observ'd on either side, are said to have continued, as a distinction of the Swedish Territories in this Province, till the reign of Charles IX. King of Sweden A.D. 1609. in which year Ioan Vaskilowitz Tzar of Muscovy, being engaged in a war with Sigismund King of Poland, and in danger to lose his whole Empire; desired of the said Charles IX. that he would send some forces to his assistance, and promised him upon condition that he would aid him in that extremity, to deliver up into his hands the Principality of Carelogodia or Kexholmia, with the City and Fort, as a perpetual possession to him and his Successors. But the Tzar proved not so good as his word, for after he had freed himself from the danger he was in, he not only caused the Swedish soldiers to be robb'd of all the pay he had given them, but refused to yield up Kexholmia to the Swedes. This very much incens'd Charles IX. who upon the first advantage (the Poles rallying their forces against the Muscovites, and taking their Imperial City Mosco) invades that part of Carelia which the Tzar retain'd from him; takes Kexholm, and several other Forts upon the confines of Muscovy; and withall makes an invade into the Province of Novogorod Veliki, i.e. Novogorod the great. During the war Charles dies, and the prosecution of it was continued by his successor Gustavus Adolphus King of Sweden. He takes from the Tzar Noteburg in Ingria or Ingermannia; and had such good success in his conquests, that in the year 1616 he obtain'd of them very advantageous conditions of peace, viz. That (as it is in the eighth Article of the Ratification) Michael Federowitz, Great Duke of Muscovy should yield up to the Swedes Ivanogorod, Jamma, Capories, and Noteburg, formerly belonging to the Principality of Novogard; with all Cities, Towns, Prefectures, &c. appertaining to, or any way depending upon them: And also (according to the eleventh Article of the said Ratification) should deliver to Gustavus Adolphus and his successors forever, as a perpetual possession, all that part of Carelia which the Russes laid claim to; with all the Cities and Towns laid in it. (See what was said in Muscovy concerning this Province, pag. 15.)

The chief Cities in Finlandish Carelia, are 1. Wiburg, a noted Mart-Town, well fortified with Trenches, Forts, and a strong Castle, against which the Muscovites very often have made unsuccessful attempts, with no less than an hundred thousand men. 2. Kexholm, or (as the Swedes call it) Kekisalmi, i.e. the Frith of Gumardi; from *keki*, signifying a kind of Fish call'd a Car, or Gurnard, (which abounds in the River Woxen, upon which this City stands;) and *Salmi*, a Frith or Bay. The Russes call it Carelogorod, i.e. the Fort of Carelia; good in their language denoting a Fort.

In this Province the soil is exceeding rich; in those places especially which lye near the Lake Ladoga; for, fifteen or twenty miles Northward from it, the ground is so overflown with Lakes and Rivers, that it bears Corn only on the higher and more mountainous parts; whereupon the inhabitants live mostly upon hunting and fishing; taking more pains for their subsistence where the earth is less bountiful.

The largest and most remarkable amongst the Lakes of this Country, (and, as some are of opinion,

of all Europe) is the Lake Ladoga, of which four parts in five belongs to the King of Sweden. It has its name from a kind of Fish about the bigness of a Herring, call'd in the Russian tongue *Lagdog*, (which is peculiar to this Lake, and with which it very much abounds.) The figure of it is oval, about an hundred leagues in length, and sixty in breadth. In it are many small Islands, and upon its banks several Towns of very good note.

Near a place call'd *Kidila* in this Province, are dug out of the ground a fort of precious stones, which go under the name of Kexholmian Rubies; the Russes call them *Kidilsko Camen*.

The ancient inhabitants of Finland were (says *The Inhabitants of Finland*) the most hospitable and least barbarous of any of the Scandinavians; but at present they are of all (the Laps only excepted) the most fierce and unciviliz'd.

Their language, which they make use of, and which is proper to themselves, is of a harsh and uneven dialect; difficultly attainable by any stranger, as having in it some proprieties not common to any European tongue; as in the whole language they have no F, nor any word that begins with B, D, or G, or two consonants; so that they pronounce e.g. for the, *be*; for grant, *yant*; for both, *poth*; for good, *cood*, &c. Thro the whole tongue they observe no Genders, and have but one Article (*le*) to denote both sexes: their Propositions they place after the words to which they belong: Their Rhythms in Verse they count not from the like ending, but the like beginning, of the last words; and many such like differences.

The Government of Finland, was anciently Their Government. administer'd by Kings of its own, who exercis'd their power without controul, and were no ways tributary to, or dependent on, a foreign jurisdiction: till about the year of Christ 1150, Ericus IX. furnished the Saint, King of Sweden, brought the whole Country into subjection to his Laws, and (at the same time) compell'd them to embrace the Christian Religion. After his days Tavastia was conquer'd by Berjerus Jerl; and Carelia by Turgillus Kantelesonius, who built Viborg to defend it against the Russes, A.D. 1193. At present, the whole Principality belongs to the King of Sweden, and is reckon'd as a very considerable part of his dominions.

Of Ingria or Ingermanland.

Ingria, Ingermanland, or (as the Muscovites call it) *Isera*, is a fruitful and pleasant Province; having on the East and South, part of Muscovy; on the West, *Esthonia* and part of the *Finnic Bay*; on the North, the Lake *Ladoga*, and the River which joins it with the *Finnic Bay*. It affords beasts, both wild and tame, of several species, in great plenty: That which abounds most, is the *Elg*, *Elk*, or (as the Germans call it) *Ellent*, which (as we mentioned in Lapland) in the spring-time swims over the River *Nieva* in numerous herds into Carelia, and towards the end of Autumn, returns by the same way into end of Autumn, returns by the same way into *Russia*, and the more Southern parts of this Province, and also into *Esthonia*, *Livonia*, &c. here are several Cities, of great importance and strength, which were formerly the chief security to the Russes on this side, but now are all rity to the Russes on this side, but now are all given up by the forementioned Treaty A.D. 1616, into the possession of the Swedes. As, 1. *Noteburg*, which the Russes call *Oreska*, i.e. a Nut, from its compactness and strength. It is seated in a small Island at the mouth of the River *Nieva*, which by reason of its breadth is a great security to it. About the year 1614, Gustavus Adolphus

phus besieged this City, and after he had lain before it with his whole Army for a long time, and not by force able to gain it; it was at last by the Burgbers voluntarily surrendered up to him: not because they wanted any provision necessary to defend the City, but because (as is reported) a strange distemper of Boils or Warts in the mouth and throat, seized the greatest part of the inhabitants: so that they were not able to eat any victuals, or sufficiently to secure their Bastions against so potent an enemy. 2. *Isanogorod*, built upon a Rock, in a small isthmus, at the confluence of two Rivers; it lies opposite to *Narva*, parted from it only by a large and rapid River, which runs from the Lake *Peipus*, and empties it self into the *Finnic Bay*. On the East-side of this City there is a small Mount, made hollow, partly by art, and partly by nature; in the side of which many of the poorer sort of people, such as ordinarily live in the suburbs of great Cities, come to inhabit. 3. *Jamagorod*, situated upon the River *Laga*. 4. *Capurium* or *Coporio*, a strong Fort, lying upon the *Finnic Bay*. All these Cities and Forts, by virtue of the Peace concluded 'twixt *Gustavus Adolphus* King of Sweden, and the *Muscovite*, *an. 1616* or *1617*, were deliver'd up into the hands of the *Swedes*, and ever since by them retain'd, (of what was given to the *Tzar* by that Treaty, see what was said in *Muscovy*, p. 23. concerning the Province of *Novogorod*, &c.)

Of the new Accessions in Livonia.

Livonia.

SOME, tho the lesser part of *Livonia* or *Liesland* (as is taken notice of in *Poland*, where a description of the whole Province may be seen) belongs at present to the Crown of *Poland*: all *Esthonia*, with the Island *Oselia*, and some Towns in *Letitia* and other parts, which lie upon the *Baltic* coasts, being in the possession of the *Swedes*; and held by them by virtue of a Ratification of Peace concluded at the Monastery of *Oliva* near *Dantzic*, *ann. 1660*, between *John Casimir* King of *Poland*, and *Charles XI.* the present King of *Sweden*. The Articles which chiefly relate to the *Swedes*, and their possessions in *Liesland*, we shall (for the Readers satisfaction) here insert: 1. It was agreed on, That a general and inviolable peace, amity, and friendship should thenceforward be maintain'd between the said Crowns of Sweden and Poland, the Emperor *Leopold*, and *Frederic Wilhelm* Marquess of Brandenburg, and between their Subjects of what degree, condition, or Religion soever. 2. That the King of Poland for himself and his heirs should renounce all pretensions to the Crown of Sweden and the Great Principality of Finland, and to all other possessions which his Grandfather *John III.* King of Sweden had formerly enjoyed: but that the said *John Casimir*, during his life, might, when he wrot in any Prince or Ally whatsoever, use the Arms and Title of the King of Sweden as well as those of Poland. Only observing this, that in all transactions 'twixt him and the King of Sweden, he should stile himself King of Poland and Great Duke of Lithuania, without adding any more Titles, but only annexing three *Excaltations*: thus, *John Casimir* King of Poland, Great Duke of Lithuania, &c. &c. (The like was to be done by the King of Sweden, after the Title of Great Duke of Finland). 3. That the King and States of Poland and Lithuania should yield up to the *Swedes* all Livonia beyond *Dwina*, with the Island *Rune*, and some other places beyond the *Dwina*, which the King of Sweden during the Truce had possession of; and also

all *Esthonia* and *Oselia*, and all Cities, Towns, Forts, &c. that did formerly any way belong or appertain to the Crown of Poland: the King of Sweden being hereby oblig'd upon the surrender of these places, not to lay any claim to *Curland* or *Semigallia*, or to any Towns and Forts that belong to those Provinces: That all the inhabitants in the Swedish Livonia should have free exercise of their Religion, Laws, &c. with undisturb'd intercourse of Trade upon the *Dwina*: And several such-like Conditions. The whole Province of *Liesland*, in respect of its jurisdiction, may be divided into *Swedish* and *Polonian* *Liesland*.

1. *Polonian* *Liesland*, which lies beyond the *Dwina*, and contains in it the Dukedom or Principality of *Curland*, and *Semigallia*, with part of *Letitia*. (of which see *Poland*)

2. *Swedish* *Liesland*, which may be said to contain the Districts of *Esthonia*, *Odepsa*, *Oselia*, and *Letitia*. This Province being frequently subject to different Princes, has no very certain limits set, nor like names given to the parts of it, by any that have undertaken to describe it. Some Authors adding *Harland* and *Verland*, as distinct Provinces from the former, which may seem rather parts only of *Esthonia*, then different Principalities from the rest.

1. *Esthonia*, *Elia*, or *Ejstland*, (so call'd from the *Ejstii* its ancient inhabitants) is bounded on the North with the *Finnic Bay*; on the West, with the *Baltic* Sea, and the Islands *Dagbo* and *Oselia*; on the East, with the Lake *Peipus*, and part of *Muscovy*; and on the South, with the District of *Letitia* and the River *Dwina*. It is cut out into five divisions or Dioceses, *Alentakia*, *Wiria*, *Hania*, *Wicia*, and *Jeroia*.

1. *Alentakia*, which lies betwixt the Lake *Peipus* and the *Finnic Bay*; having the River *Narva* on the East; and on the West, the District of *Wiria*. In it are two Cities of note: 1. *Narva*, call'd commonly the *German* *Narva*, to distinguish it from *Muscovitic* *Narva*, which lies opposite to it upon a River of the same name, not far from the famous Fort *Isanogorod*. It is a place of great strength and consideration; and ordinarily well garrison'd with *Swedish* soldiers. Behind the Castle there is a small piece of ground, encompass'd with wooden pales, which was given by *Gustavus Adolphus* to the *Russes*, where they are permitted to live, and enjoy free exercise of their Religion, which is according to the Ceremonies of the Greek Church. The *German* *Lutherans* (of which there is a vast number), that reside here, have a particular Church allow'd them, and Sermons preach'd to them in their own language. This City is said to have been built by *Waldemar* II. King of *Denmark*, *A.D. 1223*. It was taken by the *Russes* in 1558, and by them lost to the *Swedes* *A.D. 1581*, and in the year 1599, by a Ratification of Peace, confirm'd to the Kings of Sweden, and ever since by them possess'd. It lies in 60 deg. of Northern Latitude; forty German miles from *Plesker*, and as many from *Novogardia*. 2. *Niesla*, or *Neuschlos*, i.e. new Fort: not far from the Lake *Peipus*, upon the River *Narva*.

2. *Wiria*, *Wiria*, or *Wilandia*; which has *Alentakia* on the East, *Hania* on the West, the *Finnic Bay* on the North, and *Jeroia* on the South. Places remarkable in it are: 1. *Wefenberg*, not far from the River *Weissenaa*, which *A.D. 1581*, was taken by the *Swedes* from the *Muscovite*. 2. *Borholmen*, twelve miles distant from *Wefenberg*. 3. *Borholm*, with *Wicia*, on the East with *Wiria*, and on the North and West with the *Finnic Bay*. In this division is *Revalia*, the Metropolis of *Liesland*; a little

little, but handfom, pleasant, and well fortified. City, lying in 59 deg. 30 min. of Longitude. In the year 1374, it was sold to the great Master of *Livonia*. In 1561, being in danger to fall into the hands of the *Muscovite*, it committed it self to the protection of the Kings of Sweden; and has ever since been subject to them. Here was anciently a Bishops See, but, since *Lutheranism* spread it self into these parts, that Title is here discontinued, and all Ecclesiastical affairs manag'd by Superintendents. For the promoting of Learning and good Education, this City has one publick Gymnasium wherein Professors and Tutors are maintain'd to read and teach Humanity, and all the Liberal Arts. The chief Church is dedicated to *St. Olav*. Not far from this place, is the Monastery of *St. Bridget*, seated upon the *Finnic* coast; and the Fort *Pades* or *Badis*, lying upon the River *Alse*.

4. *Vigia*, *Wicia*, or *Wikke*, which has in it these three places of note: 1. *Habsalia*, *Habsel*, lying upon the *Baltic* Bay; formerly, viz. in the time of *Fridric II.* King of *Denmark*, in the possession of the Danes: afterwards *A.D. 1575*, taken by the *Muscovite*; and in the year 1581, gain'd by *John III.* King of Sweden. 2. *Lole*. 3. *Leal*. 4. *Wikel* or *Wyek*: all, Forts of good strength and consideration.

5. *Jeroia*, which lies landward, almost in the middle of the other Districts: It contains *Wittenstein*, *Oberpalen*, and *Lau* or *Lais*; places of moment.

1. *Odepsa*, bounded on the East, with the Lake *Peipus*; on the North, with *Embeck*, and the Rivers *Pela* and *Pernavia*; on the West, with the great Bay of *Livonia*; and on the South, with *Letitia*. In it are these places of note, viz.

1. *Derpat*, *Derbat*, *Dorpat*, or (as the *Russes* call it) *Jurigorod*, a large City, built most of Stone and Brick, and secured by strong Stone-walls; where was formerly a Bishops seat. It was heretofore under the *Tzar* of *Muscovy* *A.D. 1230*. Under the Poles *A.D. 1582*. Afterwards taken from them by *Charles Duke of Sudermannia*. But by them regain'd, *A.D. 1603*. In the year 1625, when *Gustavus Adolphus* sent Forces into *Livonia* under the command of *Jacobus de la Gardie*, this City was gain'd to the *Swedish* Crown, and ever since remains as a part of its possessions. Here, by reason of the great abundance of all sorts of commodities of life, and the healthfulness of the air, *Gustavus Adolphus* *ann. 1632*, at the desire of one *Johm Skytte* Baron in *Ouderg*, (who had sometime been Tutor to that King), instituted an University: and appointed and stipend one Rector, and several Professors, for Theology, History, Mathematicks, &c. 2. *Warbek*, upon the mouth of the River *Embeck*. 3. *Kannelees*. 4. The Fort *Ringen*. 5. *Odepsa*, a small Town, whence the whole District has its name. 6. *Nierstagen*, a strong Fort upon the borders of *Muscovy*. 7. *Marienborg*, another Fort, not far from the Lake *Peipus*. 8. *Tarnel*, a place anciently of good importance; but being in the hands of the *Muscovites*, it was besieged by the *Poles*, and at last by them taken, and when they quitted it, so demolished, that, tho the *Swedes* have spent some charges in repairing it, it has not at present attain'd its ancient strength and splendor.

9. *Pelimm*, *Fellin*, fifteen German miles from 10. *Parnavia*, *Parnon*, upon a River of the same name; a Town of great trade for all commodities. Com especially, of salt added to the *Swedish* dominions by *Ericus XIV.* King of Sweden, *an. 1562*. Afterwards taken by the *Poles* and regain'd from them, *an. 1617*. 11. *Sales* or *Lemjael*: with some other less remarkable Towns and Forts.

III. *Letitia*, bounded on the East, with part of SWEDEN.

Muscovy; on the West, with the *Livonian* Bay, on the North, with *Odepsa*; and on the South, with the River *Dwina*. Its chief City is *Riga*, an Arch-Bishops See, lying in 48 deg. of Longitude, and 57 deg. 30 min. of Latitude, upon the *Dwina*, at its entrance into the *Baltic* Bay. It is defended with a strong Wall, Bulwarks, Towers, an extraordinary large Trench, and three rows of great Guns; which were put in good order and readiness, (chiefly by the care of *Gustavus Adolphus* King of Sweden. Here is a noted Harbour for Ships, much frequented by Merchants from *Germany*, *Holland*, *England*, &c. who come hither in the summer-time, and are laden with Hemp, Flax, Wax, Pitch, Tar; with Planks also, and Wood ready hewn for building Ships; with skins of all sorts, as of Bears, Elks, Foxes, &c. and Furs of Cattons, Sables, Martens, Ermins, &c. all which are brought to this City out of *Muscovy* and *Poland* in the winter-time over the ice and snow upon sleds; and made ready for sale against the time when the Merchants usually arrive. The Citizens (commonly) speak either *Swedish*, *German*, *Curlandish*, or *Livonian*; and have their Divine Service, (which is reform'd according to the *Augustine* Confession,) always celebrated in some one of those languages. In the year 1581, this City was taken by *Stephen King of Poland* from the Emperor; and by his successor *Sigismund III.* endow'd with many notable privileges and immunities, and by him kept in possession till 1605, at what time, *Gustavus Adolphus* Prince of Sweden, brought an Army into *Livonia*, and after six weeks close siege, had it surrender'd up to him: since which time it has always been under the *Swedish* power. 2. *Dunamund*, i.e. the mouth of the *Duna* or *Dwina*; so call'd from its situation, being plac'd upon the *Dwina*, two miles from *Riga*, at its very entrance into the *Livonian* Bay. It is a Fort of great importance, commanding the whole River so, that without leave had from the Governor here, no Ship can pass into, or come out of, the Harbour of *Riga*. And because the *Dwina* at this place breaking forcibly into the Sea, and often, (in the spring-time especially,) bringing huge flakes of ice along with it, very much alters the Channel, and thereby makes the passage into the River very dangerous, there are waiting here a sort of experienced Guides, call'd *Pilotes* or *Pilots*, who for small wages conduct all strangers along the safe way, either up to *Riga*, or back again into the *Baltic*. 3. *Kakenhusen*, *Kockehaus*, a strong Fort, where was anciently the residence of the Archbishop of *Riga*. 4. *Alcherad*; with many lesser Towns, Villages, and Forts.

Of the late Accessions in Pomerania, and the Empire.

HOW far the victorious Arms of *Gustavus Adolphus* spread themselves in the Empire of *Germany*, passing over the *Elb*, the *Rhine*, and the *Danube*, in one year; and thereby becoming as well the terror, as wonder, of Europe; is sufficiently known to all the world: and how, after his death, the *Swedish* Conquests in those parts began to lessen, and several places of importance to be either forcibly regain'd by the Emperor, or by the succeeding Kings of Sweden freely yielded up to him, is no less manifest. What Cities, Towns, Forts, Tides, Territories, &c. were by a Ratification of Peace concluded between the Imperial Ministers and the *Swedish* Agents, (in lieu of those Minors and large Dominions which *Gustavus Adolphus* had possess'd himself of), given up to the hands of the *Swedes*, either absolutely and ever,

*Herrn-
lia.*

with *Gotick* Inscriptions, which are a prophesy of what for the future would befall the *Scandians*.

5. *Herrdalia*, (call'd by *Pontanus*, *Herdalia*, and by most Authors reckon'd as a part of *Helsingia*.) contains the Territories of *Nomedal*, *Hellegeland*, *Frostena*, *Indera*, *Heroa*; with some others: all which, belong to the Dioceses of the Bishop of *Nidrosia*; and are in the possession of the King of *Sweden*.

Of the *Baltic Sea*, the *Finnic*, and *Bethnic*, Bays; and the *Swedish* Islands contain'd in them.

*The Bal-
tic Sea.*

THE *Baltic Sea*, (so called (says *Pontanus*) from the *Saxon* and *English* word (*Belt*), because it encompasseth the Kingdom of *Sweden*, after the manner of a belt or girdle: or (as *Jornandes* would have it) from *Baltia* or *Basilia* (i. e. Queen of Islands) the ancient Greek name of *Scandia* or *Scandinavia*: or (as *Adam Bremenfis* is of opinion) from the *Wise-Goths* who inhabited upon the Coasts of it, usually call'd *Baltis*, i. e. a stout and valiant people) is the largest of any Sea in *Europe*, except the *Mediterranean*; containing in it five and thirty Islands of considerable bigness, besides an infinite number of lesser note. The whole Bay (as some are of opinion) is call'd by *Mela*, *Sinus Codanus*, (q. *Gottharus* or *Gotthicus*, from *Gothia* that borders upon it; or *Caudanus* from *Cauda*, because it comes from the main Ocean, after the manner of a tail of a beast:) by *Strabo*, the *Venedic* Bay, from the *Venede* a people of *Germany*, who liv'd upon the Coast of it: and by the *Danes* and *Sweedes* the *Oost-Zee*, because (as may be gather'd out of the History of *Eric Eigod* King of *Denmark*) the *Danes* who went pilgrimage to the Holy Land, us'd to pass into *Russia*, and the Eastern parts, by this Sea.

It beginneth at the narrow place call'd the *Sund*: and interlacing the Countries of *Denmark*, *Sweden*, *Germany*, and some part of *Poland*, extendeth it self to *Livonia* and *Lithuania*. It, either by reason of the narrowness of the passage, by which the Ocean flows into it; or because of its Northerly situation, whereby the Celestial influences have less power over it, never ebbs nor flows. From the several Countries and places that it washes, it has diverse names given it, and is distinguished into different Bays: the most remarkable are

*The Bar-
nic Bay.*

1. The *Bethnic* Bay, counted from the Island *Alandia*, Northward; to the River *Kimi*, which falls into it at the very furthest Cape. It has its name from *Barb*, signifying in the *Swedish* Language, a Fenny Country, or a Land overflown with water.

*The Fin-
nic Bay.*

2. The *Finnic* Bay, so call'd from the Principality of *Finland*, which it waters. Some will have

the *Sinus Venedicus* of *Strabo*, and the *Mare Asmachium* of *Pliny*, particularly to denote this Bay.

The *Swedish* Islands in this Sea [concerning those that are under the *Danish* Power, see *Denmark*] (to begin with the most Southerly first) are

1. *Rugen*, upon the Coasts of *Pomerania*: given to the *Sweedes*, by the great Treaty of peace at *Munster* and *Osnaburg*, A.D. 1649. (Of which consult the Volume of *Germany*).

2. *Bornholm*, is situate more Northward than *Rugen*, and lyes opposite to *Blekingia*: it has one City in it, nam'd *Santwyk*, and thirty-two small Villages. This Island was, by a Ratification of Peace held at *Copenhagen* A.D. 1660, given up to the *Danes* under certain conditions; of which mention is made in *Denmark*.

3. *Huena* or *Huen*, a very small Island in the *Oresundic* Bay, famous for the City *Vrandburg*, built by that excellent Mathematician *Tycho Brahe*, where the Pole is elevated 55 deg. 54 min. This Isle was yielded up to the *Sweedes* by virtue of the foremention'd Peace concluded betwixt the two Northern Crowns, A.D. 1660.

4. *Utklippa*,

5. *Utlengia*, both lying over against *Blekingia*.

6. *Oelandia*, a fruitful and pleasant Island, in which are said to be the best breed of Horses that are in all the *Swedish* Dominions. This Island A.D. 1526, was taken by *Christiern* King of *Denmark*, and shortly after regain'd by *Gustavus* I. King of *Sweden*. A.D. 1613, it was put into the hands of *Gustavus Adolphus*, and ever since retain'd by the *Sweedes*. (See more concerning it amongst the Provinces of *Gothia*).

7. *Gotland*, lying over against *Ostro-Gothia*; in length seventy-two miles, and in breadth twenty. For a long time almost torn in pieces by the continual Arms of *Denmark* and *Sweden*; till 1648, by a Treaty of Peace betwixt *Christina* Queen of *Sweden* and *Christiern* IV. of *Denmark*, it, with the City *Wibury* (of which see amongst the *Gothic* Provinces) was wholly yielded up into the hands of the *Sweedes*, to be held by them as a perpetual possession.

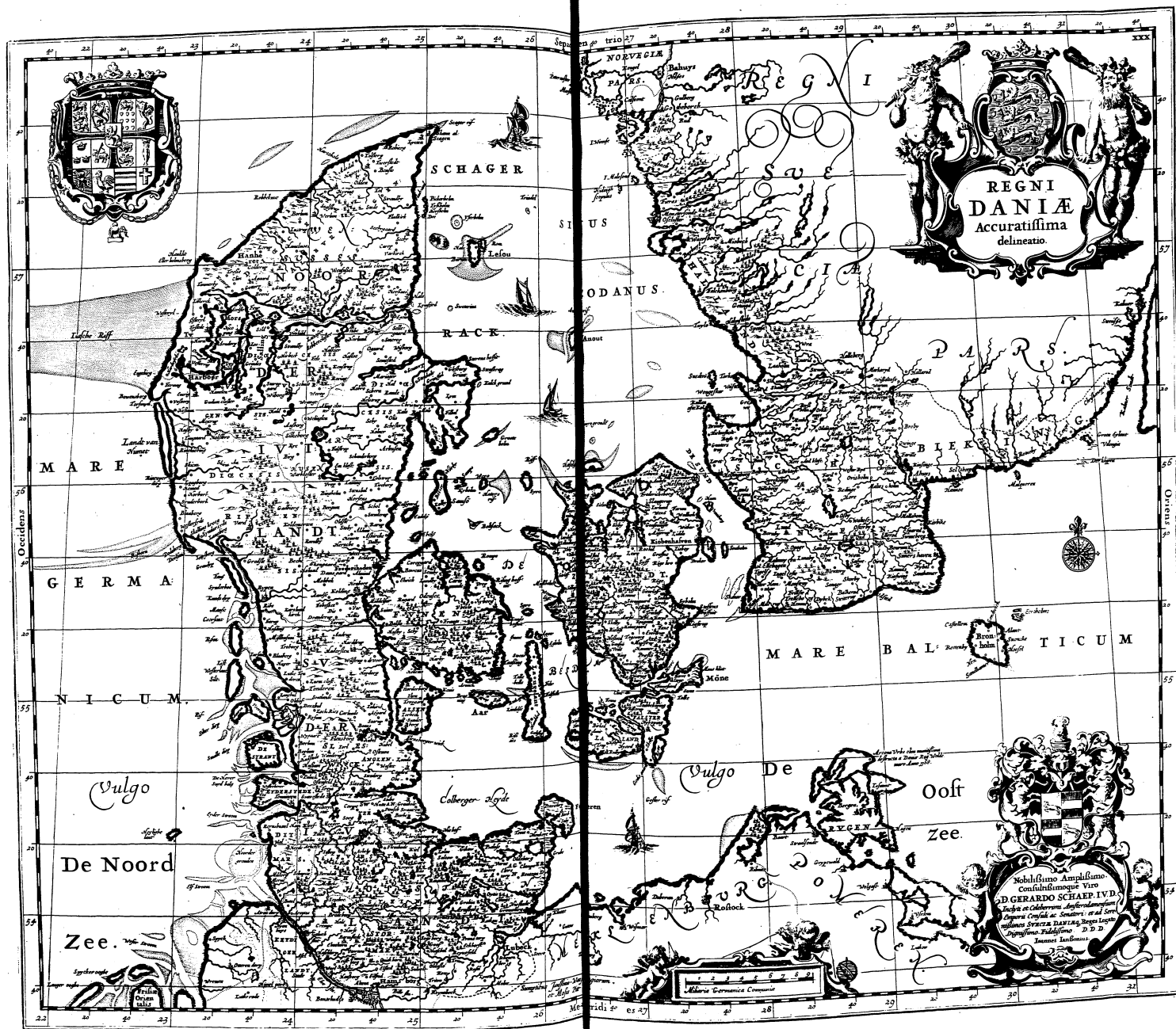
8. *Oselia*, call'd by *Pliny*, *Oserica*, opposite to *Liefland*, and reckon'd by some as a District of *Elbbonia*; fifty-six miles in length, and twenty-eight in breadth. In it is the City *Arnsburg*, fortified with a strong Castle.

9. *Dagboe*, *Dachden* or *Dagheroort* parted from *Oselia* by a very narrow Bay.

10. *Alandia*, lying in the middle Sea, betwixt it and *Upland*, reckon'd by some as a part of *Finland*: in it is the Fort *Castleholm*.

11. *Hogland*, in the *Finnic* Bay, with several others of less note and importance.







D E N M A R K.



Saxo Grammaticus deduces the name of Denmark (Danmark or Dania) from Dan, the son of Humblus, a Prince of these parts many years before the coming of our Saviour. This opinion seems to have been an ancient tradition amongst the Danes, and is confirmed by one of the old Chronicles of their Kings, published by Wormius out of a manuscript copy of the Scanian Laws, written in Runick characters; in the beginning of which we read, *Dan heet den forste conung i Danmark; der var fore Christus borth. Af hannom call is Danmark, i.e. The first King of Denmark was called Dan; who reigned before the birth of Christ. From him Denmark had its name.* But the stories they tell us of this King (like all their ancient histories) are so incoherent and incredible, that little trust can be given to this etymology. Others ridiculously derive the names of Danes and Denmark from Dan the son of Jacob. Some from the Grecian Danai. Hadrianus Junius, a learned Historian, but not too happy in etymologies, would have the Danes so called from the abundance of Fir-trees which grow in their Country; not considering that a Fir-tree has not the same name (Dannen- or Tannen-baum) in Denmark as in Germany; for the Danes, as well as the English, call it a Firre or Firre. Pontanus, sleighting all the conjectures of other Authors, thinks he gives us a sufficient account of the original of the words *Dani* and *Dania*, when he tells us, That these people are the *Daniones* or *Danstones* (as the learned Mr. Camden reads the word, instead of *Daniones* in the vulgar Copies) mentioned by *Protonius*. But this determination is not at all satisfactory; for the question is not, how long, but whence the Danes have had their name? For my own part, I dare not assent to any of the derivations yet given; but had rather guess, that the Danes or Danesche took their name from the great opinion they had of their own uprightness and integrity. For *Danneman* is a word ordinarily used among them to this day to denote an honest and good man. Thus the Germans use the phrase, *ein Teuschbertziger mensch*, to signify a true (Dutch) hearted fellow. And we may observe, that it was the constant custom of all the Northern Nations, to give themselves names from their piety as well as prowess. Thus the people who stiled themselves *Germans* (War-men) in the field, were *Teuschchen* (or Godly) at home; and the *Cimbri* (or Camp-fighters) in time of war, were *Gor-*

DENMARK.

tisch (pious and religious) as soon as they laid down their weapons.

The ancient inhabitants of Denmark were the *Cimbri* and *Getae*: of both which we shall discourse at large in the description of *Jutland*. Concerning the *Goths*, something hath been said in the description of *Sweden*, and more may be expected in the treatise of the *Cimbrie Islands*.

The Kingdom consists of, 1. *Jutland*, which is a Peninsula, washed on either side by the German and Baltic Seas, and bounded on the South with some parts of the nether Saxony. 2. *Zeeland*, *Funen*, with some more Islands of less note. To these may be added, 3. *Schonen* and *Halland*, which formerly did belong to this Kingdom, but in the year 1658, by a Ratification of Peace concluded at *Roschild* between *Frederic III.* King of Denmark, and *Charles X.* King of Sweden, were wholly annex'd to the Crown of Swedenland: and by another Ratification held at *Copenhagen* 1660, confirm'd to it.

The Air is not so cold as in some places of Germany, which ly much more to the South: nor so hot in Summer. This temperature proceeds chiefly from the adjoining Sea; which, as in England, fans the inhabitants in Summer, and keeps them warm in Winter. Sometimes indeed the Baltic Sea is frozen up (as it happened in the year 1659, when the King of Sweden march'd his army out of *Jutland* into *Zeeland* over the Ice) and then Charcoal and Turf, which is their only fuel, stand their friends.

The Land (naturally barren, and abounding with little but Woods and Mountains) is by the late care and industry of the inhabitants made very fruitful. *Funen* furnishes many foreign parts with Barley; and *Zeeland's* greatest trade lyes in transporting of Corn and Hay. *Schonen* is full of pleasant Meadows; whence some Authors think it had its name: for *Schone* signifies fair.

The rich pastures in Denmark afford such multitudes of Kine, that (according to *Oldenburg's* relation) some years forty thousand, others an hundred thousand Cows and Oxen are hence transported into the Low Countries; which must needs exceedingly enrich the Kingdom. They have also good breeds of Horses; but not in such numbers that they can afford to send any into other Nations.

Helmodus tells us, that in his time the great riches of the Danes consisted in Fish. And *Saxo Grammaticus* says, the Sea-coasts round *Zeeland*, and other parts of the *Danijb* Kingdom, are so stock'd with shoals of Herrings and other Fish, that you may not only take them up with your hand without the help of any Net, Line, or Hook; but

but that they hinder the passage of Ships and Boats. Certain it is (however strange and incredible *Saxo's* story may appear) Herrings swim usually in infinite numbers; and no part of the Seas were anciently better stock'd with this kind of Fish than the coasts of *Denmark*. But of late years the Herring-trade has fail'd strangely here; and those they do catch come far short of the *English* and *Dutch* Herrings in bulk and goodness. I am unwilling to think (till *Oldenburgh*) this decay of the Fishing-trade in *Denmark*, a judgment inflicted on the inhabitants; since our Fishermen will tell us, that some years the Herrings haunt the *English* shore, sometimes the *Dutch* or *French*. However, tho the Herrings have forsaken them, they have still plenty of other sorts of Fish, as Plaice, Whiting, Cod, &c. which they dry and send abroad. *Pontanus*, to shew how well they are provided in this kind, tells us this memorable story: "It happened not many years before the writing of his History of *Denmark*, that several Ambassadors from most of the greatest Princes "in *Europe* being met together at the Emperor "of *Germany's* Court, had some disputes about "precedency. Some of them asserted the dignity "and power of their Masters from the riches "of their Country in Gold and Silver: others brag'd "of the plenty of Corn, Fruits, &c. when all had "done, the *Danish* Ambassador told them, That "should the richest Prince in *Europe* sell his Kingdom, and with the price buy nothing else but wooden "Platters, the King his Master was able to fill them "all with three sorts of fresh Fish. Whereupon they "unanimously declared the King of *Denmark* the "happiest Prince in Christendom; and placed his "Ambassador next the King of *France's*, who sat "on the Emperors right hand.

Forrefts.

Their Forrefts are full of all sorts of Venison; inasmuch that every hunting season (which commonly is in *August*) there are above fifteen hundred Bucks brought in to the Kings Palaces; besides an infinite number of Hares, Conies, Boars, &c.

Manners.

However the ancient *Romans* vilified and contemned all the Northern Nations, esteeming them a sort of barbarous, dull, and unactive people; yet 'tis manifest from the relations given by *Lucius Florus*, and other *Roman* Historians (who never cared for speaking too well of their enemies) how stoutly the *Cimbrians* encounter'd the *Roman* Forces. And 'tis more than probable, that the *Galli Senones* came out of this Country, who forced their Infantry to take sanctuary, or rather imprinted themselves, in the *Capitol*. Besides, most of the Northern Nations have at some time or other stoop'd to the *Danish* Arms. For, if we consult the best of their Historians, we shall find, that *Ireland* was eight several times conquer'd by the *Danes*: The *English* were ten times beaten by them; and for many years subject to the Kings of *Denmark*: *Scotland* was for awhile tributary to this Crown; whence some fancy it had its name; *Scotland*, in the *Danish* tongue, signifying a Country that pays tribute to a foreign Potentate; hence we still retain the word *Saxony*, i.e. one exempt from all payments, dues, and duties: *Saxony* paid homage to *Probo*, *Sigward*, and other *Danish* Kings: And the *Swedes* often then once swore fealty to the *Danes*; but revolted as soon as they found themselves able to rebel: The Kingdom of *Norway*, annex'd to the Crown of *Denmark*, in a sufficient testimony of the *Danish* valour: Nay, *Saxo Grammaticus* gives us many instances of the courage and conduct of several *Danish* Viragines, whose exploits (if he say true) may be set in competition with

the bravest performances of the *Heftors* of other Nations. *Tacitus*, speaking of the ancient *Germans*, says, *They were a little too much addicted to Gluttony and Drunkenness; but without obliging strangers, that they looked upon it as the height of barbarism and rudeness, to turn any such out of doors, or deny them lodging.* Both these characters may still be applied to the *Danes*. For, since they exceedingly Ap'd their neighbours, they have exceedingly Ap'd their neighbours, the *Germans*, in large draughts, and long meals. Again, they are wonderfully compliant to all Foreigners; which perhaps may in some part be attributed to their immoderate desire of learning the languages of other countries. But, notwithstanding the civil entertainment usually met with in this Kingdom, it behoves every stranger to carry himself so circumpectly, that he seem neither by his words nor actions to slight anything he meets with. For, the *Danes* are naturally proud and self-conceited; and quarrelsome upon the least apprehension of an affront. The old *Romans*, commonly too peremptory in their censures, looked upon the *Cimbrians* as a dull phlegmatick people. And we know, the general vogue still gives the *Italians*, *French*, and *Spaniards* a larger share of brains than they allow to any of the Northern Nations. However, this Kingdom has never wanted men remarkable for their wit and learning; who (as we shall have occasion to shew hereafter) have, in spite of the disadvantages of a cold Country, given evident proof, that men do not, like waters, take a tincture from the earth and soil out of which they spring.

'Twas *Julius Caesar's* observation of the *Gauls*, that they look'd down with a scornful eye upon the low stature of the *Romans*. And anciently the Northern people (except only the inhabitants of *Iseland* and *Groneland*, if known to the ancients, whom excessive colds had pinch'd into as small dimensions as the *Spaniards*, and other Southern Nations, were heated into) were generally a sort of Giants. The *Danes* in a more peculiar manner, from their large size (say some) had the name of *Geats*; corrupted afterwards into *Gete*, *Jute*, &c. At this day, the *a-le-mole* luxury of the times has so prevailed in *Denmark*, as to contract the pristine bulk of its inhabitants: who nevertheless seem still to be more vigorous and long-liv'd than most of their neighbours. *Aristotle* long since could tell us, that the Northern people were most commonly yellow-hair'd. And *Lucan*, speaking of the inhabitants on the banks of the *Elb*, says,

*Fundit ab extremo flavos Aquilone Suevos
Albis.*

Indeed most of the *Danes* (those especially that live beyond the *Baltic*) are to this day either white or reddish hair'd. Hence it is, that in *England* we usually say of a red hair'd man, *He is a Dane*. And from the old grudge between this Nation and *Denmark*, I fancy arose that ill conceit that most *English* have of red hair'd people.

What the ordinary food is, may be easily known from the abundance of Corn, Fish, and other all manner of tame and wild Beasts (fit for food); wherewith, as we have told you, this Kingdom is stock'd. Among the many other sorts of fowl, no Nation in *Europe* has so many Woodcocks (call'd by *Marial Perdices Rusticas*, by *Pliny Rusticolas*, and accounted by the ancient *Romans* a great rarity) as *Denmark*.

It

It was long before Vines spread themselves so far Northward as to reach beyond the *Rhine*. In *Julius Caesar's* days the *Belgic Nerui* knew no such drink as wine; or at least, as he says, would not suffer any such lewd liquor to come amongst them. But as soon as the *Germans* tasted the juice of the grape, they quickly commended the them to their neighbours the *Danes*, who, in a short time, grew as intemperate as their teachers. The ancient drink of the Country was *Oel* (Ale or Beer) made of Malt and Water; which is still in ordinary use among them. Though in *England* we make a distinction between Ale and Beer; yet the *Danes* know no such difference: what the *Germans* call *Bier*, is *Oel* in *Denmark*. This is that famous drink which animated the Western Nations against the *Romans*; which *Tacitus* calls *huncorem ex bordeo aut frumento in quantum similitudinem vini corruptum*, i.e. a liquor made of Corn which rivals Wine.

It is undoubtedly true, what *Rodericus Tolemus* many years ago observed, that the *High Dutch*, *Danish*, *Swedish*, *Norwegian*, *Flandrian*, and *English* Languages, are only for many distinct Dialects of one and the same Mother-tongue. Which may soon be discern'd by any man that shall take the pains to compare the Lords Prayer, or any other piece of Scripture, in all these tongues. The *Gibb* richly indeed spoken in *Laupland*, *Finland*, and some other Countries to the North-East of *Sweden* and *Denmark*, is quite another thing, and as unintelligible to the civilized *Danes* and *Swedes*, as *Hebrew* or *Arabic*. But the ordinary *Danish* (whatever some of their own Writers say to the contrary) is no more than corrupted *Dutch*. I know, *Pontanus* has taken the pains to collect a great many words out of the *Danish* tongue (which he calls *vocabula Danis propria*; tho all of them are not so) that are not to be found perhaps in any *German* Dictionary. What then? No man shall wish this argument perfwade me, that the *Dutch* and *Danish* tongues are fundamentally distinct, and not two branches of the same stock. For, you shall find thousands of words in *Willeramus*, *Orfid*, and other ancient *German* writers, which are at this day wholly out of use: and scarce a County in *England* but has some peculiar words not understood in the rest, which nevertheless speak perfect *English*. Neither will it avail any thing to say, the ancient *Danish* tongue was brought hither out of *Asia*, and call'd formerly *Almond*, i.e. the Language of the *Affans*: for the *Edda* *Ulfstandum* (which probably is the oldest piece which mentions the coming of the *Affans* into these parts) says, *Olin* (or *Woden*, the great Captain of the *Affe*) spread his language over *Saxony* as well as *Denmark*, *Sweden*, and *Norway*. Adding further, *That within awhile the Asian tongue was generally spoken in all the neighbouring Countries*. The strongest argument to prove a difference between this tongue and the old *Teutonic*, may be had from a diligent enquiry into the various phrases and proprieties of speech used in both of them. But when we consider how much the idioms of the *High* and *Low Dutch* differ; and how vastly the Syntax of our *English* Language is alter'd from the *Danish* and *German*; we shall have reason to confess, before we pronounce these last two distinct primitive languages, that time is able strangely to alter the physiognomy of tongues as well as men. However, the dispute is like shortly to have an end; and the *Danes* will in a little while, if they do not already, speak good *Dutch*. For the *German* tongue is now ordinarily spoken in *Copenhagen*, and most of the chief trading Cities in *Denmark*.

To let pass the stories of King *Dan*, whom some Historians make to reign in this Kingdom ment. three hundred years before the birth of our Saviour; it is manifest (from the unquestionable testimonies of the best *Roman* writers) that *Denmark* was a Monarchy in the Confulship of *Catulus* and *Marius*, near an hundred years before Christ. Afterwards, we have a certain account of *Gothric*, King of the *Danes*, in the days of the Emperor *Charles* the Great, from whom the present Kings of *Denmark* are descended in a lineal succession, (except what *Pontanus* seems not to allow of, the line of the ancient Kings fail'd upon the death of King *Christopher* III. A.D. 1448). The power of the *Danish* Nobility in Council is exceeding great: but not so large as to make the supreme Government Aristocratical. Some would argue, that the Nobles are above the King, since 'tis well known they denied to Crown *Frederic* II. (in the year 1559) till he had sworn never to pretend to be able, by his own authority to put any Nobleman to death. From this, and some other like instances, *Bodinus* endeavours to prove the Kings of *Denmark* petty Princes rather than absolute Monarchs: not remembering that (even in *France* it self, as well as all other Kingdoms of *Europe*) it has always been thought requisite, for the satisfaction of the people, that every King at his Coronation should make some solemn Vow to maintain the ancient Laws and Privileges of his Country and Subjects. And if, in the case mentioned, the Nobility of *Denmark* required their King to lay a stricter obligation on himself than was usual; the performance was arbitrary, and not constrain'd. The Subjects might possibly, upon the Kings refusal to gratify them, have rebell'd against their lawful Sovereign; but could not justly have compell'd him to a compulsion.

Before the year 1660, the Kingdom of *Denmark* was not (as *Norway*) Hereditary, but Elective: yet so, that the Senators usually chose the eldest son of their King, who thenceforward was styled the Prince. The rest of the Kings sons had the Titles of *Dukes* and *Heirs of Norway*. The Election in ancient times was commonly had in this solemn manner: As many of the Nobles as were Senators, and had power to give their voices, agreed upon some convenient place in the fields, where seating themselves in a circle upon so many great stones, they gave their votes. This done, they placed their new elected Monarch in the middle, upon a stone higher than the rest, and saluted him King. In *Iceland* to this day there is such a company of stones which bear the name of *Kingsstolen*, or the Kings seat. And *Olans Magnus* tells us the same story of a great stone, call'd by the Viceroy *Morsellan*, near *Upland* in *Sweden*. Near *St. Barrens* in *Cornwall*, in a place which the *Cornish*-men call *Bijcow-Woone*, are to be seen nineteen stones set in a round circle, distant every one about twelve foot from the other; and in the very center one pitched far higher and greater than the rest. This *Cambden* fancies to have been some Trophæe erected by the *Romans* under the later Emperors; or else, by *Athelstane* the *Saxon*, when he had subdued *Cornwall*, and brought it under his dominion. But *Wormius*, more probably, guesses, that in this place some *Danish* or *Saxon* King, was elected by his followers. And I conceive the same may be said of *Long Meg* and her daughters, near little *Salfeld* in *Cumberland*. But, to return to *Denmark*, of later years the *Danes* in their elections have follow'd the customs of other Countries, till *Frederic* III. in the year 1660; who was the first that ventur'd to exercise

exercise the authority of an absolute Prince, and to shake off the dependance his Ancestors were wont to have upon the good will of their Subjects; procuring, with fair words and threats, a Law to be established, That for the future the Kingdom of Denmark should immediately upon the Kings death descend upon his lawful Heir. Whereupon, the present King *Christian V.* was the same night his Father dyed (without any previous election, or consent asked of the Nobility) proclaimed King. The Rites of Coronation are usually perform'd at *Copenhagen*; where the King is anointed by the Bishop of *Roschild*.

Catalogue
of their
Kings.

The Chronicles of the Kings of Denmark which have hitherto been publish'd, are so imperfect and contradictory one to another, that 'tis utterly impossible to give an exact Catalogue of their Kings. *Saxo Grammaticus* (who liv'd, faith *Stephanus*, in the twelfth Century) has made a shift to collect a great many stories out of the scatter'd fragments of old *Runic* Inscriptions and ancient Ballads, and to relate them in a better method and stile than could be well expected from the age he liv'd in. But, when we consider, that the best he met with, could not possibly be of more authority than such venerable scraps of Chronicles as are published by *Wormius* at the end of his *Monumenta Danica*, and see how these two run counter, it is hard to rest satisfis'd with the relation he gives us; and yet as difficult to provide our selves of a better. The first rational account given us of any of the *Danish* Kings, which we may safely rely upon for truth, is in our *English* Chronicles: which (as the Learned *Sir Henry Spelman* in an Epistle to *Ol. Rosenkrantz*, formerly *Danish* Ambassador in *England*) treat more fully and clearly of the affairs of Denmark, than any of the *Danish* Historians. Wherefore (omitting the relations given of *Dan*, *Hambles*, and the rest of their Heathen Kings, as either false or frivolous) we shall content our selves with a short Register of the Kings of Denmark since the first planting of Christianity in that Kingdom. And

1. *Harald*, being beaten out of his Kingdom by his brother *Reinfeid's* accomplices, fled to the Emperor *Ludovic* for help: who assisted him in regaining of his Crown, upon condition he would forsake his Idolatry, and turn Christian. Whereupon he was baptized in the year 826, and immediately restor'd to his dominions. But soon after he renounced Christianity, and continued Heathen till reclaim'd by *St. Anskar*: who, for his good offices in the Northern Kingdoms, was made Archbishop of *Hamburg*, in the year 835.
2. *Eric* succeeded his brother *Harald* (with whom he had been baptized in *Germany*) in his Kingdom and cruelty against the Christians. In his days (about the year 853) the *Danes* first enter'd *France*, under the command of their Captain *Rollo*, (though others more probably relate him not to be the meaning of that Old Danish Northern Rovers that invaded *France*, but to have succeeded to *Gosfrid*, and to have enter'd *France* about the year 876, and not to have been peaceably settled in *Normandy*, till 889 or 890: see the History of the life of King *Ælfred*), and seated themselves in that part which has ever since kept the name of *Normandy*.
3. *Eric Barn*, or the *Child*, being the only male left alive of the Royal Family after the bloody wars between his predecessor and *Guthorm* King of *Norway*. He began his reign happily, having married the daughter of King *Guthorm*; but within awhile he grew more cruel than any of his Ancestors had been; slaying more Bishops,

and destroying more Churches and Religious Houses (both in *Germany* and *England*) than all the rest of the *Danish* Kings put together. In his *German* wars he slew *Bruno* Duke of *Saxony*, and twelve Counts. He dyed about the year 902.

4. *Canutus the Hairy* (or *Lodeneque*) succeeded his father *Eric*. In his days, faith Kings *Eric* in his *Chronicon*, every third man in *Denmark* went by lot to seek his fortune: so that those who march'd off, over-run all *Proffia*, *Semgal*, *Curland*, and several other Countries; whence they never return'd, but there they and their posterity have continued to this day. He dyed a Heathen, about the year 912.
5. After the death of *Canutus*, the *Danish* Scepter was given to *Frotho* his son, (so say the most credible Historians, tho' the *Lindenbroch* reports, that his brother *Sveno* reigned nine years). He was twenty years King of *England* and *Denmark*; in the former of which he was baptized, and dyed a good Christian.
6. *Gormo*, *Gormund*, or *Gutharm* (surnam'd *Harefente*, and *Engelender*, became born in *England*) succeeded his father. He, together with his followers, was baptized at *Aldre* in *Somersetshire*, and had our Learned and Pious King *Ælfred* to his Godfather; who at the Font gave him the name of *Althelane*, and afterwards bestowed on him the Kingdom of the *East-Angles*. From this *Gormo* a Village near *Huntingdon*, call'd at this day by the inhabitants corruptly *Godman-Chester*, had its name *Gormon-Chester*: As *Camden* proves from that old Verse,
Gormonis a Casiri nomine nomen habet.
I am very unwilling, I must confess, to confound this *Gormo* with King *Ælfred's* Godson, who (as far as we can learn from *English* writers) never sat in the Throne of *Denmark*; neither do the times agree. But the *Danish* Historians will have it so; and 'tis in vain to seek for satisfaction in the midst of such confusion as we meet with in their writings.
7. *Harald*, surnam'd *Blaatan*, succeeded his father *Gormo*. In his days the *Danes* threw up that famous Trench between *Gottorp* and *Sleswic*, call'd *Dannevirck*: of which we shall have occasion to speak more hereafter.
8. *Sveno* (or *Svenotho*, surnam'd *Tuitseg*, i.e. *fork'd-beard*) succeeded *Harald*. At first he was an Heathen, and a severe persecutor of the Christians: but afterwards he turned Christian himself, and founded three Bishopsricks, at *Sleswic*, *Ripe*, and *Arhus*. Some say, he dyed in the year 1012, and was buried at *Tork*: others make him live till the year 1014, and bring him to his grave in *Denmark*.
9. *Canutus the Great*, son to *Sveno*. He was at once King of *England*, *Denmark*, *Sweden*, *Norway*, *Slavonia*, and *Sambland*; some make him King, or Duke at least, of *Normandy*. And this seems to be the meaning of that Old Danish (not reckoning either *Slavonia* or *Sambland* a Kingdom) brings him in thus speaking of himself,
*FaSta mihi Magni pepererunt incluta nomen,
Quinque sub imperio regna fuere meo.*

He was buried at *Winchester*, in the year 1036, after he had been twenty-seven years King of *Denmark*, twenty-four of *England*, and seven of *Norway*, leaving the Kingdom of *Denmark* to his son

10. *Hardi-Canute*, who within four years obtain'd the Kingdom of *England*, upon the death of his

brother *Harald*. Here he dyed, in the year 1041, and was buried by his father in the Cathedral at *Winchester*.

11. *Magnus*, King of *Norway*, seiz'd on the Kingdom of *Denmark* upon the death of *Hardi-Canute*, pretending a title to it by contract. But he enjoy'd it not long. He dyed in the year 1048, and left the Kingdom to
12. *Sveno Eriksen*, son of one *Ulf* an *English* Earl. He dyed in the year 1074, and left behind him five sons, who all of them sat successively in their fathers Throne.
13. *Harald*, *Sveno's* eldest son, held the Scepter only two years. He was a soft easie and timorous Prince; afraid to punish offenders, or to look an enemy in the face. So that the *English*, making use of the opportunity, shook off the *Danish* yoke without any considerable molestation.
14. *St. Canutus*, King *Swain's* second son, was barbarously murder'd in *St. Alban's* Church in *Odenfee* (a City in the Isle of *Funen*) whither he fled for sanctuary from the rage of his own Subjects, in the year 1083, (*Pontanus* says 1077). The occasion was this: The pious King commanded that all his Subjects should pay Tythes, according to the custom of other Nations. This Edict was representer to the people (by his brother *Olaf*, who long'd for the Crown) as an encroachment upon the privileges and liberty of the Subject. Whereupon they quickly rose in open rebellion against their Sovereign; who, to appease the rage of the rabble, was martyr'd.
15. *Olaf*, *Swain's* third son, upon the slaughter of his brother *Canute* (which he traitorously had procur'd), was by his followers unanimously declared King. But his brothers blood went not long unrevenged. For in this Kings days the famine was so great in *Denmark*, that even the Kings Household wanted bread. *Olaf*, at last sensible that this judgment was inflicted on the Kingdom for his sins, pray'd that God would turn the current of his vengeance from the people, upon his head that had offended. His prayers were heard; and the same night (in the year 1096) he dyed hungry and miserable, and the famine immediately abated.
16. *Eric Swain's* fourth son, (surnam'd the Good for his religious zeal and piety), who dyed in his pilgrimage towards *Jerusalem*, and was buried in the Isle of *Cyprus*, in the year 1106. In his days *Lunden* was made an Archbishops See; before which time all the *Danish* Bishops were under the jurisdiction of the Archbishop of *Bremen*.
17. *Nicolas*, *Sveno's* youngest son. He was slain by the *Fates*, in revenge of *Canute Duke of Flanders* (whom he had caus'd to be killed in the Church), in the year 1135.
18. *Eric Emand*, a pious and good King, succeeded his Uncle *Nicolas*: and was barbarously murder'd by one *Plag Sorte* (a Nobleman of *Jutland*) in his own Palace, in the year 1139.
19. *Eric Lamb* succeeded his Uncle *Eric Emand*. He laid down his Scepter, and put himself into a Monastery at *Odenfee* in *Funen*; where he dyed, in the year 1147.
20. *Swain Gratenhede*, *Eric Emand's* son, got the Crown upon the death of his Kinsman *Eric Lamb*. In this mans days there were three Kings of *Denmark* at the same time: Some running after *Canute*, King *Nicolas's* Grandchild; others following *Waldemar*, son to *Canute Duke of Flanders*. After some skirmishes, in which both *Swain* and *Canute* were slain, the whole Kingdom was rul'd by
21. *Waldemar*, surnam'd the Great. He was Lord of all the Countries on the North of the *Elb*, and dyed in the year 1182, leaving the Kingdom to his son
22. *Canute*. He bravely maintain'd a war against the Emperor of *Germany*, who would needs demand homage of the Kings of *Denmark*. He dyed at *Ringsled* in the year 1202.
23. *Waldemar II.* *Canute's* brother. He new model'd the *Danish*; conquer'd *Norway*, and set over it a Vice-Roy; vanquish'd and put to flight the Emperor *Otto*, who thought to have made himself Master of *Holstein*; and having reign'd victoriously thirty-nine years, dyed in the year 1241. (*Crantzius* says 1242).
24. *Eric Plog-penning*, *Waldemar's* son. He was taken at *Sleswic*, and slain by his brother
25. *Abel*, who reign'd wickedly two years, and was then murder'd by his rebellious Subjects, in the year 1252.
26. *Christopher I.* brother to *Eric* and *Abel*. He lived in a continual war with his own people; to whom rebellion was now grown natural. Some of the *Danish* Chronicles say, he was at last (in the year 1259) poison'd by *Arnefast* Bishop of *Arhus*; as the Emperor *Henry* the Seventh was afterwards by *Bernardine* the Monk with the Eucharist.
27. *Eric Glipping*, King *Christopher's* son, who being seated in his fathers Throne, gave himself up to all manner of lewdness and debauchery. His whole life is nothing else but a Catalogue of his oppressions, sacrileges, murders, and whoredoms. After a long uninterrupted course of wickedness, sleeping one night in a Barn at *Findtorp* (a small Village in the Bishoprick of *Wiborg*) he was murder'd with fifty-six (some say seventy) wounds, given him by seven *Ruffians*, hired to dispatch him by *Andrew Stigfus* (Marshall of *Danemark*, whose wife he had ravish'd), and some others of the Nobility, in the year 1286.
28. *Eric Menved*, *Glipping's* son. He was as godly a Prince as his father was impious. The murderers of his father had conspir'd his death; but were prevented by Providence, which protected him both from the lewd life and miserable death of his Ancestors. So that he dyed, as he had lived, peaceably, in the year 1319, and was buried at *Ringsled*; where his Epitaph is still to be seen, as follows:
Ego Ericus, quondam Danie Rex, regnans ann. xxxij. Rebus Justiciarius pauperum & ditum ubi sui habuerant. Oro omnes, quibus aliquid forefecit, ut mihi per suam gratiam indulgeant, & orent pro anima mea. Qui obiit A. D. 1319. die beati Birixij Episcopi & Confessoris.
29. *Christopher II.* *Menved's* brother. He trod in his fathers steps, and ended his days like him. He is reported to have been an unfortunate, sluggish, cruel, and perfidious Prince; an hater of the Nobility, and hated by the Commonalty. Had he had any sense of Religion, policy, or common honesty in him, he might have been an happy Prince: for never were the *Danes* more unwilling to rebel and take up arms against their King than in his days, tho' never more provok'd to it. Having linger'd out a reign of about thirteen years, he dyed at last forsaken of all, neglected and unhappy, at *Niciping* in the Isle of *Falster*, in the year 1333.

After this Kings death the *Danes* seem'd to be weary of a supreme Sovereign, and resolv'd

not to set any more over them. They fancy'd, 'twas more eligible to have no King at all, than, such as they had the bad luck to meet with, a Sor or a Tyrant. But, after fifteen years confusion, they found it was better to have an aking head than none at all. Whereupon, weary of their new Anarchy, they resolv'd to establish in the Throne of his father

30. *Waldemar III.* King *Christophers* son; who collected the scatter'd members of the Kingdom into one body, and dismounted most of the Usurpers, without any great bloodshed. He is represented as a Prince of great subtilty, avarice, and boldness. When Pope Gregory XI. threatened to excommunicate him for his faucy behaviour, and slighting of the Apostolic See; he is said to have return'd this answer:

Valdemarus Rex Danie, &c. Romano Pontifici salutem; vitam habemus a Deo, regnum ab incolis; divitias a parentibus, fidem vero a tuis prædecessoribus, quam si nobis non facies, remittimus præsentibus. Vale.

i.e. "Waldemar King of Denmark, &c. To the "Bishop of Rome sendeth greeting. We hold "our life from God, our Kingdom from "our Subjects, our Riches from our Parents, and our Faith from thy Predecessors, which, if thou wilt not grant us "any longer, we do by these presents resign. Farewell.

He dyed in the year 1375, and was buried by his father at *Sora*.

31. *Margaret*, King *Waldemars* daughter, was upon the death of her father crown'd Queen of Denmark; and manag'd the Scepter more discreetly than almost any of the Kings her Predecessors had done. A womans government seem'd at first a little uncouth: but her Subjects soon found a great deal of satisfaction in her prudent management of affairs at home, and wife conduct abroad, when in one Campaign she took *Albert King of Sweden*, *Rudolph Archbishop of Scharen*, the Duke of *Mecklenburg*, and the Earls of *Holstein* and *Reppin*, prisoners. Her father was wont to say of her, *That Nature intended her for a man, but spoil'd her in the making*. She dyed a great friend to Religion, and Patroness of the Clergy, and was buried at *Roschild* in the 1412, leaving the Kingdom to her Great-Nephew
32. *Eric*, son of *Utrasilav VII.* Duke of *Pomerania*. Who, having spent a great many years in tyranny, rapine, perjury, oppression, and whore-dom, was at last (in the year 1438) forced to quit his Throne, and fly from the fury of his incens'd Nobles into *Gotland*: whither he carried with him a vast treasure, and one *Cecilia* his Concubine, who, by her evil counsels and proud humours, brought him to these extremities.
33. *Christopher* Duke of *Bavaria* and Count Palatine of the *Rhine*, another of King *Waldemars* Great-Grandchildren, succeeding *Eric* in the Kingdoms of *Denmark*, *Norway*, and *Sweden*. His reign was short, but prosperous; especially against the Rebels in *Jutland* and the *Fians Towns*. He dyed (childless) at *Helsingburgh* in the year 1447. The *Danish* Chronicles are full of his commendations, but *Johannes Gothus*, and other *Swedish* Historians, will not by any means allow him to good a character.

34. *Christian I.* son of *Theodoric* Count of *Oltenburgh*, was elected King of Denmark upon the death of King *Christopher*. He was a generous, pious, and valiant Prince; but wholly ignorant of all manner of learning. He reduc'd the *Swedes* to their Allegiance, who in the beginning of his reign had revolted from the Crown of Denmark; annex'd *Helsing* to his Dominions; made himself Duke of *Dithmars* and *Stormar*; and, having ruled three and thirty years, dyed in peace, in the year 1481, and was buried in a Chappel which he himself had built at *Roschild*; leaving his Crown to his son

35. *John*; who was a Prince endued with all the Royal qualities of his father. He was devout in exercises of Religion; temperate in diet, grave in apparel; and valiant in exploits of war, which (excepting only the overthrow he receiv'd from the *Dithmarsians* in the year 1500) proved exceeding successful. He dyed of the plague at *Olburgh*, in the year 1513.

35. *Christian II.* King *John's* son, who was the bloodiest, cruellest, and most dissolute Prince that Denmark, or perhaps any other Kingdom, ever saw. *Lindenschmidt* gives this character of him, *That Nero, Phalaris, and Sylla, put in the scales against him, would figure no more than half an ounce to a pound weight*. *Mausius* reports, that he was born with one hand graft'd, which when the Midwife opened, the found full of blood. This was look'd upon, by his father, as a certain prognostic of a bloody mind: of which his subjects had afterwards a lamentable experience. The only good he ever did his Country, was the founding a Fair, and establishing a more then ordinary trade, at *Copenhagen*. At last, after he had by his wickedness thrown himself out of three Kingdoms, and for fix and thirty years undergone the miseries of banishment or imprisonment, he dyed in the Castle of *Kallenberg* in *Zeeland*, in the year 1559.

36. *Frederic I.* King *John's* brother, succeeded his Nephew *Christian*. As soon as he was Crown'd (in the year 1524) he began to bring the *Augsburg* Confession into all the Churches of Denmark. He ruled almost ten year in quietness, and dyed at *Slesvig* in the year 1533.

37. *Christian III.* *Frederic's* son. He perfected the reformation which his father had begun in the Church. He lived (and dyed in the year 1559) a Prince of singular piety, wisdom, temperance, justice, and all Royal virtues: And left behind a fair pattern of a happy King and good Christian to his son

37. *Frederic II.* Who, having exactly imitated his fathers example, after a happy reign of twenty-nine years, dyed in his Palace at *Anderkow* in the year 1587. Immediately after his Coronation he was engag'd in a war against the rebels of *Dithmars*, whom he quell'd with small trouble. Afterwards he waged war with *Eric XIV.* King of *Sweden*, which lasted seven years. The rest of his days were spent in peace and quietness.

39. *Christian IV.* before his fathers burial was elected, and soon after crown'd, King of Denmark. In his reign the Emperor of Germany (*Ferdinand II.*) overrun the greatest part of the *Cimbrian Chersonese*; and had once well nigh brought the whole Kingdom of Denmark under his subjection. But King *Christian*, contracting as it were all the expiring Spirits of his Realm, made the Imperialists at last give ground, and brought them to a Treaty upon honourable terms. He dyed in the year

year 1648; and was succeeded by his son
40. *Frederic III.* Who receiv'd as great a blow from the *Swedes* as his father had done from the *Germans*. *Charles Gustave*, the victorious King of *Sweden*, had brought him to that extremity as to lay close siege to *Copenhagen*, which City, and consequently the whole Kingdom of Denmark, would doubtless have fallen into the hands of the *Swedes*, had not the Emperor of Germany, the King of Poland, and most of the Northern Princes (jealous of the growing power of the *Swedish* King) concern'd themselves in the defence of it. He that desires a further account of the beginning, continuance, and end of these Northern wars, may have recourse to the accurate history of them written by *R. Manley*, and printed in the year 1670. King *Frederic* got his Nobles persuaded to consent, that the Kingdom of Denmark, as well as that of Norway, should be Hereditary: and was himself proclaim'd hereditary King, the twenty-third day of October in the year 1660. He dyed of a Fever the twenty-fifth day of February 1670, and that night, (as is before said) the Nobility swore Allegiance to the new King

41. *Christian V.* now reigning. A valiant and active Prince.

The Royal Family of Denmark consists of the Children of the King, and his near Relations, together with the Princes of *Sunderburg*, *Norburg*, *Glücksburg*, *Amseck*, *Gottorp*, and *Oettingen* or *Oytinger*; who are all descended from King *Christian* the third, excepting the Houses of *Oytinger* and *Gottorp*, who are the issue of his brother *Adolph* Duke of *Slesvic*.

The Nobles (who never pretend to, nor accept of the Titles of, Dukes, Earls, or Barons) are such as have for many ages had a single Coat of Arms belonging to their Family; which they never alter, nor quarter with any other. There are to this day some Families of the Nobility in Denmark (as *Wren*, and others) who are said to have been at the signing of a Treaty of Peace between *Charles* the Great and King *Hemming*, on the *Eider*. Upon the death of any Nobleman, all his goods (moveable and immoveable) are divided amongst his Children: so, as a son has two moieties and a daughter only one. By the Laws of Denmark the King is prohibited to purchase any part of a Nobleman's Estate: nor can any of the Nobility buy any of the Crown Lands. A Catalogue of the names of the chief Noblemen at this day in Denmark, is given us by the Author of *L'Etat des Royaumes de l'Europe*, in the following Alphabetical order:

Absl, Appelgard, Alefeld, Andersem, Bielke, Banner, Brache, Bilzig, Below, Bild, Brockenfelsen, Blom, Beck, Blick, Bassi, Bax, Baselich, Borkholt, Buddle, Buggen, Bammelberg, Brune, Blom, Blocktorp, Breiden, Dase, Drejellerich, Dune, Duram, Dam, Frege, Fassi, Falsler, Falcke, Guldensfær, Grubbe, Goe, Green, Gellstorp, Galle, Gram, Gris, Goss, Galdenborg, Grabow, Hardenberg, Holke, Holten, Hilerstorp, Hube, Helsen, Hager, Holer, Høier, Høier, Hacken, Harberger, Jul, Juensen, Juensen, Jensen, Jobensen; Kowitz, Krabbe, Kaas, Krusen, Kræge, Krumpen, Krundick, Kerberg, Karsen, Kæle, Knutzen; Lange, Lindeman, Lange, Lunkem, Laxman, Lucken, Leven, Lindow; Munck, Matelsen, Matzer, Mast, Matre, Meinlorf, Meten, Mangelisen, Negel, Narbu, Norman; Orien, Otten; Raaberg, Podesen, Podeshusen, Papenbeimb, Podwitsch, Pelsen, Pelsen, Pajen, Petersen; Qualem, Quittow; Ranzow, Rosenkrantz, Rastorp, Risthede, Reuter, Ruten, Rosenpart, Rosengard, Ronnow, Reventlow,

Ratlow, Ritzger, Schram, Schefeldt, Schelen, Seefeldt, Stange, Sworn, Stambeke, Split, Solle, Snaben, Sættelarsch, Spar, Spiegel, Sturen, Suinem, Stalen, Stov, Stoverisen, Trolle, Taten, Thrap, Vossfeld, Vantinnem, Vigen, Taten, Olfandt, Vren; Wlefeld, Wallendorp, Wipfer, Wipfel, Wogelsen, Wenflesman, Wulle, Worm, Wallorp, Wenfel, Wittorp.

Though none of these are ever made Dukes, Knights, Marquises, Earls, or Barons; yet 'tis usual for many of them to be dubb'd Knights, upon any considerable piece of service done their King or Country. The *Danes* call their Knights *Ridders*, i.e. *Equites*; *Ridders*: and all their offspring have the title of *Riddersmens men*.

The most noble Order of Knighthood in Denmark is that of *Of the Elephant*. Of which we cannot have a better account than is given us by the *phant*, Learned *Elias Ahlfeldt* Esquire, *Windfor* Herald at Arms, in his famous work of *The Institution, Laws, and Ceremonies of the most Noble Order of the Garter*, p. 120. "Observing, faith he, some difference among writers touching the Institution, Collar, and Ensign of this Order, I was in doubt what to say, till at length I happily met with a better satisfaction from a Letter wrote in the year 1537, by *Aso Bille* Bishop of *Arlensborg*, sometime Chancellor to *John* King of Denmark and Norway, unto *John Frisk* Chancellor to King *Christian* the third; a copy whereof was communicated to me by *Monseigneur Cristoffle Lindeow*. "Envoy from *Christian* the fifth, now King of Denmark, to his sacred Majesty, the present Sovereign of the most Noble Order of the Garter. This Letter informs him of the Institution, and some other particulars relating to the Order, to wit, That King *Christian* the first being at Rome (whither he had travel'd upon a religious account) Pope *Sixtus* the fourth, among other honours, invested him with this Order, "in memory of the Passion of our Lord and Saviour; and withal ordain'd, that the dignity of Chief and Supreme should be continued, as a successive right, to the succeeding Kings of Denmark. This King founded the magnificent Chappel of the three Kings in the Cathedral Church at *Roschild* (four leagues from *Copenhagen*) where the Knights were obliged to assemble, upon the death of any of their brethren. He also admitted thereinto divers Kings, Princes, and Noblemen. The chief Ensign of this Order was the figure of an Elephant, on whose side (within a rundle) was represented a Crown of Thorns, with three Nails all bloody; "in honour and memory of the Passion of our blessed Saviour. The Knights were obliged to the performance of acts of Piety, Alms-deeds, and certain Ceremonies; especially upon those days on which they wore the Ensigns of the Order: But King *John* set so high a value upon it, that he wore them on every solemn Festival. He also advanc'd the honour of this Order to so great esteem, that it became accepted by both our King *Henry* the eighth, and James the fifth of Scotland, his sisters son; with whom the Ensigns thereof remain'd as a pledge and assurance of constant and perpetual friendship; with these he likewise invested divers Ambassadors, Senators, and Noble *Danes*. There is one *Ivarus Nicolai Heribolm*, a learned Dane (as I am inform'd) who hath written a particular Treatise of the Elephantine Order, but not yet printed. The scope whereof is to shew, that the before mentioned Epistle of the Bishop of *Arlensborg*, does not sufficiently make it appear, that it received its first Institution when *Christian* the first had those many honours confer'd on him by Pope *Sixtus* the fourth. And that

"the Badge was an Ensign merely Military; and was given as a memorial and incitement to the Danish Princes, who took upon them the defence of Christianity against the Moors and Africans. 'Tis greatly presumed, that this Book (which we hope may shortly be published) will furnish the world with many choice things relating to the antiquity and honour of the Institution, Ensigns, and Ceremonies of the Royal Order. Heretofore the Knights wore a Collar of Gold, compos'd of Elephants and Crosses, fashioned something like Crosses ancrees (*Mennicus* calls them Spurs) at which hung the picture of the Virgin Mary to the middle, holding Christ in her arms, and surrounded with a Glory of Sun-beams. But they have long since laid this Collar aside, and now wear only a blew Ribbon, at which hangs an Elephant enamel'd white, adorn'd with five large Diamonds set in the middle. Those Elephants worn by the Knights in the days of *Christian* the fourth, had in the same place within a circle the Letter C, and in the heart thereof the figure of 4, made to signify *Christians* *quartus*. This honour hath most commonly been conferr'd by the Kings of Denmark, on the day of their Coronation, both upon the Nobles and Senators of the Kingdom. It seems *Frederic* the third brought into use (in imitation of the most Noble Order of the Garter) an embroider'd Glory of Silver Purle, wrought upon the left side of their Cloak or Velt, on which was embroider'd two Crowns within a Rundle, bearing this Motto, *Deus Providet*; for such an one did Count *Guldenlow* (Ambassador hither from that King) wear at his residing here in *England* in the year 1669. But we are to note, that the Motto hath changed with the King, for that of the present King is *Pietate & Justitia*; and this the Knights of his election now wear in the middle of the circle. Nevertheless, all the Knights created by his father, are obliged still to continue the former Motto.

Knights of Danebroge. In remembrance of the *Danebroge* (or holy Danish Cross) which was thought miraculously to have preserved King *Waldemar* the Second's Army from the fury of the *Lieflanders* (as we shall have occasion hereafter to shew when we come to speak of the Arms of this Kingdom) that King instituted the Order of *Knights of the holy Cross*. Which continued till the relique it felt was lost in *Dinmark*: but then was, for many years, quite lay'd aside. Of late the present King *Christian* the sixth revived this antiquated Order in the year 1672. Ordaining, That Knights of this Order, of which he himself is one, should wear a white enamel'd Cross edged round with red, hung in a string of the same colours reaching from the right shoulder to the left side. *Thomas Bartholinus P.* has given us a large account of the first Original, Progress, Restauration, &c. of this Order. To whom we refer the Reader.

Senators. Out of these Knights, and the rest of the Nobility, were chosen formerly the Senators; who seldom exceeded the number of eight, but are now a far greater number. As long as they continued in their places, they were maintain'd (as our Parliament may be, if they please, during their sitting) by the Country. The King allow'd them Castles to live in. They paid no Taxes: but were obliged to keep a certain number of Light-horse ready for service upon all occasions. They were bound to attend the King, at his call, upon their own charges: provided he stir'd not out of his own dominions. But if he sent them on an Ambassy into other Princes Courts, they had an al-

lowance out of the Treasury.

Besides these, there are others that live as Pensioners; to whom the King, in requital of some good services done him, assigns certain Livings (for life or a set number of years, *forleverage*) out of which they are to provide for many Light-horse as the King thinks fit, and pay in yearly such a sum of money into the Treasury. But these are neither so numerous nor large as before the alteration of Government in the year 1666.

Again, out of the Nobility are chosen all the Court-Officers. Of which the chiefest are, 1. The Chancellor. 2. The Admiral; who takes care of the building and repairing of all sorts of Ships belonging to the Crown. He has under him a Vice-Admiral, who acts by his Commission. 3. The Marshal, who provides necessities for all manner of discharges in the times of war and peace. 4. The Treasurer, who receives in, and gives acquaintance for all summs paid into the Kings Exchequer: he has under him two Secretaries of the Nobility, and a great number of inferior Scribes. 5. The Master of the Horse.

There are only seven Bishopsricks in Denmark, which are all (as in *England*) in the Kings gift. 1. *Copenhagen*; where the Bishop has Archiepiscopal rights, tho' without the title. 2. *Rygen* and 3. *Arhusen*; both in the Northern *Juland*. 4. *Odensee* in *Finnen*. 5. *Wiburg*. 6. *Arhusen*. 7. *Slesvig*, in the Southern *Juland*.

The Cities are governed by their distinct Corporations. And the Citizens enjoy peculiar Privileges and Charters as in other parts of *Europe*. The Rustics are either Freeholders [*Frydenboer*], such as have hereditary Estates, paying only some small Quit-rent to their Landlords. Or *Wannede*, Villains, absolutely in the power of their Lords.

Whilst the Kingdom of Denmark lay confus'd and broken into several incoherent parts, the Provinces had not all the same Laws; but were governed by peculiar Statutes, established by their petty, but independent, Princes. Whence in Danish Authors we meet often with mention made of the *Leges Scanice*, *Leges Sialandice*, &c. But afterwards, when all these scatter'd members came to be re-united under the same head; they were all subject to the same Government and Laws. The Laws now in use were drawn into one body (which they call the *Jyske Lovbog*, or the Book of the Laws of *Juland*) and established by King *Waldemar* the first, and revised and confirm'd by *Waldemar* the second. To the observation of these, as the only Municipal Laws of the Land, the Kings of Denmark have formerly bin sworn at their Coronation. Howbeit, some of them have been since changed. As for instance, by the ancient Laws of Denmark (as well as in *England*, as may appear by the frequent mention of *manbot* and *wergild* in our *English*-Saxon Laws) murder was not punished with death, but a pecuniary mulct. This custom was observ'd till the days of *Christian* the third; who, looking upon it as a continuation inconsistent with the Law of God and dictates of humane reason, abrogated it; ordering, that from thenceforward wilful murder should be judged a capital crime. The ancient Danes were so careful and zealous to transmit their Estates to their right heirs, that (who they could be so merciful as to suffer murderers to live, yet) they punished Adultery with death. Whence in *Law* is still in force in *Saxony* (as may be seen in *any Sachsen-Spiegel*) and many other parts of *Germany*.

The fashion of deciding all manner of causes in Justice out *English* Courts by a Jury of twelve men, may seem to have bin borrowed from the Danes; who used

used formerly (as they do still in some parts of *Island*) to assemble every Parish by themselves, once a year in the fields to determine all differences by twelve select men. From whom, if the disagreeing parties were not reconciled, an appeal lay to the Judge of the Province; and thence to the supreme Court of Justice; as is shewn before.

The Heathen Danes had another way of determining Controversies by Duels; in which the Challenger was to demonstrate the justice of his cause by his success. This custom lasted till the first planting of Christianity by *Poppo*: who, to confirm the truth of his Doctrine, took up with his bare hands glowing-hot bars of Iron, without the least harm, to the admiration of all beholders. This miracle wrought not only a change in the Religion, but Laws also of the Kingdom. For hereupon King *Sueno*, or *Suenuo*, ordered, That thence forward all persons accus'd of any heinous crime, should clear themselves by carrying in their hands a glowing plough-share, or some other piece of hot iron.

This kind of purging is called by some of the Danish Writers *Jerntegn*, i. e. Iron-token: by others *Ordle*. Whence this last word should fetch its original is not agreed on by our modern Etymologists. *Vesleegen* brings it from *Or*, an old word for *Lea*, and *deaf*, a part or portion. And indeed the German word *Uhrteil* seems to favour this derivation. Our fore-fathers, the Saxons, had borrowed from the Danes several kinds of *Ordale*. As by carrying a bar of hot iron up to the high Altar bare hand; by treading barfoot and blindfold over a certain number of glowing bars laid on the ground at unequal distances; by thrusting the naked arm into a pot of boiling water; and lastly, as they use to try Witches, by throwing the accused party into a River or deep Vessel of cold water. He that desires to see an exact account of the ceremonies used in the second and third kinds of *Ordale* may read them at large in the Ecclesiastical Laws of King *Abelshane*, published by the Learned *Mr. Henry Spelman, Concil. Briton. tom. 1. pag. 404*. And in the same Kings Laws, as they are published by *Mr. Lambard*, you have the other two sorts described. The first that thoughtfully abolished all kinds of *Ordale* in Denmark was King *Waldemar* the Second, about the year 1240, at the request of Pope *Innocent* the Third: who thought it an intolerable and heinous impiety thus to tempt God.

Danely, in his *Kon Animerum*, wonders that such innumerable swarms of men should fall out of these parts as were able to overrun the greatest part of *Europe*; whereas at this day there is such a scarcity of Inhabitants that the King of Denmark is hardly able to wage war with any of his Neighbours without a supply of Soldiers out of foreign Countries. But this is no such great miracle, when we consider how the vastest Empires in the World (*Affrica*, *Egypt*, *Judea* and *Rome* it self, vainly flattered with the name of *Urbs Aeterna*) have had their periods. The greatest strength of the King of Denmark (as of all Princes of Isles) consists chiefly in the number of their Mariners and good Ships. In all Skirmishes and Wars between the Danes and Swedes, it is obvious to observe how much the latter have usually prevail'd at Land, and the former at Sea. *Christian* the second, upon a short warning, fitted out a hundred good men of war to aid Henry the Second King of France against the *English*; and this present King has a much larger Fleet always ready for action. The Danish King can afford to build yearly twelve men of war, without im-

proverishing his Exchequer. And in this Naval force the power of Denmark chiefly consists. Their Vessels were formerly bulky, large and unwieldy, unfit either for flying or pursuit. But now they are enabled to furnish themselves with many more Ships in proportion than otherwise they could, and those easier man'd and fitter for service.

The yearly revenue of the King of Denmark, arising from the rents of Crown-Lands, Custom-lands, Custom-money, Tithes, and other contingences, is not easily stated. Some measure may be taken from the income brought in by the Customers of *Elfsnes*, raised from those infinite shoals of Merchant Ships which daily pass the *Sundt*. Every Ship that passes that way, pays for each mast a Rix-noble, or four Rixdollars. And it has been observ'd, that usually 200 Ships, often 400, and sometimes 600, pass by in one day. But reckoning only 200 to pass daily, and each of these to pay two Rifenobles or eight Rixdollars for two masts, for each day in the year, there will be gathered about 400 pound of our money. Nor is the revenue arising from the exportation of Cattle much inferior; when for every beast the Customers take a Rixdollar.

Coins in use are: *Ducates* of Gold, of the value of two Rixdollars; or *Crowns* of Gold, of the value of either eighteen or nineteen Marks. Or the double of these. The lesser Danish coins are 1. *Hvide*, whereof three make one of their Shillings. 2. *Soffinger*, whereof two make one Shilling. 3. *Shilling*, whereof sixteen make a Mark. 4. A Mark, which is the fourth part of a *Sket-dollar*. 5. A Rixdollar, which is six Mark or ninety-six Shillings.

Besides the *Bards* or *Druids*, we have an account of many other kinds of Poets and Learned men among the ancient Danes. *Wormius* tells us the several sorts of Verses compos'd by the *Scalds* and *Runes* are innumerable, but may be at least the best of them, reduced to 136 heads. It was formerly the custom of all the Northern Nations to have the Genealogies and famous deeds of their Antecessors put into Doggerel; that, being daily tun'd over by parents to their children, they might be the easier remembered and handed down to posterity. These ballads they call *Viser*, i. e. *Wise-sayings*. (And how much the *Witdom* of the *Antients* consisted in Poetical compositions and fables, is sufficiently shewn by the Incomparable *Mr. Francis Bacon*.) The Composers of these Songs were reckon'd among the Grantees of the Nation, and always attend the Prince as his wisest Counsellors. Nay, so great was the esteem the people had of these men; that *Hiamus* is said to have had the Crown of Denmark presented him as a reward for an Epiphani made upon the deceased King *Frotho*: a story hardly to be parallel'd in any of the Annals of other nations, except we believe (what *St. Augustine* cites *Taro* for) that there was once a Nation so enamour'd of music as to make a Trumpeter their King. In *Seland*, bewixt *Ref-chilt* and *Slengendor*, there is a small hill, call'd to this day *Frode-Hoy*, where they say King *Frotho* was buried. The neighbourhood report, That the Kings Grave-stone, upon which this famous Epiphani was writ, was not many years since broken and carried to mend a brig at the bottom of the hill. The Copy of these precious Verses (if we may judge of the worth of them by the price) is not to be met with in the Original language. *Saxo Grammaticus*, who calls them *barbarum metrum*, saw them; and has given

ven us this *Latine* translation of them:

*Frohenom Dani quem longum vivere vellent,
Per sua defunctum rura tulere diu.
Principis hoc summi tumulatum cespit corpus,
Atterere hoc liquido mada recondit humus.*

I cannot tell whether this instance will prove (if we do grant it to be true) that Learning flourished much in *Denmark* about these times. However, from the many ancient *Runic* Epitaphs and Inscriptions published by *Wormius*, 'tis manifest that the *Danes* were of old *Lovers* (at least) of learning. Afterwards as soon as Learning begun to spread its dominions beyond the narrow confines of *Rome* or *Athens*, *Denmark* had its share of Scholars.

Learned Men.

There are endless tales to give a complete Register of all the *Danish* Authors: I shall therefore content myself with a short Catalogue of some few, who have always been esteemed men of great learning and sound judgment, and most of them excellent at some piece of knowledge.

1. *Saxo Grammaticus*, who lived in the twelfth Century, has writ the History of *Denmark* in so elegant a style, that *Erafmus* was amazed to find so much Rhetoric and clean *Latine* in *Denmark*, especially in so barbarous an age as *Saxo* lived in.

2. *Erafmus Letus*, Professor of Divinity in the University of *Copenhagen*, has published many learned works, of which *Gesner* has given a large Catalogue.

3. *Nicolas Hemmingius*, famous for his acute Commentaries on several parts of the Scripture. He died at *Roskilde*, A.D. 1600.

4. All *Europe*, as well as *Denmark*, do to this day gratefully acknowledge the vast improvements which *Astronomy* (the noblest and most ancient of all the sciences) has received from the admirable observations of *Tycho Brahe*, a *Danish* Nobleman; to whom King *Frederic* the Second gave the *Iland Ween*, as a place remote from all trouble, and fit for a Students retirement. Here *Tycho*, about the year 1575, built his *Uraniburg*; (an Observatory built like a Castle, and fenced round with regular fortifications) which he adorned with a collection of the most exact Mathematical Instruments that could possibly be made or procured. Among his many Admirers, who daily flock'd from all parts of the Learned world to pay him their respects, our Learned King *James* (returning from the celebration of his marriage with Queen *Ann*) lodged three nights together in the *Iland* with him; and afterwards honour'd him with a letter from his own hands, dated at Holy-rood House, August 1, 1593. The learned *Rehenius* (at the end of his *Inscriptiones Hafnienses*) gives us a large account of the life and death of this famous man, and an exact description of the *Uraniburg*.

5. *Christianus Severini Longomontanus*, was bred up in the Science of *Astronomy* by *Tycho*, whom he assisted many years in his Observations. Afterwards, he was made publick Professor of *Astronomy* at *Copenhagen*: where he writ his *Astronomia Danica*, (printed at *Amsterdam* by *Janssonius*) in which he explains the various motions of the Planets according to his Master *Tycho's* Hypothesis and some observations by himself in the *Ile of Ween*. Had he given over writing as soon as he had finished this work, or meddled with no other parts of *Mathematics* but *Astronomy*; he might have ended his days, as he spent his youth, in good repute and credit. But, after he had laboured above thirty years of his dotage in labouring to demonstrate the square of a circle,

(which he fancied he had at last conquered in that piece of his entitled *De vera Circuli mensura* 4^{to}, *Amstelodami* A.D. 1644), he became so ridiculous, as to have the work of so many years confuted in one page by our learned Dr. *Pell*, at that time publick Professor of *Mathematics* in *Amsterdam*.

6. *Arvid Witfeld*, Lord of *Odersberch*, and sometime Chancellour of *Denmark*, was the first that drew *Saxo's* History to a Chronological method, annexing the year to every memorable passage. Besides, he composed and published an accurate Chronicle of the Kings of *Denmark* and *Norway* in the *Danish* tongue: of which work *Pontanus*, who was once his Clerk, gives a very high Character.

7. *Stephanus Stephanus*, Professor of History in the University at *Sor*, has illustrated *Saxo Grammaticus* with most accurate and learned Notes. Besides, he writ an exact account of the affairs of *Denmark* during the reign of *Christian* the Third, from the year 1550 to 1559; which, since his death, was printed at *Sor* A.D. 1650.

8. *Olaus Wormius*, late *Regius Professor* of Physics in *Copenhagen* (besides the rare collection he made of natural Curiosities, of which his *Museum Wormianum* is nothing else but a Catalogue) has with great diligence and success made discovery of that venerable and mysterious part of learning which before his time, had lain unregarded for many ages in every corner of *Denmark*. His *Literatura Runica*, *Monumenta Danica*, *Fastj Danica*, and other writings of this kind, are enough to inform any man how much his own Countrymen, and all that are well-wishers to learning, are indebted to his indefatigable pains and industry.

9. *Petrus Johannes Resenius*, Professor of Moral Philosophy and Counsellour to the present King of *Denmark*, has for several years last past applied himself to an Enquiry after the antiquities of his Country. In order to which he has made a much larger Collection of *Runic* Monuments than ever *Wormius* met with; which (as I am informed) he designs ere long to publish in a work of some Volumes. The *Edda Islandorum* (and other ancient pieces, already printed) may give us a taste of his abilities in these severer Studies, and teach us what to expect from so curious an Antiquary.

To these many more (as *Petrus Severinus*, the two *Bartholins*, *Borrichius*, and several others which are to be found in *Erafmus Vindlingj* his *Academia Hafniensis*) might be added: but those that have been reckoned up, are sufficient to show us how much *Denmark* has contributed to the advancement of Learning.

What kind of Idols and false Gods were worshipped by the ancient *Danes*, and in what manner shall be shewn at large in the Description of *Iland*. Christianity begun to be first planted in these Northern Countries by King *Eric*, who had been baptized in *Germany* at the request of the Emperor *Ludoicus*; but it took no deep root at first. For *Eric*, being settled in his Throne, relapsed into his former paganism, and turned a bitter persecutor of St. *Anskar* (who was sent to promote the Christian Religion in *Denmark*, *Norway*, &c. by the said Emperor and Pope *Gregory* the Fourth, A.D. 835) and his followers. After this (tho some of them were initiated in Christianity, yet) the Christians had no considerable footing in this Kingdom, before the reign of King *Sueno Twesleg*: who at his Baptism had the Emperor *Otho II.* to his God-father, and from him was afterwards called *Suenobro*. He (by the assistance of *Poppe*, who, as we have said, contrived

his doctrine by a miracle which introduced the use of fire-Ordele) established the Christian religion upon a sure foundation, and appointed several Bishops in the Kingdom. *Frederic* Duke of *Holftein*, being elected King of *Denmark*, brought with him the *Augsburg* Confession; which has ever since been professed in that Kingdom. *Christian* the third gave liberty to the *English*, *Scots*, and *Hollanders* to build Churches and have the free exercise of their religion; though no Calvinists are to be found except some few at the present *Queens* Chappel. Those few Papists that live in this Kingdom, are forbid the public exercise of Divine service.

Platart reports of the ancient *Cimbrians*, that they had Shields and Helmets painted with the shapes of several kinds of wild beasts. Others say they used to set a brazen Bull on the top of their Standard as a token of strength and valour. At this day the King of *Denmark's* Arms are a compendium of fourteen several Coats thus ordered:

In a field *Gules* he bears a Cross *Argent* (the Arms of the house of *Oldenburg*) which quarters the upper part of the Coat into four Cantons. The first of these gives (the Arms of *Denmark*) *Or*, six half hearts *Gules*, three Lions passant Guardant *Azure*, with Crowns of the *First*. This Coat is parted with (the Arms of *Norway*) *Gules*, a Lion Crowned *Or*, holding in his paws an Hatchet *Argent*, with an haist of the *Second*. The second Canton carries *Gules*, a Leopard in Chief *Or*, the field fown with nine hearts of the *Second*; which are the Arms of *Gothland*. These are parted with *Gules*, a Dragon Crown'd *Or*, the ancient Coat of the *Vandels* or *Slavonians*; According to the dithich;

*Hinc rigidos Sclavos effert pernecibus alis,
Et lica propugnat sanguinolenta, DRACO.*

The third Canton gives *Azure*, three Crowns *Or*: to denote the union of the three Kingdoms of *Denmark*, *Norway* and *Sweden*. This Coat is parted with *Gules*, a paschal Lamb *Argent*, holding a Cross *Or*, at which hangs a Streamer of the *Second*, charged with a small cross of the *First*. The first original of this Coat is said to have been this in the year 1218, when King *Waldemar* the second engaged the *Lieslanders* in sharp and bloody war, the *Danish* Army having lost their Standard, began to be so discouraged, that they gave ground, and had almost yielded the victory to their Pagan Enemies: when on a sudden a new Standard fell from heaven, displaying a white Cross in a bloody flag. At the sight of this the *Danes* immediately rallied their scattered forces

with so much courage and success, as made them in a short time masters of the field. In remembrance of this so miraculous a deliverance, the Kings of *Denmark* kept the sacred flag with as much veneration as ever the *Romans* did their *Palladium*; thinking their future success would very much depend upon the safety of so holy a Relique. This is the account the *Danish* Historians give us of this part of their Kings Arms. But 'tis more probable that the Pope gave King *Waldemar* this banner when he went against *Liesland*; to mind him that the business he now undertook was the Conversion of those poor ignorant Heathens he should there meet with. Thus the Emperor *Constantine* the Great, made a Cross be carried before his Army with this Motto, *In hoc signo vinces*; and the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order bore a white Cross, when they were sent to convert the *Prussians*. But, to return: the fourth Canton bears *Or*, two Lions passant *Azure*; which are the Arms of *Sleswick*. These are parted with *Gules*, an headless Fish stuck on a stake and crown'd *Argent*: which is the coat of *Iceland*. In the Center of these four Cantons, and the middle of the great Cross, hangs a Scutcheon bearing *Azure*, a Horseman in complet armour *Argent*, holding a Sword in his right hand of the same, with the hilt *Or*, his Horse covered with a Cloth of the second: which are the Arms of *Dithmarsch*. The lower part of the Arms contains four more Coats. Whereof, the first is *Gules*, three Pinks (some call them nails of our Saviour's passion) and three leaves of Nettles, which are intermixed and meet in Angles at the heart of the Coat; which is charged with a small Scutcheon *Argent*, for *Holftein*. The second (which is the Coat of *Stommara*) is *Azure*, a Swan *Argent*, with a Coronet round her neck *Or*. The third (belonging to the Earldom of *Delmenshorst*) is *Or*, two Barres *Gules*. The fourth and last Coat (which belongs to *Jutland*) is *Azure*, a Cross Patty, at the bottom tetcher, *Or*. Below the Arms is usually hung, in a chain *Or*, the Scutcheon of the Order of the Elephant.

The Helmet *Or*, embroidered and damasked, the lights covered and wanting bars; above which a Crown *Or*, encircled with four Circles, and adorned with precious Stones: on the top of this a Globe *Or*, and above all a Cross patty *Argent*.

The Crest is a Leopard, passant over the Crown, *Or*; eight Streamers *Azure*; a plain Cross *Argent*; four spears bending to the Dexter side, and as many to the Sinister *Or*.

Supported by two Savages, crowned and girt with *Ivy* proper, armed with two pointed Clubs.

The Mantle *Or*, fown with hearts *Gules* and Lions *Azure*, doubled *Ermine*.



J U T L A N D.

Cimbrians,
whence so
called.



HO many of our modern Authors make a scoff at the relations the *Danish* Historians give of the Gyants anciently bred under the Northern Climates; yet 'tis certain (both from the testimony of the most credible *Roman* writers, and the inscriptions of ancient Graves, and other monuments), that there were formerly in these parts some people of larger sizes than are anywhere to be met with at this day either in this or any other Nation. And what else can be meant of that Law of King *Frotho* (mention'd by *Saxo Grammaticus*) wherein 'twas order'd, that no ordinary Ruffic should be bound to have any quarrel with one of these over-grown *Kempers*, determined by Duel (which was then the usual way of deciding all manner of controversies), except the Warriour had fewer and lighter weapons than the Plebeian? Those that endeavour to prove the ancient *Danes* men of greater dimensions than the modern, from the bulk of their Grave-stones and Tombs; do not consider, that it was the custom of the *Danish* Pagans to burn the dead bodies of their deceased friends, and bury only the ashes; and that the ancients used to worship at the monuments of their Princes and great men, which for this reason were usually considerable heaps of stones and earth cast up by the high-way side. However (to omit these kind of idle conjectures) the Northern people had doubtless in their Armies good store of *Kempers* (men of vast bodies and strength) upon whose broad shoulders lay the heaviest and hottest service in every engagement. From these *Kempers* the whole Nation were by the *Romans* called *Cimbri*, by the *Greeks* *Cimmerii*, and their Country *Chersonesus Cimbrica*, which name was given to the whole tract of land beyond the *Elb*; tho' later Historians confine it to that part only which now goes under the name of *Jutland*.

Whence the *Juti* and *Jutia* (which without all doubt is the same with the more modern word *Jutlandia*) should come, is harder to determine, than to trace the original of *Cimbria*. Venerable *Bede*, speaking of those Nations who came to aid the *Britains* against the oppression of the *Romans*, mentions the *Vites* as well as the *Angles* and *Saxons*. *Camden*, and some others, would have us read *Jutes* instead of *Vites*; as (saith that famous Antiquary) one Manuscript Copy hath the word. But the Learned Sir *Henry Spelman*, observing in most Copies *Vite* more than once, and never *Jutæ*, will not admit of this alteration. *Ethelwerd*, who writ about the year 950, calls *Bede's Vitas*, *Giotos*; telling us, that the *Angles* were a people that dwelt *inter Saxones & Giotos*. *Tacitus* places the *Huitbones* (so *Pontanus* reads the word, and not as 'tis usually printed, *Nuitbones*) next to the *Angli*. In other Authors we meet with the *Vitangi*, *Juthungi*, *Guthungi*, *Guthas*, *Juthones*, &c. which without question are all of one and the same original; only variously corrupted, either by the inadvertency of transcribers, or unskillfulness of foreign writers in the idiom of the tongue of that Country

which they described. *Arngrim Jonas* (an *Icelandic* Author, well skill'd in the Antiquities and Language of his own Country) says, *Jes*, in the *Icelandic* and *Norwegian* dialect, signifies a Giant. Adding further, that there is still a place in *Norway* call'd *Risalandt*, i. e. the Land of Giants; near which is *Jetumbaimar*, or *The Giants dwelling*. Lastly, he tells us, *Jutland* is nothing but a corruption of *Jetumland*. So that *Jutia* has the same signification with *Cimbria*; and the *Guti*, *Gothi*, *Gotti*, *Getæ* (call'd in the *English-Saxon* monuments *Heaven*), *Vitæ*, *Jutæ*, &c. are the same men with the *Cimbrians*.

Jutland reaches no further then *Slesvic*. So that *Holfstein*, and the rest of the Provinces which lay between the *Eider* and the *Elb* (tho' formerly a part of the *Cimbrian Chersonese*) are not now reckon'd as any portion of this Country.

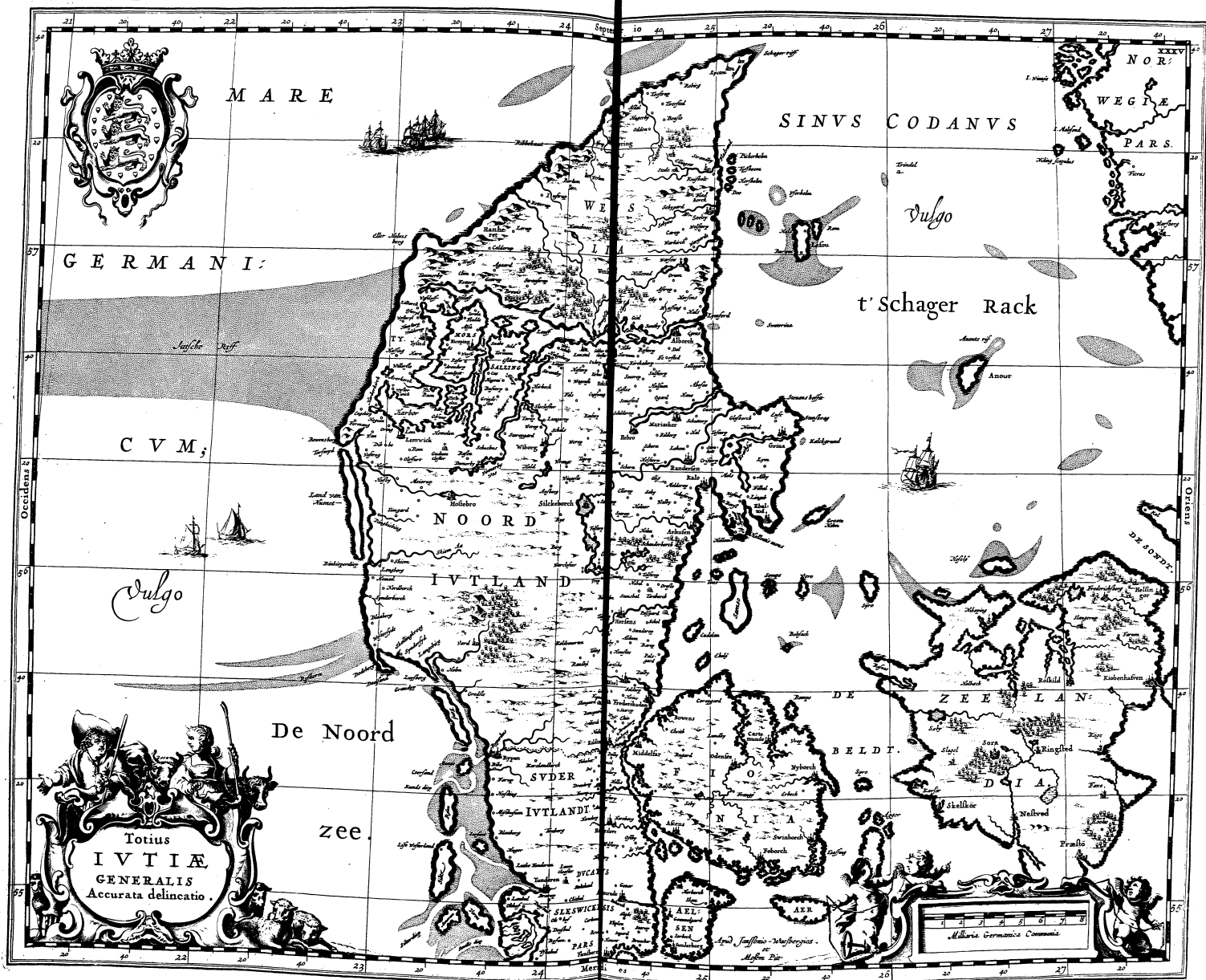
Northern Jutland.

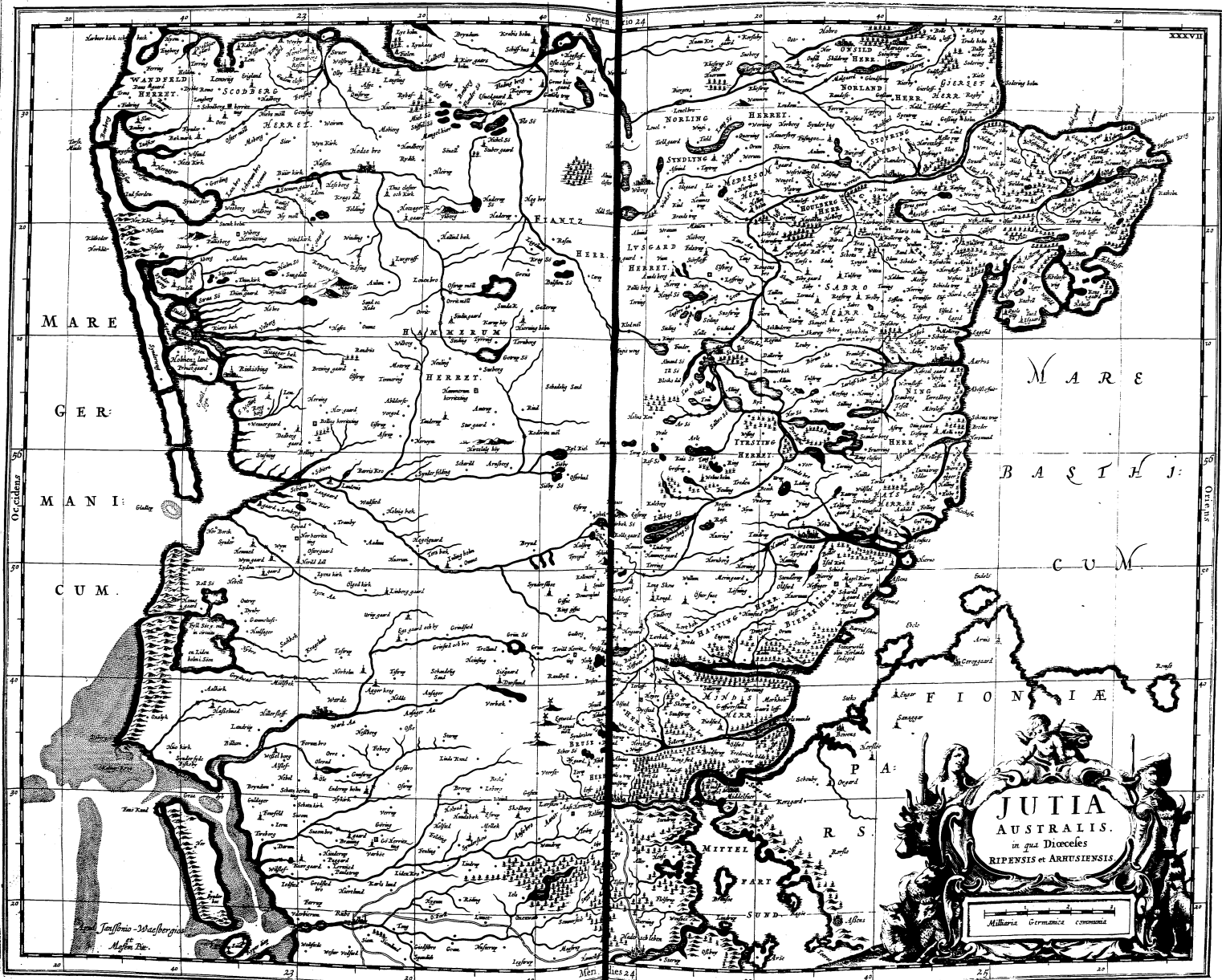
THE Northern *Jutland* is much larger and better peopled than the Southern. It is divided into nine (some reckon fifteen) great Lordships; which (says *Lylcander*) being severed one from another by so many arms of the *Sinus Limmericus*, *Lymfjord*, gave occasion to that part of the King of *Denmark's* Arms which bears a Lion and nine Hearts in a field Or. There are in it four Bishopricks, *Ripen*, *Arhusen*, *Alburg*, and *Wiburg*.

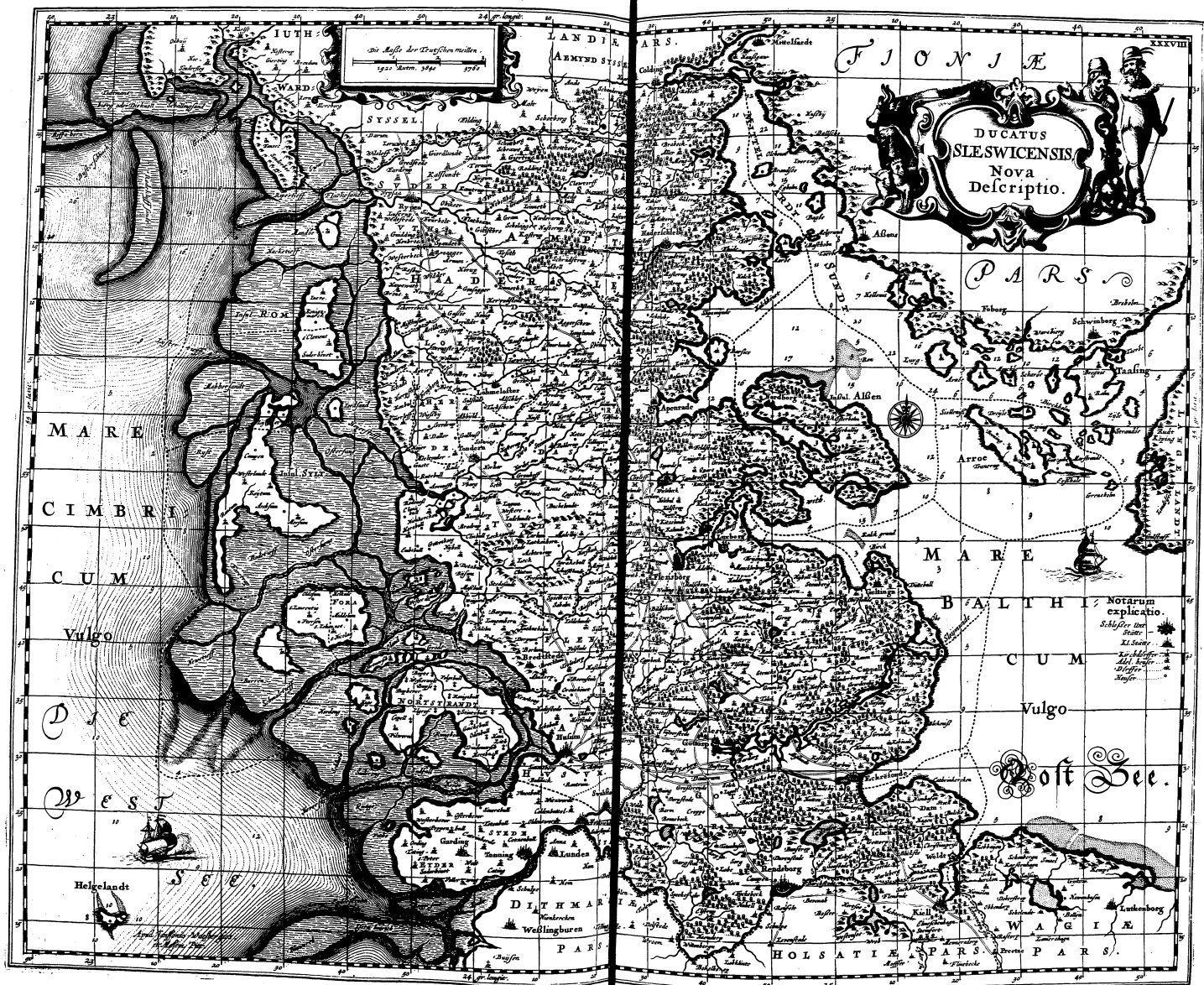
In the further corner of the North *Jutland* lies *Wenysfel*, which has the names of *Vandalia* and *Vandalia* in *Latin* Authors; and is thought by some to have been the seat of the ancient *Vandals*. Its inhabitants are the lustiest and hardiest of any of the King of *Denmark's* subjects. The chief Town in this Tract is *Wenysfel*, so call'd from the Province. *Schagben*, seated on the promontory between the *Norwegian* and *Baltic* Seas, is much more frequented by Merchants, from all parts of *Europe*, than any other Town in *Jutland*; and would have a far greater trade than now it has, were it not for the dangerous coast it stands on.

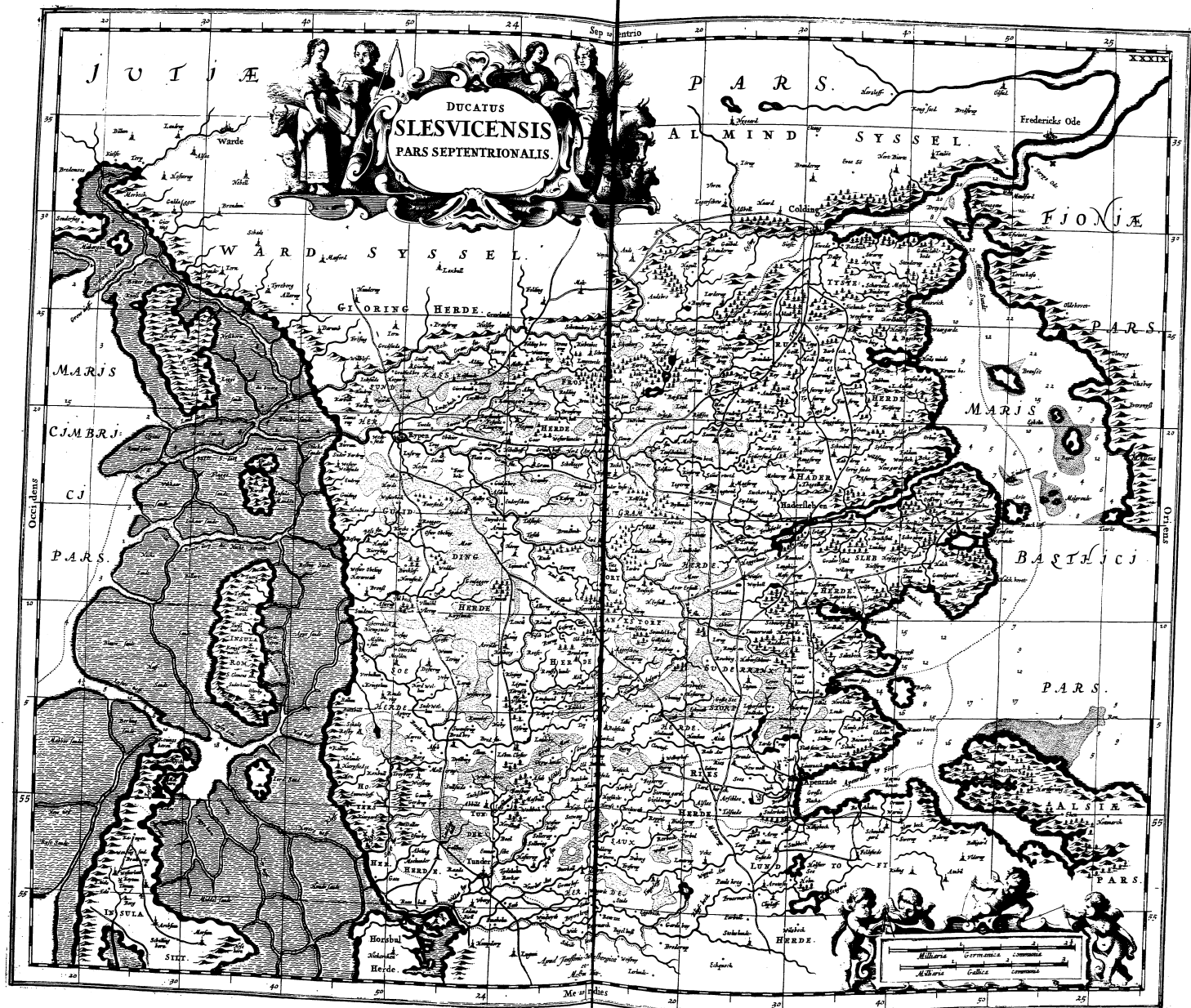
Alburg has its name from the multitude of *Eels* taken in that part of the *Lymfjord* on which it is seated. It was anciently call'd *Burgle*; whence this Bishopricks is often named *Episcopatus Burglavienfis* or *Burglumienfis*. In this Diocess there are thirteen High Courts of Judicature; one hundred and eighty Parishes; six Cities; and an hundred Noblemens houses. This Bishopricks was first founded by King *Sueno Eshritb* about the year 1065. The Bishops had their residence at *Borlum* (a small Village not far from *Alburg*) till, upon the introduction of the *Augsburg* Confession into *Denmark*, *Stigor* (the last Bishop of the Popish Religion) was commanded to desert himself of all Episcopal Jurisdiction, and to live privately in the Monastery at *Borlum*. This happened A.D. 1536; since which time the *Lutheran* Bishops have had their Palace at *Alburg*. The fruitfulest part of this Diocess is *Ty*, which lies between the *German Ocean* and *Lymfjord*. Some Authors are of opinion, that the *Dutch* have their name from the ancient inhabitants of this Tract; and to strengthen their argument, they put us in mind, that the *Germans* are to this day called

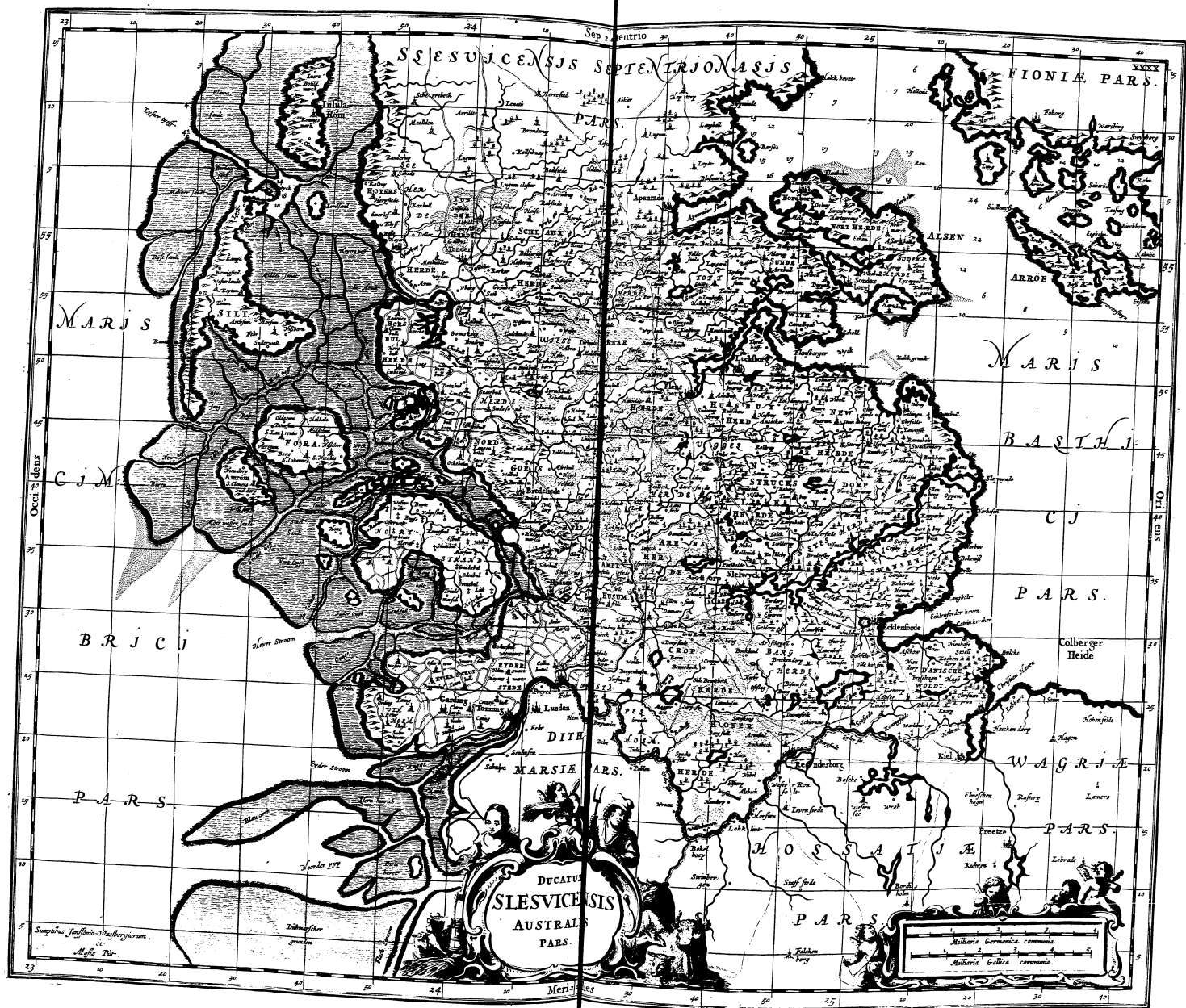












called *Tyske* by the Danes. The chief Town in *Tyske* is *Tysted*; where *Christian III.* founded a Free-school, which is now grown up to a *Gymnasium* or managed University. Not far from *Tysted* stands the old Nunnery of *Westerwic*; famous for the Tomb of a pious Maid of the Blood-Royal, of whom the Neighbours (who call her in their tongue *Liden Kisten*) report many miracles, and sing old Ballads made in commendation of her holy and chaste life.

The Diocess of *Wiburg* lies in the very middle of North *Jutland*. *Lysander* calls *Wiberg* the Metropolis of *Jutland*. It is indeed a place of the greatest concourse of people, who flock thither for justice in all causes Civil and Criminal. It was formerly called *Cimmerfog*, as being the chief City of the ancient *Cimbrians*. *Tacitus* calls it *Cittatem parvam*: but withal, that it had been a glorious and strong hold, and the Metropolis of a terrible and warlike Nation. Whence, and when, it got the name *Wiberg*, is not easily determined. Some tell us, that after the many petty Principalities of the *Cimbrians* were united into one Monarchy by *Wiglet*, this City lost its ancient name, and was called (after the Prince) *Wiburg*; corrupted by degrees into *Wiberg*. *Elnat*, in the life of *St. Canutus*, says, it had its new name from *Wig*; an Idol worshipp'd in this place. I rather think it the feat of the *Danish* Pyrats, called formerly *Wigs* or *Wikenger*. For it was the custom in the Northern Countries, where the inhabitants were more than the fruits of the Land could sustain, for young Noblemen to live of what they could catch abroad. As the *Lacedaemonians* thought Robbery, so these fancied Pyraty, lawful and glorious. Whence Princes of the blood would often turn Pyrats, and take upon them the title of Kings, tho they had not the least dominion at land: as the *Norwegian* History reports of *St. Olaus*. The most notorious Pyrats mention'd by the Northern Historians, are the *Jomskingler*, who dwelt in the City *Wollin*, called anciently *Jomberg*, where they had established certain Laws, and were subject to Magistrates and Governors chosen out of the Royal Family. *Cambden* tells us, that the Danes are usually understood by the name *Vicingi* in the Latin writers of our *English* History; because, says he, they were professed Pyrats. In our Learned King *Edward's* translation of *Bede's* Ecclesiastical History, Pyrats are called *Wicengar* and *Wicengar*; and Mr. *Cambden* guesses probably, that the inhabitants of *Glocestershire*, *Worcestershire*, &c. were formerly called *Wicii*, from the Sea-robberies committed daily by them upon the mouth of the *Severn*. The *English-Saxons* named a stout warrior *Wiga*; skill in war, *Wig-chapt*; a fort *Wigbur*, &c. In the old *Francic* History of the life of *St. Anno* Arch-bishop of *Cologne*, we read:

*Ninus hix der eristi mann,
De dir ie volc Wigis began, i.e.*

Ninus is the first that ever made war.

And in *Willeramus's* Paraphrase upon the Canticle *Wigibus* is a Castle, *Wigsumme* the art of Combat, &c. *Nial's* *Runic* History says, *Gunnar* was the best *Viager* deira sem de voru a *Islande*, i.e. *Gunnar* was the best Champion that lived in *Island* in his days. From what has been said, it seems very probable, that *Wiberg* signifies no more than *Wigton*, the name of several great Towns in *England* and *Scotland*; and the *Scots* still retain so much of the old *Saxon* word *Wig* as to call fouldiers and pillagers of the Country, *Wigs* or *Wiganeers*. There has been for some years

a quarrel between the Bishops of *Alburg* and *Wiburg* about precedence; each pretending his Bishopric the more ancient. 'Tis very hard, if not impossible, to decide the controversy; except we date the first institution of the Bishoprick of *Alburg* from the removal of the Bishops Palace to that City. For the Bishopricks of *Wiburg* and *Borlum* were both founded in one year by *Sveno Esthrith*, who made *Heribert* Bishop of *Wiburg* the same time that he gave *Borlum* to *Magnus*. *Witfield* gives *Wiburg* the precedence; but *Alburg* is reckon'd the better and more honourable preform by other *Danish* writers. From the high Court of Judicature holden at *Wiburg*, the *Jutlanders* can make no appeal; save to the King himself. The most memorable Bays in this Diocess are *Sallinglandt*, *Vickeslandt*, *Hualpslandt*, *Serberslandt*, and *Othelundt*. The last of which had its name from the Emperor *Ortho* the first; who making an incursion into *Jutland* about the year 948, came as far as this Bay, into which he is said to have cast his Spear, and given it the name it retains to this day. The most considerable and fruitful part of this Diocess is *Salling*, a Peninsula in the *Limford*; whence are brought the best Horses that are to be met with in the King of *Denmark's* Dominions. The name of this Province seems to point out the feat of the old *Sabalungi*, whom *Ptolomey* makes a people inhabiting some part of the *Cimbrian* *Chersonese*, but more Southerly then *Salling*. The chief River in the Bishoprick of *Wiburg* is *Gulius*, *Gutalus*, or *Gudde-nus*; called by the Natives *Gudde* *Aa*, and stored with plenty of Fish.

Arhus is a neat and pleasant Sea-port Town on the coast of the *Baltic* Sea: whence Etymologists derive its name from *Aar-hus*, i.e. the house of *Oars*. Which is a much more probable conjecture then is brought by *Pontanus*; who fetches the word *Arhusen* from *Ptolomey's* *Harades*. The greatest part of the *Danish* Historians, are of opinion that it was first made a Bishopric Sec about the year 1014. Tho, if it be true that *Poppo* was made Bishop of this Diocess, its original must be fetcht as high as the year 992. The Cathedral at *Arhus* is a neat piece of Architecture adorned with several rich monuments of Bishops, Noblemen, &c. The Bishops Palace has lain many years in its ruins, which still retain marks of its ancient splendour and grandeur. It is seated in the heart of *Jutland*, and furnished with all manner of necessities that the Country affords at a very reasonable rate: and what foreign Commodities either the need or luxury of its Citizens call for, are brought daily in by the Mariners. In this Diocess there are thirty one Judicatures, Seven Cities, three hundred and four Parishes and five Forts; the strongest of which is *Schanderborch* or *Schanderborch* (i.e. the neat Castle) seated on the *Gudde*. The rest of the Cities of note in the Bishoprick of *Arhusen* are 1. *Horsen*, on the South of *Arhusen*. 2. *Randse*, a place famous for the best Salmon in *Jutland*. 3. *Ebelrod*, on the *Baltic* Coast: a Town of considerable trade.

The Bishoprick of *Ripen*, bordering on the *Ripen*. Southern *Jutland*, contains in it seven Cities, two hundred eighty two Parishes, ten Castles and an hundred Noblemens houses. It is seated upon the clear and sweet river *Nipsaa*, which parting it self into three streams, divides the Town into as many parts; and gave occasion to the City's Arms, which are three Lions. Hereabouts *Ptolomey* seems to place his *Cimbros phundusios*. That this City should have its name from the *Latin* word *Ripa*, upon its being situate on the banks of the river, is no great wonder: if we consider that whilst the Natives of these parts busied them-

themselves chiefly in fortifying and peopling their great Cities, 'twas ordinary for the *German, Romans*, and other Foreigners, to give names to small Villages upon the Sea-Coasts; which after a revolution of some years, by the advantage of a brisk Sea-Trade, grew bulky, and were often advanced into large Corporations. The Cathedral is a stately Fabrick of heven stone, beautified with a Tower of an incredible height; which serves for a good Land-mark to the Sea-men that fall along this dangerous shore. This Church was first built on the top of a hill by King *Eric Barn*, whom *St. Ansgar* had converted to Christianity, about the year 848. Near an hundred and fifty years after, upon the reclaiming of the *Danes* from the Idolatry they were relaps'd into, this Church was turn'd into a Cathedral, and *Ripen* made a Bishops See, as it hath continued ever since. There is a kind of an University at *Ripen*; but comes far short of that at *Copenhagen*. The rest of the Cities and great Towns of moment in this Diocese, are: 1. *Holding*, first built by *Eric Glipping* about the year 1268, in the place of an old Castle of the same name, and fortified with such strong walls and good ditches, as made it a City able to defend the frontiers of the *Danish* dominions; in which in those days reached no further South then this place. But they that think *Holding* had its name from *Prology's Chali*, who seem to be placed in this part of *Juland*, make it a City much more ancient. *Christian III.* was so much taken with the situation of it, and plenty of all things in the Country adjoining, that he removed his Court to the Castle *Arnsburgh*, which hangs over the Town; which he repair'd, and in which he ended his days. On the South the City is walled by a River which divides the Northern *Juland* from the Southern; and separating it self into two branches, is emptied soon after into the *Baltic Sea*. The Bridge over this River brings yearly a great treasure into the King of *Denmark's* Coffers. For, besides the import upon all other kinds of commodities, for every Ox or Horse that passes this Bridge towards *Holsten*, or any of the *Hans Towns*, the owners pay a Rixdollar; which, considering the infinite number of Horses and Kine which are yearly sent this way out of the Northern *Juland*, must needs amount to a vast revenue. 2. *Weel*, a compact, neat, and well built City, on the *Baltic* shore; but not very large. 3. *Ward*. 4. *Rinkoping*. Both seated near the Western-shore upon the same River. 5. *Holthebo*. 6. *Lemwick*; which is the outmost bounds of the Bishpoick of *Ripen* Northward; seated on the *Limford*, whence it has its name. At *Jelling* (a small Village in this Bishpoick, not far from the City *Weel*) is to be seen one of the most famous *Runic* Monuments that the three Northern Kingdoms afford. This Village is said to have had its name from an *Elling*, a General of the *Cimbrians*, and fancied to have been the seat of several *Danish* Kings. The inscription has been thought worthy the diligent enquiry of *Jof. Scaliger*, *Bonaventura Vulcanius*, *Lindenbergius*, *Stephanus*, and *Wormius*; and may therefore justly challenge a place in our description of this Province. The words are these:

*Haralter Runy had kgrura
Rudl daut eft Gurm fadu fru
Aug eft Thurni mudur fuala
Haralt Refor van Tanmanak
Alla aug Narviog
Aug tini folk Kristno, i. e.*

*Harald the King commanded this Tomb
to be built in remembrance of Gorma*

his father and *Thyra* his mother.
Harald the Emperor won *Denmark*,
and all *Norway*;
and Christ'ned the inhabitants of both King-
doms.

How worthy Queen *Thyra* was of such a lauding monument as this, we shall shew hereafter; and shall in this place only take notice of King *Harald's* styling himself *Keser*, or Emperor of *Denmark* and *Norway*. Which seems to be done in contempt of the Emperor *Otho* the first; who, having conquer'd a great part of the Kingdom of *Denmark*, annexed this to the rest of his dominions, and writ himself Emperor of the North; till this King [*Harald Blaastand*] forced him to retire, and made him part with (not only whatever he had taken in *Juland*, but) a great part of *Saxony*. After so great a conquest and defeat of so mighty an Emperor, he had reason to assume a title as swilling as ever *Otho* could pretend to, who came no further then *Onesheld* with his Army. Especially, if it be true (what *Helmodus* reports of him), that he was so far King of *Saxony*, as to be the Author of those Laws which are to this day observed in the upper and lower *Saxony*; and contained in their *Saxon-Spiegel*.

Southern *Juland*.

THE Southern *Juland* (which is often comprehended under the name of the Duchy of *Sleswic*) reaches from *Kolding* and the River *Leenens Aa*, as far as the *Danewick*, which is reckon'd about eighteen German miles. The breadth of it does not any-where exceed eight, seldom six, miles.

The chief City, which sometimes gives name to the whole Province, is *Sleswic*. It is seated on a River, or rather a small arm of the Sea, called by the inhabitants *De Sje*. So that *Sleswic* is no more than a Village (call'd anciently by the Saxons *Wic* by the *Hollanders* to this day *Wick*, and the *Latines* *Vicus*) upon the *Sje*. Hence the ancient people of these parts are called by *Prology Sigulones*, which some read *Silvones*, i. e. *Wooners* (or dwellers) upon the banks of the *Sie*. *Adam Bremenfis* calls the Town *Slias-wig*; and *Ethelwerd*, an ancient *English-Saxon* Historian, gives us this account of it: *Anglia vetus ius est inter Saxones & Gotos, habens oppidum Capitale quod sermone Saxónico Sleswic nuncupatur, secundum Danos vero Hattibaby, i. e. "Old England lies between Saxony and *Juland*;" the Metropolis of "which is called by the Saxons *Sleswic*, but by the "Danes *Hattibaby*. In an old History of the life of *Charles the Great* it is called *Slesioff*. It had its *Danish* name *Hattibaby*, faith *Pontanus*, from *Hetha*, a certain Queen of *Denmark*. Which assertion seems confirm'd by a passage in the Preface to King *Ælfred's* *English-Saxon* translation of *Orosius*: *Ans of Seoynges heale he cpeþe* he regesse on fip bagan to þem porþe þe mon hæcete ðæ Sum, se geatce beþeþe Winesom 7 Seaxom 7 Angle. 7 þiss 7 in Dene. i. e. *And from Sciringes-heal he said, that he sailed in five days to the Port which is called Hæthe, which stands between the Vandals [Vinedi] Saxons and the Angles, to whom it is subject.* 'Twas questionless heretofore a City much frequented by Merchants from *Britain*, *France*, *Spain*, *Flanders*, and all other parts of the trading world. *Adam Bremenfis* (who lived about the year 1100) calls it *Croitatene opulentissimam ac populosissimam*, i. e. a City exceeding rich and populous. And to it must needs have been. For, before Maritimo learn*

learn perfectly the way of shunning the dangerous Sands upon the coasts of *Juland*, and at the entrance into the *Baltic*, carriages were usually brought up the *Eider* and *Threen* as far as *Holtingest* by Ship, and thence conveyed by Land to *Sleswic*: where they were again shipped and so transported into *Zeeland*, *Sveden*, &c. The Citizens here were first converted to Christianity, and the great Church built, by King *Eric Barn*, assisted by *St. Anchar*, about the year 800. Not long after (in the year 1064) the *Slavonians*, making incursions into this part of the Country, took *Sleswic*, destroyed the Church, rooting out Christianity and replanting Paganism. This relick is sufficiently confirm'd by the many *Runic* monuments, found daily in and about this City: whose inscriptions shew them to be Heathenish temples, of too late a date to have been erected before the first appearance of Christianity in these parts. But the *Slavonians* kept not long footing here. For, within a short while, the *Danes*, weary of the tyranny and Idolatry of strangers, forced them to quit their Conquests and retire. Whereupon, paganism was once more rooted out, Christianity reestablish'd, and the Cathedral rebuilt. Soon after this the *Angles*, that maintained a trade in *Sleswic*, built the Church of the Holy Ghost near the market-place with the adjoining Hospital. The Dukedome of *Sleswic* was first given by *Christopher* King of *Denmark*, about the year 1253, by way of pension to the children of King *Abel*; upon condition the Duke of *Pomerania*, and some other petty Princes of *Vandalia*, would engage they should always acknowledge a dependance upon, and never pretend any title to the *Danish* Crown. After a revolution of some years it became the inheritance of *Christiern* of *Gildensland* King of *Denmark*, who annexed it to the *Danish* Realm; a part of which it has continued ever since. Assign'd indeed it hath been often as a portion to some of the younger Princes of the blood: but never quitted its dependance upon the Crown. This City, as appears by their records, was first made a Bishops See by the Emperor *Otho* the first: who, upon his conquest of *Juland*, first sent ministers hither to instruct the ignorant Heathens in the principles of the Christian religion, and afterwards set a Bishop over the new Converts; whom the records call *Mari*.

Upon the South of *Sleswic* lies *Ekelfort*: call'd so from the abundance of Squirrels in the adjoining woods; as the Arms of the Town still shew. It is a Town of good Trade, and one of the fairest parts in the *Baltic* shore.

Flenburch, takes its name from *Flen* a small bay of the *Baltic Sea*, upon which it is seated. *Flender* (in his accurate History of the affairs of *Denmark*, speaking of *Henry Duke of Sleswic* who died at the siege of this City A.D. 1427) says it ought to be called *Vlensburg* not *Flenburg*; from *Vlen*, which in the language of the Inhabitants signifies the flux and reflux of the Sea. Some fetch its name from one *Fleno*, a *Danish* Nobleman, who had the Custom of the fishing trade in this place, and was Lord of the Mannor. It is situated in a low and pleasant valley, begirt with several hills of great height. It consists chiefly of one continued street of magnificent and noble buildings; the length of which is said to be near two *English* miles. All along this street the Ships are brought up in a port commodious, that the Citizens can lade and unlade their Vessels at their doors. On the top of an hill in the Suburbs stands the Castle, which *Christian* commands the Town and Haven. Betwixt this City and *Sleswic* is the undoubted seat of the

ancient *Angles*, the ancestors and first Founders of our *English* Nation in *Britain*. Which is not only proved by the assertion of our famous Historian *Ethelwerd*, quoted before; but from a small village in this tract, which to this day is called *Anglen*. *Prology* indeed and *Tacitus* place the ancient *Angli* further forward, as far as the banks of the *Elb*: and they were doubtless a more populous nation then can reasonably be imagined to be confin'd to so narrow a piece of ground as at this day goes under the name of *Anglen*, in the maps of our modern Geographers. For we cannot otherwise conceive they should so far overpower the *Saxons* and *Jutes*, who came with them into *Britain*, as to call so great a part of our Land after their own names; without any notice taken of their Allies.

Haderlewe, seven German miles distant from *Hadersburg* Northward, was first made a City and *lewe*. It had its Charter confirm'd by *Waldemar Duke of Juland* about the year 1292. It was formerly defended by a strong Castle built on the top of an hill which overlooks the Town. This *John* Earl of *Holstein* pull'd down, and instead thereof begun to build a new one call'd from him *Hansburg*, or *John's-Castle*; for *Hans* in the High Dutch and *Danish* tongues is the same with *John*, which was finished by King *Fredric* the Second. The most of the streets in *Haderlewe* are of a good breadth and very uniform. In the Great Church is to be seen a stately monument erected by *Eric* the Eighth to the memory of *Rombold Duke of Slesia*, who was sent Ambassador hither from the Emperor *Sigismund*, to compose the differences between the King of *Denmark* and the Earls of *Holstein* about the claim laid by both parties to the Dukedom of *Sleswic*: and died before the work was finished.

On the Western Coasts of *Sauß-Juland* live the *Strand-Frisians*; mention'd often by *Saxo Grammaticus* as men of great strength and agility of body. This Historian reckons *Eyderlede* a part of his *Frisia minor*; but now a days there are none go under the name of *Strand-Frisians* except a small remnant of people who inhabit the *Srant* (an inconsiderable Island in the *German Ocean*) and a little narrow tract of land between *Hulsem* and *Lungenhorn*. In the middle of this petty Province they have a market-place: where they maintain a small traffick and commerce amongst themselves. Their country is defended from the rage of the Sea (like *Holland* and other parts of the *Netherlands*) by great Earthen banks, which preserve their meadows and corn fields, lying all on one level, from the waves. They have a great art of making the whiffet and best sale in *Europe*, of earthenfok in the Sea-water, dried and boil'd. *Saxo* says these people are a Colony of *Frislanders* in the low Countries, who, being a laborious nation, and destitute of habitations in their own Country, came hither to seek their fortunes, and by draining the fens, made this piece of marshy ground habitable. What time this transplantation hapned is not mention'd in the *Danish* Chronicles: but that it was so, will be manifest to any one that will compare the language, habit, and manners, of the people with those of the *Frisians* in the *Netherlands*.

The rest of the Towns of note in the Southern *Juland* are: 1. *Hulsem*; a rich and neat port-town on the Western shore. 2. The two *Tundenens*; Greater and Less, both places of considerable traffick upon the same coast. 3. *Gottorp*, built in the Suburbs stands the Castle, which *Christian* commands the Town and Haven. Betwixt this City and *Sleswic* is the undoubted seat of the

for the *Tol-booth*, or Custom-house, which one year with another brings in Toll for at least 50000 Oxen which are brought out of *Jutland* into *Germany*. 4. *Appenrade*, seated on a small bay of the *Baltic Sea*, and much frequented by the *Danish* Fishermen.

Of the ancient wall of Partition, which divided formerly the Dukedom of Holstein from the Kingdom of Denmark.

BEfore the invention of Guns, and other terrible Engines of war, now used by all the Europeans, and the greatest part of the known world, the only fortifications and ramparts were strong walls and ditches; which the ancients fancied, as indeed they were, sufficient to defend them from the arrows and battle-axes (the only weapons then in use) of their barbarous neighbours. Hence it was, that the *Chinies* thought their Empire secured from the incursions of their bloody neighbours the *Tartars*, when their famous King *Tchinow* had hedged them in with a wall of some hundreds of miles in length. Thus the best expedient the *Romans* could find of putting the borders of their *Brittish* dominions in a posture of defence against the daily revolt of the Natives, whom they had driven into *Scotland*, was the building of *Piſs Wall*, and *Severus's* rampire, which reach'd from Sea to Sea. For the same reasons the Kings of *Denmark*, having their Territories continually infested by the daily inroads of the *Germans*, thought it highly requisite to block up their passage, by walling up that neck of Land which lies between *Hollingsled* and *Gottorp*.

It is hard to determine, from the account given by Historians when this work was first begun. *Paulus Emilins*, a curious French Historian, says, *Gothfred* King of *Denmark* (whom the *Danish* writers call *Gothric*) was the first that made use of this stratagem, to exclude the Armies of the Emperor *Charles* the Great, about the year 808. The same story is told us by *Aimoinus* and *Christians Cilius*. But *Saxo Grammaticus*, *Cranzius*, and the whole Class of the Northern Historians, tell us unanimously, That *Queen Thyra* (daughter of *Ethelred* King of *England*, and wife to *Gormo Gamle* King of *Denmark*) was the Authoress of this fortification; and that thence she had the surname of *Danebode* (i.e. the Mistress builder of the *Danish* Nation) bestowed on her. I can scarce allow the latter part of the story to be true; since we find that this surname was given her long before she had done any thing either towards the building or repairing of the *Danewirk* (as they call'd this Fort.) For upon a monument erected by King *Gormo Gamle* in honour of his *Queen Thyra* we find the following Inscription:

*Gormi Kinnugi gerdi kubl dasti est Turui
Kinnu jina Tanmarkur-bat, i.e.*

Gormo the King erected this Tomb for *Thyra* his *Queen Danebode* (or repairer of the Kingdom of *Denmark*).

This inscription cannot be an Epitaph writ after *Queen Thyra's* death; seeing all the *Danish* writers assert positively that the outliv'd her took the *Danewirk* in hand. So that its more then probable the surname of *Danebode* was given her for the many good offices she had done the Nation in repairing several old decayed Castles and

Forts, and building a great many new ones. King *Eric* the Eighth, in his *Danish Chronicle*, says *Thyra* built the Fort of wood. Which *Wisfield* understands of the fencing the rampire with Stakes; as bulwarks are guarded in our modern fortifications. Others make *Harald Blaastad*, *Queen Thyra's* son, the first Author of this work; after he had driven the Emperor *Osbo* out of *Jutland*. Which *Erasmus Lætus*, the *Danish Virgil*, alludes to; when, speaking of this King *Harald*, he says,

*Hic ille est solido primus qui Cimbrica vallo
Munij arva, solique ingens e corpore dorsum
Erxit, immani quod se curvamine longos
Incitat in tractus, mediumq; perambulat Isthmum,
Et maris Eoi ripas cum litore jungit
Hesperio, ac tenuem Sleswici respicit urbem.*

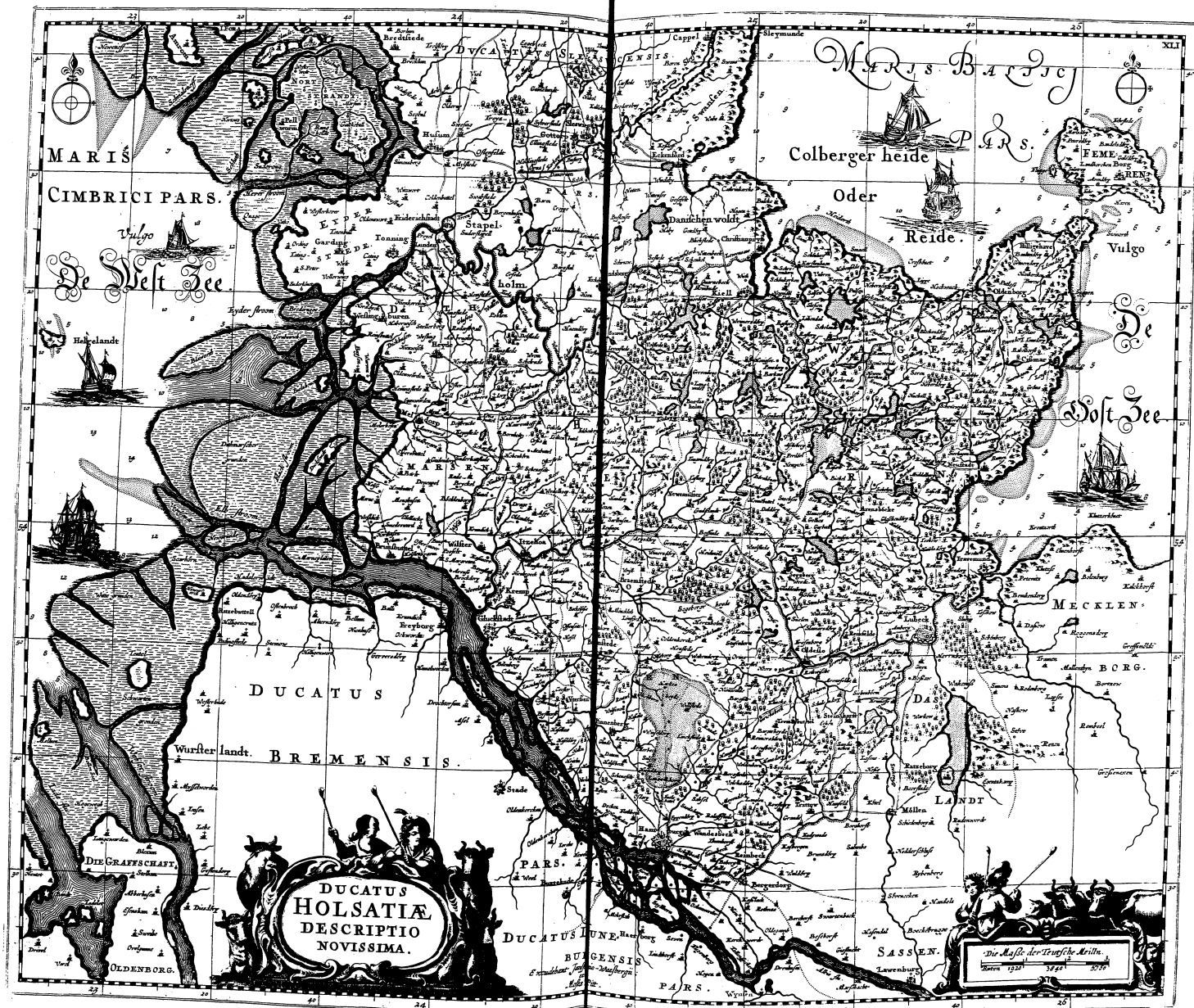
King *Eric* decides this controversy by telling us, That *Thyra* built a wooden fortification; and afterwards advis'd her son to strengthen the work by Trenches and Rampires of earth. Notwithstanding all these relations of other Historians, both *Pontanus* and *Wormius* agree, that 'tis most likely the rude draught of this Fort was first drawn by King *Gothric*; and only repair'd and improv'd by *Queen Thyra*, King *Harald* and other succeeding Princes. *Waldemar* the first built a wall of brick, seven foot broad and eighteen high, to strengthen it. After so many improvements the fort was reckon'd impregnable. For soon after King *Waldemar's* reparation, when *Henry* Duke of *Saxony* (surnamed the *Lion*) intended to have endeavour'd a breach through this fort into the King of *Denmark's* dominions, he was dissuaded from the enterprise by his chief Counsellor *Bernhard Razburg*, who represented the undertaking as a thing impossible to be effected; assuring him *Danewirke castidium Danorum sexaginta millibus mandatum esse. i.e.* That *Danewirk* was defended by a Garrison of sixty thousand *Danes*. Hence King *Sueno*, finding himself unable to force his way through so strong and so well man'd a Rampire, endeavour'd to work his passage by corrupting the Keeper of *Wigelslo*, the only Gate leading through this wall into *Jutland*.

At this day there remain but slight marks of so great a work. At *Schubunge* and *Hesbuge*, two small Villages upon the ruins of the wall, the Inhabitants find reliques of old furnaces and brick-kilns; whence the *Danish* Antiquaries conclude that King *Waldemar* had his bricks burn'd here, tho he was forced to fetch mortar as far as *Gothland*. *Job. Cyprianus* tells us, at *Dennewirke*, an inconsiderable Village in these parts, may still be seen the ruins of an old Castle where *Queen Thyra* lodged. The same Author says, *Wigelslo* was anciently called *Kaelgate*; because placed in an open and plain part of the Country, where the Enemy could have no shelter, nor be in any probability of surprizing the Defendants.

HOLSTEIN.

ANciently the whole Territories of the Dukedom of *Holstein* (contained at present in the Provinces of *Holstein* properly so called, *Ditmarsch*, *Wagerland*, and *Stormar*) went under the general name of *Nortablingia*; or the country beyond the *Elb* Northwards. *Adam Bremenſis* and *Helmoldus* are the first that mention *Hollatia*; which the former derives from *Holls-geſeten* i.e. seated in a wood or Forrest.

The *Holsteiners* are taken notice of generally



as men of great strength and courage, and very observant of oaths and promises. Whence *Holstein glauk* (or, the faith of an *Holsteiner*) is a thing they are very tender of, and a proverbial speech in which they pride themselves.

The fruitfulness of the soil, convenience of trading in the *Baltic* and *Brittish* seas, and industry of the Inhabitants render *Holstein* the richest Country in the King of *Denmark's* dominions: and make the incomes of some of the Nobility exceed the treasure of many Princes in *Germany*.

The chief Cities and great Towns in *Holstein* are, 1. *Kiel* (*Chilonium*;) seated on the *Baltic* shore in a corner of land, shut in betwixt the mouths of two rivers. Whence some have fetcht its name from the *German* word *Kiel*, which signifies a wedge. It is furnished with a large and commodious haven, which is continually throng'd with Merchant-Ships from *Germany*, *Liefland*, *Sweden*, and all the Isles on the *Baltic* Sea. There is yearly in this Town a meeting of the greatest part of the Nobility of *Holstein*; who come hither to consult about the affairs of the Dukedom, especially the concerns of the mint and value of money. The Castle (which is seated on the top of an hill, commanding the Town and haven) was first built by *Adolph* of *Schaumburg* the first Earl of *Holstein*. Earl *Adolph IV.* founded a monastery of Franciscan Minors in this City; which upon the bringing in of the rest of the *Danish* Territories, was changed into an *Hospital*. 2. *Rensborg* or *Reinholsburg*; founded by one *Reinold*, of whom we have no further account then that he was either a Prince of the Blood, or some Great Nobleman. This is the best fortified Town in the Dukedom; environed with the *Byler*, and defended by a strong Castle built by Earl *Gerhard* the Great. 3. *Wilster*, a neat and well built City: seated on a River of the same name, which soon after empties it self into the *Stor*. 4. *Niesumster*, seated on the North-Weit of the *Stor*, not far from the head of it.

The Earldom of *Holstein* was only a Province of the Great Dukedom of *Saxony*; until *Latharius* Great Duke of *Saxony*, afterwards Emperor of *Germany*, bestowed it upon *Adolph* Earl of *Schaumburg* or *Schaumburg* about the year 1114. Since which time we have the following account of the Earls of *Holstein*.

1114. 1. *Adolph* of *Schaumburg*; the first absolute prince of *Holstein*. On whom the Earldom was bestowed as a recompence for the services he had done the Duke of *Saxony* in his *German* and *Danish* wars.

1137. 2. *Adolph II.* son to *Adolph* the I. having obtained his fathers Earldom, cast out the *Slavonians*, who a little before his time had overrun all this part of *Saxony*; and planted in their rooms Colonies of *Germans*, *Frisians*, and *Nether Saxons*. In the quarrel among the three pretenders to the Crown of *Denmark* (*Sueno*, *Canutus*, and *Waldemar*) he sided with *Canutus*; and had settled him in the throne, had not King *Sueno* by fair means and promises prevailed with him to lay down his Arms. He left the Earldom to his son

1164. 3. *Adolph III.* who after many skirmishes and battles with *Waldemar H.* King of *Denmark*, was at last vanquished and kept close prisoner by that King; who, by the intercession of *Andrew* Bishop of *Lunden* and some others, granted him his liberty upon condition, That he should disclaim all right

and Title which he and his predecessors had hitherto pretended to the Earldom of *Holstein* or any other place formerly subject to *Henry*, surnamed the *Lion*, Duke of *Saxony*; and quietly retire to the inheritance of his Ancestors at *Schaumburg*. But these Articles (tho at the first secured by Hostages) were not long observed by his son

1232. 4. *Adolph IV.* who, associating to himself *Henry* Earl of *Zurin*, *Gerhard* Bishop of *Bremen*, and some other petty Princes, begun a rebellion against King *Waldemar*; and succeeded so well in the undertaking, that within a very short time he made himself master of all the Territories his father had been beaten out of and renounced. His son

1261. 5. *Gerhard*, enjoy'd peaceably the dominions left him by his Father. He was for some time kept prisoner at *Insburg* by the *Fulchungs*, a noble family in *Sweden*, for being in company with one *Ingemar*, an upstart Gentleman but great favourite of their King *Magnus*; whom they slew in a rage, and cast his companions into prison.

1281. 6. *Henry*, *Gerhards* son, was the first that set up a Custom-house in *Hamburg*; which brought in no small portion of the revenue of his successors.

1310. 7. *Gerhard* the second, son of *Henry*, upon the death of *Christopher* the second King of *Denmark*, was made Protector of the *Danish* Kingdom, and Tutor to the young King *Waldemar* the third. By these advantages his power grew so great that he ventured to stile himself Duke of *Jutland*; and by degrees would in all probability have aspired to the Crown of *Denmark*, if not timely taken off by one *Ebbe*, a *Danish* Nobleman, who murdered him in his bed at *Randerhusen*.

1340. 8. *Henry* the second, son to *Gerhard II.* refused the Crown of *Sweden*, when it was offered him by Ambassadors sent from that Court A. D. 1363. He is said to have been a Prince of great courage and candor, courteous in his behaviour, and exceedingly chaste and temperate in the whole course of his life. In short, a man that had in him all the Royal virtues that might deserve a Kingdom; and the modesty to refuse one when offer'd.

1381. 9. *Gerhard* the third, *Henry* the second's son, after he had got the Dukedom of *Sleswic* annexed to the Earldom of *Holstein* by *Margaret* Queen of *Denmark*, was slain by the men of *Dithmarsch*, whom he had required to do him homage. His son

1424. 10. *Henry* the third, being denied that right to the Dukedom of *Sleswic* which his father had enjoy'd, made war against *Eric* the Eighth King of *Denmark*; in which, at the siege of *Flensburg*, he was slain.

1427. 11. *Adolph V.* (commonly called the twelfth, by those that reckon all the Earls of younger houses) succeeded his brother *Henry*, and was the last Earl of this house. In the year 1440, he received the Dukedom of *Sleswic* at the hands of *Christopher* the third King of *Denmark*; swearing fealty to that Crown.

1459. *Christian* Earl of *Oldenburg* (son of *Hedvigis* sister to *Henry* and *Adolph* the two last Earls of *Holstein*) succeeded his Uncle *Adolph* in the Earldom of *Holstein*. Which in his time was enlarged by the addition of *Dithmarsch*, and changed into a Dukedom by the Emperor *Frederic* the third, A. D. 1474.

When this *Christian* was advanced to the throne of *Denmark*, the Dukedom of *Holstein* became a part of that Kingdom. Yet so, that the Kings of *Denmark* (as the Kings of *Sweden* upon the late accessions in *Germany* to their Crown) were reckoned Princes of the Empire as Dukes of *Holstein*, tho not obliged to repair to any Diet. Afterwards, the title of Duke of *Holstein*, (together with a considerable part of the Country) was given to *Adolph, Christian* the Third's brother (created Knight of the Garter by our Queen *Elizabeth A.D. 1562*) who governed it interchangeably with the King his brother by turns. Upon the decease of this Duke and his issue male, the title was conferr'd on *Ulric King Christian* the fourth's brother. Since his days there have been several houses of the Dukes of *Holstein*, as *Sunderburg, Nörburg, Glückburg, Arnsbeck, Gottorp and Ottingen*. Amongst whom the Duke of *Holstein Gottorp* is chief, and challenges the same power in governing and administration of justice which was at first conferr'd upon Duke *Adolph King Christian* the third's brother. In the late wars between the two Northern Crowns, the King of *Denmark* (jealous of the great power of the present Duke of *Gottorp*) forced this Prince to quit his Dukedom and leave his Majesty in full possession of the whole Country of *Holstein*. But at the signing of the Treaty between the Kings of *France, Sweden, and Denmark* at *Fountenblaeu* on the second of *September 1679*, the *Danish* Ministers promised their Master should, at the desire of his most Christian Majesty, restore to the said Duke all his Countries, Towns, and places, in the state they were, and the sovereignty thereof; all which he claim'd by virtue of the Treaties of *Roschild, Copenhagen, and Westphalia*, which by this Treaty were confirm'd. The Duke expected, besides being restored to his Countries, some recompence for the damages he had sustained during the war; and at least to have had back the Canon (being an hundred excellent Brass pieces) which were taken out of *Tunningen*, when it was seized and dismantled by *Denmark*. But his expectation in this point were not answered. One of the Articles of the same Treaty was, *That the Country of Rixingen, belonging to Count Alefeld, Chancellor of Denmark* (made Governour of *Holstein* in the year 1663, upon the death of *Christian Earl of Rantzau*, chief Minister of State to the late King *Frederic III.*), confiscated during the war, should be restored to him.

D I T M A R S.

THE inhabitants of this Province are a remnant of the ancient *Saxons*; and retain much of the prowess and heroic spirits of their ancestors. Some will have the word writ *Deutsch* or *Teutschmarsh*, i.e. the *German* or *Dutch* Marsh; because the people are reliques of the *German-Saxons*, and the Country plain and fenny. The *Ditmarsians* were never (like the *Wagrians* and *Stormarians*) brought under subjection to the Earls of *Holstein*, till that whole Earldom was annexed to the Crown of *Denmark*. And tho they were given by the Emperor *Frederic III.* to *Christian Earl of Oldenburg*, the first *Danish* King of that House; yet soon after they threw off this yoke, and refused to acknowledg themselves subject to him or his successors, till (by the valour and good fortune of King *Frederic II.*) they were vanquished and forced to submit in the year 1559. In this expedition the King of *Denmark* was assisted by *John and Adolph, Dukes of Holstein*, his Cousin-Germans. Whereupon, they sharing the con-

quest with him, *Ditmars* was divided into two parts; whereof the Southern fell to the King of *Denmark*, and the Northern to the Dukes of *Holstein*.

The only places of note in *Ditmars*, are, 1. *Meldorp*, the chief Town in the Province, seated on the *German Ocean*, and a place of good trade. 2. *Heyde*, which is a large, but poor City, on the borders of the great barren Sands, of the same name, which overspread the middle of the Country. 3. *Lunden*, opposite to *Tonningen*, near the mouth of the *Eyder*.

S T O R M A R.

Stormar (*Stormars* or *Stormarsh*) signifies no more then the Marthy ground lying along the banks of the river *Stoer*. For 'tis observable, that the inhabitants of the Great Dukedom of *Holstein* are distinguished by names taken from the nature of the soil in that part of the Country they inhabit. And the ancient *Marsi* were nothing else then a people that liv'd in these bogs and fens; and thence took their name.

Hamburg (of which City we shall have occasion to give a large description elsewhere) stands in *Stormar*; and upon that score the Earls and Dukes of *Holstein* have always pretended a right to this City, and demanded homage of the Citizens. These pretensions were judged legal, and the right and title of the said Dukes ratified, by the Emperor *Charles IV.* in the year 1374. Whereupon the *Hamburgers* swore allegiance to *Christian I.* King of *Denmark*; acknowledging him and his successors their lawful Lords. But not long after they endeavoured to throw off that yoke; presuming much upon their own strength, and the assistance they promise themselves upon all occasions, from the rest of the *Hans Towns*. This last year (1679) the present King of *Denmark* renewed his claim, and came before this City with an Army of sixteen or seventeen thousand men, to demand homage; entering the *Elb* with fourteen men of war, and seizing several Merchant-ships, *English* and others, at *Glücksstadt*. On the ninth of *November* an agreement was signed between the King and this City; the Articles of which were:

I. That his Majesty and this City shall remain unprejudiced in their several rights and pretensions; and that the point of homage shall be amicably determined by Treaty, or by an ordinary process before the Chamber of *Spire*; and that in the mean time this City shall enjoy a Neutrality, and free commerce, as formerly.

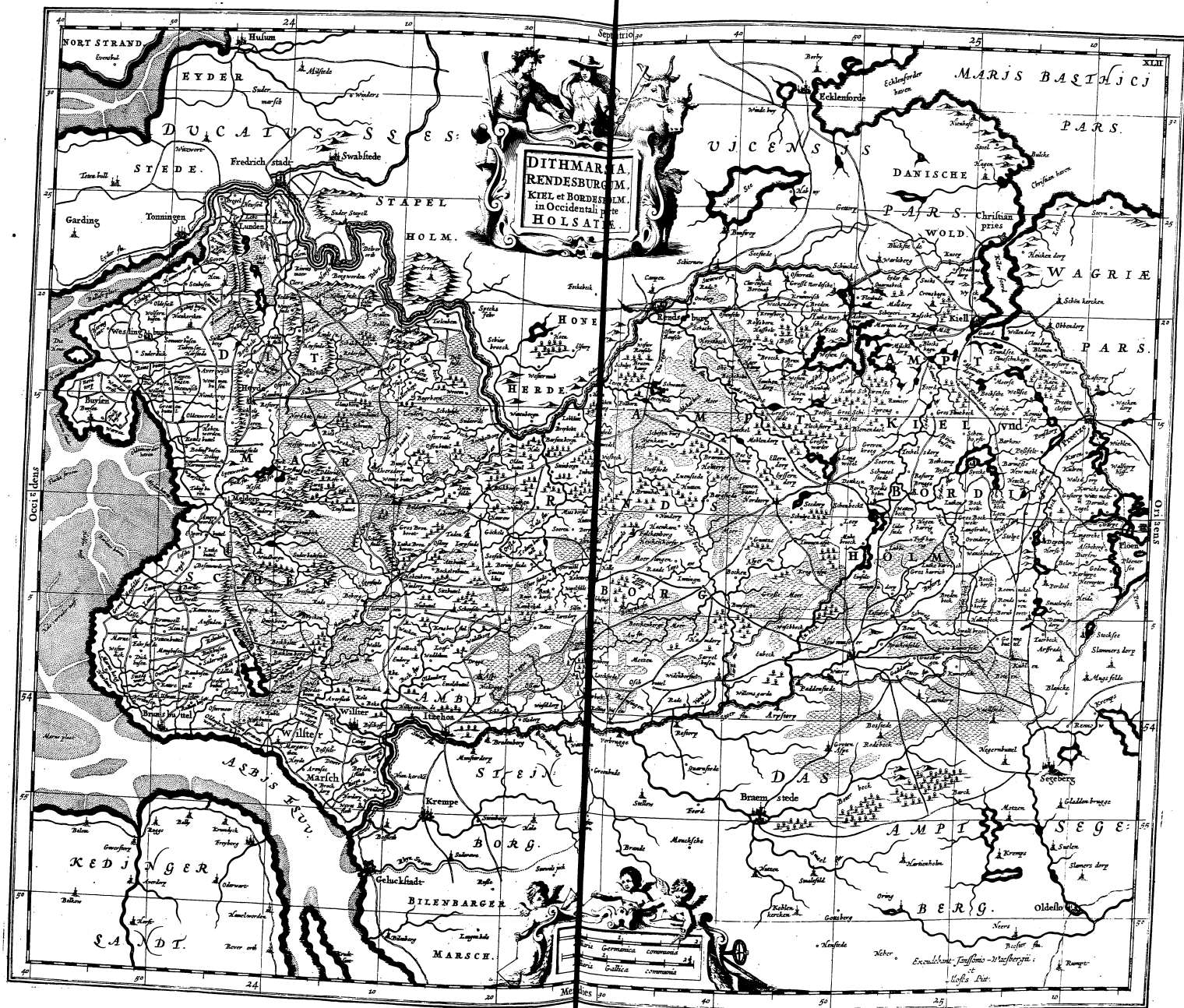
II. That this City, with a thankful acknowledgment of his Majesties good will towards them, shall remain in an humble devotion towards him, and shall to the utmost of their power further his good, and prevent any evil they know likely to happen to him.

III. That, for the greater manifestation of this their devotion, this City shall send a formal Deputation to his Majesty.

IV. That this City, in consideration of his Majesties being graciously pleased to receive them again into his favour, shall pay him 220000 Crowns, at four Terms; the first payment to be made immediately after the ratifying the Records; the second within six months after; and the third and last at the end of other six months.

V. That his Majesty shall quit all his pretensions to any Lands which this City at present holds, either in particular, or in common with the City of *Lubeck*; shall release the Ships (loose at







WAGRIA.
que est
PARS ORIENTALIS
HOLSATIAE.

Milvus	Germania communis
Milvus	Germania communis
Milvus	Germania communis

at *Glücksbald*; and shall ratify this Recess within eight days.

Five days after the signing of this *Interim Recess* (so called, because it leaves both parties in the same rights they had before) the Deputies of *Hamburg*, according to the tenure of the third Article, waited on the King of *Denmark* at his Quarters at *Pinneberg*, and being admitted to Audience, spoke to him in the following words:

"Most Serene and most Potent King, most Gracious Lord! Whereas your Royal Majesty is by the mercy of God happily arrived in this your Dukedom, and consequently in the neighbourhood of this City of *Hamburg*; and hath caused proposals consisting in three points, to be made to the said City, and hath desired their resolution thereupon: And whereas the first point, through the shortness of time, and for other reasons could not be determined at present; and that your Majesty hath therefore been graciously pleased to refer the same to an amicable agreement, or to a legal determination; and in the mean time to remove the displeasure you had taken against the said City; and by an *Interim Recess* graciously to agree, That as well the rights and pretensions of your Majesty, as of the said City, shall remain unprejudiced: The Burghermasters and Raedts Deputies do, in the name of themselves and of all the Burghers, appear before your Majesty, and do promise faithfully to observe the said *Interim Recess* in all its points and clauses; and particularly to bear your Majesty most humble and becoming devotion; That to the utmost of their power they will further your Majesties good, and hinder all ill and detriment from happening to your Majesty. Provided this City be left in a quiet and undisturbed enjoyment of their Neutrality and Commerce, and of all their Rights and Privileges: And that the Rights of his Imperial Majesty and the Empire be maintain'd.

To which the King returned them a kind answer, assuring them of his good will, and that he would punctually observe on his part this Agreement. Which done, within a few days after the Danish Army decamped.

Other Cities and Towns of note in *Storimar*, are, 1. *Glücksbald*, built and well fortified by King *Christian IV.* (who much delighted in its pleasant situation) and much improved by his successors. It gave sufficient proof of its strength soon after the first building of it; when it withstood and beat back the Emperors Army, and held out a siege of almost two years continuance, without yielding at last. It commands the passage of the *Elb*: so that it highly concerns the *Hamburgers* to be at peace with the King of *Denmark*, except they could make themselves masters of this Fort, and so secure a free passage both for their Men of War and Merchant-Ships. 2. *Crempe*, seated on a small river of the same name. This is reckoned one of the Keys of the Kingdom of *Denmark*; and in the *German* wars gave a good testimony of its so being; when in the years 1627 and 1628, it bravely resisted the fortunate *German* General, Count *Wallenstein*, for thirteen months together, and at last was yielded upon honourable terms. It owes the chief of its strength to King *Christian IV.* who fortified it with a wall and ditches. 3. *Irzeloea*, seated on the navigable River *Ster*, which furnishes it with plenty of fish, and all manner of merchandize from abroad. 4. *Bredenberg*, one of the neatest little Towns in all the King of *Denmark's* Territories; the ancient seat of the most noble Family of the *Rantzows*; very remarkable for the

stout resistance it made Count *Wallenstein*, who, having at last taken it by storm, put all the Garrison in it to the sword.

W A G R I A.

Wagria (or *Wagerland*) is almost girt round with the *Baltic* Sea and the two Rivers *Trave* and *Suentin*. The whole length of it, from *Odesjö* as far as the Village *Grottenbra*, amounts to near forty-eight *English* miles; and the breadth about twenty. It is observable, that the Princes of *Holstein*, tho they bear the Arms of every other Province in that Dukedom, have not the Arms of this Country (which are a Bulls-head) in their Coat. Perhaps, because the Arms of *Oldenburg* are thought sufficient to represent the whole Province. *Platerch* tells us, that the ancient *Cimbrians*, who first made an inroad into *Italy*, bore a Bull's-head Sable in a field Gules: which shews of how venerable an antiquity the Arms of *Wagerland* are, and how justly they may claim some place (if not the best) in the Coat of the Dukes of *Holstein*. It had its name from the *Wagrii*, a people in *Slavonia*, who made themselves masters of this Tract by conquest.

The chief Towns of *Wagerland*, are, 1. *Lubeck*, seated at the confluence of the Rivers *Trave* and *Billew*. From the pleasantness of its situation and stately buildings, some Etymologists have derived the name of this City; calling it *Lobeck* (or *ein eck des lobes*) i.e. an honourable Corner. Which agrees well with the account an ancient Poet gives us of it in these two verses:

*Angulus hac laudis dicta est urbs nomine prisca,
Angulam in hunc servus stuvius Travennae per aquas.*

It was rebuilt by *Adolph II.* Earl of *Holstein*, about the year 1143. But within a short while after grew so headstrong (upon the daily accession of new Privileges and Charters granted by this Prince and his successors) that it bid defiance to the Earls of *Holstein*, and became a Dukedom of its self. By the Emperor *Fredric I.* it was made a member of the *German* Empire. Upon his death the *Lubeckers* chose themselves another Duke; who, after he had govern'd them five years, was vanquish'd by the *Danes*; by whom the City was made tributary to their King. Out of this bondage it was rescued by the Emperor *Fredric* the second, who made it an Imperial City; in which state it continues to this day; and therefore (as a branch of the Empire of *Germany*) will be described elsewhere more at large. 2. *Segeberge*, seated on the River *Trave*, about sixteen *English* miles from *Lubeck*. It was anciently called *Aelberg*; which name, upon the building of the Castle on the top of the adjoining craggy mountain, was changed into *Segeberg*. The occasion of which (as *Helmoldus* tells the story) was this: When the Emperor *Lobarius* began to advise with some of his Counsellors, in the year 1134, about building some considerable fortification in these parts, which might check the growing power of the *Slaves* in this Province; and had at last pitch'd upon this hill as the most convenient place. One of the *Slavonian* Princes is said to have spoken prophetically to his Companion these words: *Seest thou the fortification on the top of these mountains? Let me tell thee, it will in a short time prove the yoke of the whole Land, &c.* Whence, say the *Danes*, the place to this day retains the name of *Segeberg*; which in *High Dutch* signifies, Behold the mountains. 3. *Odesjö*, a fair City on the River *Trave*,

Trave, in the middle way between *Segeberg* and *Lubeck*. In the year 1338, *John* Earl of *Wag-gerland* bought this City into his hands, at the rate of ten thousand Marks of Silver. After this it continued in a very flourishing condition till *Eric* of *Pomeran* (in his wars with the Dukes of *Sleswic* and *Holstein*) so defaced it, that it could never since recover its ancient glory.

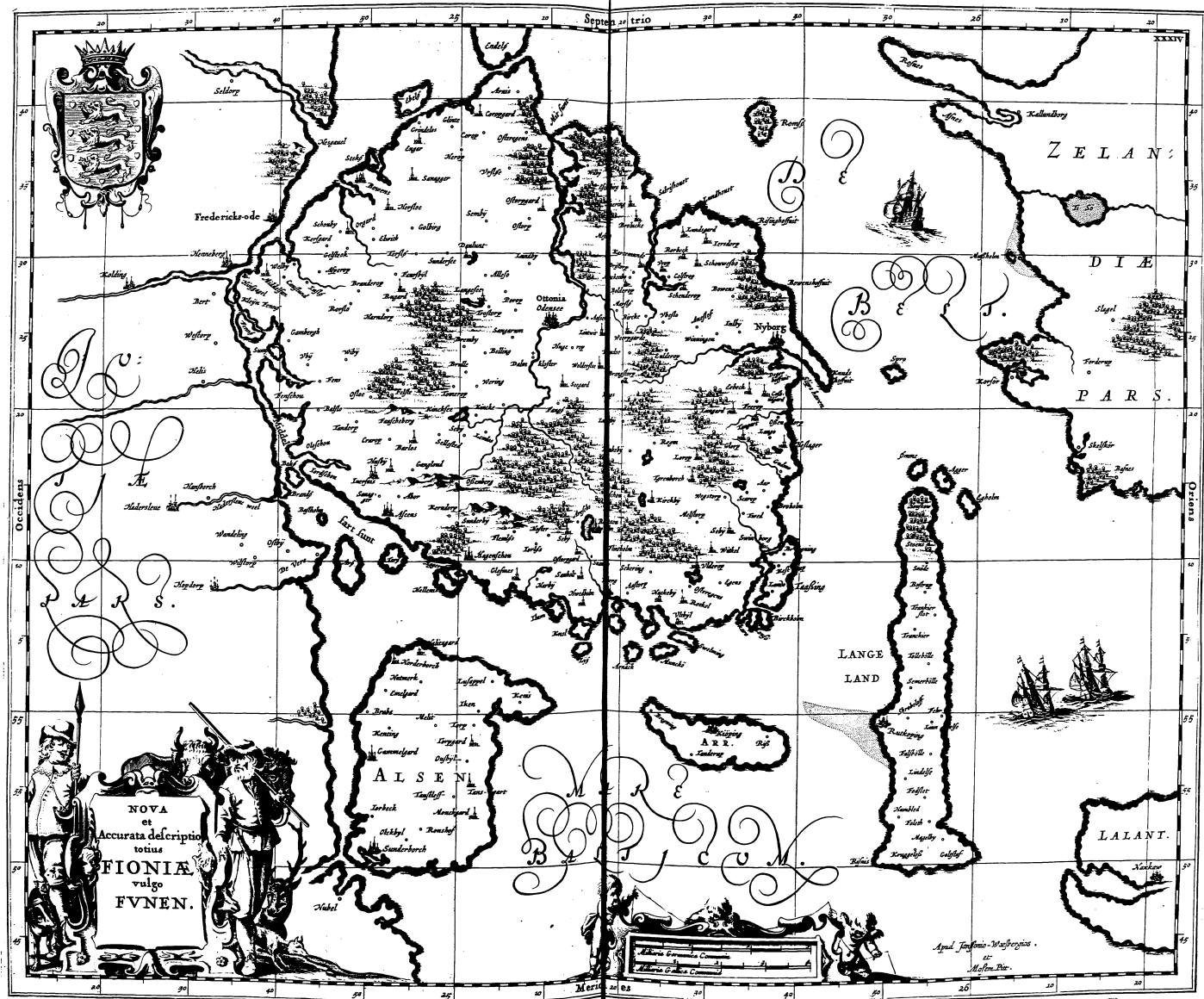
4. *Ploen*, an ancient City, seated in the middle of a Lake of the same name; by which (and a Castle built not many years since, by *Joachim Ernestus* Duke of *Holstein*, after the *Italian* fashion) it is exceedingly well fortified.

*Olden-
burgh.*

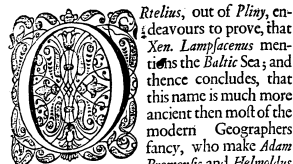
In the furthest corner of *Wag-gerland* lyes the ancient and famous County of *Oldenburgh*; divided from the rest of this Province by the River *Brockaw*. Tho' tis generally agreed on by all the *Danish* writers, that *Oldenburgh* (the chief

City in this County) was anciently the Metropolis of the *Wagrians* and *Venedi* (two warlike Nations, to whom the greatest part of *Mecklenburgh* was subject), yet we find no mention made of this place before the reign of *Ortho* the Great; who after he had vanquished the *Venedi*, founded here a Bishoprick (afterwards translated to *Lubeck*) and bestowed it on *Marcus* his Chancellor. It was formerly a Town of great trade, and exceeding populous, having been beautified with four Churches, three Monasteries, and five Gates; but since the Port was stop'd up, at the command of *Queen Margaret*, its glory has decreas'd daily, and (by the late dreadful fire, caus'd by thunder and lightning, which hath laid waste the best and greatest part of the City) 'tis now become much less considerable then it was before.





The Baltic Sea.



Direlius, out of Pliny, endeavours to prove, that *Xen. Lamplacenus* mentions the *Baltic Sea*; and thence concludes, that this name is much more ancient than most of the modern Geographers fancy, who make *Adam Bremenfis* and *Helmoldus* the first Authors that call this Bay *Mare Balticum*. But he that shall take the pains to examine Pliny's words upon this occasion, will find, that no mention is there made of the *Baltic Sea*, but of an Island only in these parts called *Baltia*; which is now named *Schonen*: but is not, as the Ancients imagined, an Isle. From this *Baltia* some think this Sea was called *Baltic*; as the *Adriatic Sea* had its name from the Island *Adria*. Others, more happily, derive the word from the Danish and English word *Belt*: because *Seeland* and the greater part of the King of Denmark's dominions are girt round with this Bay. And to this day the inhabitants of *Seeland* and *Funen* call that small arm of the Sea which part these two Islands die *Belt*.

Pomponius Mela, who is followed by many late writers of good note, calls the *Baltic Sea* *Sinus Codanus*: which signifies no more than the *Danish Bay*. For *Codanus*, *Godanus*, or *Gedanus*, is the same with *Danus*; and *Gedanus* and *Daniscum* signify the same thing. And indeed when we consider what a large portion of the *Danish* Kingdom is encircled with the Sea; we shall find reason enough (notwithstanding the late stirrer of several Islands to the *Suedes*) to let it still retain this its ancient name. The most considerable Islands in the *Baltic*, which at this day are subject to the Crown of Denmark, are these that follow:

F I O N I A.

Fionia or *Funen*, is parted from *Jutland* by a breadth of the *Baltic*, called by the inhabitants *Medelsfarfund*, about one German mile in breadth; and separated from *Seeland* by the *Beltisland*, or *Baltic Bay*.

The length of it, from East to West, is about ten German miles; and the breadth eight. *Saxo Grammaticus*, *Lysander*, and most of the *Danish* writers, make this the pleasantest piece of ground in the King of Denmark's dominions. Whence they have fancied the Island had its name from *fine*; which has the same signification in *Funen* as in *England*. Tho *Adam Bremenfis* may seem to favour this conceit, in calling the inhabitants of this Island *Finni*, and their Country *Finnigia*; and *Postanus* allows the etymology; yet methinks *Stephanus* guesses better at the derivation of the word, when he fetches it from *Fion*, which in the old *Runic* monuments signifies a neck of land rent from the continent; and such any man will suppose *Funen* to be, who shall have the opportunity of viewing that slender Frith which at this day separates that Island from *Jutland*.

The Island abounds with all manner of Corn, especially Wheat and Rye, which is hence yearly transported in great quantities into other Na-

tions. Besides, the Natives have generally great Herds of Cattle, and very good Breeds of Horses. The Woods, which overspread almost the whole Island, are exceedingly well stored with Deer, Hares, and Foxes.

The chief City in this Island is *Ottenslee*; which some will have to take its name from *Woden*, the great God of the ancient Danes, whom some of their Historians call *Orthin* or *Odin*. Others, more probably, say, 'twas built by the Emperor *Otho* the first, who overrun a great part of the *Danish* Kingdom, and left his name in more places than one. This opinion seems to be confirmed by a Letter written by the Emperor *Otho* the third, about the year 987, in which this City is named *Urbs Othonefugensis*. *Postanus* thinks, 'twas first built by King *Harald*; who, to testify his gratitude to the forementioned Emperor *Otho* the first (by whose procurement he was converted to Christianity) called it *Otronia* or *Ottenslee*, and his son *Suenatto*. This City is seated in the very center of the Island, and therefore in a fit place for the Sessions of the Nobility and Magistracy, which are yearly held in this place. As were likewise the General Assemblies of the Kingdom of Denmark, before the year 1660. The buildings in this Town are generally well built, and the streets uniform. Besides other public buildings, there are in it two fair Churches; whereof one is dedicate to St. *Cnut*, the other to St. *Francis*. Not far from the former of these stands a stately Town-Hall, upon a very spacious Market-place; where King *Frederic II.* renew'd the ancient League between the Crown of Denmark and the Dukes of *Holstein* and *Sleswic* in the year 1575. When the Quire of St. *Cnut*'s Church was repair'd in the year 1582, the workmen found, in a Vault, a Copper Coffin gilded and adorn'd with precious stones; upon which was writ the following inscription in old Latin-Gothic characters:

*Jam celo ratus summo cum rege Canutus
Martyr, in aurata rex atque reconditur arca:
Et pro Justitie sacris Oculis inque;
Ut Christum vita sic morte sateno in ipsa.
Traditur a proprio, sicut Deus ipse, ministro.
A.D. MLXXXVI.*

Other Towns of note in *Funen*, are 1. *Bowens*, a Port-Town of good trade, seated on the West-side of the Island, at the North-end of *Medelsfarfund*. 2. *Middlefar*, seated on the common passage from this Island to *Holding* in *Jutland*. On the thirtieth of January in the year 1658. *Carolus* the thirtieth of January in the year 1658. *Carolus* King of Sweden, led his Army over the *Danish* Ice to this place; and having routed the *Danish* Forces that opposed him, made himself absolute master of the whole Isle of *Funen*. 3. *Afens*, not far from the mountains of *Offenburgh*, where *John de Hoy*, *Nicholas Fechtenburgh*, and *Gustavus Troll*, Bishop of *Upland*, were slain; and their Army, commanded by *Christopher Earl of Oldenburgh*, totally routed by *John Rantzau*, King *Christian* the third's General, who level'd this City to the ground. 4. *Foborg*, upon the Southern coast of the Island. It was once burnt by the unruly soldiers of *Christian* the third; whilst *Odenfee* (adhering to the captive Prince *Christian* the second, who at that time was kept close prisoner at *Sunderburg*) redeem'd it from the like fate by a large

large sum of money. 5. *Swynborg*, over against the Island of *Langland*. From this place *Carolus Gustavus*, King of *Sweden*, led his Army over the ice into *Seeland*, in the year 1658. 6. *Nyborg* the usual passage from *Funen* into *Seeland*. This City was first fortified with a Moat and Bulwarks by King *Christian* the third. It is very memorable for the battle fought by the Confederates of the Empire *Brandenburgh*, *Poland*, and the *Low Countries*, in the year 1659, against the *Swedes*; who in that engagement were overthrown, and utterly routed out of *Funen*.

Besides the great Towns mentioned, there are in *Funen* a great number of fair Villages; among which they reckon up no less than 264 Parish Churches.

SEELAND.

Seeland (the largest, fairest, and most fruitful Island in the *Baltic Sea*) lies to the East of *Funen*, from which 'tis separated (as we have said before) by the *Belt*. On the other side it is parted from *Schonen* by a small Frith, call'd by the inhabitants *Oresundt*, thro which pass all the Merchant-ships which traffick in the *Baltic*. The breadth of it is about twelve *German* miles, and the length eighteen.

This Island is undoubtedly the ancient *Codanonia*, mentioned by *Pomponius Mela*; which signifies the same thing as the more modern words *Dania* and *Denmark*. Most of the *Danish* Etymologists derive *Seeland* from *Sædland* or *Seedland*, from the plenty of Corn which this Country affords. Others, with greater probability, make the word signify no more than an Island, or piece of ground encompassed with the Sea. Whence *Saxo Grammaticus*, and several other ancient Historians, call it *Seelandia*, from the old *Danish* word *Sia* or *Sio*, which is now turned into *See*, and in our *English* tongue corrupted into *Sea*. In most, or all of the ancient *Runic* Manuscripts it is called *Sælunder*, or the Sea-Grove. The *Edda Islandorum* calls it *Sælund*; and gives us this account of the first original of the word: "There was formerly a certain King in *Sweden*, named *Gylf*, who promised an *Asian* Sorcerer (call'd *Gefion*, who had pleased him with her melody) as much land as four Oxen could plow up in one day and a night. Whereupon, the old Hag brings four of her sons out of North *Jutland*; and turning them into as many Oxen, caused them to plow up a large and deep furrow round this piece of ground. Which when the Sea had fill'd up, the land became an Isle, and was call'd *Seeland*. *Stephanus* thinks *Protony* alluded to this fable when, speaking of some Islands in the *Baltic*, he said, *Τὸν δὲ τὴν Κυβερνήτην ὑπερῶν, ἄλλα τρεῖς νῆμα ἄλλωθεν ἐκδομέναι*, i. e. Beyond the *Cimbrian Chersonese* ly three Islands called *Alocia*; from the Greek word *ἄλωξ*, a furrow.

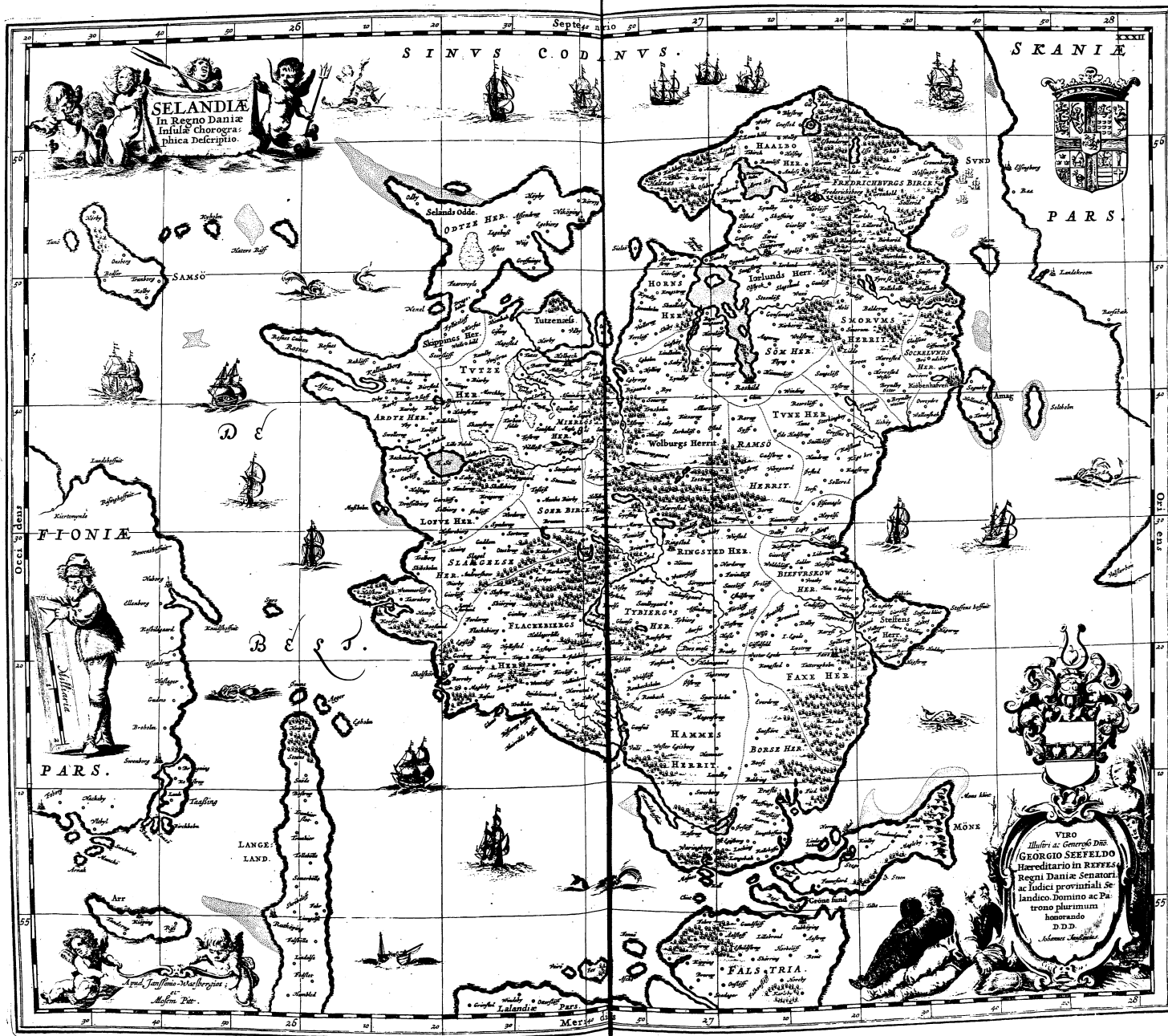
Copenhagen.

Copenhagen (the Metropolis of this Island, and of the whole Kingdom of *Denmark*) is seated on the East of *Seeland*, upon the Sea-shore. The *Danes* call it *Kiøbenhavn*, and the *Germans* *Copenhaven*; both which words are corruptions of *Kiøbmanshafen*, i. e. *Portus Mercatorum*, as *Saxo* somewhere calls it. *Mejerus*, a learned *Frisian* writer, derives the name of this City from *Coppen* (which, says he, in the *Frisian* language signifies *James*) and *Haven*, q. d. *St. James's Haven*. But there is very little or no grounds for any such derivation. About the year 1163, *Axel* Wide surnamed *Snare* (*Saxo* calls him *Abelson*) Archbishop of *Denmark*, built a considerable fortification in the Island in which now stands the Castle. This was

call'd after his name *Axel-buys*; and was a good defence to the whole Island against the daily incursions of Pyrats. Under the protection of this Fort several Fishermen, and others that traded this way, used to harbour their Ships in security. This caused a continual concourse of the Natives, who resorted hither to furnish the Vessels with such provisions as their Country afforded; and in a short time laid the first rude draughts of a City, which at this day (for strength, trade, beauty and bulk) is not surpass'd by many in *Europe*. Most of the *Danish* Kings, especially *Christian IV.* have been very active in beautifying this City, with an University, Churches, Walls, Ditches, &c. *James Ecland* Bishop of *Roschild*, was the first that granted any privileges to it, in the year 1254. Thence his successor *Ignatius* confirm'd; and they were afterwards considerably enlarged by King *Waldemar* in the year 1341; and *Eric of Pomerania* in the year 1371. *Christophor* of *Bavaria* endowed it with Municipal immunities, like the other Cities of *Denmark*, in the year 1443. All which were confirm'd by the large Charters of *Christian* the third and *Frideric* the second. The Citizens houses till within these few years, were very mean and low, most of them patcht up of wood and mortar; but of late they are grown more curious and expensive in Architecture, and few of their streets are without a considerable number of fair brick buildings. The Cathedral Church, dedicate to *St. Mary*, is beautified with a noble Copper Spire, built at the charges of King *Christian* the fourth. The Advowance of this Church belongs to the Professors in the University. The Market-place is exceeding spacious, and no small ornament to the Town. Besides these, the Kings Palace, the Arsenal (which perhaps excels anything that *Europe* affords in this kind), the Observatory, or *Runde taarn*, and the adjoining University Church and Library, the Exchange, &c. are places richly worth the seeing, and deserve a larger description than the bounds of this short account of the whole Kingdom will permit. The City is governed by four Burgomasters, one whereof is Regent or President for his life. This honour is at present conferr'd on that worthy and learned person *P. John Resenius*, Professor of Moral Philosophy in the University at *Copenhagen*, and Counsellor to the present King of *Denmark*. With him, most of the other Professors of note in this University (as *William Langius*, formerly Tutor to this present King *Christian* the fifth; *Erdmus Vindingius*, Professor of History and Geography and Author of the *Academia Hafniensis*, which gives us an exact account of all the famous men that have ever flourished in this University; *Thomas* and *Erasmus Bartholini*, both well known by their incomparable works, &c.) are at this day Ministers of State in the Court of *Denmark*, and keep only the title and pension of Professors, without being tyed to the performance of the duties.

Amagge or *Anagria* (called by the *Danes* *Amager*) is a small Island on the East of *Copenhagen*, about six *English* miles in length, and four in breadth. It is wonderfully well stock'd with all manner of Fowl and Venison, has in it plenty of Corn, and furnishes the Market at *Copenhagen* with weekly supplies of Milk, Butter, Cheese, &c. whence some think it had its name; for *Amagge*, in the old *Teutonic* dialect, signifies a Granary or Storehouse; and thence *Draufomagum*, *Boberomagum*, *Durumagum*, *Neomagum*, and other places in *Germany*, had their name. And from hence the *French* *Magazin* and *Italian* *Magasino* have in this original. There are two Parish Churches in this Isle. The one called by the inhabitants *Hollerder Byes Kircke*, i. e. the *Dutch* Church; from a Colony





Chivalry, tho' afterwards it grew to be the most famous University (for all manner of Learning) in the King of Denmark's Dominions. In the year 1621, the Nunnery of *Mariæbo* in *Laland* was demolished; the Nuns thrown out, and the lands given to this University. But at this day these and all other the large Territories which have been heretofore settled upon the University at *Sor*, are in the present King's hand: who threatens daily to reestablish an University in this place, but without any show of performance. His resolutions I suppose, (if ever he had any such) are in a great measure stopped by the continual dissipation of the Professors at *Copenhagen*; who think it very inconsistent with their Interest to have another University erected in their neighbourhood. For heretofore, when any Professor's place was vacant at *Copenhagen*, 'twas odds but some brisk fellow from *Sor* carried it.

Anderskøw. 6. *Anderskøw* or *Andersbøw*, formerly a great Monastery, now a strong Castle about an *English* mile from *Slagen*. It is seated in a level Champaign Country, and delicately well built. Here *Frederic* the second dyed A. D. 1548.

Kallenberg. 7. *Kallenberg* (which *Saxo Grammaticus* calls *Kallunda* and *Mewsius Callundeburgum*) was formerly a small Village inhabited by none but Fishermen, and by them named *Herwig*. But *Efbern Suare* (brother to *Abalon Hoide*, abovementioned) turned it into a City about the year 1158, or (as some) 1171, and beautified it with a Castle, Church and several other public buildings. 'Tis at present a Town of good Trade, having the convenience of as safe an harbour for Ships as any haven in Denmark.

Korfor. 8. *Korfor*, so called from the multitude of Crof-fes erected formerly in the place, out of the abundance of superstitious Zeal in the Inhabitants.

Koge. 9. *Koge*, *Coagum*: a small but very populous and rich City; about sixteen *English* miles from *Copenhagen*. It is a place much thronged with Corn-merchants and Fishmongers; the Commodities, pleasant situation, &c. of this City are expressed by *Westbøw* a Danish Poet, in three Distichs thus:

Fluctibus Arctoi sat bella Coagia ponti
Alluor: hinc campus, subjacet, inde nemus.
Quæ sive utilitas, agri emolumenta, fretique
Commoda sunt, meus hæc omnia civis habet.
Dat glandes & ligna nemus, dat pascua campus,
Piscibus & variis meritis unda beat.

L A L A N D.

Laland or *Lawland* (so called from its low situation) is an Island about 32 *English* miles in length, and 20 in breadth. It is divided from *Seeland* by the narrow bay *Grønsønd*, or (as some Maps call it) *Gøldersønd*: and from *Falster* by a bay much narrower than the former.

It is a very fruitful Country, and affords great quantities of Corn, and good store of rich pasture.

Lyfander says of this Dukedome, That there are in it four several *Genes* (I suppose he means *Herits* or Lordships) and as many Cities. The great Towns, or Cities he speaks of, are: 1. *Naschow* or *Nachscow*; which (together with the adjoining Monastery) was stormed, taken and burnt by the *Lubeckers* in the year 1510. 2. *Salscoping*. 3. *Nesbødh*, once famous for a noble Monastery built here A.D. 1286. 4. *Lævnscoping*. Besides these, the Nunnery of *Mariæbo* (spoken of before in the Description of *Sor*) was as considerable and

remarkable a place as any in the whole Island.

Other Islands, less considerable, in the Baltic Sea.

What Islands have been late delivered up by the *Danes* into the hands of the *Sweedes* upon the Ratification of Treaties and Leagues, may be seen in the description of *Sweeland*. Of those that remain still in the hands of the King of Denmark; these we have mentioned, are of most note: and 'twere irrational to expect a particular account of those millions of diminutive Islands that lay scattered along the Coasts of *Seeland*, *Schonen*, *Jutland*, &c. Among them, these following are all that are worth the taking notice of.

1. *Falster*: a considerable Island adjoining to *Laland*. It is not above 16 *English* miles in length, but so fruitful, that it furnishes not only its own Inhabitants, but a great part of the Dukedom of *Mecklenburg*, and several other parts of *Germany*, with Corn. Great Towns of note in this Island are: 1. *Nyccoping*; which *Dr. Heylin* (for I cannot find that he borrowed the expression from any other writer) calls *the Naples of Denmark*, from the pleasantness of its situation and uniformity in building. 2. *Stabecoping*; a place of some Trade, upon the account of Passengers, who come daily this way betwixt *Seeland* and *Germany*.

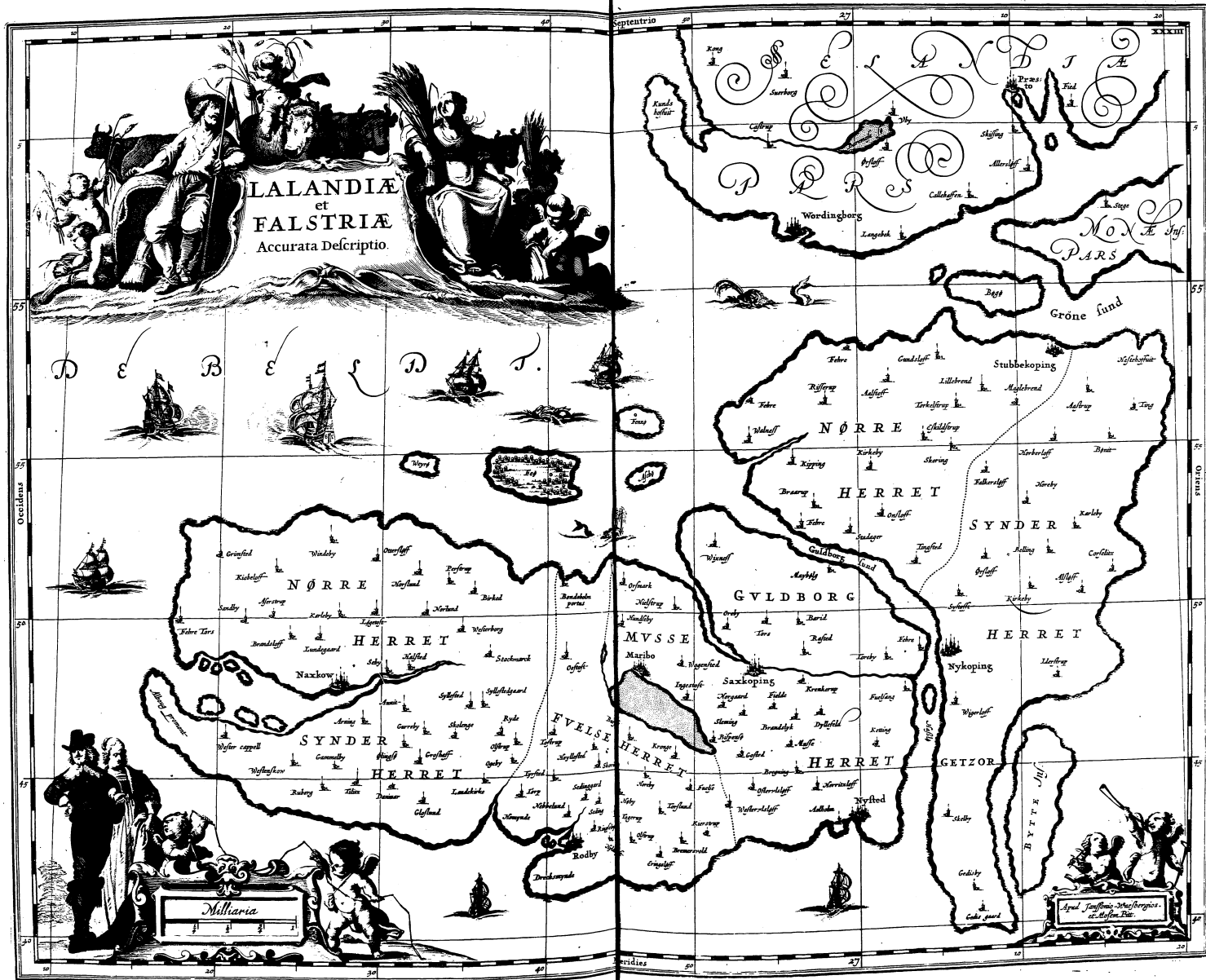
2. *Mons* or *Meun*. A chalky Island to the North-east of *Falster*: which serves for a good Landmark to the *German* Vessels that trade in these Seas. *Lyfander* tells us, 'twas formerly annex'd to the fipend of the Danish Admiral, as a place the fittest of any in the King of Denmark's Dominions for such an Officer to reside in. The only Town of consequence in it is *Steege*; which bravely withstood the *Lubeckers* in the year 1510, and forced them at last to retreat.

3. *Langeland*. A narrow Island betwixt *Funen* Land and *Laland*; about 28 *English* miles in length and only 8 in breadth, whence it has its name. There are in it 16 Parish Churches, and a great number of Noblemen's houses; besides the impregnable Castle of *Traneke*, which is admirably well provided with all manner of Military ammunition. *Ratocoping* may pass for (what the Danish writers will needs have it to be) a City: but 'tis a miserably poor one, and in no great probability of being advanced by Traffic.

4. *Alsén*. A small Isle over against the Bay of *Flensburg* in the Dukedom of *Sleswic*; of which it is a part, and therefore only subject to the Kings of Denmark as Dukes of *Sleswic*. The learned and Noble Danish Antiquary *Rantzow*, thinks the *Elysi Arii* and *Manimi* mentioned by *Tacitus*, were the ancient Inhabitants of this Island, *Ar* and *Mewn*; and that these three Isles have the same names at this day (saying only a small alteration, such as may easily happen in the revolution of a few years) which they had when that learned *Roman* wrote his Annals. This Isle is every where either exceeding fruitful or very pleasant: and so populous, that several thousands of stout fighting men have been raised in a very short time out of its four Towns and thirteen Parishes. *Sunderburg* (heretofore the usual seat of the Dukes of *Sleswic*, and to this day one of the strongest holds which the King of Denmark has) is the chief Town in the Island.

5. *Femerén* or *Fimbria* (which some curious Etymologists have ventured to derive from *Cimbria*) is a small Island on the Coast of *Wageland*, from which it is separated by a very narrow channel. This piece of ground has always been looked upon as one of the most considerable keys of *Denmark*.





mark; either to exclude or let in the Imperialists. And therefore *Christian IV.* thought the *German*s would do him less harm in running over all *Jutland*, then if they should make themselves masters of this Isle. Whereupon, in the year 1628, he took care to put strong Garrisons into every place of moment in it; and to fortifie the old Castles and Towns which his predecessors had suffer'd to decay, and sleighted.

On the coasts of *Jutland*, between the Promontory of *Schaghen* and the Isle *Funen*, there are several little inconsiderable Islands, as *Anholt*, *Lesso*, *Niding*, *Helm*, *Tune*, *Kittbold*, *Jordbold*, *Samsøe*, &c. Among these, the three first are notorious for the dangerous Sands which lye round them; whence us an ordinary proverb, used by the inhabitants here,

Lesso, Niding, and Anholt
Maecten dat menich stuerman niet werdt oldt, i.e.
Lesso, Niding, and Anholt
 Hinder shipmen to grow old.

Of the ancient Inhabitants of the Isles in the Baltic Sea.

THAT the *Dani Insulares* (as *Saxo* calls the inhabitants of these Isles) are all of one extraction, will be found a question very disputable, after a diligent enquiry into the different customs and languages used in several of the Baltic Islands. *Ptolemy*, we know, and most of the ancient Geographers, make *Scandinavia*, or *Schonen*, an Island; but of so large a bulk, that *Alex Terentius Orbis*, is one of the most usual names they give it. This, *Pliny* tells us, was by some of the Greek writers call'd *Baltia*; which by *Pytheas* is corrupted into *Basilis*. Now, if we grant, that this Continent (which the ancients mistook for an Island) were named *Baltia* ^{or Basilis}, because the noblest Isle in this Sea (which seems the most probable conjecture), then it will not by any means be irrational to conclude, that in all probability the inhabitants of all these pe-

tic Islands were only so many small branches of the old warlike Nation of the *Goths*, whom the most learned Historians place in *Schonen*.

But then 'twill still be doubted, whether these *Goths* were not a Nation wholly distinct from the *Getes* mention'd in *Jutland*; and consequently, whether those that inhabit the Isles upon the coasts of *Schonen*, be not descended of another stock then they that live near *Jutland* can reasonably pretend to. *Pontanus* is exceeding angry at *Jornandes*, *Orosius*, and others, for affirming, that the *Getes* and *Goths* are one and the same people; but, as I conceive, without any great reason. For if (as is prov'd in the description of *Jutland*) the *Getes* gave name to a great part of the *Cimbrian Chersense*; these two Nations are casilier brought together then he is aware of. And could we once persuade *Pontanus*'s admirers to grant, that the *Gete*, *Gute*, *Vite* or *Wite*, were the ancient inhabitants of *Jutland* (as seems plain from the arguments and authorities of learned men before alledged), 'twill be no difficult matter to evince the truth of this assertion, That the *Getes* and *Goths*, together with all the inhabitants of the *Danish Isles* in the *Baltic Sea*, are originally one and the same Nation. 'Tis true, in some small Islands in and near the *Finnic Gulph*, the people use a language altogether unintelligible to a true *Dane* or *Swede*; but further westward, the languages spoken in all the *Baltic* Islands, are so many dialects of the *Gothic* tongue. And the old *Runic* monuments, daily found in most Provinces of the *Danish* and *Swedish* dominions, prove manifestly the same words and characters to have been used in *Schonen*, *Jutland*, and the intermediate Islands.

From the difference of manners, customs, habits, &c. in these Isles; no more can be concluded then, that some, wanting the convenience of traffick and correspondence with other Nations, are forced to content themselves with the rude and ungentele ways of living, taught them by their homebred Ancestors; whilst others, who lay more in the road of Merchant-ships, must needs insensibly admit of a daily alteration both in manners and language.



NORWAY.

Name.



Where the *Edda*, and other Mythological writers, tell us of *Nor* (son of their God *Thor*, & Grand-child to *Woden*) the first grand Captain of the *Norwegians*, from whom that people, and their Country, fetch (say these men) their names; merits just as much credit as the *Danish* stories of their King *Dan*. The truth is, *Norway* (or *Norweg*, as the *Germans* write it; whence the *Latin* word *Norwegia*) is only *via few trāitus septentrionalis*, i. e. a country situated towards the North. Hence in the *Danish*, *Swedish*, & *Norwegian* tongues, 'tis to this day called *Norrike*, or the *Northern Kingdom* (*Pliny's Nerigon* is only a corruption of this word); and we find, that anciently all the *Cimbrian Kingdoms* were named *Regna Nordica*. By *Helmoldus* the *Norwegians* are called *Nordlindi*; which word is not (as *Dr. Heylin* guesses) derived from the *Dutch* word *Nord* and the *French lieu*; for *Nordlind* or *Nordleut*, in the *Northern* languages, is no more than the people of the North. In the Preface to our King *Alfred's Anglo-Saxonic* Version of *Orfius*, this Kingdom is tiled *Norrimania*, the Country of the *Normans*. *Adam Bremenfis* calls it *Normannia*. And we know *Rollo* brought his *Normans* out of these parts.

Bounds.

This Kingdom is bounded on the South with the *Baltic* Straits, which separate it from *Futland*; on the North and West with the *Northern Ocean*; on the East with *Sweden* and *Lapland*. The whole length of it (from the *Baltic* Sea as far as *Finnmark*) is reckoned to be about 210 *German* miles.

Soil.

The Eastern part of *Norway* is very thin people; being a Country of nothing but inaccessible and craggy mountains. Towards the South there is greater store of inhabitants; who dwell in pleasant valleys, encircled with barren and rocky hills. The rest of the Country is overpread with woods; which furnish the greatest part of *Europe* with *Deal-boards*, and *Masts* for *Ships*.

The long ridge of high mountains which divide this Kingdom from *Sweden* (where *Pliny* places his *Sevo*) are continually covered with snow; whence intolerable sharp winds are sent down into the valleys beneath, which by this means become desolate and unfruitful. But more Southerly, and all along the Western coasts, the air is much more temperate, and would be healthful enough, if not corrupted by the putrefaction and stench of a certain kind of Rats (called by the inhabitants *Lenner*) which infect the whole Country with the Epidemical disease of the Jaundice and a giddiness in the head, which is most especially apt to seize on strangers, unacquainted with the danger, and unarm'd against the distemper.

Commodities.

In the valleys there are good breeds of Cattel; inasmuch that the inhabitants export yearly great quantities of Butter, Tallow, Hides, and Cheese. Their chief Grain is Barley. The woods afford Timber, Pitch, Tar, rich Furs, and great store of Filberds. Besides these commodities, they have a good trade from their Stock-fish and Train-Oyl, which is vend'd all *Europe* over.

Christian IV. King of *Denmark*, employ'd fe-

veral Artifics in the search of some Silver and Gold Mines, in the year 1623. And 'tis said, some lumps of the Ore of both those Metals were here found and presented to the King. But this discovery never turned to any considerable account. For the Natives were utterly ignorant of the art of refining any kind of Minerals themselves; and altogether unwilling to admit into their Country any foreigners skill'd in that way.

The inhabitants are much of the same complexion and humour with the *Danes*. They are generally effeminate and lazy; not so much thro any fault of nature, as the want of employment. For the King of *Denmark* seldom or never makes use of this Nation in his wars; as being loth to trust them with arms. The ancient *Norwegians* (as well as their neighbours) are every where reported to have been notorious Pyrats; but at this day the Seas are scarce in any place in *Europe* so secure from robbery as on the coasts of *Norway*. The cause of this alteration can scarce be attributed to the modern honesty of this Kingdom, so far excelling that of former days; but rather to the general poverty and mean spiritings of the inhabitants, into which the *Danish* rigor has forc'd them. For they have little or no Shipping allow'd them; and are too low kep to pretend to hector and domineer.

Their diet is (what they furnish other Countries with) Stockfish, and a coarse kind of Butter and Cheese. Their usual drink, *Rosbeck Ale*. In this they commonly drink three draughts; one in remembrance of God, the second to the Kings health, and the third to the Queens.

As *Norway* is still reckon'd a distinct Kingdom from *Denmark*; so it had formerly its own independent Kings, who sometimes Lorded it over the Monarchs of *Sweden* and *Denmark*. Nevertheless, the account we have of these Princes (from the *Chronica Norwagica*, published by *Johannes Slangenus* in the year 1594, and *Olaus Wormius* in the year 1632, and the relations of other Historians) is so imperfect and incredible, that 'twould but waste paper to give the Reader a catalogue of them. The last King that sway'd the Scepter in *Norway*, was *Haquin*; who in the year 1262 married *Margaret* eldest daughter of *Waldemar III.* King of *Denmark*; thereupon uniting the two Kingdoms. Now, tho King *Haquin* had only one son by Queen *Margaret* (*Olaus*, for some while King of *Denmark*) who dyed without issue; yet the *Danes*, having once got footing in this Kingdom, were resolv'd to keep their station; and therefore, to secure themselves from all future insurrection and rebellion, they immediately put strong Garrisons into all the Cities and Forts of consequence in the Nation.

Since it is manifest (from the language, manners, &c. of the inhabitants) that the *Norwegians* and *Islanders* are both one people; & that the Reader misses in the general description of *Norway*, may possibly be met with in the following one of *Island*.

The Prefecture of Mafterland.

This Prefecture takes its name from the chief City in it; seated on a rocky Peninsula, and famous for its great trade in Herrings and other Sea-fish.

This City (with two more of less note, *Conogel* and *Oddaenald*) and the adjoining Country are commanded by the strong Castle of *Babus*, now in the hands of the King of *Sweden*. It was first built by *Haquin IV.* King of *Norway*, about the year 1209, upon a steep rock on the bank of the river *Trollet*; and was then look'd upon as the best Fort that King had in his dominions, and a sufficient Bulwark against the daily assaults and incursions of the *Swedes* and *Westro-Goths*.

The Bishopricks of Anflo and Staffenger, with the Province of Aggerhusf.

Anflo (called by the inhabitants *Opflo*, and by some *Latin* writers *Alfoa*) was first built by King *Harold*, cotemporary with *Sueno Eshtrius* King of *Denmark*, who frequently kept his residence in this City. Here is held the chief Court of Judicature for all *Norway*; wherein all causes and suits at Law are heard and determined before the Governor, who acts as Vice-Roy of the Kingdom. The Cathedral is dedicated to *St. Alard*; who took great pains in preaching the Gospel to the *Norwegian* Heathens. In this Church is to be shew'n the Sword of *Haquin*, one of their ancientest Kings; a signal testimony (if the stories they tell of it be true) of the strength and admirable art of some *Norwegians* of former ages. The hilt of it is made of Crystal, curiously wrought and polished; whence *Olaus Magnus* will needs conclude, that the use of Crystal was anciently much more ordinary in *Norway* than it is at this day in any part of *Europe*.

Not far from *Opflo*, on the other side of the Bay, stands the Castle of *Aggerhusen*; memorable for the brave resistance it made the *Swedish* Army in the year 1567, which besieg'd it hotly eighteen weeks together; but was at last beat off, and forced shamefully to retire.

About twenty *German* miles Northward of *Opflo*, lies the City *Hammar*; formerly a Bishops See, but at present under the jurisdiction of the Bishop of *Opflo*. Near this Town is the Island *Moss*; where (if we believe *Olaus Magnus*) a huge and monstrous Serpent appears constantly before any grand alteration in the State or Government of the Kingdom of *Norway*.

In this Province, besides the places already mentioned, stand the Cities of *Tonsberg*, *Fridericstadi*, *Saltsburgh*, and *Scheen*; which have all a considerable trade from the Copper and Iron Mines, which herabouts are in greater numbers than in any other part of the Kingdom. 'Twas in this Province that the Silver Mines (mention'd before) were first discover'd at the expence of *Christian IV.* King of *Denmark*; and some of the adjoining hills are by the neighbourhood to this day called *Silber-bergen*, or the mountains of Silver.

To these Mines, and the lofty woods of Pines and Fir-trees (with which this part of the Country is overpread) the Kingdom of *Norway* owes the greatest part of, if not all, its trade.

The City of *Staffenger* lies in 59 degrees (some reckon 60, and a great many odd minutes) of Latitude. It is seated in a Peninsula, upon a great Bay of the Northern Ocean full of small Islands, and guarded by the strong Castle of *Doebrick*.

DENMARK.

which lies about two *English* miles from the Town. In Civil affairs this City is under the jurisdiction of the Governor of *Bergenhusen*; tho it has its own peculiar Bishop constantly residing in the Town. The whole Bishopricks is divided into the several Districts of *Stangerflees*, *Dalame*, *Jaren*, *Lifterleen*, *Mandalsleen*, *Nedensleen*, and *Abgdelag*. *Thomas Conrad Hoegger* (Bishop of this Diocese in the year 1641) took the pains to collect a great number of *Runic* inscriptions, which lay scatter'd up and down his Diocese; some of which are published by *Wormius*, who further informs us, that this *Conrad's* predecessor (whose name he omits) writ a Topographical description of this City and Bishopricks.

Beyond the Bay appears the Island *Schutenes*, three *German* miles in length, but scarce half an one in breadth. Between this Island (which has in it several considerable Villages) and the Continent runs up a narrow Frith to *Bergen*; which is called by the *Dutch* Merchants, *T' Lielt van Bergen*.

To the Bishopricks of *Staffenger* belongs the Province of *Tillemarch*, or *Tylenmarch*; which gave *Procopius* the first grounds for that assertion of his, which he defends with so great vehemency, viz. that *Scandinavia* (taken in its largest extent, of which *Tylenmarch* is a very inconsiderable part) is the ancient *Thule*. The Parish of *Hollen* in this Province is very remarkable for a Church-yard, or burying place, on the top of a Church, dedicated to *St. Michael*, which is cut out of a great high rock, call'd by the *Vicenary* *Veear*, upon the Lake *Nordsee*, half a mile distant from *Scheen*. *Wormius* thinks, 'twas formerly an Heathenish Temple; but converted to Christian uses upon the first planting of the Gospel in this Kingdom.

The Prefecture and Bishopricks of Bergen.

This Bishopricks (the most fruitful and pleasant part of all *Norway*) lies to the North of *Aggerhusen*, in the middle or heart of the Kingdom. It derives its name from the fair and noble Emporium or Mart-Town of *Bergen*; or else from the strong Castle of *Bergenhusen*, the usual seat of the Vice-Roy of *Norway*, at a small distance from *Bergen* Northward.

Bergen (an ancient and famous Sea-Port Town mentioned by *Pomponius Mela* and *Pliny*) is the Granary and Magazine of the whole Kingdom of *Norway*. It lies distant from *Bahafusen* about an hundred *German* miles by Sea, and sixty by land; from *Truntheim* as many; from *Scheagen*, the outmost Promontory of *Futland*, almost eighty. Some have fetcht its name from the *Norwegian* verb *Bergen*, which signifies to hide or conceal; because the Haven being surrounded with hills, seems to be a kind of scuffling-place for Ships, where Vessels of two hundred Tuns and upwards ride in a spacious and most secure Harbour, free from all danger of wind and weather. But we need not trouble our selves any further for the derivation of the name than to consider, that *Bergen* in the *Norwegian* language signifies mountains; and *Bergenhusen*, a company of houses among the hills. The buildings in this City, till within these few years, were exceeding mean and contemptible; most of them of wood, cover'd with green turf, and therefore frequently burnt down. But of late, the *Hamburgers*, *Lubeckers*, *Hollanders*, and others that trade this way, have beautified the Town with an Exchange and a great many private houses of credit. The most peculiar trade of this City lies in a kind of

R r 22

Stock-

Stock-fish, catch upon these coasts, and thence carried usually by the *Norway* Merchants *Bergenwisch*. This the Fishermen take in winter, commonly in *January*, for the convenience of drying it in the cold and sharp air. Besides, higher Furs of all sorts, and vast quantities of dry'd Fish, Butter, Tallow, Hides, &c. are brought from all parts of *Norway*, to be shipped off into other Countries. The Townsmen, not many years ago (observing the daily encrease of their trade, and the great concourse of strangers which it drew from all parts; and fearing they themselves might at last be prejudiced by an unlimited and general admission of foreign Tradesmen and Merchants into their City) made an order, that whoever would, after such a time, be admitted a freeman into the Town, should either be whip (at a Game instituted upon this occasion, and call'd by them *Gantenpill*), or row'd in mud and dirt, or lastly hung in a basket over some intolerable and filthy stink. This hard usage quickly diminished the number of foreigners, who fancied it scarce worth their while to purchase their freedom at so dear and scandalous a rate. But of late, the industry and skill, as well as number of the inhabitants encreasing, these barbarous customs are laid aside, and the Citizens themselves are now able to export what was formerly fetcht away from them. The Bishop of this Diocese was heretofore under the jurisdiction of the Bishop of *Tranheim*.

To the Governor of *Bergen* are subject the Prefectures of *Sudboreen*, *Nordboreen*, *Sogne*, *Sudfjord*, *Norfjord*, and *Sundmælen*.

The Prefecture and Bishoprick of Nidrosia or Tranheim.

THE fourth Castle and Government in *Norway*, is that of the City *Nidrosia* (as it was anciently called from the river *Nider*, on which 'tis seated) or *Tranheim*; formerly the Metropolis of the Kingdom, and the seat of the King and Archbishop of *Norway*. *Pontanus* somewhere calls this City the *Cabinet of all the Norwegian monuments*; but *Wormius* found no great reason to confer so honourable a title upon it, when (after a diligent search into the Antiquities, old monuments and reliques of the primitive inhabitants of this Kingdom) he met with no more than three *Runic* inscriptions in this whole Diocese. The convenience of the Haven makes this place resorted to by some Mariners and Merchants to this day; but the ruins are so great that it looks more like a Village than City; not having had any opportunity of recovering its former splendor since it was burnt down in the year 1522. Its houses are a company of old fallow'd and rotten buildings; and the Kings Palace is decay'd below the means of an *English* Cottage. However, something of its ancient grandeur still appears in the Cathedral, dedicated to *St. Olav*; which (tho almost consumed by fire, yet) by the ruins shews it self to have been one of the most magnificent and largest structures in the world. In this Church the Huntsmen were wont to make a yearly offering of the skins of the largest and stoutest white Bears, which they kill'd, for the Priest to tread upon at Divine Service. *Greenland* and *Iceland* were formerly parts of the Diocese of *Tranheim*, but now this Bishoprick is not of so large an extent. In the Castle resides the Governor of the whole Prefecture of *Tranheim*; who has under him several other Governors of lesser Provinces.

In the Country a little beyond this City there grows no wood at all. But, instead thereof, the

inhabitants make use of fish-bones, as well to build their houses and for several implements of household stuff as fuel; and with the fat of the same fish they feed their Lamps in winter.

The Prefecture of *Tranheim* in the year 1668, was by the *Danes* surrendered up to the *Swedes*, by a publick Treaty of Peace. The next year they wrent it again out of the hands of the *Swedish* King; but resign'd it back at the Treaty of *Refchid*.

Halsland (the Country of *Gither* King *Alfred*'s Geographer) is a part of this Prefecture. Of which that Author gave this account to the King his Master, *I saw many as here be Norway men, i.e. That no inhabited Country lay further North than this. But the great fishing trade upon these Coasts have made the English better acquainted with these parts, then this Gentleman was with his own Country.*

The Prefecture of Wardhus.

THE Castle of *Wardhus* (the seat of the fifth and last great Governor in the Kingdom of *Norway*) has its name from the Island *Ward*, in which it stands. This Isle lies about two *German* miles from the main land of *Finnmark*, being near twelve *English* miles in compass. The inhabitants of this and the two adjoining Isles (which in *Finnmark* go all under the general name of *Tranfiens*) live only upon Stockfish; which they dry in the frost. They have no manner of Bread nor drink; but what is brought them from other places. Some small stock of Cattle they have; but only such as can make a shift to live of their masters diet, dried fish.

Finnmark or Norwegian Lapland.

ON the North of *Norway* lies *Finnmark*, or (as the Natives use to call it) *Taskemark*, which perhaps was the ancient habitation of the *Finni*, mentioned by *Tacitus*. For the character which that Historian gives us of those people is very applicable to the modern *Finnmarkers*. *The Finni*, says he, are a people extraordinary long, and miserably poor. They have neither Houses, Arms, Hoes, nor Plow, but feed upon roots, and such provision as their Bows and Arrows can procure, and are clothed with the skins of wild beasts. To this day *Finnmark* is not divided (as all other Countries generally are) into distinct Lordships and Inheritances; but, as in *Mr. Hobbes*'s state of nature, every private man pretends a right and title to every part of the Land, and the strength of the Arms is the only Judge of controversies. When fishing season comes in, they throng to the Seacoasts; and when that is over, retire again into the uplands. Only the *Islanders* in *Heymeland* keep their stations, and have their Churches in *Tron*, *Soro*, *Maggero*, and other places.

The language, manners, and habits of the people, are the same as in the *Swedish* Lapland; of which an account has been already given.

Of the ancient Commerce between the old Britains, English, and Norwegians.

THE relations which our *English* writers give us of the prowess and brave exploits of the valiant *British* King *Arthur*, favour too much of Romance; yet, in the main, our best Historians agree unanimously in this, that no Prince ever conquer'd more of the Northern

Kingdoms then this King. *W. Lambert*, in his *Anglo-Saxon*, assures us, that all the Islands, Nations, and Kingdoms, in the North and East Seas, as far as *Russia*, were tributary to him. And *Grosius* of *Munster* says, "King *Arthur* at one time summon'd no less than six Kings to appear before him at his Court in *Britain*, viz. 1. *Guthlac*, King of *Ireland*. 2. *Mahulfe*, King of *Island*. 3. *Duldef*, King of *Guthland*. 4. *Gunnaf*, King of *Orkney*. 5. *Let*, King of *Norway*. And 6. *Aphile*, King of *Denmark*. Upon these conquests, the Kingdom of *Norway* was annexed to the Crown of *England*, and the *Norwegians* incorporated into one Nation with the *Britains*. But this amity was of no long continuance; for *Norway* was at too great a distance, and its people too stiff-necked, to be kept in subjection.

In the days of our *Saxon* Kings a continual and uninterrupted war between this Nation and the Northern Kingdoms, put a stop to all trade in the *British* and *Norwegian* Seas. But as soon as the *Danes* had made themselves Masters of this Island, commerce was again renewed; which lasted till the *English* took their opportunity to shew the world, by rejecting the power of *Denmark* and all manner of communication with that people, how highly they resented the tyrannical usurpation of foreign Princes.

Since the Conquest, *England* has seldom or never wanted a considerable Fleet of *Norway* Merchantmen. *William of Malmesbury* (who died in the year 1142) tells us, That in his time *Bristol* was a place much frequented by the *Irish* and *Norwegians*. *Hackluit* gives an account of certain Treaties concerning the Northern trade between our King *Henry* the third, and *Haquin* King of *Norway*. He that will take the pains to read over the agreement between *Henry* IV. King of *England*, and the Company of Merchants from the

Hans Towns (set down at large by *Mr. Hackluit* in the first Volume of his *English Voyages*, p. 146.) will find a considerable Register of our Merchantmen taken on the Coasts, and out of the Havens of *Norway*; and may thence be enabled to give a tolerable guess at the number of our *Norway* Merchants in those days.

In the twenty-fifth year of the reign of our present Sovereign *Charles* II. an Act pass'd for the encouragement of the *Greenland* and *Eastland* trades, &c. In which 'twas order'd, That it should be lawful to and for every person and persons, Native or Foreigner, from and after the first day of *May*, 1673, at all times to have free liberty to trade into and from *Sweden*, *Denmark*, and *Norway*. This, and several other clauses of the same Act, which take off a great part of the custom formerly paid upon the importation of any *Eastland* commodities, have encouraged great numbers of Merchants and others to traffick in these Northern Seas, and improv'd the trade of *Greenland*, and *Norway*, far beyond the example of former ages. For (tho the advantages that can be hoped for from these kind of Voyages be not answerable to what may be expected out of the *Levant* and *American* plantations, yet) the small danger and charges these men are expos'd to are strong inducements to venture a voyage; where in the hazard is not great, nor any way proportionable to the prospect of gain. Besides, in the Act before mention'd, 'tis provided, That whatsoever person or persons, subjects of this Realm, shall desire to be admitted into the fellowship of Merchants of *England*, shall be admitted into the said fellowship, paying for his admission the sum of forty shillings, and no more. Which is a sum exceedingly inconsiderable, if compar'd with the fees paid upon admission into some other companies.



The Islands of FERO.



THE Fero Islands are only so many high and rocky mountains in the Northern Seas, divided from one another by narrow Fritths and rapid Currents, and inclosing a larger or lesser circuit of stony valley, cover'd over with a turf of about two foot thick. They are so called from *Fare*, which in the language of the Natives signifies a *Ferry*, from the many Ferries or Croftings of the water from one Island to another.

They are sixteen in number: 1. *Fugloe*, or *Fowl-Island*, about three *English* miles long, and two broad. 2. *Svino*, in which is a pleasant valley of a mile in length. 3. *Videroe*, six miles long, and three broad. 4. *Bardoe*, six miles in length, and a mile broad; famous for a good harbour, call'd by the Natives *Vaag*. 5. *Canoe*, of the same bigness. 6. *Kasse*, something longer and broader than either of the former. 7. *Osteroe*, twenty miles long, and in some places two, in others four miles broad. 8. *Stronoe*, twenty-four miles long, and eight broad. In this Island stands *Thorshaven*, the Metropolis and Town of greatest Traffic in all the Fero Islands. 9. *Wagoe*, a round piece of ground, of about eight miles in Diameter. 10. *Mignejs*. 11. *Rolter*, a mile long, and half a mile broad. 12. *Sando*, eight miles long, and four miles broad. 13. *Skue*, three miles long, and one in breadth. 14. *Storeidmen*. 15. *Lille-Diemen*. 16. *Sileroe*, twenty miles long, and eight broad.

The air in these Islands is in summer temperately warm; not very hot at any time. In the coldest winter the frost is never so violent as to cause ice in any of the Bays; so that Horses and Sheep lye in the fields the whole winter long. They have never any Thunder in the Summer, but frequently in the Spring, Autumn, and Winter, which is then generally accompanied with a storm, and followed by showers of rain. The air, of it self, is wholesome; free from the Plague, Small-Pox, or any contagious disease, except brought in by foreigners; so that the inhabitants are commonly long-liv'd. However in some of the Islands the Natives are exceedingly subject to rheums, which cause violent coughs and headaches; both which diseases they cure by drinking sour Whey, as hot as they can endure it. Besides these, the Scurvy, Leprosie, and a kind of feverish distemper (called by the Natives *Land-farset*) are Epidemical illnesses which reign in several of the Isles; but seldom or never turn to mortal diseases.

The Southern Islands produce great store of Barley (tho hardly any other grain comes to maturity), inasmuch that a Tun of seed will ordinarily yield twenty or thirty Tun of grain. The pasture grounds afford great plenty of good and sweet grass. These the inhabitants call *Fiedelands*; and take care commonly that they lye open to the North and North-East winds. In some of these fields they have flocks of as large and fat Oxen as any other part of *Europe* affords.

The Islands are all of them plentifully stor'd

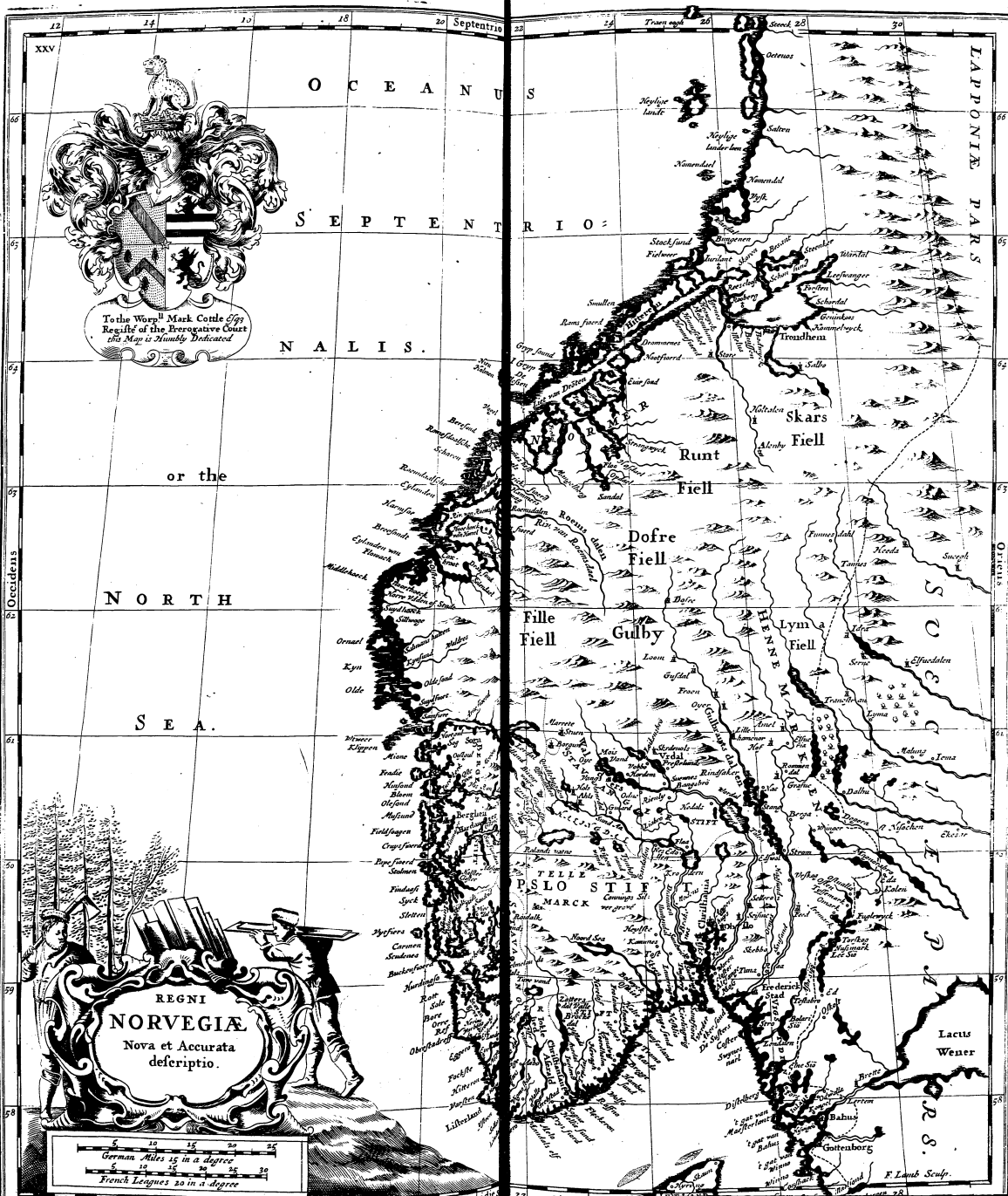
with all manner of medicinal plants, requisite for the cure of those distempers to which the inhabitants are most inclined. Amongst the rest, you may every where meet with great quantities of Scurvy-grass, Water-cresses, Sorrel, &c. They have great store of Angelica; which grows as well on the tops of high hills as in the open fields. This commonly makes one of their most delicate dishes at all entertainments. Besides, the *Radix Rhodia* (call'd in their language *Helpe-Rod*) is no where met with in so great plenty as in these Islands, upon the banks of running streams and Lakes. The distilled water of this plant is here made use of upon all occasions, as Rose-water with us in *England*.

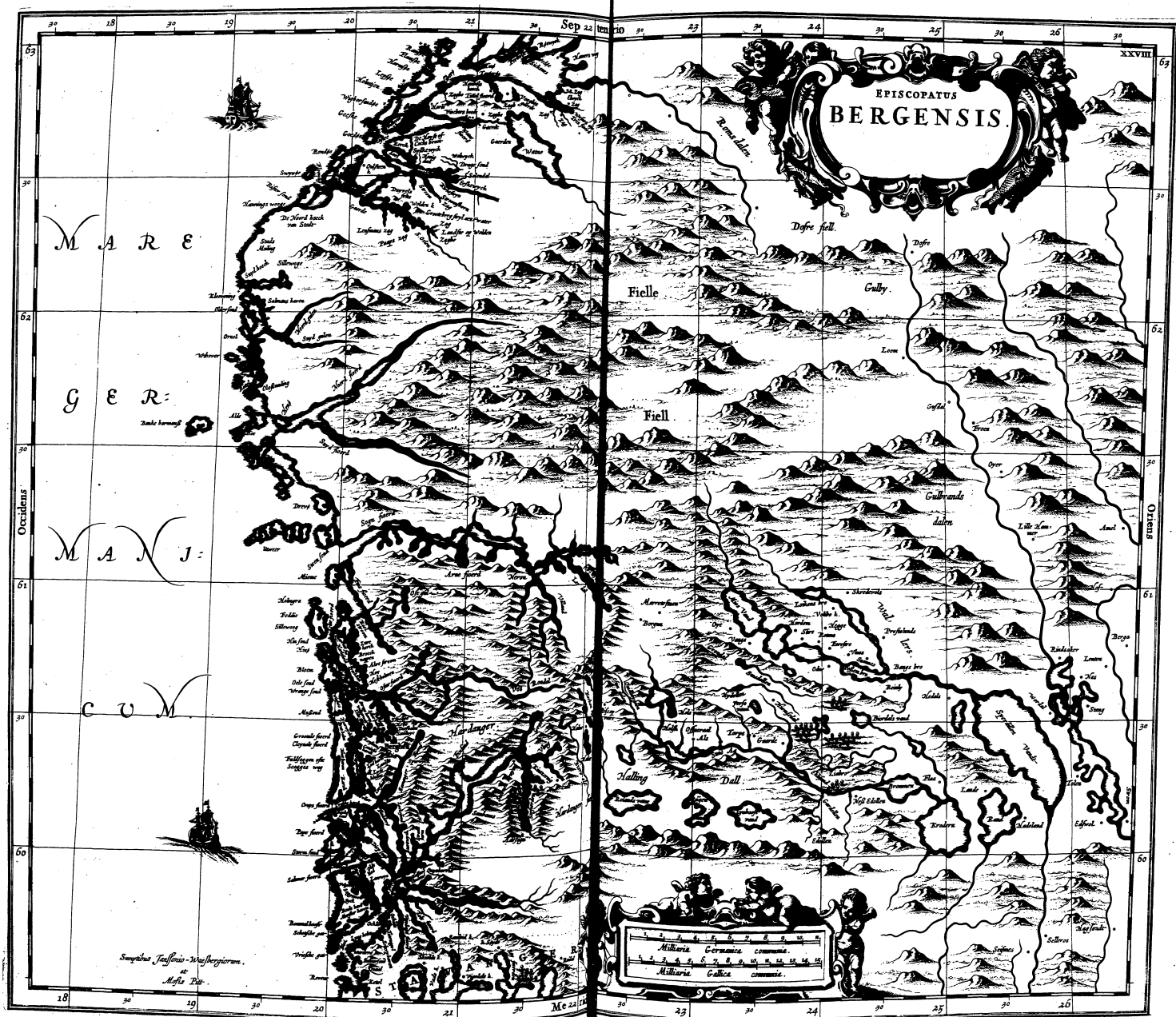
Here are several forts of Fowl; as Doves, Stares, Owls, Sparrow-Hawks, Crows, and Ravens (many of which are white), Grellings, &c. Their chief Sea-fowl is a kind of Teal, about the bigness of a Crow, with a yellow, long, and round bill; a great enemy to, and persecutor of the Raven. The Eyder (a sort of Duck, which yields the Eyder-down) is a Fowl peculiar to these Islands. This Bird usually pulls the down from her own breast to build her nest withall. When her young ones are fledg'd and gone, the inhabitants take away the down and cleanse it for use. If the fathers be pull'd off by mens hands, they are good for nothing, but immediately rot away. Another notable sort of bird they have, which they call an Imbrim, with a long neck and beak, the back grey and check'd with white spots, with a white ring about the neck. This bird has two holes under her wings, each large enough to hold an egg; here 'tis thought she hatches two eggs at once, being never seen with above two young ones at a time, nor known to come ashore.

The adjoining Seas furnish the inhabitants with Cod, Whiting, large Flounders, &c. besides Murets, a kind of Pilchards, so plentiful in these parts, that the Havens and Creeks are fill'd with them. Of these (with the Seals, Grind-whales, and Dog-fish, which were formerly caught in great numbers upon their Coasts) the inhabitants of the Fero-Islands made anciently a vast advantage; but of late years their fishing-trade is strangely decayed.

These Islands were first inhabited in the reign of *Harald* (surnam'd the *fair-hair'd*) King of *Norway*, in the year 868. For that King, having taken a resolution to reduce all *Norway* under the subjection of one Prince, sell soul upon all the petit Princes in that Kingdom; whose subjects (being by this means either undone by the wars, or dispossest of their inheritances) resolv'd to seek out other habitations, and (under the conduct of one *Grimar Camban*, a Pyrate) at last seat themselves in these Islands.

The people are generally humble in conversation, civil in carriage, and courteous in speech, especially to strangers, whom they entertain with a great deal of hospitality and respect. They are obedient and liberal to their Magistrates, and very charitable to the poor. The more beggerly sort of them will slich for their bellies, but never lay their hands on Gold or Silver; inasmuch that if one of these poor pilferers come into a rich mans house, 'tis ten to one but he pinches an horn spoon,







spoon, if laid in his way, but will be sure to leave a Silver one behind him.

Their diet is moderate and frugal; on milk, fish, gruel, and flesh. They dry both their fish and flesh in the wind, without salt; having wind-houses built for this purpose. After the flesh is dry'd, they boil it in water, and thicken the broth with Barley-meal; which is reckoned one of their greatest delicacies.

The men wear woollen Shirts, flannel Trowees and Waistcoats, with short loose Coats of the same. The women, rich and poor, go all alike in strait Gowns without skirts. Their Stomachers are commonly large, and adorn'd with thin gilded gingham plates of Tin. Their Shoes (which have no soles, but are made of pieces of Leather drawn together at the heels and toes, and fasten'd with a string or ribband above the ankle) are of sheep-skin for the women, and tann'd Neats-leather for the men. They lye on beds of Hay, overspread with pieces of Flannel.

The Norwegian tongue was heretofore generally spoken in the Fero-Islands; but of late years the Danish dialect has much prevail'd. However in the Northern Islands their language is for the greatest part made up of Norwegian words and phrases, tho the Southern inhabitants make use of a quite different dialect.

The whole dominion of these Islands is divided into six districts of *Norderoe, Osteroe, Stromoe, Waage, Sandoe, and Sanderoe*. To each of these districts belongs a Sheriff, who, as Judge, determines all causes and controversies of less moment. These Sheriffs gather the Kings tythes; and put in execution all orders they receive from the Kings Commissary. The people are governed by the Laws of *Norway*; having no peculiar Laws of their own. They have a general Sessions held once a year, in the spring time, at *Thorshaven*, in which the Kings Commissary, or Bailiff, presides as Judge, being assisted by the six Sheriffs; who exhibit to the Court all Law-suits, either Civil or Criminal, which come not under the cognizance of their petit Commission. Besides these, there are thirty-six more (six for each district) chosen, like our Jury-men, to assist the Commissary in pronouncing of sentence; and a Recorder appointed to register the proceedings and sentence.

The Ecclesiastical affairs are governed by a Synod of the Priests or Ministers; who meet and sit once a year. Out of the whole Synod one is elected to preside over the rest, with the title of *Proost*.

These people were first converted to Christianity in the fourth year of the reign of *Olaus Trygveson* King of *Denmark* in the year 1000, by *Sigismund Bresteson*, a Feroyer born, and sent into his own Country by the said King for this purpose. After the *Augsburg* Confession was embraced in *Denmark* and *Norway*, it soon reached these Islands. There are at this day thirty-nine

Parishes in all the Islands; which are supplied by so many Pastors of the *Lutheran* Religion. Besides Sundays, Holidays, and the usual days of prayer, as in other places, these men observe yearly six peculiar days of Prayer, viz, three in *Ascension-week*, and three in *Michaelmas-week*.

They have but one publick School among them; which was endowed by King *Christian IV.* and *Nicolas Trolle*, formerly Governor of *Roschild* and Vice-Admiral of *Denmark*. This furnishes the University of *Copenhagen* oftentimes with as able Scholars as any other School in the King of *Denmark's* dominions.

The chief Commodities of these Islands are Skins, Feathers, Tallow, Train-oil, and Stockins; upon all which there is a particular price set. Stockins are the chief staple commodity they have; in making of which, all the inhabitants (rich and poor, Priests and Plowmen) are forced to employ themselves to help out the small incomes of their mean possessions and inconsiderable stipends.

Of the Isle of SCHETLAND.

Schetland (or *Hetland*, as *Arngim Jonas* will have the word writ) is an Island lying between the *Fero-Islands* and the Promontory of *Schagen* in *Junland*.

It has been long a dispute amongst the best Geographers, whether this be not the ancient *Thule*? *Gasper Peucer* tells us (and our learned *Cambden* encourages us to believe him) that this Island is called by the Northern Mariners to this day *Thulenfell*. *Pomponius Mela* says of *Thule*, that it was *Belgarum* (which Mr. *Cambden* reads *Bergarum*; understanding thereby the City and Territory of *Berghen*) *litori opposita*; which account agrees well with the situation of this Island. Besides, says Mr. *Cambden*, *Schetland* is about two days sail from *Cathness* in *Scotland*; which is the exact distance between *Thule* and the *Caledonian Promontory* in *Solinus's* relation. Again, *Schetland* lies in 62 degrees of Northern Latitude, as well as *Prolomy's Thule*. Whether our learned Antiquary read *Solinus* aright or no, I shall not venture to question; tho I know there are some that read the place quoted thus, *A Caledoniae promontorio Thulen petentes bidui navigatione excipiant Heludae Insulae*, (and not as the vulgar Copies have it, *A Caledoniae promontorio Thulen petentibus bidui navigatio est*); and the rather, because it follows, *Ab Orcadibus Thulen usque quinque dierum ac noctium navigatio est*. However, I am afraid the Latitude of *Schetland* will not be found to exceed sixty degrees, and a few odd minutes; and then the Parallel betwixt *Prolomy's Thule* and this Island will fail.

The manners of the inhabitants, nature of the soil, temperature of the air, &c. are the same in this Isle as in *Iceland*.

I S E L A N D.

Situation.



Seland is an Isle in the *Deucalidian* Seas, situate 13 deg. and 30 min. of Longitude, and 65 deg. and 44 min. of Latitude; reckoning the situation of the whole Isle from *Skalsbø*, the chief City in it. It is bounded on the East

with the Northern Ocean; on the South, with the *Deucalidian* Sea; on the North and West, with the frozen Sea of *Greenland*.

Discovery.

The Isle was first discovered by one *Naddor*, who sailing near the coasts of the *Fero* Islands, was by an unexpected tempest driven upon the Northern parts of *Island*; which, from the great quantities of snow that then overpread the country, he call'd *Sneeland*. After him a *Swedijb* Mariner, nam'd *Gardar*, made a second discovery of this Isle; and, after his own name, call'd it *Gardarsholm*. This hapned in the year 864. Not long after this, one *Flocco* (a *Norwegian* Pirate) made a third discovery of it; not casually, as the other two had done, but by design. He had heard some faint stories of the two former discoverers; and questioned not, but, if he could meet with this Newfound Land, to be better paid for his pains than his predecessors had been. Whereupon he resolves on the adventure; and (instead of the Mariners Compass, which at that time was never dream'd of) made use of the following expedient to direct him in his Voyage; he took with him, out of *Schetland*, three Crows; and, having sail'd Northwards for some days, he let one of them fly, which he perceiv'd return'd to *Schetland*. Soon after, he threw a second out of the Ship; which, finding no land to set her foot on, return'd weary into the Vessel. Within awhile after, he sent out the third Crow; which flew to this Isle. *Flocco* following this leader, landed safe in the Northern parts of the Isle, and there winter'd. Finding this country, all the while he staid there, oppress'd with intolerable frosts and snow, he call'd the whole land *Iseland*, or *Iceland*; which name it retains to this day. The next winter he spent in the Southern parts. But meeting there with as cold entertainment as he had found in the North, he hoisted up sail the spring following, and return'd to *Norway*; where he was ever after call'd *Rasna-høke*, or *Flocco the Crow*.

First Inhabitants.

The first inhabitants of *Iseland* came into the Isle in the year 874; brought hither by one *Ingulf*, a *Norwegian* Baron, who (with *Horlief*, his brother-in-law) fled, or was banish'd his own Country for murdering another Nobleman. The *Islandic* Chronicle (which makes the said year its Epoch) tells us, that this *Ingulf* found the Isle wholly desolate, and destitute of all manner of inhabitants. Nor is there in this work any mention of any former discovery whatsoever, made either by the *English* or *Irish*; tho some of our Historians have asserted, that *Iseland* was well known to both these Nations long before *Ingulf* brought in his *Norwegians*. The *Irish* Annals go further, and assure us, that the ancient *Islanders* call'd the *Irish* *Papas*, and the Western part of their Isle, as most frequented by *Irish* Merchants, *Papey*. *Arngim* follows the Chronicle of his Country, and is very passionate in

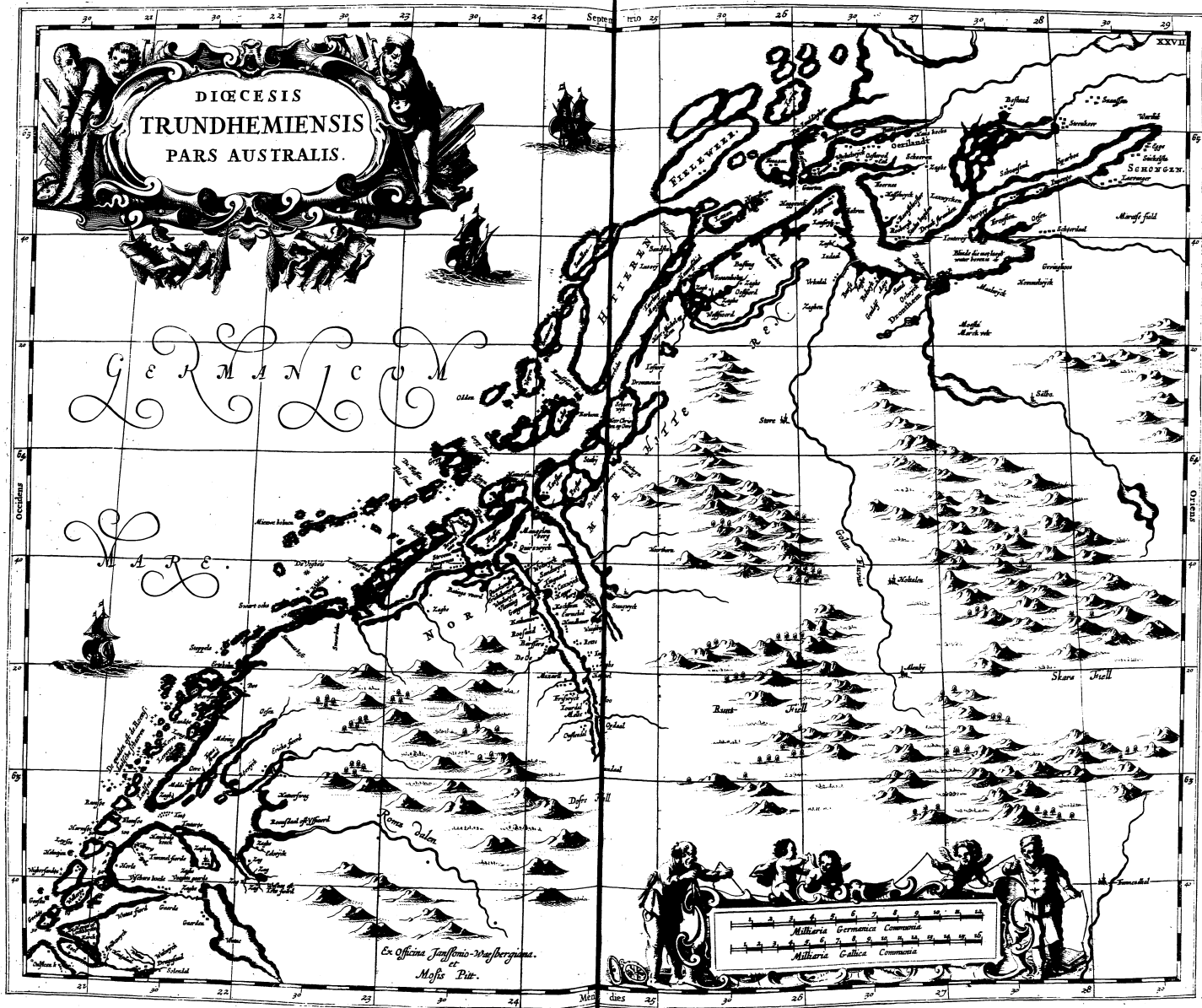
asserting, that before *Ingulf* no manner of inhabitants were heard of in this Island. And in his *Specimen Islandicum*, he is extremely enraged at *Pontanus*, and the Authors he follows, for offering to assert, that *Iseland* is the *ultima Thule* of the ancients. For, says he, if our Isle be that *Thule*, which *Virgil* and other Roman writers mention, it must needs have been inhabited in the days of *Augustus* the Emperor; and then what credit, I pray, can be given to our *Islandic* Chronicle, which tells us in plain terms, that this Isle was never inhabited before *Ingulf's* days? But if that learned Author would give us leave to argue the case, 'tis possible he may not find any reason at last to be in so great a rage. For, in the work quoted, he himself allows the story of the *Irish* being first call'd *Papas* by the ancient *Islanders*. If we enquire what those ancient inhabitants were, that gave the *Irish* this name? 'Twill questionless be answer'd, they were Heathens. This *Arngim* takes for granted; and thinks the answer satisfactory enough. And it is plain, that the first inhabitants of *Iseland* were Heathenish Idolaters, from one passage in the *Islandic* Chronicle, where we are told, that in the West of *Iseland* there is a large piece of ground encircled with a ditch, in the midst of which stands a great stone, made use of formerly for an Altar, whereon they used, in the days of Idolatry and Paganism, to sacrifice men to their God *Woden*. But then if we consult the ancient monuments of the Northern Kingdoms, we shall find the greatest part of *Denmark* and *Norway* converted to Christianity before *Ingulf's* time: so that it will be found upon examination highly probable, that there were inhabitants in *Iseland* before *Ingulf* brought over his *Norwegians*; and those perhaps known to the *English* and *Irish*.

The Isle is for the most part mountainous and rocky; tho some valleys afford good store of Corn and pasturage. Notwithstanding there are so many and so vast mountains in this Isle, there is no manner of mines either of metals or minerals in the whole land, except Sulphur.

The most notorious mountain in *Iseland* is *Heccla*; which stands on the South-East of the Isle, not far from the Sea-shore. This is one of the greatest Vulcanoes in *Europe* or the world, belching out by fits such deluges of fire, as threaten a general conflagration of the whole Isle. *Bleskenius* reports, that sometimes it vomits up not only flame and fiery coals, but large torrents of water, which burn like Brandy or *Aqua Vitæ*. At other times it throws up prodigious quantities of cinders and pumice stones. Its greatest outrages are caused by a West-wind; inasmuch that when the wind blows moderately from that quarter, the inhabitants of the neighbouring valleys (who are acquainted with the securest passages to the mountain) march up in droves to the mouth of the furnace, where they recreate themselves by throwing great stones into the flames, which return them with as great a violence as a barrel of gunpowder blows up the flats of an house. So that 'tis exceeding dangerous for any one to approach the flames, who is not perfectly acquainted with every part of the mountain. For besides the danger of being knockt on the head with some of these stones, it often happens, that the ground unexpectedly opens, and the flames swallow men up alive. The silly Rustics believe verily,







ity, that Hell is in the bowels of this mountain, and that the souls of the damn'd are tormented in these flames. Nay, some of them will confidently protest, that they have several times seen whole Herds of Devils enter the mouth of the furnace with their burthens of damn'd souls; and, having eased their shoulders, return for a new loading. Another place of torment the Natives fancy under the rocks on the Sea-coasts; and the clashing of the ice against the banks produces a noise which they take for the howling of the damn'd. If any battel be fought in any part of the world, the Natives will confidently pretend to know the very day, tho they are not able to assign the place of the fight; and that, by observing the more then usual importation of souls upon such days. But these and the like idle fables, collected by *Bleskenius* and other Authors, wholly ignorant of the affairs of *Iceland*, were never the opinions of the generality of the *Icelanders* since their conversion to Christianity. Nor does the mountain continually (as they would have us believe) send out flames, since the *Icelandic Chronicle* takes particular notice of the years 1104, 1157, 1222, 1300, 1341, 1362, and 1389, as very signal for such fiery eruptions as they speak of. Since the year 1558 (notwithstanding *Bleskenius's* Romantick story to the contrary) we have no certain relation of any such accident. *Munster* and *Frisius* report, that the flames of *Hecla* would not burn Tow; which story is near akin to what *Pliny* tells us, of a mountain enflamed by Water and quenched with Har.

Bleskenius speaks of a strange Lake (and *Arngim* says, he has heard as much of a Fountain near *Skalholt*) which immediately petrifies whatever is thrown into it. Inasmuch that if you take a long pole, and stick part of it into the bottom of the Lake, that part of the staff which sticks in the earth will in a short time be turned into iron, the middle into stone, and the uppermost part (which never came into the water) remain wood. He further adds, that the part of the staff which resembles iron will burn like a coal. Another Lake he mentions, which (like the *Greecian Aornon*, spoke of by *Virgil*) sends out such pestiferous exhalations as poison the birds which fly that way. Several other strange stories he tells, which, because rejected by *Arngim*, we omit. In most places of the Isle you may meet with hot Baths and galding Fountains; the water of which, if set to cool, throws off a sulphurous scum.

Of all the affronts which *Bleskenius*, in his scurrilous description of *Iceland*, has put upon that Country; none is higher resented by *Arngim* then the sleight and false account he gives of the Laws, Manners, and Religion of the inhabitants of that Isle. Whoredom, Theft, Idolatry, Witchcraft, Sorcery, &c. are vices he accuses the whole Nation of. We may rationally imagine, that the ancient *Icelanders* were men of the same temper, manners, and religion with the *Norwegians*, from whom they were descended, i.e. men of vast stature, strong and valiant, great duelers and pyrats. But since Christianity was introduced into their Isle, none of those barbarous qualities which that *Dutch Satyrist* lays to their charge, can justly be reckoned among the catholic enmities of the Island; tho 'tis possible some few may still be found among several thousands that to this day retain a small tincture of the old Idolatrous superstition, and ungentle demeanor of their ancestors. Their temperance in meat and drink, and the naturally strong constitution of their bodies, enable them to live out commonly to a good old age; tho I cannot but

refer *Olaus Magnus* and *Bleskenius* to the Readers sentence; the former of which tells us, the *Icelanders* live ordinarily three hundred years; the latter (with more modesty and caution, which in him are rare qualities) reports, that he saw a man in *Iceland* who told him that he had then lived two hundred years.

By the account which *Bleskenius* gives of the Habitations of the *Icelanders*, it must needs be concluded, that either he never travell'd amongst them (whatever he pretends to), or else he mistook their houses (cover'd with turf and grown over with grafs) for small hillocks and rampires. For he says, all their houses are underground; and they, their kine, horses, and sheep, have all one cave. Anciently the *Icelanders* (like the *Germans* in *Tacitus's* days) dwelt far apart; according as every man took an affection, to this field, or that fountain; this wood side, or that plain. They used neither mortar nor tiles, but the whole fabrick of their houses consisted of timber and turf. Their windows were most commonly in the roof, seldom in the walls of their cottages. Some of their Nobility had more stately Palaces, built of large pieces of timber brought hither out of *Greenland* and *Norway*. At this day their houses are most of wood, cover'd over with turf; except in their Cities (*Hola* and *Skalholt*), where, instead of tiles, they make use of fir-boards. But since the trade between them and *Norway* began to decrease, their buildings have lost much of their ancient splendour; and the nearest of their Villages run daily to ruin. Besides, their traffick with foreign Nations is much abated; and they seem to draw towards that degree of meanness which *Krantzius* speaks of, when he tells us, *The Icelanders and their Cattel have the same lodging*. *Arngim* confesses, that upon the South-shore of the Isle, near *Skalholt*, there are three small Parishes, in which the inhabitants are destitute both of wood and turf, the only fuel of the country. The poorer sort of these, being not able to purchase fuel from abroad, are constrained in the extremity of winter, to break themselves to a corner of their Ox-stalls, and there borrow heat from their Cattel.

It is manifest from the ancient Laws of *Iceland* (whatever *Munster*, *Frisius*, and *Bleskenius* say to the contrary) that upon the first inhabiting of this Isle, the ground was till'd, and several sorts of grain sowed and reap'd. 'Tis a malicious slander to say, as those Authors do, *That the Icelanders feed upon carrion, and unsavoury meats, and want the use of bread*. The best and happiest of Nations are now and then, upon some extraordinary occasions, driven to harsh extremities in meat and drink, and forced (in spite of former plenty) to submit to a famine. And it may reasonably be supposed, that the Seas about *Iceland*, bound up by a long continued frost, may sometimes bring the like calamities upon this Isle; who have the greatest part of their food out of these waters. But (setting aside all such accidental casualties, and extraordinary dispensations of Gods providence) *Iceland* is as well provided for all manner of necessities in meats and drink, as any other Country whatever. For the *Icelanders* have generally considerable stocks of Kine and Sheep, besides large piles of dry'd fish of several sorts. 'Tis true, a great part of the inhabitants want bread and salt, which are reckon'd two of the great requisites in furnishing out one of our Southern tables. But he that shall seriously consider, the vast strength and healthy constitutions which these usually enjoy, and the old age they ordinarily arrive at, will be apt to conclude, that dry'd fish would prove as trusty a staff of life

life as bread, if we were used to it; and that salt may probably be convenient in an hot Country, to preserve our meat from corrupting, but needs not be made use of at the table. In short, the *Icelanders* have all manner of necessary and substantial food, as Beef, Mutton, Geese, Hens, Partridges, and all sorts of fowl. They want only the delicacies of sauces, which other Countries enjoy; and the sharpness of their air furnishes them with stomachs which easily supply that defect.

Drink.

The most general drink used amongst them is Whey; which is commonly so good that an ounce of it will very well bear half an ounce of water. Sometimes they drink a kind of Mead, made of a little Barley flower and an Honeycomb boiled in water. Another liquor they have, which is squeezed out of a certain reddish berry, peculiar to this Isle. The ancient *Icelanders* used to import Beer from Denmark, Scotland, Norway, England, and other foreign Countries; but for many years last past the inhabitants have not been able to maintain any considerable commerce with these Nations; and upon the decay of trade, are forced to content themselves with such liquors as their own Land affords. How poor and mean forever these liquors may seem to Southern palates, used to the juice of the Grape; yet with these the ancient *Icelanders* could make merry; and keep banquets and revellings with the mean fare before-mentioned. What grandeur their public entertainments wanted in the delicacy of the viand and richness of the liquor, was made out in the length of their feasts and number of their guests. Thus we read, that *Theodore* and *Thorwald* (brethren and Citizens of *Hiadædæ* in North *Hiala*) solemnizing the funerals of their father *Hiala*, entertained twelve hundred persons for fourteen days together, at a banquet; and at their departure presented the chief of their guests with gifts answerable to their qualities. After the same rate, and for as long a time, *Olafus Pa* (a West *Ilander*) and his brethren entertained nine hundred men. But I know not whether this be an instance of the generosity and gallantry, or not rather prodigality of these people. For the Northern Nations are generally strangely lavish in their entertainments at Weddings and Burials; inasmuch, that 'tis grown a proverb in some of those Countries, *Pay for thy fathers Coffin before thou think'st of buying a Coadle*: meaning, that the entertainments at the burial of a father and marriage of a new wife (if they come together) are sufficient to ruin a man in his estate, and make his heir a beggar.

Money.

Before the convenience of money was invented, the most natural method of buying and selling was by exchange of one commodity for another. This in the usage of traffic, was the only expedient made use of in all Nations of the world; but continued, I think, longer in *Iceland* than in any of the known Western Countries. One great reason of a later than ordinary use of money among the *Icelanders*, was the want of metals in their Country. Some Silver they had, brought in from foreign Countries; which if they chanced to make use of in commerce, they weighed it in a balance, but never coined or stamped any of it. Of late, *Danish* money has been brought into this Isle; tho in very small quantities.

Commodities.

The chief commodities of the Country, are Brimstone, dry'd fish, and Whale-bone. Of this last they have to great plenty, that (according to *Blæfkenius's* relation) some of them make houses of it; and the only great Bridge in the Isle is made of the same matter. If cements, formerly great quantities of Beef, Mutton, Butter, &c. were ex-

ported hence into other Countries. For *Angrim Jonas* concludes his Satyrical answer to *Blæfkenius's* abusive description of *Iceland*, with these words, *Hocine impune fierisinitis, O Senatus Populique Islandie, quæ &c.* i. e. Can the Burgomasters and Raedsterns of Hamburg wink at such faults as these? Are these the thanks ye give our Isle for feeding you City these many years with Beef, Mutton, Butter, and Fish? England, Holland, Denmark, Bremen, and Lubec have all tasted the sweets of our Land; but never any returned their thanks in such a scurrilous Pasquil as your Libeller, &c.

Wormius tells us, that the old *Danish* tongue, used in ancient inscriptions, and other monuments of *Runic* learning, has been no where so clean and pure kept to this day as in *Iceland*. And the reasons he assigns are, 1. The inhabitants of this Isle have not maintained so great commerce with other Nations as the rest of the Northern people; by which means they have exceedingly avoided the introducing of strange and uncouth words into their language. 2. The *Icelanders*, from the first peopling of their Isle, have been wonderfully accurate and curious in committing all transactions of moment to writing, and thereby transmitting at once the glory of their actions and purity of their tongue to posterity. *Sexo Grammaticus* confesses, he ow'd a great part of his *Danish* History to the writings of the *Icelanders*; whom he commends, above all other Northern Nations, for their curiosity in registering the famous deeds of their ancestors. No question, *Sexo* met with many rarities in that language which have since perished. *Stephanus* reckons up above twenty several tracts that he himself had seen; most of which, I suppose, are to be met with in the public or private Libraries of Denmark; and some may 'e long be published by the learned *Refenius*. *Wormius* collected his *Runic* Dictionary as well out of the *Knitting-Saga*, and other *Icelandic* manuscripts, as the old *Runic* inscriptions of his own Country. In the year 1651. *Ranolph Jonas*, an *Ilander*, published a Grammar, teaching the rudiments and syntax of this tongue; and there is now in the hands of our Learned Dr. *Majball* (Rector of *Lincoln College* in *Oxford*) a manuscript Copy of an *Icelandic* Dictionary, never yet printed.

The *Edda Islandorum* (published first by *Magnus Olaf*, and afterwards by *J. Peter Refenius*) is a piece of the greatest note of any old *Icelandic* monument extant. It contains a collection of mythological stories about their ancient Heathenish Gods; out of which fables the old *Icelandic* Rythmers borrowed the subjects of their Ballads. It has always annexed to it, as an inseparable companion, the *Skaldæ*, or *Icelandic Prologia*; which teaches the art of their ancient Poetry, and gives rules for the composition of their several kinds of Verse. Out of these two *Sexo Grammaticus* took all those monstrous stories of the first founders of the *Danish* Kingdom, which have so far scandalized some Readers, as to make them (upon the sole account of these Romances) reject his whole History as fabulous and incredible. From several passages in *Sexo's* work, it is evident, that this Historian had read a much perfecter Copy of the *Edda* than the publishers of the printed Editions have followed; and there is at this day in the rich Library of the learned and pious Prince *Rodolph Augustus* Duke of *Brandenburg* and *Lunenburgh*, at *Wulfenbuttel*, a more perfect manuscript Copy than either *Magnus* or *Refenius* ever saw.

Anciently *Iceland* was divided into four Provinces; named from the four quarters of the world.

world, East, West, North, and South-*Iceland*. Each of these contained three lesser Districts, excepting North-*Iceland*, (being larger than any of the other three) was subdivided into four of these Districts. Every District had in it three public Courts of Judicature, and ten or more *Hreppar* or Constable-Wards. The Government of the Isle was Aristocratical till the year 1261, when it was subdued and made tributary to the King of Norway. Afterwards, when the Kingdoms of Denmark and Norway were linked together by Queen Margaret, *Iceland* was also annexed to the *Danish* Crown. Since that time, it has been governed by a Vice-Roy; who (when he is in the Isle, for he is not obliged to be always resident) keeps his Court at the Castle of *Reykjavik*, near the Western shore. His office is to collect taxes for the King of Denmark; as Butter, Sheep, Wool, &c. for the provision of the Navy Royal.

What kind of Gods the idolatrous *Icelanders* worshipped before they were converted to Christianity, will appear from a survey of the *Edda*; which, as we have said, is nothing else but a register of those mock-Deities. The chief Gods mentioned in this and other ancient Northern monuments are, 1. *Thor*, whom the *Edda* makes the son of *Woden*. He is said to have come out of Asia with his father; and for that reason is sometimes call'd *Alathor*, or *Thor the Asian*. *Angrim Jonas* makes this God answerable to *Jupiter* among the Romans. And in an old Anglo-Saxonic Homily, in the public Library at Cambridge, which treats of the Gods of the Gentiles, we meet with these words: *Se Iovur is ærþorþorþe ealra ðeora goda, &c.* i. e. *Jesus baptizans os homines gedybþe, &c.* he hætte þan beyrþan jumum ðeodum. þoo þa ðeumum leoda lufuþa tpiþorþe, i. e. *This*

Jove is the most honourable of all the Gods mentioned in their verses. Some Nations call him *Thor*, whom the Danes reverence above all others. Hence the day which the Latins call'd *dies Jovis*, is in *Iceland* named *Thorshag*, and in England Thursday, the Germans call it *Donnersdag*, the *Tonnis*, i. e. the Thunderers day, which signifies the same thing. 2. *Woden*, or *Oden*; the Captain of the *Asians* that first peopled these Northern Countries. He is sometimes call'd, *as*, *the Asian*. So in the ancient form of an oath taken in Norway and *Iceland*, we read, *Hialpi mæi suo Fryer og Niordur og hin al matke As, i. e. So help me Frier, and Niordur (a Norwegian King, Deified for his noble exploits), and the almighty Asian (i. e. Woden)*. From him the *Icelanders* call the fourth day of the week *Odensdag*; and we, *Wensday*. The Nobility of the ancient people of the North, were wonderfully ambitious of fetching their pedigree down in a freight line from this Patriarch and God of the Northern Nations. Hence possibly it comes, that in some Copies of our Anglo-Saxonic Chronicle the Genealogy of our *English* King *Cerdic* (with several others) is run up to one who is said to be *Woenens* (or the son of *Woden*) and there the pedigree breaks off. As if in so doing they had sufficiently imitated *St. Luke's* Genealogy of our Saviour unto *Adam*, which was the son of God. And hence, as may well be conjectured, the *Icelanders* do to this day call their Noblemen *Goden* and *Hoffgoden*, i. e. *such as are of the lineage or family of the Gods*. Besides these two, we sometimes read of *Fryer* (as in the Norwegian oath, before quoted) one of *Wodens* companions, and *Friga*, *Wodens* wife (whence our Friday); with several others of less note.

Angrim allows, that several Christians came out of Norway into *Iceland* with *Ingvald*, in the year 874; but that the Isle was then converted to the Christian faith, he denies. A full and total conversion, he says, was never attempted, till about

an hundred years after. The first that openly preached the Gospel was one *Frederic*, a *Saxo* born, who came over into this Isle in the year 981, and succeeded so well, that within three years after there were several Churches built. The *Icelandic* Chronicle mentions one *Thangbrandt*, another outlandish Bishop, who came into *Iceland*, in the year 997. At last, in the year 1000, it was agreed on in a general Assembly of the whole Isle, That the worship of Heathenish Idols being abandoned, they would unanimously embrace the Christian Religion. In the year 1056 *Isleif*, an *Ilander*, was consecrated Bishop of the whole Isle; and enter'd upon the See of *Schalholt* (what is recorded in the *Icelandic* Chronicle) that this *Isleif* married *Dalla*, the daughter of one *Thorwald*; and by her had three sons. The eldest of which (named *Gyffer*) succeeded his father in the Bishoprick of *Schalholt*; altho he also is said to have married *Stenon*, the daughter of *Thorgrin*. Since that time the inhabitants of *Iceland* have continued steadfast in the Christian faith. *Gudbrand Thorlac* (who entered the Bishoprick of *Holen* in the year 1571) abolished the Rites and Ceremonies of the Church of Rome; and introduced the *Anglican* Confession, which to this day is maintained all over the Isle. The same Bishop first procured a Printing-house to be set up in *Iceland*; and afterwards caused the Bible, and several other godly books, to be translated into the *Icelandic* tongue and printed. *Christian* the third, King of Denmark, founded two Free-schools in *Iceland* (one at *Holen*, and the other at *Schalholt*) which by the munificence of his successors, *Frederic* the second and *Christian* the fourth, were improved into two considerable Colleges, where young men were instructed in the liberal Arts and principles of Religion, till they were thought fit for the ministry. Of late years many ingenious men, and learned *Icelanders*, have been bred up in the University at Copenhagen.

We have before taken a survey of the mean Cities.

Cottages, or Burrows, of the *Ruitticks* in *Iceland*; and we cannot expect that their Citizens should live in much better fashion. There are only two Cities in the Isle (*Holen* and *Schalholt*), the one the seat of their Northern, the other of their Southern Bishop. In both of them, the houses are built of wood (rarely of stone), cover'd with either boards or turf. The Cathedral at *Holen*, according to *Angrim's* description, either is, or at least has been a lately Fabric. In his days, the Church-porch had on each side five pillars, which were fourteen ells high (I suppose he means Norwegian ells, one of which is about three quarters of a yard *English*), and five in thickness. The Quire and Body of the Church were proportionable to the Porch. This noble structure was blown down in the year 1584; but magnificently rebuilt at the charge of *Frederic II.* King of Denmark, within four years after. Neither of these Cities look any better than one of our ordinary Villages; for the houses are not contiguous, nor defended by any fortification or rampire.

Blæfkenius tells us (how truly, I know not) of *Judica* a pleasant plain in the middle of *Iceland*, where formerly stood an high flaming mountain, which by degrees burnt away. This plain, says he, is encompassed with huge rocks, which make it inaccessible, excepting only in one place; and there too you have room for no more than one passenger at once. From the tops of two of these rocks fall down two large rivers; which, with a terrible noise, are swallowed up by a whirlpool in the midst of the plain. Hither yearly (upon the twenty-ninth day of June) repair all such

guard of soldiers; the favour, but suffer none to go out without a pass from the Governor. As soon as all, who have any business, are come in; the Governor (or Lieutenant of the Isle) reads his Commission from the King of *Denmark*. That done, he gives his charge; insinuating much upon the good will and kindness which the King his Master and himself bear the *Islanders*, and advising them all to administer justice without respect of any manner of persons whatever. After this, he returns to his Tent; where in a godly Sermon, preach'd to him and the rest of the Assembly, the necessity of punishing offenders, and vindicating the injured, is declared. As soon as Sermon is ended, the twelve chosen Justices (whom they call *Lochmaders*, i. e. *men of the Law*) sit down on the ground, with each a book of the *Islandic* Laws in his hand. After the Plaintiff and Defendant have both given in what they have to say; they all arise, and every man examines privately the verdict of his book in the case proposed. Returning, they consult awhile of the sentence, and then unanimously pronounce it. If any consi-

leave to decide the controversy by pronouncing of sentence. These twelve Jurymen (of whom one always is Foreman) have great respect for them, as long as these *Affizes* last. They have power to determine all Civil causes; and to pronounce condemnation, as they think convenient, against all Criminals. Those that are condemn'd to dye (as Adulterers, Murderers, and notorious Thieves) are beheaded; but smaller misdemeanors are marked in the forehead with an hot iron.

This account of the manner of proceeding in the *Islandic* Court of Judicature (tho' much different from the methods made use of in the days of their *Nomophylaces*, mentioned by *Angustinus*) I can the easier credit, because I do not find it contradicted in *Angustinus's* reply to *Blasphinius*. Besides, the custom of deciding controversies by the verdict of twelve Jurymen here in *England*, may persuade us to believe the same fashion may be observed in these *Danish* dominions; from whence, probably, it was first brought into *Britain*.

The End of the First Volume.



such as have any suit at Law or other controverſie to be determined. At the paſſage ſtands a guard of ſoldiers, who admit all in that deſire the favour, but ſuffer none to go out without a paſs from the Governor. As ſoon as all, who have any buſineſs, are come in, the Governor (or Lieutenant of the Iſle) reads his Commiſſion from the King of Denmark. That done, he gives his charge; inſiſting much upon the good will and kindneſs which the King his Maſter and himſelf bear the *Iſlanders*, and adviſing them all to adminiſter juſtice without reſpect of any manner of perſons whatever. After this, he returns to his Tent; where in a godly Sermon, preach'd to him and the reſt of the Aſſembly, the neceſſity of puniſhing offenders, and vindicating the injured, is declared. As ſoon as Sermon is ended, the twelve choſen Juſtices (whom they call *Lochmaders*, i. e. men of the Law) fit down on the ground, with each a book of the *Iſlandic* Laws in his hand. After the Plaintiff and Defendant have both given in what they have to ſay, they all ariſe, and every man examines privately the verdict of his book in the caſe propoſed. Returning, they conſult awhile of the ſentence, and then unanimouſly pronounce it. If any conſi-

derable doubt ariſe among them, which they themſelves cannot eaſily ſolve, they conſult the Lieutenant; but will not give him authority or leave to decide the controverſie by pronouncing of ſentence. Theſe twelve Jurymen (of whom one always Foreman) have great reſpect ſhew'd them, as long as theſe Aſſizes laſt. They have power to determine all Civil cauſes; and to pronounce condemnation, as they think convenient, againſt all Criminals. Thoſe that are condemn'd to dye (as Adulterers, Murderers, and notorious Thieves) are beheaded; but ſmaller misdemeanors are marked in the forehead with an hot iron.

This account of the manner of proceeding in the *Iſlandic* Court of Judicature (tho much different from the methods made uſe of in the days of their *Nomophylaces*, mentioned by *Arngim Jonaſ*) I can the eaſier credit, becauſe I do not find it contradicted in *Arngim's* reply to *Bleſſignius*. Beſides, the cuſtom of deciding controverſies by the verdict of twelve Jurymen here in *England*, may perſwade us to believe the ſame faſhion may be obſerved in theſe *Danijſh* dominions; from whence, probably, it was firſt brought into *Britain*.

The End of the Firſt Volume.



A N

ALPHABETICAL INDEX,

Containing

The NAMES of all the COUNTRIES, CITIES, TOWNS, RIVERS, ISLES, &c.

IN THE

Maps of the Firſt Volume.

Map.	Latitude D. M.	Longitude D. M.	Places.	Map.	Latitude D. M.	Longitude D. M.	Places.	Map.	Latitude D. M.	Longitude D. M.
			Abella fl.	18	55 00	42 00	Achelhofwieg	37	56 15	25 00
			Abelhoff	37	56 05	24 50	Ægyl	17	53 55	35 40
			Abijam	21	54 30	37 00	Aechenberg	17	54 20	26 20
			Abidort	37	56 00	22 10	Aecholm	33	54 40	26 50
			Abkier	38	55 10	24 20	Aellänge	22	58 30	25 00
				39	55 10	24 20		25	59 50	25 00
				40	55 10	24 20	Adeln	27	54 40	24 40
			Abliunge	30	56 00	28 20	Aenby	27	63 00	26 00
				31	56 10	28 50	Aer	35	54 40	25 20
			Abo	60	59 00	39 00	Aesimiloli fl.	20	68 00	37 00
				20	60 00	39 00	Aeye	27	64 20	25 00
				21	60 00	39 00	Af C.	01	65 00	22 00
			Abor	34	55 10	24 50	Afrude	43	53 55	25 20
			Abofee	35	56 20	24 40	Aftingbyochioll	26	56 50	24 20
			Abra	40	54 50	24 10	Agard	30	56 40	23 20
			Abrameda	09	M		Agarcova	06	58 00	60 00
			Abrandrup	33	55 50	26 40		07	58 00	60 00
			Aburum	20	55 00	27 00		08	58 00	60 00
			Abokow	06	46 00	54 00	Agartunby	20	58 00	60 00
				11	46 00	54 00	Agarp	31	55 40	28 10
			Abthoruy	31	56 10	31 00	Agary	30	56 00	28 50
			Abwangen	16	54 20	38 30		30	56 00	29 00
			Abweden	16	53 40	39 00		31	55 45	28 30
			Abweiden	16	54 20	38 30			56 05	29 10
			Abv	22	56 30	32 00	Agazlibert fl.	11	49 00	55 00
				31	55 55	28 20	Agby	31	55 55	28 10
			Abvgydelag	19	58 40	22 30	Agdarp	26	57 15	24 30
			Acias	11	50 00	60 00	Agensborg	18	54 00	39 00
			Achmarzgora M.	10	A		Agens	20	64 00	25 00
			Achmarzgora Inf.	10	A			20	64 00	25 00
			Achtrup	28	54 45	24 00	Agernp	31	55 30	26 40
			Achterweh	38	54 15	25 00	Agerny	31	55 30	28 20
				42	54 15	24 50	Aggabo	22	56 00	30 00
			Achtoba fl.	10	G		Aggby	22	56 30	33 00
			Achrobenilia Ulfga	10	G		Aggenas	27	64 40	26 00
			Achtopka fl.	10	F		Agger	20	61 00	23 00
			Achty Y. H.	12	49 00	52 00		20	61 00	23 00
			Adcliro	40	54 35	24 10		31	55 10	26 00
			Ackelboord	28	59 30	20 30		34	55 15	25 50
			Ackelvede	20	53 00	21 00		31	55 00	25 40
			Aerona	06	44 00	45 00		26	56 40	23 00
			Acaud	06	45 00	41 00			56 45	22 30
			Adauwa	06	58 00	46 00			55 55	24 50
				19	58 30	45 00	Aggerkrog	37	55 55	24 50
				20	58 00	46 00	Aggernis	37	55 35	23 10
			Adehon	06	47 00	57 00	Aggerlaggard	34	55 05	24 50
				11	47 00	57 00	Aggerlaggard	30	55 55	23 40
			Adelby	28	54 45	24 30	Aggerkow	39	55 05	24 10
			Adelhoff	27	53 55	37 00	Aggers Huſlet	29	55 00	24 30
			Adelwick	20	57 30	34 00	Aggerby	25	59 00	25 00
				25	59 30	21 00		25	59 30	25 00
				28	60 00	21 00	Aggerby	31	56 05	29 00
			Adelſadt	22	59 40	21 00	Aggl	19	54 40	24 00
			Adima	24	55 00	67 00	Agilbak	19	57 00	41 00
				08	55 00	67 00	Agil fl.	16	55 10	39 30
			Admirals L.	01	75 00	77 00	Agly	37	56 10	28 50
				07	75 00	78 00	Abel	38	55 10	24 10
			Adofgn	20	59 00	22 30	Abli	25	56 00	23 00
			Adoleff	37	56 05		Abhys	30	55 40	29 20
			Adune fl.	17	54 00	37 00		31	55 50	29 40
			Adzel	19	57 30	44 00	Abwenswei	21	54 30	44 00
				37	56 15	25 10	Alins T.	20	68 00	36 00

B (Vol. 2.)

[illegible][illegible]

Places.	Map.	Latitude. D. M.	Longitude. D. M.	Places.	Map.	Latitude. D. M.	Longitude. E. M.	Places.	Map.	Latitude. D. M.	Longitude. E. M.
Coeftietra	06	58 00	60 00	Conterfwalde	16	54 00	36 30	Cracolin	16	54 00	36 30
Coeftietra	07	59 00	60 00	Conet	06	44 00	38 30	Cracovia	14	49 40	40 00
Coeftietra	08	59 00	60 00	Conin	16	54 00	38 30	Crakowa	14	49 40	40 00
Coeftietra	09	A		Cons T.	27	60 00	38 00	Craikna	14	53 00	00 00
Coeftietra	10	55 00	21 00	Conterfzoff	16	54 00	36 30	Crake	16	54 00	00 00
Cogilhu	15	45 00	21 00	Conia fl.	11	47 00	38 00	Crane	17	54 00	30 00
Cogilhu	16	45 00	79 40	Copa	06	47 00	58 00	Crang	14	54 00	00 00
Cogil fl.	01	50 00	31 00	Cop	11	47 00	58 00	Crantz	14	54 00	00 00
Cogil fl.	02	50 00	31 00	Cop	06	48 00	58 00	Craupfchen	44	53 00	00 00
Cogil fl.	03	50 00	31 00	Cop	06	48 00	58 00	Craplaw	16	54 00	00 00
Cogil fl.	14	54 00	31 00	Cop	11	47 00	58 00	Crap	34	55 15	15 00
Cogil fl.	15	54 00	31 00	Cop	11	47 00	58 00	Craupfchen	44	53 00	00 00
Cogil fl.	16	54 00	31 00	Cop	11	47 00	58 00	Craupfchen	44	53 00	00 00
Cogil fl.	17	54 00	31 00	Cop	11	47 00	58 00	Craupfchen	44	53 00	00 00
Cogil fl.	18	54 00	31 00	Cop	11	47 00	58 00	Craupfchen	44	53 00	00 00
Cogil fl.	19	54 00	31 00	Cop	11	47 00	58 00	Craupfchen	44	53 00	00 00
Cogil fl.	20	54 00	31 00	Cop	11	47 00	58 00	Craupfchen	44	53 00	00 00
Cogil fl.	21	54 00	31 00	Cop	11	47 00	58 00	Craupfchen	44	53 00	00 00
Cogil fl.	22	54 00	31 00	Cop	11	47 00	58 00	Craupfchen	44	53 00	00 00
Cogil fl.	23	54 00	31 00	Cop	11	47 00	58 00	Craupfchen	44	53 00	00 00
Cogil fl.	24	54 00	31 00	Cop	11	47 00	58 00	Craupfchen	44	53 00	00 00
Cogil fl.	25	54 00	31 00	Cop	11	47 00	58 00	Craupfchen	44	53 00	00 00
Cogil fl.	26	54 00	31 00	Cop	11	47 00	58 00	Craupfchen	44	53 00	00 00
Cogil fl.	27	54 00	31 00	Cop	11	47 00	58 00	Craupfchen	44	53 00	00 00
Cogil fl.	28	54 00	31 00	Cop	11	47 00	58 00	Craupfchen	44	53 00	00 00
Cogil fl.	29	54 00	31 00	Cop	11	47 00	58 00	Craupfchen	44	53 00	00 00
Cogil fl.	30	54 00	31 00	Cop	11	47 00	58 00	Craupfchen	44	53 00	00 00
Cogil fl.	31	54 00	31 00	Cop	11	47 00	58 00	Craupfchen	44	53 00	00 00
Cogil fl.	32	54 00	31 00	Cop	11	47 00	58 00	Craupfchen	44	53 00	00 00
Cogil fl.	33	54 00	31 00	Cop	11	47 00	58 00	Craupfchen	44	53 00	00 00
Cogil fl.	34	54 00	31 00	Cop	11	47 00	58 00	Craupfchen	44	53 00	00 00
Cogil fl.	35	54 00	31 00	Cop	11	47 00	58 00	Craupfchen	44	53 00	00 00
Cogil fl.	36	54 00	31 00	Cop	11	47 00	58 00	Craupfchen	44	53 00	00 00
Cogil fl.	37	54 00	31 00	Cop	11	47 00	58 00	Craupfchen	44	53 00	00 00
Cogil fl.	38	54 00	31 00	Cop	11	47 00	58 00	Craupfchen	44	53 00	00 00
Cogil fl.	39	54 00	31 00	Cop	11	47 00	58 00	Craupfchen	44	53 00	00 00
Cogil fl.	40</										

Map.	Latitude. D. M.	Longitude. D. M.	Places.	Map.	Latitude. D. M.	Longitude. D. M.	Places.	Map.	Latitude. D. M.	Longitude. D. M.	Places.
14	50 40	36 00	Czybyrzyna	11	49 00	47 00	Danewich	44	53 45	29 40	
06	57 00	37 00	Czyrzka	18	55 00	50 00	Danafi	12	53 55	24 10	
14	52 30	37 00		11	49 00	48 00	Danafi	06	50 00	24 20	
14	52 30	31 00		11	49 00	48 00	Danafi	01	51 05	23 30	
14	52 30	38 20		12	48 30	50 00	Danafi	15	47 00	24 00	
56	55 55	38 20		18	49 30	48 00	Danafi	12	52 00	35 00	
12	48 30	39 00		14	52 00	59 00	Danawicze fl.	13	59 20	37 00	
12	48 30	47 00		18	52 00	59 00	Dania	06	55 00	47 00	
14	48 30	50 00		14	55 00	50 00	Danawicze	06	58 00	47 00	
12	48 30	47 00						07	58 00	59 00	
12	48 30	47 00						08	58 00	59 00	
12	48 30	47 00						12	58 00	59 00	
12	48 30	47 00						13	58 00	59 00	
12	48 30	47 00						14	58 00	59 00	
12	48 30	47 00						15	58 00	59 00	
12	48 30	47 00						16	58 00	59 00	
12	48 30	47 00						17	58 00	59 00	
12	48 30	47 00						18	58 00	59 00	
12	48 30	47 00						19	58 00	59 00	
12	48 30	47 00						20	58 00	59 00	
12	48 30	47 00						21	58 00	59 00	
12	48 30	47 00						22	58 00	59 00	
12	48 30	47 00						23	58 00	59 00	
12	48 30	47 00						24	58 00	59 00	
12	48 30	47 00						25	58 00	59 00	
12	48 30	47 00						26	58 00	59 00	
12	48 30	47 00						27	58 00	59 00	
12	48 30	47 00						28	58 00	59 00	
12	48 30	47 00						29	58 00	59 00	
12	48 30	47 00						30	58 00	59 00	
12	48 30	47 00						31	58 00	59 00	
12	48 30	47 00						32	58 00	59 00	
12	48 30	47 00						33	58 00	59 00	
12	48 30	47 00						34	58 00	59 00	
12	48 30	47 00						35	58 00	59 00	
12	48 30	47 00						36	58 00	59 00	
12	48 30	47 00						37	58 00	59 00	
12	48 30	47 00						38	58 00	59 00	
12	48 30	47 00						39	58 00	59 00	
12	48 30	47 00						40	58 00	59 00	
12	48 30	47 00						41	58 00	59 00	
12	48 30	47 00						42	58 00	59 00	
12	48 30	47 00						43	58 00	59 00	
12	48 30	47 00						44	58 00	59 00	
12	48 30	47 00						45	58 00	59 00	
12											

[illegible]

Places.	Map.	Latitude D. M.	Longitude D. M.	Places.	Map.	Latitude D. M.	Longitude D. M.	Places.	Map.	Latitude D. M.	Longitude D. M.	Places.	Map.	Latitude D. M.	Longitude D. M.	Places.	Map.	Latitude D. M.	Longitude D. M.
Edde	06	60 00	21 00	Ellenberch	20	51 00	37 00	Enara Trek	07	69 00	40 00	Ey	21	55 00	31 00	Ey	21	55 00	31 00
Edesford	19	60 00	22 00	Ellenfeld	31	51 00	37 00	Enarack Trek	07	69 00	40 00	Ey	21	55 00	31 00	Ey	21	55 00	31 00
Edvard	09	58 30	21 00	Ellerbeck	41	53 40	24 30		07	69 00	40 00	Ey	21	55 00	31 00	Ey	21	55 00	31 00
Edde	29	58 00	22 30		41	53 40	24 30	Enaraby	20	69 00	40 00	Ey	21	55 00	31 00	Ey	21	55 00	31 00
Eden	31	57 35	28 40	Ellerbruch	16	54 00	37 00	Enarby	20	69 00	40 00	Ey	21	55 00	31 00	Ey	21	55 00	31 00
Eden	31	57 35	28 40	Ellerfeld	31	57 00	23 00	Enarby	20	69 00	40 00	Ey	21	55 00	31 00	Ey	21	55 00	31 00
Eden	31	57 35	28 40	Ellerfeld	31	57 00	23 00	Enarby	20	69 00	40 00	Ey	21	55 00	31 00	Ey	21	55 00	31 00
Eden	31	57 35	28 40	Ellerfeld	31	57 00	23 00	Enarby	20	69 00	40 00	Ey	21	55 00	31 00	Ey	21	55 00	31 00
Eden	31	57 35	28 40	Ellerfeld	31	57 00	23 00	Enarby	20	69 00	40 00	Ey	21	55 00	31 00	Ey	21	55 00	31 00
Eden	31	57 35	28 40	Ellerfeld	31	57 00	23 00	Enarby	20	69 00	40 00	Ey	21	55 00	31 00	Ey	21	55 00	31 00
Eden	31	57 35	28 40	Ellerfeld	31	57 00	23 00	Enarby	20	69 00	40 00	Ey	21	55 00	31 00	Ey	21	55 00	31 00
Eden	31	57 35	28 40	Ellerfeld	31	57 00	23 00	Enarby	20	69 00	40 00	Ey	21	55 00	31 00	Ey	21	55 00	31 00
Eden	31	57 35	28 40	Ellerfeld	31	57 00	23 00	Enarby	20	69 00	40 00	Ey	21	55 00	31 00	Ey	21	55 00	31 00
Eden	31	57 35	28 40	Ellerfeld	31	57 00	23 00	Enarby	20	69 00	40 00	Ey	21	55 00	31 00	Ey	21	55 00	31 00
Eden	31	57 35	28 40	Ellerfeld	31	57 00	23 00	Enarby	20	69 00	40 00	Ey	21	55 00	31 00	Ey	21	55 00	31 00
Eden	31	57 35	28 40	Ellerfeld	31	57 00	23 00	Enarby	20	69 00	40 00	Ey	21	55 00	31 00	Ey	21	55 00	31 00
Eden	31	57 35	28 40	Ellerfeld	31	57 00	23 00	Enarby	20	69 00	40 00	Ey	21	55 00	31 00	Ey	21	55 00	31 00
Eden	31	57 35	28 40	Ellerfeld	31	57 00	23 00	Enarby	20	69 00	40 00	Ey	21	55 00	31 00	Ey	21	55 00	31 00
Eden	31	57 35	28 40	Ellerfeld	31	57 00	23 00	Enarby	20	69 00	40 00	Ey	21	55 00	31 00	Ey	21	55 00	31 00
Eden	31	57 35	28 40	Ellerfeld	31	57 00	23 00	Enarby	20	69 00	40 00	Ey	21	55 00	31 00	Ey	21	55 00	31 00
Eden	31	57 35	28 40	Ellerfeld	31	57 00	23 00	Enarby	20	69 00	40 00	Ey	21	55 00	31 00	Ey	21	55 00	31 00
Eden	31	57 35	28 40	Ellerfeld	31	57 00	23 00	Enarby	20	69 00	40 00	Ey	21	55 00	31 00	Ey	21	55 00	31 00
Eden	31	57 35	28 40	Ellerfeld</															

[illegible]

Map.	Latitude. D. M.	Longitude. D. M.	Places.	Map.	Latitude. D. M.	Longitude. D. M.	Places.	Map.	Latitude. D. M.	Longitude. D. M.
37	55 35	44 00	Frodrichthoff	44	54 00	23 50	Fuchsbattel	41	53 35	24 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrich	44	53 50	24 50		41	53 35	24 40
37	55 35	44 00	Ald. Freeman's Inlet	41	53 45	24 00	Fuelitz	44	53 35	24 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedland	40	53 40	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 40	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Freetidee	41	53 35	24 00	Fuelitz	40	54 40	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Fregelan	42	53 30	24 00	Fuelitz Herret	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedl	43	53 25	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	53 20	24 00	Fuelitz	44	53 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	53 15	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	53 10	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	53 05	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	53 00	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	52 55	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	52 50	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	52 45	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	52 40	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	52 35	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	52 30	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	52 25	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	52 20	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	52 15	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	52 10	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	52 05	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	52 00	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	51 55	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	51 50	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	51 45	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	51 40	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	51 35	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	51 30	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	51 25	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	51 20	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	51 15	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	51 10	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	51 05	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	51 00	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	50 55	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	50 50	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	50 45	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	50 40	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	50 35	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	50 30	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	50 25	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	50 20	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	50 15	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	50 10	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	50 05	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	50 00	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	49 55	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	49 50	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	49 45	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	49 40	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	49 35	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	49 30	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	49 25	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	49 20	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	49 15	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	49 10	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	49 05	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	49 00	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	48 55	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	48 50	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	48 45	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	48 40	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	48 35	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	48 30	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	48 25	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	48 20	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	48 15	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	48 10	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	48 05	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	48 00	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	47 55	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	47 50	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	47 45	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	47 40	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	47 35	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	47 30	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	47 25	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	47 20	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	47 15	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	47 10	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	47 05	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	47 00	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	46 55	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	46 50	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	46 45	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	46 40	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	46 35	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	46 30	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	46 25	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	46 20	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	46 15	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	46 10	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	46 05	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	46 00	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	45 55	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	45 50	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	45 45	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	45 40	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	45 35	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	45 30	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	45 25	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	45 20	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	45 15	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	45 10	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	45 05	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	45 00	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	44 55	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	44 50	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	44 45	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	44 40	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	44 35	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	44 30	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	44 25	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	44 20	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	44 15	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	44 10	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	44 05	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	44 00	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	43 55	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	43 50	24 00	Fuelitz	33	54 45	20 40
37	55 35	44 00	Friedrichthal	44	43 45	24 00	Fuelitz	33		

M (1 Vol)	Gr ¹ instad ¹
-----------	-------------------------------------

Plac.	Map.	Latitude D. M.	Longitude D. M.	Plac.	Map.	Latitude D. M.	Longitude D. M.	Plac.	Map.	Latitude D. M.	Longitude D. M.	Plac.	Map.	Latitude D. M.	Longitude D. M.	Plac.	Map.	Latitude D. M.	Longitude D. M.	
Hating	37	55	30	44	33	54	30	44	Hening	33	54	30	Hirtshede	16	54	00	Hoit	38, 39, 40	54	55
Hattings	37	55	34	44	33	54	30	44	Henneberg	33	54	30	Hirtshede	16	54	00	Holtbierg	43	54	55
Hattings Herret	37	55	34	44	33	54	30	44	Henneberg	37	54	30	Hirtshede	16	54	00	Holm	39	55	20
Hattula	11	61	40	40	37	55	34	44	Henneberg	37	54	30	Hirtshede	16	54	00	Holm	39	55	20
Hauua	33	59	30	44	33	54	30	44	Henneberg	37	54	30	Hirtshede	16	54	00	Holm	39	55	20
Hatzburg	41, 44	53	35	34	44	33	54	30	Henneberg	37	54	30	Hirtshede	16	54	00	Holm	39	55	20
Hauze	21	61	30	42	00	37	55	34	Henneberg	37	54	30	Hirtshede	16	54	00	Holm	39	55	20
Hauze	21	61	30	42	00	37	55	34	Henneberg	37	54	30	Hirtshede	16	54	00	Holm	39	55	20
Hauze	21	61	30	42	00	37	55	34	Henneberg	37	54	30	Hirtshede	16	54	00	Holm	39	55	20
Hauze	21	61	30	42	00	37	55	34	Henneberg	37	54	30	Hirtshede	16	54	00	Holm	39	55	20
Hauze	21	61	30	42	00	37	55	34	Henneberg	37	54	30	Hirtshede	16	54	00	Holm	39	55	20
Hauze	21	61	30	42	00	37	55	34	Henneberg	37	54	30	Hirtshede	16	54	00	Holm	39	55	20
Hauze	21	61	30	42	00	37	55	34	Henneberg	37	54	30	Hirtshede	16	54	00	Holm	39	55	20
Hauze	21	61	30	42	00	37	55	34	Henneberg	37	54	30	Hirtshede	16	54	00	Holm	39	55	20
Hauze	21	61	30	42	00	37	55	34	Henneberg	37	54	30	Hirtshede	16	54	00	Holm	39	55	20
Hauze	21	61	30	42	00	37	55	34	Henneberg	37	54	30	Hirtshede	16	54	00	Holm	39	55	20
Hauze	21	61	30	42	00	37	55	34	Henneberg	37	54	30	Hirtshede	16	54	00	Holm	39	55	20
Hauze	21	61	30	42	00	37	55	34	Henneberg	37	54	30	Hirtshede	16	54	00	Holm	39	55	20
Hauze	21	61	30	42	00	37	55	34	Henneberg	37	54	30	Hirtshede	16	54	00	Holm	39	55	20
Hauze	21	61	30	42	00	37	55	34	Henneberg	37	54	30	Hirtshede	16	54	00	Holm	39	55	20
Hauze	21	61	30	42	00	37	55	34	Henneberg	37	54	30	Hirtshede	16	54	00	Holm	39	55	20
Hauze	21	61	30	42	00	37	55	34	Henneberg	37	54	30	Hirtshede	16	54	00	Holm	39	55	20
Hauze	21	61	30	42	00	37	55	34	Henneberg	37	54	30	Hirtshede	16	54	00	Holm	39	55	20
Hauze	21	61	30	42	00	37	55	34	Henneberg	37	54	30	Hirtshede	16	54	00	Holm	39	55	20
Hauze	21	61	30	42	00	37	55	34	Henneberg	37	54	30	Hirtshede	16	54	00	Holm	39	55	20
Hauze	21	61	30	42	00	37	55	34	Henneberg	37										

[illegible]

[illegible]

30 | Lyenskirk
T. / V.

[illegible][illegible]

[illegible][illegible]X (Vol. 1.)³⁷ Nicman

0123-

	Map.	Latitude D. M.	Longitude D. M.	Places.	Map.	Latitude D. M.	Longitude D. M.	Places.	Map.	Latitude D. M.	Longitude D. M.	Places.	Map.	Latitude D. M.	Longitude D. M.	Places.	Map.	Latitude D. M.	Longitude D. M.	Places.
Niemenczyc	18	54 00	41 00	Niemyń	10	61 00	31 00	Norenga reka	09											
Niemen B.	18	54 30		Niżny	10	51 00	50 00	Lubano	09	F.	50 12									
Niemiń & olim Chro-				Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Norlar	36, 37	50 10										
Niemiszyn	6, 18	54 30	42 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Norgard	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									
Niemiszyn	18	57 00	40 00	Nobels	17	54 15	36 10	Nor Harle	31	50 47	16									

Y (Vol)

Placen.	Map.	Latitude D. M.	Longitude D. M.	Placen.	Map.	Latitude D. M.	Longitude D. M.	Placen.	Map.	Latitude D. M.	Longitude D. M.	Placen.	Map.	Latitude D. M.	Longitude D. M.	Placen.	Map.	Latitude D. M.	Longitude D. M.
Olerok fl.	16	53 20	40 30	Onlay	11	57 30	31 00	Orley	16	53 20	37 00	Orland	20	53 00	28 00	Ouliga	07	61 00	67 00
Olerad	37	57 30	30 00	Onlay	11	57 30	31 00	Orland	12, 18	53 20	30 00	Ouliga	07	61 00	67 00	Ouliga	07	61 00	67 00
Olerow	37, 38	57 30	30 00	Oockla	6, 7	53 00	71 00	Orlikan P.	10	53 00	43 00	Ouliga	07	61 00	67 00	Ouliga	07	61 00	67 00
Olerowice	12	49 30	41 00	Onkwalke	31	53 35	30 00	Orlikan P.	10	53 00	43 00	Ouliga	07	61 00	67 00	Ouliga	07	61 00	67 00
Olerowice	12	49 30	41 00	Oer aan	24	51 10	31 40	Orlikan P.	10	53 00	43 00	Ouliga	07	61 00	67 00	Ouliga	07	61 00	67 00
Olerowice	12	49 30	41 00	Oer aan	24	51 10	31 40	Orlikan P.	10	53 00	43 00	Ouliga	07	61 00	67 00	Ouliga	07	61 00	67 00
Olerowice	12	49 30	41 00	Oer aan	24	51 10	31 40	Orlikan P.	10	53 00	43 00	Ouliga	07	61 00	67 00	Ouliga	07	61 00	67 00
Olerowice	12	49 30	41 00	Oer aan	24	51 10	31 40	Orlikan P.	10	53 00	43 00	Ouliga	07	61 00	67 00	Ouliga	07	61 00	67 00
Olerowice	12	49 30	41 00	Oer aan	24	51 10	31 40	Orlikan P.	10	53 00	43 00	Ouliga	07	61 00	67 00	Ouliga	07	61 00	67 00
Olerowice	12	49 30	41 00	Oer aan	24	51 10	31 40	Orlikan P.	10	53 00	43 00	Ouliga	07	61 00	67 00	Ouliga	07	61 00	67 00
Olerowice	12	49 30	41 00	Oer aan	24	51 10	31 40	Orlikan P.	10	53 00	43 00	Ouliga	07	61 00	67 00	Ouliga	07	61 00	67 00
Olerowice	12	49 30	41 00	Oer aan	24	51 10	31 40	Orlikan P.	10	53 00	43 00	Ouliga	07	61 00	67 00	Ouliga	07	61 00	67 00
Olerowice	12	49 30	41 00	Oer aan	24	51 10	31 40	Orlikan P.	10	53 00	43 00	Ouliga	07	61 00	67 00	Ouliga	07	61 00	67 00
Olerowice	12	49 30	41 00	Oer aan	24	51 10	31 40	Orlikan P.	10	53 00	43 00	Ouliga	07	61 00	67 00	Ouliga	07	61 00	67 00
Olerowice	12	49 30	41 00	Oer aan	24	51 10	31 40	Orlikan P.	10	53 00	43 00	Ouliga	07	61 00	67 00	Ouliga	07	61 00	67 00
Olerowice	12	49 30	41 00	Oer aan	24	51 10	31 40	Orlikan P.	10	53 00	43 00	Ouliga	07	61 00	67 00	Ouliga	07	61 00	67 00
Olerowice	12	49 30	41 00	Oer aan	24	51 10	31 40	Orlikan P.	10	53 00	43 00	Ouliga	07	61 00	67 00	Ouliga	07	61 00	67 00
Olerowice	12	49 30	41 00	Oer aan	24	51 10	31 40	Orlikan P.	10	53 00	43 00	Ouliga	07	61 00	67 00	Ouliga	07	61 00	67 00
Olerowice	12	49 30	41 00	Oer aan	24	51 10	31 40	Orlikan P.	10	53 00	43 00	Ouliga	07	61 00	67 00	Ouliga	07	61 00	67 00
Olerowice	12	49 30	41 00	Oer aan	24	51 10	31 40	Orlikan P.	10	53 00	43 00	Ouliga	07	61 00	67 00	Ouliga	07	61 00	67 00
Olerowice	12	49 30	41 00	Oer aan	24	51 10	31 40	Orlikan P.	10	53 00	43 00	Ouliga	07	61 00	67 00	Ouliga	07	61 00	67 00
Olerowice	12	49 30	41 00	Oer aan	24	51 10	31 40	Orlikan P.	10	53 00	43 00	Ouliga	07	61 00	67 00	Ouliga	07</		

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

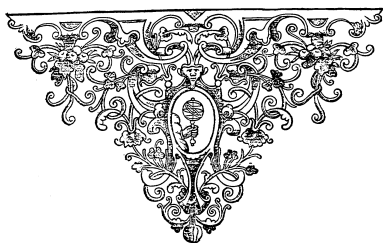
[illegible]

Places.	Map.	Latitude.	Longitude.	Places.	Map.	Latitude.	Longitude.	Places.	Map.	Latitude.	Longitude.	Places.	Map.	Latitude.	Longitude.	Places.	Map.	Latitude.	Longitude.	Places.	Map.	Latitude.	Longitude.
		D. M.	D. M.			D. M.	D. M.			D. M.	D. M.			D. M.	D. M.			D. M.	D. M.			D. M.	D. M.
Trundite	42	54 15	55 00	Turowo	15	54 10	33 20	Vahren	41	54 20	14 10	Vee	34	55 10	34 40	Ulfo	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vauberg	30	56 30	25 40
Trunery	31	55 15	29 00	Turowa	15	54 10	28 00	Vahrentelle	38, 40	54 35	14 10	Vee	34	55 00	34 00	Ulfford	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vaudreine Monst.	30	56 00	25 40
Trunze	31	55 15	29 00	Turowa	15	54 10	28 00	Vaire	20	54 00	21 00	Vegerna	21	55 00	34 00	Ullfand	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vaudreine Monst.	30	56 00	25 40
Trup	31	55 15	29 00	Turowa	15	54 10	28 00	Vakantini	19, 21	54 00	21 00	Vegerna	21	55 00	34 00	Ullfand	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vaudreine Monst.	30	56 00	25 40
Truford	31	55 15	29 00	Turowa	15	54 10	28 00	Vakantini	19, 21	54 00	21 00	Vegerna	21	55 00	34 00	Ullfand	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vaudreine Monst.	30	56 00	25 40
Truford	31	55 15	29 00	Turowa	15	54 10	28 00	Vakantini	19, 21	54 00	21 00	Vegerna	21	55 00	34 00	Ullfand	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vaudreine Monst.	30	56 00	25 40
Truford	31	55 15	29 00	Turowa	15	54 10	28 00	Vakantini	19, 21	54 00	21 00	Vegerna	21	55 00	34 00	Ullfand	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vaudreine Monst.	30	56 00	25 40
Truford	31	55 15	29 00	Turowa	15	54 10	28 00	Vakantini	19, 21	54 00	21 00	Vegerna	21	55 00	34 00	Ullfand	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vaudreine Monst.	30	56 00	25 40
Truford	31	55 15	29 00	Turowa	15	54 10	28 00	Vakantini	19, 21	54 00	21 00	Vegerna	21	55 00	34 00	Ullfand	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vaudreine Monst.	30	56 00	25 40
Truford	31	55 15	29 00	Turowa	15	54 10	28 00	Vakantini	19, 21	54 00	21 00	Vegerna	21	55 00	34 00	Ullfand	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vaudreine Monst.	30	56 00	25 40
Truford	31	55 15	29 00	Turowa	15	54 10	28 00	Vakantini	19, 21	54 00	21 00	Vegerna	21	55 00	34 00	Ullfand	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vaudreine Monst.	30	56 00	25 40
Truford	31	55 15	29 00	Turowa	15	54 10	28 00	Vakantini	19, 21	54 00	21 00	Vegerna	21	55 00	34 00	Ullfand	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vaudreine Monst.	30	56 00	25 40
Truford	31	55 15	29 00	Turowa	15	54 10	28 00	Vakantini	19, 21	54 00	21 00	Vegerna	21	55 00	34 00	Ullfand	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vaudreine Monst.	30	56 00	25 40
Truford	31	55 15	29 00	Turowa	15	54 10	28 00	Vakantini	19, 21	54 00	21 00	Vegerna	21	55 00	34 00	Ullfand	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vaudreine Monst.	30	56 00	25 40
Truford	31	55 15	29 00	Turowa	15	54 10	28 00	Vakantini	19, 21	54 00	21 00	Vegerna	21	55 00	34 00	Ullfand	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vaudreine Monst.	30	56 00	25 40
Truford	31	55 15	29 00	Turowa	15	54 10	28 00	Vakantini	19, 21	54 00	21 00	Vegerna	21	55 00	34 00	Ullfand	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vaudreine Monst.	30	56 00	25 40
Truford	31	55 15	29 00	Turowa	15	54 10	28 00	Vakantini	19, 21	54 00	21 00	Vegerna	21	55 00	34 00	Ullfand	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vaudreine Monst.	30	56 00	25 40
Truford	31	55 15	29 00	Turowa	15	54 10	28 00	Vakantini	19, 21	54 00	21 00	Vegerna	21	55 00	34 00	Ullfand	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vaudreine Monst.	30	56 00	25 40
Truford	31	55 15	29 00	Turowa	15	54 10	28 00	Vakantini	19, 21	54 00	21 00	Vegerna	21	55 00	34 00	Ullfand	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vaudreine Monst.	30	56 00	25 40
Truford	31	55 15	29 00	Turowa	15	54 10	28 00	Vakantini	19, 21	54 00	21 00	Vegerna	21	55 00	34 00	Ullfand	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vaudreine Monst.	30	56 00	25 40
Truford	31	55 15	29 00	Turowa	15	54 10	28 00	Vakantini	19, 21	54 00	21 00	Vegerna	21	55 00	34 00	Ullfand	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vaudreine Monst.	30	56 00	25 40
Truford	31	55 15	29 00	Turowa	15	54 10	28 00	Vakantini	19, 21	54 00	21 00	Vegerna	21	55 00	34 00	Ullfand	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vaudreine Monst.	30	56 00	25 40
Truford	31	55 15	29 00	Turowa	15	54 10	28 00	Vakantini	19, 21	54 00	21 00	Vegerna	21	55 00	34 00	Ullfand	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vaudreine Monst.	30	56 00	25 40
Truford	31	55 15	29 00	Turowa	15	54 10	28 00	Vakantini	19, 21	54 00	21 00	Vegerna	21	55 00	34 00	Ullfand	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vaudreine Monst.	30	56 00	25 40
Truford	31	55 15	29 00	Turowa	15	54 10	28 00	Vakantini	19, 21	54 00	21 00	Vegerna	21	55 00	34 00	Ullfand	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vaudreine Monst.	30	56 00	25 40
Truford	31	55 15	29 00	Turowa	15	54 10	28 00	Vakantini	19, 21	54 00	21 00	Vegerna	21	55 00	34 00	Ullfand	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vaudreine Monst.	30	56 00	25 40
Truford	31	55 15	29 00	Turowa	15	54 10	28 00	Vakantini	19, 21	54 00	21 00	Vegerna	21	55 00	34 00	Ullfand	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vaudreine Monst.	30	56 00	25 40
Truford	31	55 15	29 00	Turowa	15	54 10	28 00	Vakantini	19, 21	54 00	21 00	Vegerna	21	55 00	34 00	Ullfand	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vaudreine Monst.	30	56 00	25 40
Truford	31	55 15	29 00	Turowa	15	54 10	28 00	Vakantini	19, 21	54 00	21 00	Vegerna	21	55 00	34 00	Ullfand	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vaudreine Monst.	30	56 00	25 40
Truford	31	55 15	29 00	Turowa	15	54 10	28 00	Vakantini	19, 21	54 00	21 00	Vegerna	21	55 00	34 00	Ullfand	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vaudreine Monst.	30	56 00	25 40
Truford	31	55 15	29 00	Turowa	15	54 10	28 00	Vakantini	19, 21	54 00	21 00	Vegerna	21	55 00	34 00	Ullfand	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vaudreine Monst.	30	56 00	25 40
Truford	31	55 15	29 00	Turowa	15	54 10	28 00	Vakantini	19, 21	54 00	21 00	Vegerna	21	55 00	34 00	Ullfand	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vaudreine Monst.	30	56 00	25 40
Truford	31	55 15	29 00	Turowa	15	54 10	28 00	Vakantini	19, 21	54 00	21 00	Vegerna	21	55 00	34 00	Ullfand	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vaudreine Monst.	30	56 00	25 40
Truford	31	55 15	29 00	Turowa	15	54 10	28 00	Vakantini	19, 21	54 00	21 00	Vegerna	21	55 00	34 00	Ullfand	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vaudreine Monst.	30	56 00	25 40
Truford	31	55 15	29 00	Turowa	15	54 10	28 00	Vakantini	19, 21	54 00	21 00	Vegerna	21	55 00	34 00	Ullfand	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vaudreine Monst.	30	56 00	25 40
Truford	31	55 15	29 00	Turowa	15	54 10	28 00	Vakantini	19, 21	54 00	21 00	Vegerna	21	55 00	34 00	Ullfand	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vaudreine Monst.	30	56 00	25 40
Truford	31	55 15	29 00	Turowa	15	54 10	28 00	Vakantini	19, 21	54 00	21 00	Vegerna	21	55 00	34 00	Ullfand	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vaudreine Monst.	30	56 00	25 40
Truford	31	55 15	29 00	Turowa	15	54 10	28 00	Vakantini	19, 21	54 00	21 00	Vegerna	21	55 00	34 00	Ullfand	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vaudreine Monst.	30	56 00	25 40
Truford	31	55 15	29 00	Turowa	15	54 10	28 00	Vakantini	19, 21	54 00	21 00	Vegerna	21	55 00	34 00	Ullfand	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vaudreine Monst.	30	56 00	25 40
Truford	31	55 15	29 00	Turowa	15	54 10	28 00	Vakantini	19, 21	54 00	21 00	Vegerna	21	55 00	34 00	Ullfand	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vaudreine Monst.	30	56 00	25 40
Truford	31	55 15	29 00	Turowa	15	54 10	28 00	Vakantini	19, 21	54 00	21 00	Vegerna	21	55 00	34 00	Ullfand	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vaudreine Monst.	30	56 00	25 40
Truford	31	55 15	29 00	Turowa	15	54 10	28 00	Vakantini	19, 21	54 00	21 00	Vegerna	21	55 00	34 00	Ullfand	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vaudreine Monst.	30	56 00	25 40
Truford	31	55 15	29 00	Turowa	15	54 10	28 00	Vakantini	19, 21	54 00	21 00	Vegerna	21	55 00	34 00	Ullfand	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vaudreine Monst.	30	56 00	25 40
Truford	31	55 15	29 00	Turowa	15	54 10	28 00	Vakantini	19, 21	54 00	21 00	Vegerna	21	55 00	34 00	Ullfand	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vaudreine Monst.	30	56 00	25 40
Truford	31	55 15	29 00	Turowa	15	54 10	28 00	Vakantini	19, 21	54 00	21 00	Vegerna	21	55 00	34 00	Ullfand	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vaudreine Monst.	30	56 00	25 40
Truford	31	55 15	29 00	Turowa	15	54 10	28 00	Vakantini	19, 21	54 00	21 00	Vegerna	21	55 00	34 00	Ullfand	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vaudreine Monst.	30	56 00	25 40
Truford	31	55 15	29 00	Turowa	15	54 10	28 00	Vakantini	19, 21	54 00	21 00	Vegerna	21	55 00	34 00	Ullfand	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vaudreine Monst.	30	56 00	25 40
Truford	31	55 15	29 00	Turowa	15	54 10	28 00	Vakantini	19, 21	54 00	21 00	Vegerna	21	55 00	34 00	Ullfand	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vaudreine Monst.	30	56 00	25 40
Truford	31	55 15	29 00	Turowa	15	54 10	28 00	Vakantini	19, 21	54 00	21 00	Vegerna	21	55 00	34 00	Ullfand	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vaudreine Monst.	30	56 00	25 40
Truford	31	55 15	29 00	Turowa	15	54 10	28 00	Vakantini	19, 21	54 00	21 00	Vegerna	21	55 00	34 00	Ullfand	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vaudreine Monst.	30	56 00	25 40
Truford	31	55 15	29 00	Turowa	15	54 10	28 00	Vakantini	19, 21	54 00	21 00	Vegerna	21	55 00	34 00	Ullfand	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vaudreine Monst.	30	56 00	25 40
Truford	31	55 15	29 00	Turowa	15	54 10	28 00	Vakantini	19, 21	54 00	21 00	Vegerna	21	55 00	34 00	Ullfand	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vaudreine Monst.	30	56 00	25 40
Truford	31	55 15	29 00	Turowa	15	54 10	28 00	Vakantini	19, 21	54 00	21 00	Vegerna	21	55 00	34 00	Ullfand	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vaudreine Monst.	30	56 00	25 40
Truford	31	55 15	29 00	Turowa	15	54 10	28 00	Vakantini	19, 21	54 00	21 00	Vegerna	21	55 00	34 00	Ullfand	20, 21	59 00	43 00	Vaudreine Monst.	30	56 00	25 40
Truford	31	55 1																					

[illegible][illegible]

[illegible]

Places.	Map.	Latitude. D. M.	Longitude. D. M.	Places.	Map.	Latitude. D. M.	Longitude. D. M.	Places.	Map.	Latitude. D. M.	Longitude. D. M.
Zobtenberg	14	50 40	33 00	Zowet	19	56 30	43 00	Zwyder See	20	58 00	30 00
C. Zochloma	6, 7, 8	59 00	69 00	Zpaw	15	51 50	33 40	Po. De Zuzaco	11	46 00	39 00
Zochow	18	49 30	39 00	Zaryski	12	49 00	47 00	Zuzaco Tazofim	06	47 00	39 00
Zochinski	18	54 30	45 00	I. Zubinski	10	50 30	44 00	Zwabiaki	18	55 30	44 00
Zochinski	18	54 00	44 00	Zuchow	12	50 30	44 00	Zwan H.	12	48 30	47 00
Zolawi	19	51 00	36 00	Zuchow	18	50 30	43 00	Zwanicz	12	48 30	44 00
Zolnina	6, 7, 10	62 00	57 00	Zuerkova Laki	6, 8, 10	54 00	50 00	Zwanicz R.	12	49 00	44 00
Zolnina	12	48 30	50 00	Zugore	18	54 00	44 00	Zweniporoh	18	52 00	47 00
Zolninski	18	53 00	41 00	Zugore	18	54 00	44 00	Zwibel	18	50 30	45 00
Zosok II.	06	53 00	78 00	Zukamjari	11	51 00	51 00	Zwinacz	18	50 30	43 00
Zoufia	6, 7, 8, 10	56 00	56 00	Zukamjari	11	51 00	51 00	Zwogrolka	12	48 30	48 00
Zupka	16	54 00	36 30	Zukamjari	11	51 00	51 00	Zwonowo	18	51 30	34 30
Zupockini	14	54 00	40 00	Zukamjari	11	51 00	51 00	Zybin	18	53 00	45 00
Zuraw	18	55 30	40 00	Zukamjari	11	51 00	51 00	Zydzaczow	18	49 30	42 00
Zurawka	12	49 30	51 00	Zukamjari	11	51 00	51 00	Zydwic	12	49 30	47 00
Zurawka	10	51 00	51 00	Zukamjari	11	51 00	51 00	Zydowo	15	51 50	33 40
Zurawka	06	44 00	51 00	Zukamjari	11	51 00	51 00	Zygnaninow	12	49 00	37 00
Zurawka	13	50 00	44 00	Zukamjari	11	51 00	51 00	Zymka	15	51 50	34 00
Zurawka	13	50 30	43 00	Zukamjari	11	51 00	51 00	Zynkow	12	49 00	37 00
Zurawka	06	44 00	41 00	Zukamjari	11	51 00	51 00	Zyne	18	55 00	35 40
Zurawka	18	54 30	41 00	Zukamjari	11	51 00	51 00	Zylica	6, 10	56 00	51 00
Zurawka	20	55 00	51 00	Zukamjari	11	51 00	51 00	Zytmira	18	50 30	45 00
Zurawka	27	58 30	35 00	Zukamjari	11	51 00	51 00				



Directions for the Book-Binder

Sheets of Descriptions &c.
THE Title and Dedication.
The Proposals and Subscribers Names.
The Introduction to Geography A B C Inclusive.

Greenland Pag. 1.
Willoughby's Island Pag. 6.
Nova Zembla Ibid.
Cherry and other Islands Pag. 7.
John Main's Island Pag. 9.
Greenland Ibid.

Frisland Pag. 13.
Europe Pag. 14.
Russia or Muscovy Pag. 17.
Several Provinces of Russia Pag. 21.
Government and Manners of the Russia Pag. 29.
History of the Princes of Russia Pag. 37.
Lakes and Rivers of Muscovy Pag. 39.
Crim Tartars Pag. 43.
Borjibenes and the Cossacks of Ukraine Pag. 49.
*Of the new Accellions in Pomeran and the Em-
pire Pag. 37.*

The second Alphabet.
Poland Pag. 1.
Great Poland Pag. 13.
Muscovia Pag. 15.
Prussia Ibid.
Prussia Regia Pag. 19.
Great Dukedom of Lithuania Ibid.
Samogitia Pag. 22.
Livonia Ibid.
Volinia, Podolia &c. Pag. 24.
Lesser Poland Pag. 25.
*Other Countreys formerly belonging to the King
of Poland Pag. 26.*
Pretensions of Iorrian Princes to Poland Pag. 27.

The third Alphabet.
Sweden Pag. 1.
The Laplanders manner of living Pag. 11.
Provinces of Sweden Pag. 12.
Government and Manners of Sweden Pag. 17.
Gothia and it's Provinces Pag. 24.
*Catalogue of the Kings of Sweden and Goth-Land
Pag. 27.*
Principality of Finland Pag. 24.
Ingria or Ingerman-Land Pag. 35.
Of the new Accellions in Livonia Pag. 36.
Of the new Accellions in Denmark Pag. 38.
Of the Baltic Sea Pag. 40.
Of Denmark Pag. 41.
Of Jutland Pag. 52.
North Jutland Ibid.
South Jutland Ibid.
Partition of Holstein from Denmark Pag. 56.
Holstein Ibid.
Dithmarse Pag. 58.
Stormar Ibid.
Wagria Pag. 59.
Baltic Sea Pag. 61.
Fionia Ibid.
Seland Pag. 62.
Laland Pag. 64.
Lesser Islands Ibid.
The ancient Inhabitants of those Isles Pag. 65.
Norway Pag. 66.
Mafferland Pag. 67.
Bishopricks of Amla and Staffanger Ibid.
Prefecture of Bergen Pag. 67.
Prefecture of Nidaros Pag. 68.
Prefecture of Wardhus Ibid.
Norwegian Lapland Ibid.

Of the Commerce of the ancient Britans, English,
and Norwegians Ibid.
Islands of Ferro Pag. 70.
Islands of Sheland Pag. 71.
Iceland Pag. 68.

Index from B to Mm Inclusive. In which is also
a Catalogue of Books Printed at the Theater in
Oxford, and fold by Moses Pitt, at the Angel in
St. Pauls Church-yard, London.

Figures and Maps to be plac'd thus:
1. The Kings Picture.
2. A Copper Title.
3. A Map of both the Hemispheres.
4. A Map of the Earth in a plain Chart, both
before the Introduction to Geography.
5. A Map of the North-pole, pag. 1. of Greenland.
6. A Map of Europe, pag. 14.
7. Laplanders manner of living in Summer and
Winter, place in the Description of Sweden
pag. 11. in the third Alphabet.

*The following Maps are mark'd or number'd on the
Plates thus, answerable to the Index.*
6. Novissima Russia Tabula pag. 17.
7. Russia vulgo Muscovia pag. 18.
8. Muscovia pars Australis pag. 21.
9. Drinae Fluvii Descriptio pag. 22.
10. Nova & Accurata Volga Fluminis olim Rha-
dicti delineatio pag. 41.
11. Taurica Cherfonesus hodie Præcipua & Gazara
dictur pag. 43.
12. Typus Generalis Ukraine pag. 49.
13. Tractatus Borjibenis vulgo Dniepr & Niepr
dicti pag. 40.
Place the Maps in Poland, Alphabet the second.
14. Novissima Polonia Descriptio pag. 1.
15. Palatinatus Pofnanienfis pag. 13.
16. Prussia pag. 15.
17. Tractuum Borussia pag. 16.
18. Magnus Ducatus Lithuanie pag. 19.
19. Nova Totius Livonia Descriptio pag. 20.
Place these in Sweden, Alphabet the third.
20. Suetia, Norvegia, & Danica, pag. 31.
21. Magnus Ducatus Finlandie pag. 34.
22. Gothia pag. 24.
23. Upsalensis pag. 13.
24. Dalecarlia & Westermannia pag. 12.
25. Regni Norvegia descriptio pag. 66.
26. Novissima Islandia Tabula pag. 68.
27. Diocesis Trandhemienfis pars Australis pag. 68.
28. Episcopatus Bergenfis pag. 67.
29. Episcop. Stavangrienfis, Bergenfis, & Alfoen-
fis pag. 67.
30. Regni Danie delineat. pag. 41.
31. Scania vulgo Schonen pag. 25.
32. Selandia pag. 62.
33. Lalandia & Falsiria pag. 64.
34. Fionia vulgo Funen pag. 61.
35. Jutia Generalis pag. 52.
36. Jutia Septentr. pag. 52.
37. Jutia Australis pag. 54.
38. Ducatus Slevisenfis pag. 54.
39. Ducatus Slevisenfis Septentr. pag. 54.
40. Ducat. Slevisenfis Austr. pag. 54.
41. Ducatus Holstatie Descript. pag. 56.
42. Dithmaria &c. pag. 58.
43. Wagria pag. 59.
44. Stormaria pag. 58.
The Maps may be placed with the Descriptions,
as here directed, or after them, or in a Volume by
themselves, as the Buyer pleases.

Books Printed at the Theater in the University of Oxford, since 1672. And fold by
MOSES PITT, at the Angel in St. Pauls Church-yard, London.

In FOLIO.

THE Symodicon or Canons of ancient Councils
with their Scholia; Greek & Latin in 2. Vol.
A Catalogue of printed Books in the Bodleian Li-
brary in Oxford.
The History of the University of Oxford Lat.
The description of the Colleges and public Buildings in
the University, in perspective.
The History of Lapland.
The Armet Marbles, and others in the University
of Oxford described Lat.
The Natural History of Oxford-shire by Dr. Plot.
The History of the life of King Alfred Lat.
Dr. Pococks Commentaries on the lesser Prophets; where-
of part is now in the Press.
Iamblichus of Egyptian Mysteries, Greek & Latin.
Dr. Charletons description of Animals. Lat.
St. Cyprians works; now in the Press. Lat.
Josephus Gr. & Lat. now in the Press.
The Great Universal Herbar of Dr. Morison; almost fi-
nished. Lat.
Jo. Scotus de Divisione Naturæ; not yet extant, now
in the Press. Lat.
The 2^d. and 3^d. Volumes of the Atlas now in the Press,
which are intended to be finished before Dec. 25. 1680.
A large English Bible, on Imperial paper, of the same
print as this Volume of Atlas is.

In QUARTO.

Several English Bibles.
Dr. Willis de Anima Brutorum. Lat.
His Pharmaceutice Rationalis 2. Vol. Lat.
The description of the most rare Plants of Sicily, Mal-
ta, Italy &c. by P. Boccone. Lat.
Four controversial Dialogues, by B. Cole.
A Treat of Maimonides Heb. & Lat. of the Tything
for the poor, &c.
The History of the Jacobins, &c. by Jos. Abulacmus.
Lat.
Edm. Earl of Clarendon against Mr. Hobbs.
The Benefits of our Saviour to Mankind.
Dr. Salls Votum pro Pace, Lat.
A discourse of Convex-Glasses.

In OCTAVO

TH. O. Lidiats Chronological Canons. Lat.
Dr. Voßius de poematum cantu. Lat.
De Sibyllinis Oraculis. Lat.
Dr. Mayon de Spiritu vitæ Aereæ, &c. Lat.
Dr. Breuins Saul and Samuel, or the new waies of
Salvation &c.
A Paraphrase and Annot. on the Epistles of St. Paul,
&c.
The Ladies Calling.
The Government of the Tongue.
The art of Contentment.
The Lively Oracles.
Xenophon Cyr. Pæd. Gr.
A Dissertation of Free-Schools. by C. Wase.
Epicteti Ench. & Theophrasti Charact. Gr. & Lat.
The Certainty of Christian Faith, by Dr. Whitby.
The Deaf and Dumb mans Tutor, by Geo. Dalgarno.

Catholico-Romanus Pacificus, by Jo. Barnes an English
Benedictine. Lat.
Herodians History, Gr. & Lat.
Zofimus History, Gr. & Lat.
Aratus with Schol. Gr.
Nemesius de Nat. Hist. Gr. & Lat.
Quintilians Declam. Lat.
The History of West Barbary.
Homers Iliads Gr. with the Schol.
Theocris. Gr. with the Schol.
Suetonius, Lat.
The state of the Greek Church, by Tho. Smith.
Mr. Oughtreds Mathematical Tracts, not before extant.
Plinius Epistles, Lat.
Demetrius Phalerens, de Elocut. Gr. & Lat.
Pachymerius Logic. Gr. & Lat.
Reflections on the Council of Trent, by H. Luzancy.
Greek Plaster, according to the Alexandrian Copy.

In TWELVES.

NEW Testament Gr. with the Various readings.
Dr. Cud, de Secretione. Lat.
Grotius de Veritate. Gr. Lat.
St. Clements Epist. Gr. & Lat.
Cornelius Nepos. Lat.
Grammatica Rationis. Lat.
Ars Rationis. Lat.
Lilies Grammar with Notes. Lat.
Of the Education of Gentlemen.
Depth and Mystery of the Roman Mass, by Dr. Brevini.
The Christian Sacrifice, &c.
Maximus Tyrinus. Gr. & Lat.
B. Andrews Devotions Gr. & Lat.
Dr. Willis Pharmac. Rat. 2. Vol. Lat.
Archimedes his Arenarius Gr. & Lat.
Justins History. Lat.
Dr. Salls Defence of the Catholic Religion of the
Church of Eng.
Salustys History. Lat.
M. Aurel. Antoninus Gr. & Lat.
Faustinus's works. Lat.
Epictetus Gr. & Lat.
Seneca's Tragedies. Lat.
Elegantie Poeticæ. Lat.
New Test. Lat.
Bibles 12. Eng.
Common Prayers 12. and 24. Eng.
A brief Explication of the Catechisme of the Church of
England.

Books prepared for the Press.

A Volume of the ancient English Historians ne-
ver yet Printed.
A Saxon Lexicon, the work of Mr. Junius, not yet
Printed.
His Etymologicon, not yet Printed.
Several of the Antient Greek Mathematicians.
The Coptic Gospels and Psalter.
The Saxon Chronology.
Laflantius's Instit. &c. now in the Press.
Orosius's Hist.
Jo. Antioch. Gr. & Lat. never yet Printed.
With many others almost fitted for the Press.